



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Kalls ser. 87^a

Kalls

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

U 21984.

a

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS
OF
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER
THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

ON the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,
December 1857.*

THE CHRONICLE
OF
ROBERT MANNING OF BRUNNE.

THE
STORY OF ENGLAND
BY
ROBERT MANNING OF BRUNNE,
A.D. 1338.

EDITED
FROM MSS. AT LAMBETH PALACE AND THE INNER TEMPLE,

BY
FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL,
M.A. TRIN. HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL., BERLIN.

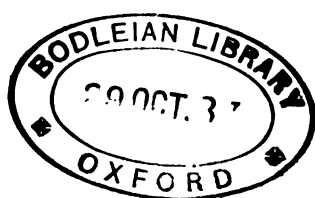
PART I.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMAN & CO., PATERNOSTER ROW; TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL:
ALSO
PARKER & CO., OXFORD; AND MACMILLAN & CO., CAMBRIDGE;
A. & C. BLACK, AND DOUGLAS AND FOULIS, EDINBURGH;
AND A. THOM & CO., LIMITED, DUBLIN.

1887.

~~R. 8 12 9~~



Printed by
HYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

INTRODUCTION.

~~~~~

§ 1. Robert of Brunne, a forerunner of Chaucer.

§ 2. His personal history. Born at Bourne, in Lincolnshire, lived at Sempringham, p. ii.

§ 3. The Priors of Sempringham, A.D. 1288-1332, p. iv.

§ 4. Robert of Brunne, a member of the Gilbertine Order: sketch of the life there, p. vi.

§ 5. Robert of Brunne's later life, and his motives in writing his books, p. xii.

§ 6. His *Chronicle* is Fiction; his *Handlyng Synne* is History: sketch of its pictures of English

Life in 1303 (p. xiv), and the kind of man it shows him to have been, p. xv.

§ 7. Robert of Brunne's *Chronicle*, and its sources, p. xviii.

§ 8. The cause of its issue in the Rolls Series of Chronicles, p. xix.

§ 9. The two MSS. of the *Chronicle*, p. xix.

§ 10. The mark for the part of it not englished from Wace, p. xxi.

§ 11. Robert of Brunne's dwelling-places, p. xxi.

§ 12. Apologies for delay, p. xxii.

§ 1. Among the forerunners of Chaucer, a leading place has always been given to Robert of Brunne. The cheeriness of the man, his wish to help his careless mates along, his sketches of the England of his day, his striving to be simple and easy in style, so that he might be understood of common folk,—all these qualities have disposed his readers in his favour, and led them to link him with his great successor, who, at the end of his century, painted those undying pictures of the Canterbury Pilgrims which have delighted, and will delight, all after time.

For individuality and independence, Robert of Brunne cannot compare with the writer miscalled Robert of

Gloucester, who could leave his historical authorities in order to lament the sad state of his English fellows, and denounce the cruelty and oppression of their Norman lords.<sup>1</sup> Like the architect of Lincoln's Inn Hall, Robert of Brunne can assure his hearers and readers that in his production "there is not a single thing for which I haven't a precedent." As compared with the author of that delightful satire, "*The Land of Cokaigne*," Robert of Brunne is dead and dull. Yet in both his chief works there is much to value, and the worth of them in matter of language has been of late triumphantly vindicated by the author of "*Old and Middle English*" (Macmillan, 1878), Mr. T. L. Kington-Oliphant.

§ 2. Of Robert of Brunne's personal history we know nothing besides what he has told us himself; and even this little was somewhat obscured till Mr G. F. Warner, of the British Museum, printed, in 1881, in his Catalogue of the Dulwich MSS., the right reading of a line in the *Handlyng Synne*. The probable Midland MS. of that poem, with initial *qu* for *wh* words, which was quoted by Halliwell in his *Glossary*,<sup>2</sup> I have not been able to trace since it passed through his hands.<sup>3</sup> It is thus in the same case as the incomplete Trinity MS. of St. Margaret, once printed by Hickes,<sup>4</sup> and reprinted,—the

<sup>1</sup> In Brunne's *Handlyng Synne* there is plenty of this, but it is in the way of business, and founded more or less on his original, William of Wadington.

<sup>2</sup> See the extracts in vol. i. under *ayer* 128/2, *ayre* 127/11, *bretenyd* 210/1, *ferd* 353/1, *golsoght* 409/1, *Roylly* 439/2; and in vol. ii. under *lake* 502/1, *mede* 547/1, *negon* 577/2, *nente* 574/1, *okere* 587/1, *olypraunce* 587/2, *pardenelle* 605/2,

*pigace* 622/1, *quine* (*qwyne*, whence) 659/1, *quome* 660/2, *spice* 783/1, &c.

<sup>3</sup> I went up to the place of its former owner, Mr. Bowes, Streatham Castle, near Barnard Castle, Durham, in the hope of seeing it, but it was not in the muniment room there, and Mr. Bowes's secretary knew nothing of it.

<sup>4</sup> *Thesaurus*, vol. i., p. 224.

MS. having meantime vanished,—by Mr. Cockayne (*St. Marharete*), through a publisher in 1862, and through the Early English Text Society in 1866.

Robert of Brunne's first notice of himself is at the beginning of his *Handlyng Synne*, A.D. 1303, an englishing by him, with additions, of the French *Manuel des Pechiez*, by a fellow countryman of his, William of Wadlington, written in Edward the First's reign. Of this English treatise there are two complete vellum MSS. of the end of the fourteenth century, which are nearly the same in the words of the text, and of which I edited, in 1862 (for the Roxburghe Club), the earlier Harleian MS. 1701, in the British Museum, with collations of the slightly later Bodleian MS. 415, alongside of their original, Wadlington's French treatise, from Harl. MS. 273, collated with Harl. 4657. There is also a paper fragment of the English version in the Dulwich College Library.<sup>1</sup> This *Handlyng Synne* Robert of Brunne dedicates—

[Harl. MS. 1701.]

To alle crystyn men vndir  
sunne,  
And to godē men of brunne,  
And speciali alle be name  
pe felaushepe of sympryng-  
hame,  
Robert of brunnē greteþ þow—  
In al godenesse þat may to  
prow—  
Of brymwake yn kesteuene,

[Dulwich MS., 24.]

[Two lines torn off.]

And specyally alle be name.  
pe felaschepe of Symprynghame.  
Robert of Brunne greteþ þow  
In al goodness þt may be prow.  
Of Brunnē Wakē<sup>2</sup> in Kesteuene.

<sup>1</sup> Dulwich College MS. No. xxiv, Paper, ff. 21 quarto. *Manuel de Pecche*. A fragment, ending at the 9th century with the story of Jephtha, being lines 1-2897 of Furnivall's edition. Written in a rough ill-formed hand of the early part of the 15th century by a scribe named Rose (f. 16)—1881. Dulwich Col-

lege MSS. x, edited by G. F. Warner, p. 347-8.

<sup>2</sup> The name of the present wapentake in which Bourne is, is Aveland, in Kesteven. The reading of the Dulwich MS. is evidently right, as it makes the line four measures, whereas the Harleian and Oxford MSS. make it only three

Syxe myle be syde sympryng-  
ham euene!  
Y dwelled yn þe pryorye  
Fyftene 3ere yn cumpanye,  
In þe tyme of gode dane Ione  
Of camelton, þat now ys gone;—  
In hys tyme was y þere ten  
3eres  
And knewe and herd of hys  
maneres;—  
Syþyn with dane Ione of clyn-  
tone,  
Fyue wyntyr wyþ hym gon y  
wone:  
Dane felyp was mayster þat  
tyme  
þat y began þys englyssh ryme;  
þe 3eres of grace fyl þan to be  
A þousynd & þre hundred &  
þre.

Sixe myle fro Sympryngham  
euene.  
I duellyd in þ<sup>t</sup> priory.  
Xv 3ear in good cumpany.  
In þ<sup>e</sup> tyme of goode Dan John.  
Of Cameltone þat now is gon.  
<sup>1</sup> In his tyme was I ther x 3erys.  
And knew and herd of his goode  
manerys.  
Sipþin w<sup>t</sup> dan John <sup>2</sup> Clatton.  
V 3ear w<sup>t</sup> hym gan I wone.  
Dan Philipp was mayster þ<sup>t</sup>  
tyme.  
þ<sup>t</sup> I began þis ynglysche ryme.  
þ<sup>e</sup> 3eer of grace fil þan to be.  
A m<sup>i</sup> ccc. and þre.

(p. 3, l. 57–76, of my edition.)

§ 3. Now Sempringham, in Lincolnshire, is well known as the Mother-House of the Gilbertine Order, founded by Sir Gilbert de Sempringham, about A.D. 1139, for monks and nuns to live in the same building, though separated from each other; and it is the better known from the amusing satire on it, *L'Ordre de bel Eyse*, printed by the late Thomas Wright in his Camden Society volume, "*Political Songs of England*" t. John—Edw. II., 1839, p. 137–148. This central house of the Order being only some six miles from Brunne, or Bourne, Robert Manning's birth-place, we cannot wonder that he joined

with "Brymwake." The mistake probably arose from the original of the latter MSS. writing *Brunne* "Bruñ," and the copier mistaking the mark of contraction for the dash used instead of a dot to *i*, and thus reading *brim*, wrote that down as "brym." Not knowing the

Dulwich MS., Sir F. Madden, and we who followed him, went wrong as to Brunne being in the wake of its own name. See a letter by Professor Hales in *The Academy*, Jan. 1887.

<sup>1</sup> p. 348 of Mr. Warner's book.

<sup>2</sup> MS. John John.

it. The Austin Abbey at Brunne itself, was for males only.<sup>1</sup>

According to Browne Willis's list of "Names of some of the Priors" of Sempringham, "out of the Registers of Lincoln," *Mitred Abbeyes*, ii. 121 (par. 1719), "Philip de Burton, prior of St. Edmund's at Cambridge, [was] admitted <sup>2</sup> on the 2<sup>d</sup> of the Cal. of August 1298." But in the British-Museum Additional Charter, 20,652, John de Camelton appears as Prior of Sempringham in 1298.<sup>3</sup> If he became prior in 1288,—to make Robert of Brunne's needed ten years—then his predecessor, Roger de Bolingbrok, who was "elected and confirm'd the Id. of April 1283,"<sup>4</sup> must have died in 1288 instead of 1298,<sup>5</sup> as Willis says. He must also have been succeeded by John of Clinton<sup>6</sup> (or John Clatton), who must have been prior for the five years 1298–1303;<sup>5</sup> and then Philip de Burton got the post: his name, says Dugdale, VI. ii., 947, "occurs in 1311: he died in 1332." Further search in the Lincoln Registers will doubtless confirm Robert of Brunne's names and dates.

§ 4. From the way in which Robert of Brunne speaks of priests in his *Handlyng Synne*, and the awe he has of

<sup>1</sup> St. Gilbert . . . composed his rule out of those of St. Austin and St. Benedict, the women following the Cistercian regulation of St. Benedict's rule, and the men the rule of St. Austin, to which the founder added some especial statutes of his own. Dugdale, vol. VI., pt. ii., p. iii\*, after p. 945.

<sup>2</sup> Can this mean admitted to some lower office; and not to the priorate till 1303?

<sup>3</sup> Warner, *Dulwich Catalogue*, p. 347.

<sup>4</sup> His predecessor was "John de Hamerton, prior of Malton, confirm'd the 3d of the Id. of May 1276. He died about the latter end of March 1282."—Willis.

<sup>5</sup> Warner, *ibid*.

<sup>6</sup> Not "John de Glyndon [who] was elected and confirm'd the 9th [29th, says Dugdale] of the Cal. of August 1332. He died or resigned An. 1341."—Willis.

them,<sup>1</sup> I assume that he was not in full orders, but more likely a lay brother or a canon of the Gilbertine Order. The post I should pick out for him was that of the *Magister* fit to teach the novices,<sup>2</sup> and no doubt the brethren unable to read their Office. He was evidently a highly educated man for his time, but he lived a hard life, poorly clad, poorly fed,<sup>3</sup> and forbidden to talk.<sup>4</sup> The difficulty of realizing Robert of Brunne's daily life and surroundings is great, from our not knowing how far the monastic rules had, in his day, been relaxed to the freedom or license of Chaucer's time. But if they were adhered to in the main from A.D. 1303 to 1338, as they are printed in *Dugdale*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. xxix-xcvii, the following sketch, drawn up by Mr. W. H. Utley, pictures the life led at Sempringham, as also at Sixille, in Lincolnshire, a

<sup>1</sup> p. 251, of *Lechery*.

Of prestēs kan y sey no þyng; 8088  
(So seyð y at þe bygynnyng.)  
Noper of clerkys neuer a deyl;  
þey wote what ys ylle and weyl.

What Robert of Brunne said "at the bygynnyng" is at p. 2 of my edition, not englishing any French:—

Of þys clerkys wyl y nouȝt seye; 37

To greuē hem y haue grete eye,

For þey wote þat ys to wetyn,

And se hyt wel before hem wrytyn. 40

<sup>2</sup> *Dugdale's Monasticon*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. lx.\* *Fratres de consensu et voluntate prioris et conventu canonicorum suscipiantur; suscepti statim laboribus certis assignentur; carucis videlicet, et hujusmodi laboriosis. Deputetur autem noviciis magister, qui ydoneus sit ad mores instruendos et docendum ordinem.*

<sup>3</sup> *Dugdale's Monasticon*, p. lix.\* *Eo tempore quo inchoata est monachorum de Sempringham religio, venerunt monachi de ordine Cisterciæ in equitatu et apparatu humillimo, et abjecto cultu, contenti*

*Wm. of Wadington.*

De fols prestres rien ne dirrum,  
Car nus la sus premis auum  
Qe des clers rien ne dirrum.

*victu paupere. Cum quibus venerunt laici ad laborem promptissimi, in vestitu paupere, contenti victu pauperum; olera et legumina computabant divitias, et aquæ potus erat satis placidus, grangiis morantibus; et nichil amplius ex ordine. Quod audientes plurimi de communi laboriosorum genere nobis servientes in victu paupere, obtabant Deo vivere apud nos in eorum ordine.*

<sup>4</sup> *Dugdale's Monasticon*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. lv.\* *Qui infringit silentium manifeste jejundet in pane et aqua, vel vapulet in capitulo.*

priory founded by a knight named Gresle or Greslie, for men and women.

About the year 1139, Saint Gilbert established his first priory, the one at Sempringham, as a retreat for a number of poor maidens whom he had imbued with a desire for continual chastity and for the monastic life. At first they were served only by a number of other poor maids, but these desiring also to enter the cloister, lay brothers were appointed to serve them, and priests to minister to them. This gave its whole character to the order in after times ; and the brothers and the canons were little more than attendants, temporal and spiritual, to the nuns and sisters. The two sexes lived together within the same enclosure, but were separated from each other by a high wall, the only communication between the two portions being a small window, furnished with a turn-table, through which food and other necessities were passed.

From seven to thirteen canons were attached to each establishment, with a prior at their head ; the nuns being similarly subject to a prioress. The functions of the canons were to administer the Sacrament and to conduct the services in the chapel. On high feast days, both sexes met in the church of the nuns, but they were separated by a cloth, so that they could not see each other. No organ or music of any kind was allowed, nor any pictures or carvings, "lest they divert the mind from prayer and contemplation." The officiating priests were enjoined to carefully cover the neck, so that it might not be seen bare.

The life of the lay brothers in this order was a somewhat hard one. The rule they were under resembled that of the Cistercians, who endeavoured to restore the severity of the original Benedictine ordinances. They wore an under garment of ram's skin, with a tunic of white material lined with common skins, and over all a grey mantle of coarse cloth reaching nearly down to the heels. A pair of shoes, which were to "last a year and



"be mended on occasion," completed their attire. None were admitted to the priory until they were twenty-four years of age. The canons and the brothers ate in separate refectories, but their manner of living and food were nearly alike. No flesh was allowed, except to the sick, and then only when it was very necessary. Beer was the only beverage; but if the supply ran short, wine might be used, well watered. No man was to drink more than a measure and a half of any intoxicating liquor, under penalty of drinking nothing but water for forty days. All the food was prepared by the nuns and the sisters, and passed through the small window before mentioned, the turn-table being so arranged that it was not possible to see to the other side. Stringent regulations were made with regard to the attendants at this window. A lay brother, "mature, discreet, peaceable, "bland, modest, of good repute amongst all," was appointed to serve at the men's side, whilst on the other, the nuns and sisters were never to serve alone, but always two or three together.

The daily life of the monastery was similar to that of other foundations, save that everything was more or less subservient to the welfare of the nuns. "The brothers are to serve the nuns," says one of the ordinances, "and to see that their house is in all respects better furnished than their own." The chief nun had the care of all moneys, &c.; and when any purchases had to be made, money was given to the canons or brothers through the window, and the accounts were afterwards adjusted there.

One can see with the mind's eye Robert Mannyng serving at the window perhaps as the discreet, peaceable, bland, modest brother of good repute, afore-mentioned, contriving now and then to exchange a word or two with the sisters on the other side. Or he may have been the "trusty brother" appointed to overlook the hired women who occasionally came to help the nuns and sisters to comb the wool, to prevent any communi-

cations between the sacred and the secular workers. Or perhaps he was that other brother who was sent yearly to the farms to see that all went well, and to send the produce of the geese, hens, bees, &c. to the nuns. Had he had a taste for agriculture—we cannot say that his books show any—he might have been one of the farmer-brothers who lived always on, and managed, a farm; but, as he tells us (p. iv. above), he “dwelled yn the pryorye” of Sempringham.

The regulations regarding the conduct of these farms are interesting. No women were ever to be allowed on them without the express permission of the prior; and when they were hired to work, either as milkmaids or as reapers, the brother in charge was to have no direct dealings with them of any kind. If he needed to speak to any of them, he was commanded to have some one with him to listen to the conversation. Trusty fellows were to be hired, who would obey the behests of the brothers, and convey their commands to the petticoated toilers. They were to look after the milkmaids and reapers, and see that they did their work properly. No milkmaid was to milk in or near the farmstead where the brother might perchance see her, but always in the fields; nor must the lay brothers ever work amongst or near the women in the fields. A “mature layman” was to be appointed to superintend the field work, and to see that there was no idling or shirking. At harvest time, the women reapers who were hired were not to live within the enclosure, but in little houses “with doors,” some little distance away. Another trusty lay person was appointed to furnish them with all necessaries, and the brother superintendent had a small window or peephole through which he could see what was going on amongst them, but through which he was forbidden to talk. “Young and pretty women,” the ordinances expressly say, “are to be especially shunned.” The farmer brothers were not allowed to brew any beer on the farms themselves. Sufficient quantities were sent

from the priory at Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide, along with a small amount of cash to defray any necessary expenses.

Whatever vocation Robert Mannyng may have had, however, the ordinary routine of the monastery would be much the same. To rise early, and then go to prayer, breakfast, and labour; prayers, dinner, and labour; prayers, supper, and sleep, each day throughout the year. None were to be taught in the monastery save the novices. The lay brothers were not allowed any books, and learned only the *Pater Noster*, the *Credo*, the *Miserere*, and other necessary prayers. What knowledge any of them had, therefore, must have been obtained before they entered the Order. Nor was anything allowed to be written in the monastery by either brother or canon, without the knowledge and permission of the prior. This is, no doubt, why Robert of Brunne says that Dan Robert of Malton, the prior, caused him to write his Chronicle "for felawes sake, when they wild solacë make."

Occasionally a diversion would come in the shape of the periodical visit of the head prior of the order, or his deputy, or the annual visit of the head prioress, who went round all the houses to see that everything went right and nothing went wrong; "to correct what needs correction, to instruct the ignorant, and to commend the virtuous and the diligent," as the ordinances put it. Sometimes the diversion would be the visit to the fair of two of the canons and a lay brother, who were to buy what was necessary for the monastery and the farms.

Many and minute are the commands of St. Gilbert respecting the behaviour of the brothers towards the sisters.

The priests, when they entered the nuns' house, were to have always a number of persons accompanying them, and the nuns were to have their faces covered in their presence. The canons were only to visit the nuns to

administer the Sacrament or to perform other religious offices. The prior, the cellarer, and the storekeeper might consult with the prioress on matters of business, but in as few words as possible, and always with others standing near. On no account was there to be any gossiping or talebearing. The lay brothers were never to enter the nuns' enclosure, "save in case of fire, thieves, &c." The nuns and sisters washed the linen of the canons, but not that of the lay brothers. The latter had either to do their own washing, or to get the porter to find some poor people who would do it for them. The women in the monasteries were also permitted to sew for the men, but they were on no account to cut out, make, or mend their breeches for them. The head prioress and the nuns who accompanied her on her annual journey round the nuns' houses were to have an escort consisting of a canon and a lay brother, whose duty it was to protect them and to supply them with all necessaries. There was to be no more conversation between them than was absolutely necessary, and the men were enjoined to retire to a respectful distance whenever the women had to descend from the waggon in which they travelled. On these journeys the women were never to lodge in the same houses as the men, if it could possibly be helped. There were many other regulations and devices of a similar nature, all designed to reduce temptation as much as possible. Incontinent monks were to be stripped of their habits and expelled, never to return, or else be imprisoned. Incontinent nuns were not to be sent abroad to corrupt others, but to be shut up in a little hut separate from the rest, there to repent of their sin, and to remain until death should bring release.

Such were the principal rules of life for those who entered the Gilbertine Order, as they appear in the ordinances of its founder. That at Sempringham the discipline was tempered by the weaknesses of human nature, *L'Ordre de bel Eyse* renders probable, and later writers do not always give satisfactory accounts of the

Gilbertine monasteries elsewhere. They were, of course, all broken up at the dissolution, and were evidently not important foundations.

§ 5. Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne* was written in 1303. After thirty-five years' waiting, he produced his *Chronicle*, or "*Story of England*," in 1338. In it the account he gives of himself is (p. 5, l. 135-144):—

" Of Brunne I am, if any me blame,  
 " Robert Mannyng is my name;—  
 " Blissed be he, of God of heuene,  
 " þat me, Robert, with gude wille neuene!—  
 " In þe third Edwardes tyme was I  
 " Wheñ I wrote alle þis story,  
 " In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe:  
 " Danȝ Robert of Maltone<sup>1</sup> þat ȝe know,  
 " Did it wryte for felawes sake,  
 " Wheñ þai wild solacē make."

Further on in his *Chronicle*, Part II., Robert of Brunne tells us that he had been at Cambridge, where was another Gilbertine House, and had there known Robert of Bruce and his brothers, Thomas and Alexander, of whom Alexander was the best artist of his time, and made a carven king. At the feast which Robert of Bruce made at Cambridge, evidently before he was king, Robert of Brunne was present. The Bruces were Yorkshire folk, and Cambridge was their natural University. Robert of Brunne's words are,—

Now of kyng Robyn salle I ȝit speke more,  
 & his broȝer Tomlyn—Thomas, als it wore,<sup>2</sup>—  
 & of sir Alisandere þat me rewes sore,  
 þat both com in skandere for dedes þei did þore.  
 Of arte he had þe maistrie; he mad a coruen-king

<sup>1</sup> Malton was another Gilbertine House in Yorkshire: its priory church is engraved in Dugdale, VI., ii.

<sup>2</sup> The side note is "*De Thoma et Alexandro fratribus Roberti Brus, et capcione eorum.*"

In Cantebrige to þe clergie, or his broþer were kyng.  
 Siþen was neuer non, of arte so þat sped,  
 Ne bifore bot on, þat in Cantebrigge red.  
 Robert mad his fest; for he was þore þat tyme,  
 And he sauh alle þe gest, þat wrote & made þis ryme.  
 (Inner Temple MS., leaf 193, back; and Hearn's  
*Langtoft*, p. 336-7.)

If, as I suppose, Robert of Brunne was not full canon, but a lay brother of his Order, he cannot have entered it till he was 24. If he did so at that age, he would be 39 when he wrote his *Handlyng Synne*, in 1303, and 74 when he produced his *Chronicle*, in 1338. But whatever his age, his helpful cheery spirit was the same at both dates. He wrote his *Handlyng Synne* for unlearned men, to keep them out of mischief at their games and ale:—

For lewdē men y vndyrtoke  
 On englysshe tunge to make þys boke.  
 For many ben of swyche manere,  
 þat talys and rymys wyl bleþly here:  
 Yn gamys & festys, at þe ale,  
 loue men to lestene trotēuale,  
 þat may falle ofte to vylanye,  
 To dedly synne or oþer folye;  
 For swyche men haue y made þys<sup>1</sup> ryme,  
 þat þey<sup>2</sup> may weyl dyspende here tyme.  
 (p. 2-3, l. 43-52, ed. 1862.)

He wrote his *Chronicle* "in simple speech . . . for  
 " love of simple men" (p. 3, l. 73, 77), not in quaint  
 English and strange speech, but in light ryne:—

" And þerfore for þe comonalte  
 " þat blythely wild listen to me,  
 " On lightē lange I it begaṅ,  
 " for luf of þe lewed maṅ,

---

<sup>1</sup> þys, Bodl. MS.; þat, Harl. MS. | <sup>2</sup> þy, Bodl.; Harl. omits "þey."

" to tellë þam þe chaunces bolde,  
 " þat here before was don & tolde.  
 " For þis makyng I wille no mede  
 " bot gude prayere when ȝe it rede;  
 " perfore, [alle] ȝe lordes lewed,  
 " For whom I haf þis Inglis schewed,  
 " Prayes to God he gyf me grace;  
 " I trauayled for ȝour solace."

As an early social reformer, as a lover of the poor, one who wished to give them knowledge, to lead them to higher things; as a language reformer too,—one who did much to make English flexible and easy, to lessen the friction of ideas travelling on the rails of words into brains,—Robert of Brunne is worthy of all honour; while for his pictures of English social life, in the English tongue, he has, I venture to say, no equal before Chaucer.

§ 6. Of his two main works, the *Handlyng Synne* and the *Chronicle*,<sup>1</sup> the former is history, fact; the latter, fiction, though it finds a place in this series of National Memorials. The *Chronicle* englishes the romances of Geoffrey of Monmouth and Wace, with a few additions from Bede, &c. The *Handlyng Synne*, in its comments on the Cardinal Virtues and Vices, the Ten Commandments, Creeds, Sacraments, &c., tells of the sins of English men and women—the faults of their children too—as Wadington saw them in Edward I.'s

<sup>1</sup> "Medytacyuns of þe soper of our lorde Ihesu; and also of hys passyun; and eke of þe peynes of hys swete moder, Mayden Marye, þe whyche made yn Latyn, Bonaventure Cardynall" (ed. J. M. Cowper, Early English Text Society, 1875) may or may not be Robert of Brunne's. (Mr. Cowper and Mr.

Oliphant hold that it is: in Germany I am told that a different opinion prevails.) It follows the *Handlyng Synne* in the Harleian and Bodleian MSS., though without attribution to him. It contains no definite characteristics of him, so far as I can see.

time, and as they were under Robert of Brunne's eyes in 1303. Save the King and Court, all classes of society come under their critic's lash. As I have said before (*H. S.*, p. viii-xi.), the Earl and Knight at their robbery (p. 212, l. 6792, l. 6815-17); the Lord in his grasping (p. 71, l. 2201-2); the Rich Man in his oaths (p. 23, l. 669), his adultery (p. 95, l. 2931), his gluttony (p. 207, l. 225-6), his sloth (p. 135), and his indulgence to his children in their insolent ways (p. 155, l. 4910-17); the Landowner in his covetousness (p. 187, p. 293); the Priest with his "mare" or concubine (p. 248, l. 7981); the Judge and Assizer in their harshness (p. 44, p. 49, p. 171-2); the Lawyer with his wicked counsels (p. 170, l. 5413); the Merchant in his usury (p. 174, l. 5546); the Trader at his tricks (p. 187); the Scold in her household (p. 93, l. 2936, &c.); the Flunkey of the time at his riotous supper (p. 227); the Poor in their sufferings (p. 76, 169, 172, 213); the Bearded Bucks (p. 102, l. 3212); the Beauties with their saffron wimples (p. 110) and whitened faces (p. 102, l. 3221), all pass under Robert of Brunne's review; and none without those individualising touches which show that he had studied from the life. He must have seen the rich man's sluggardry, and heard his yawns on Sunday mornings, when he was late for mass, or shirked it (p. 135, &c.), as well as been witness of the shrew's airs and "veyes moy sy" (p. 94, l. 2941), ere he could have put his sketches on parchment or paper. And one can fancy his monkish disgust at hearing men in church chattering, telling tales, asking where they could get the best ale (p. 143, l. 4546-7), and thinking what much better fun it would be at the ale-house, or larking with girls (l. 4538-40), as well as share his indignation at seeing poor men kept shivering all day in the cold, crying at rich men's gates for alms (p. 215, l. 6899-6900), or getting them only with beating and abuse (p. 210, l. 6728). For Robert of Brunne's other qualities, some



humour we may allow him for his bear's bow,<sup>1</sup> his Zenon hanging by the *hand*, not by the *neck*, I understand (p. 69, l. 2122), and his cut at wives in general, "they do not wrong, except all day."<sup>2</sup> Still, monkish as he is, he can praise a good wife, p. 62, l. 1904-13 :—

Ne no þyng ys to man so dere,  
As wommanys loue yn good manere.  
A gode womman ys mannys blys,  
þere here loue ryzt and stedfast ys ;  
þere ys no solas vndyr heuene,  
Of al[lē] þat a man may neuene,  
þat shulde a man so mochē glew,  
As a gode womman þat loueþ trew ;  
Ne derer ys none yn goddys hurde  
þan a chaste womman *with* louely wrde.

Robert of Brunne is too an appreciator of good company (p. 127, l. 4028), and a lover of music (p. 150-1), though a doubter of singers' morals, — "ful selde ys synger" "gode yn thew" (p. 97, l. 3062),—a hater of false pride,<sup>3</sup> cautious too, not believing in men with "lagheyng" "wurdys," "flourshede wurdys, and oþerwhyle louely" (p. 97, l. 3066-9), liking plain speech, and not the "tyfede wurdys þat slykede are" (p. 365, l. 11,765), knowing the difference between a gentleman in deed and a lord in name,<sup>4</sup> and aware that kings are fools, as

<sup>1</sup> þe bere to hym loutede, and  
made feyre chere,  
Feyre chere as a bere myghte  
make. p. 128, l. 4043-4.  
<sup>2</sup> But how as euer men preche or  
spelle,  
Of prestēs wyues men here euer  
telle ;  
Of ouþer wyues y wyl noghte  
say,  
þey do not wrong—but al [þe]  
day. p. 247, l. 7936-39.

<sup>3</sup> þat pourē prydē, God hyt loþes,  
þat make[s] hem proude of ouþer  
mennys cloþys.

p. 110, l. 3462-3.

<sup>4</sup> Speaking of a Norfolk lord  
who takes in good part a churl's  
reproof, Robert says :—

þyr are bnt fewē lordēs now  
þat turne a wrde so wel to prow ;  
But who so seyb hem any akylle,  
Mysseye azen fouly þey wylle.  
Lordynges-þyr are ynow of þo ;  
Of gentyl men, þyr are but fo.  
(*glost fewe*). p. 279, l. 8713-18.

well as other folk (below, p. 1, l. 16, 17). Also a man that will not take shamming excuses (p. 77, l. 2385-8), but will call a spade a spade:—

He ys no morë crystyn man  
 pan who so kallyþ a blak oxe 'swan.'  
 (p. 137, l. 4321-2.)

Altogether a direct, straightforward, practical man, with many right sympathies, working in a sensible way for the improvement of his fellow countrymen, teaching them morals and history, their relation and duties to God and man. But he is not a "muscular Christian," to judge from his condemnation of "wrastlynges" (though only on Holy Days and in Holy Places, p. 83, l. 994-5; p. 117, l. 3690; p. 278, l. 8989), squires' games (p. 146, l. 4628), and tournaments, where, for a woman's fancy, a man may be so

bete þere for here loue,  
 þat he ne may sytte his hors aboue,  
 þat peraventure yn alle hys lyue  
 Shal he neuer after þryue.  
 (p. 146, l. 4614-17.)

Lechery is the source of jousting and tourneys, he says. (l. 4632.)

His lecturing of and against women—specially those who tempt priests—is very frequent. Perhaps the three points he presses most, are the duty of almsgiving and charity (p. 231-3); the shame and sin of earls and rich men beating the poor (p. 212-13), carrying off their wives and daughters (p. 231, l. 7420-7), robbing and otherwise oppressing them (p. 71-2, p. 76, p. 187, p. 213, l. 6815); and the evil of men's leaving to executors the duty of giving gifts to Holy Church for the good of their souls (p. 195-203, &c.): this, a point which all religious writers felt in their inmost hearts. The three peculiarities which he notes as English, in contrast with foreign customs, are, the Saturday half-holiday—keeping

the afternoon holy to the Virgin (p. 28, l. 845, &c.); Englishmen's impatience of reproof (p. 132, l. 4160-9); and their sin of envy, on which he cites a proverb:—

And englys men namely (= especially)  
 Are, þurghe kynde, of hertē hy.  
 A forbysyn ys toldē pys,  
 Seyd on frenshe men and on englys:  
 "That frenche men synne yn lecherye,  
 "And englys men yn enuye."

(p. 131, l. 4150-5.)

§ 7. As to his *Chronicle*, which Robert of Brunne wrote, not for the learned, but for the lewēd, that they might have

"solace and gamen,  
 "In felawscip when þai sitt samen."

(p. 1, l. 9, 10.)

and that they might know, of their kings, "which were "fools and which were wise" (l. 16, 17), he starts with Noah and the Deluge (p. 7), then traces the genealogy of Loelin, king of Britain, to Noah, through Æneas (p. 9-15), tells the story of the Trojan war (under the guidance of Dares Phrygius) to p. 25; and then, on p. 26, begins to english Wace on the settlement of Æneas in Italy (p. 15-28), the birth and Grecian wars of Brutus (to p. 46), his landing in France, and battles there (to p. 62), and then his arrival at Dartmouth, p. 62. After this, Wace is followed, with a bit from Bede here and there (p. 555, 562, 579), from Langtoft and Geoffrey of Monmouth (p. 571-574, 577), till this volume, Part I. of the *Chronicle*, ends, and Robert of Brunne describes what he will tell us in his Second Part, which he will english from Peres of Langtoft, and which Hearne printed in two volumes 8vo. in 1725, reprinted 1800. Langtoft's *French Chronicle* appeared in this Rolls Series in two vols., i. 1866, ii. 1868, edited by the late Thomas Wright.

§ 8. The present volume is, then, not a contribution to English history, but to the history of English. It was (with the approval of the then Master of the Rolls) authorised by my friend, the late Sir Thomas Hardy, because it was in name a "Chronicle;" because, the Second Part being so widely known, the First was of course often asked for and wanted; and because Sir Thomas thought it only fair that, amongst so much worthless repetition in Latin as the Rolls Series must of necessity contain, there might well be one rendering of our early historic legends in useful English. He wished, and most legitimately say I, to give us students of the history of English words and syntax a lift by the way. For the like reason he also consented to the insertion in this book of the List of Manning's Rymes, to contrast with our Chaucer Ryme Index, and show that the latter poet's *-ye* rule<sup>1</sup> was not observed by the earlier one.

Were this the place then, a disquisition on the language and dialect of Robert of Brunne should follow here. But such an essay would be inadmissible; and, moreover, Mr. Kington Oliphant<sup>2</sup> has dealt so sympathetically and ably with our debt to Robert Manning in this regard, that I, at least, should have little to add to his main view here, much as there is undoubtedly yet to be done elsewhere.

§ 9. Robert of Brunne's Chronicle exists in two manuscripts, one at the Lambeth Library, of the old ribbed paper of about the middle of the fourteenth century, which has lost its first leaf, and the other on vellum, before 1400 A.D., in the Inner Temple Library, Petyt

<sup>1</sup> Chaucer made the ending *-ye* two syllables, and didn't ryme it with the adverbial *-ly*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> *Old and Middle English*, 1878, Chapter VI. The Rise of the New

English. Robert of Brunne, "The Patriarch of the New English," (p. 588); (p. 427-474; also p. 575-80, and p. 585-8).

MSS. No. 511, vol. 7. These MSS. differ in dialect. The Petyt MS. is more consistently Northern in forms, I believe, than the Lambeth MS., and if I had judged by the consonance of the forms (the participial-*and*, for instance), inside the lines with those at the ends of them, or their rymes, I might possibly have been bound to make the Petyt MS. the basis of my text.<sup>1</sup> But knowing that the Midland was a mixed dialect, not consistently Northern, and that the MSS. of the *Handlyng Synne* showed this mixture, I concluded that the Lambeth MS., which also had a mixture of forms, was more likely to represent Robert of Brunne's actual writing than the more consistently Northern Petyt MS. This was the judgment of my friend, Dr. Richard Morris, then our highest authority on the subject, and I willingly followed it. I still believe it right. The question then rose whether I should be justified in repeating, hundreds of times, every Petyt *scho*, *sall*, *suld*, &c., for every Lambeth *scheo*, *schal*, *schalt*, *schul*, *scholden*, *schold*, &c., and so swelling the various readings inordinately. I concluded that I should not be so justified, and I have accordingly given some samples of these changes, and then dropped the collation of them. If I live long enough, I shall no doubt print the whole of the Petyt MS. in the Early English Text Society's Extra Series, and then the dialect question between the two MSS. can be settled.

The contractions of the MS. have been expanded, and the expansions printed in italics in the text.

The occasional pronunciations conjecturally suggested between brackets after some of the ryme-endings (p. 589, 593, &c.), the reader should disregard. They are not trustworthy.

---

<sup>1</sup> But the Northern forms often spoil the rhythm: see N. *suld*, p. 16, l. 468; for M. *scholden*, &c. The characteristic differences of dialect

between Lincolnshire and Yorkshire in the early part of the 14th century are not easily to be found out.

§ 10. As there is but little in Robert of Brunne's English which is not a translation of Wace's French Chronicle, I have put a dot (·) before every line which is not due to Wace, or at least, Wace as shown by the Paris MS. du Roi, No. 27, printed by Le Roux de Lincy, Rouen, 1836. Readers can therefore tell by a glance at any page, what in it is Manning's own, or got from a source other than Wace.

§ 11. Some ten years or more ago, when I hoped that this Introduction would have been at once written, I went to Robert of Brunne's dwelling places,—Bourne, Sempringham, and Six Hills (as Sixille is now called), to see the country where he was born and lived.

Bourne I found a fair-sized market town,<sup>1</sup> of one long street (1½ miles), with a fine Norman Church, (3,060 inhabitants in 1861,) and for its railway station, a genuine Elizabethan house, well-treed; a large round spring or pond, Bournewell, close at hand, with the Bourne running from it, and with records of excavations in which the remains of the old castle which once dominated the town were found. The country round is very flat; the edge of the old fen district lies a little to the east, and this made me at one time think that the "Brymwake" of the *Handlyng Synne* MSS. might possibly be the brim or edge-wake. The town is 97 miles N. by W. of London, and 35 miles S.S.E. of Boston.

To Sempringham, or the fields and 93 scattered houses (in 1841) so called, the surgeon of Folkingham, three miles off, was kind enough to drive me.<sup>2</sup> The church, engraved in Dugdale, vol. VI., part ii., stands on a knoll whose grass evidently covers the ruins of former buildings. It has one fine Norman doorway which Robert of Brunne may well have seen, though the rest of the building

<sup>1</sup> The chief trade of the place is leather and wool. It has several large tanyards.

<sup>2</sup> The hamlet is 106 miles by coach road from London.—Clarke, *Brit. Gas.*

must be of later date. On the level ground below are the ruins of the Hall, which is said to have been mainly built out of the stones of Sempringham Priory; and as we walked along the grass-covered walls, we started, on the yard-high top of one of them, a hare, which had there made its form.

Priory gone; the Hall built out of it too; but Robert of Brunne, in his copyists' books of paper and skin, is left to tell us what the builders and stones have failed to tell. A walk across the fields to a farmhouse to ask the road, produced in answer one of Robert's words, "Yes, that's the *gainest* way." And next day I went to Six Hills, as Sixille is now called.

A little village or hamlet is Six Hills, 5 miles from Market-Rasen station, and 150 by railroad from London. It had 25 houses and 205 inhabitants in 1841 (Clarke). It is cottaged and gardened up to the top of the brow of land, partly circling it. A dull flat road leads to it, lightened only on the day I was there by a solitary swan on a pond in some landowner's grounds. On walking up the hamlet hill, a chance look to the right showed Lincoln Cathedral standing grandly on the horizon, on its hill: a view to which Robert of Brunne's eyes surely often turned. Below was an old rubble shed, partly pulled down, which was said to have been part of the grange of the ex-Priory in the hamlet: no other remains were to be heard of.

§ 12. Twice before, in the many years since this text was begun, have I made collections of notes, &c. for preparing a fit Introduction to this Chronicle. The first time, all my notes, disappeared while workmen were in the house during a long country holiday that I took. The second time, last year, I must have left in some shōp, railway, or omnibus, the bound and noted volume of the text, with a Paper on the dialect and phonetics of the Lambeth MS. which Dr. Henry Sweet had most kindly prepared for me. Now, under great pressure

of other work, the present Introduction has been written, on the urgent remonstrance of the Deputy Keeper of the Records. I can only ask mercy for its shortcomings, and for the long delay which has taken place in the production of the book ; pleading also that this delay has not been due to mere laziness, though I acknowledge that it was wrong in me to do other work and leave this volume undone. I thank all the Rolls authorities, many, alas, now no longer with us,<sup>1</sup> for their great forbearance ; and also Mr. Sidney J. Hertridge, now the editor of Cassell's *Encyclopædic Dictionary*, for his help in the Indexes and Glossary.

---

<sup>1</sup> Two Masters of the Rolls, as well as Sir T. Duffus Hardy, kindly took great interest in my work for the Early English Text, Chaucer, and New Shakspeare Societies.

16 May, 1887.





# The Story of Englande

als Robert Manning wortten it fand,  
& on Englisch has it schewed.

<sup>1</sup> Incipit *Prologus* de *Historia Britannie transumpta*  
per *Robertum* in *materna lingua*.

|           |                                    |    |                 |
|-----------|------------------------------------|----|-----------------|
| . L       | ordynges <i>that</i> be now here,  |    | Listen to the   |
| . if      | 3e wille listene & lere            |    | story of Eng-   |
| . Aft     | <i>the</i> story of Englande       |    | land, as Robert |
| . als     | Robert Mannyng wryten it fand,     | 4  | Mannyng         |
| . & on    | Inglysch has it schewed,           |    | found it, and   |
| . not for | þe lerid bot for þe lewed,         |    | Englished it    |
| . ffor    | þo þat in þis land[e] wone         |    |                 |
| . þat     | þe Latyn no Frankys cone,          | 8  | for the solace  |
| . ffor    | to haf solace & gameñ              |    | of those who    |
| . In      | felawschip when þai sitt samen.    |    | know not Latin  |
| . And     | it is wisdom for to wyttē          |    | or French,      |
| . þe      | state of þe land, & haf it wryten, | 12 |                 |
| . what    | manere of folk first it wan,       |    | when they sit   |
| . & of    | what kynde it first began ;        |    | togeth er.      |
| . And     | gude it is for many thynges        |    | And it is wise  |
| . for     | to here þe dedis of kynges,        | 16 | to know         |
| . whilk   | were foles, & whilk were wyse,     |    | who first won   |
| . & whilk | of þam couthe most quantyse,       |    | England,        |
| . and     | whilk did wrong, & whilk ryght,    |    |                 |
| . & whilk | maynten[e]d pes & fyght.           | 20 | and to hear     |
|           |                                    |    | which kings     |
|           |                                    |    | were fools and  |
|           |                                    |    | which were not, |
|           |                                    |    | which did       |
|           |                                    |    | wrong, and      |
|           |                                    |    | which did       |
|           |                                    |    | right.          |

<sup>1</sup> The first 198 lines are from the Inner Temple MS., Petyt MSS. No. 511, vol. 7. The dots on the left of certain lines show that the

lines dotted are not translated from Wace, as he is shown by the Paris MS. du Roi, No. 27, printed by Le Roux de Lincy, Rouen, 1836.

|                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| All this I'll<br>tell you:                                                                                                     | . Of þare dedes saff be my sawe;<br>. & what tyme, & of what lawe<br>. I saff yow schewe fro gre to gre                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |    |
| what<br>happened<br>from Noah to<br>Æneas;                                                                                     | . sen þe tyme of sir Noe,<br>. ffro Noe vnto Eneas,<br>. & what betwix þam was;<br>. And fro Eneas tiff Brutus tyme,                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 24 |
| from him to<br>Brutus; and<br>then to Cad-<br>wallader, the<br>last of the<br>Briton kings.                                    | . . . . .<br>. ffro Brutus tiff Cadwaladres,<br>. þe last Bryton þat þis lande lees.<br>. All þat kynde & all þe frute<br>. þat come of Brutus, þat is þe Brute;<br>. And þe ryght Brute is told nomore<br>. þan þe Brytons tyme wore.<br>. After þe Bretons þe Inglis camen,<br>. þe lordschip of þis lande þai namen, | 28 |
| After them<br>came the<br>English,                                                                                             | . Southe & northe, west & est,<br>. þat calle meñ now þe Inglis gest.<br>. when þai first [came] amang þe Bretons,<br>. þat now ere Inglis, þan were Saxons;                                                                                                                                                            | 32 |
| before whom<br>were Saxons.<br>The English<br>landed at<br>Sandwich, in<br>Vortigern's<br>days,<br>under Hengist<br>and Horsa, | . Saxons Inglis hight alle oliche;<br>. þai aryued vp at Sandwyche<br>. In þe kynges tyme Vortogerne,<br>. þat þe lande walde þam not werne.<br>. þat were Maysters of alle þe toþire,<br>. Hengist he hight, & Hors his broþire;<br>. þes were hede, als we fynde,<br>. where-of is comen oure Inglis kynde.           | 40 |
| and were<br>heathens 150<br>years among<br>the Britons,<br>till St. Augus-<br>tine converted<br>them.                          | . A hundrethe & fifty zere þai com<br>. or þai receyued cristendom;<br>. So lang woned þai þis lande in,<br>. or þai herde out of Saynt Austyn,<br>. Amang þe Bretons with mykelle wo,<br>. In slaundire & threte, & in thro.                                                                                           | 44 |
| Of the English,<br>Piers of Lang-<br>toft tells.<br>Master Wace<br>frenchized all                                              | . þes Inglis dedes 3e may here,<br>. as Pers telles alle þe manere.<br>. One Mayster Wace þe ffrankes telles,                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 52 |
|                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 56 |

[leaf 1, col. 2.]

|                                         |                 |                                 |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| . þe Brute, all þat þe Latyn spellas,   |                 | the Latin <i>Brute</i>          |
| . ffro Eneas tiff Cadwaladre ;          |                 | till Cadwal-                    |
| . þis Mayster Wace þer leues he.        | 60              | ader's time ;                   |
| . And ryght as Mayster Wace says,       |                 | & I follow                      |
| . I telle myn Inglis þe same ways ;     |                 | Wace,                           |
| . ffor Mayster Wace þe Latyn alle rymes |                 | because Piers                   |
| . þat Pers ouerhippis many tymes.       | 64              | often hops                      |
| . Mayster Wace þe Brute alle redes,     |                 | over much of                    |
| . & Pers tellis alle þe Inglis dedes ;  |                 | the Latin.                      |
| . þer Mayster Wace of þe Brute left,    |                 | But where                       |
| . ryght begynnes Pers [þer] eft,        | 68              | Wace stops,                     |
| . And tellis forth þe Inglis story,     |                 | Piers begins,                   |
| . & as he says, þan say I.              |                 | and tells the                   |
| . Als þai haf wryteñ & sayd,            |                 | English story,                  |
| . haf I alle in myn Inglis layd,        | 72              | & I follow him.                 |
| . In symple speche as I couthe,         |                 | I've written in                 |
| . þat is lightest in mannes mouthe.     |                 | as simple Eng-                  |
| . I mad noght for no disours,           |                 | lish as I could,                |
| . ne for no seggers, no harpours,       | 76              |                                 |
| . Bot for þe luf of symple meñ          |                 | for love of                     |
| . þat strange Inglis can not keñ ;      |                 | simple men                      |
| . ffor many it ere þat strange Inglis   |                 | who can't make                  |
| . In ryme wate neuer what it is ;       | 80              | out hard Eng-                   |
| . And bot þai wist what it mente,       |                 | lish.                           |
| . ellis me thoght it were alle schente. |                 | If they couldn't                |
| . I made it not forto be prayssed,      | [leaf 1, back.] | make out me,                    |
| . bot at þe lewed meñ were aysed.       | 84              | my writing                      |
| . If it were made in ryme couwee,       |                 | would be no                     |
| . or in strangere or enterlace,         |                 | good.                           |
| . þat rede Inglis it ere inowe,         |                 | I don't write                   |
| . þat couthe not haf copped a kowe,     | 88              | for praise, but                 |
| . þat outhere in couwee or in baston    |                 | to benefit the                  |
| . som suld haf ben fordon,              |                 | unlearned.                      |
| . so þat fele men þat it herde          |                 | And if I'd                      |
| . suld not witte howe þat it ferde :    | 92              | bothered them                   |
| . I see in song, in sedgeyng tale       |                 | with                            |
| . of Erceldoun & of Kendale,            |                 | <i>couvé</i> or <i>baston</i> , |
|                                         |                 | some must have                  |
|                                         |                 | come to grief.                  |
|                                         |                 | In tales of                     |
|                                         |                 | Erceldoun                       |
|                                         |                 | & Kendale,                      |

I see that none  
repeat them as  
they were  
written;  
and specially  
the best story,  
*Sir Tristrem*,

is always spoilt,

by the repeaters  
wanting to  
show off their  
own cleverness.

Besides, I'm  
too dull to  
write strange  
words;

and men be-  
sought me to  
write my story  
in easy ones.

So I have  
written it for  
the com-  
monalty,  
for love of the  
unlearned, to  
tell them the  
chances of old;  
and I ask no  
reward but the  
prayers of my  
hearers,

. Non þam says as þai þam wroght,  
. & in þer sayng it semes noght; 96  
. þat may þou here in sir Tristrem;  
. ouer gestes it has þe steem,  
. Ouer alle *that* is or was,  
. if meñ it sayd as made Thomas; 100  
. But I here it no mañ so say,  
. þat of som copple som is away;  
. So þare fayre sayng here beforñ  
. is þare trauayle nere forlorñ; 104  
. þai sayd it for pride & nobleye,  
. þat non were suylyk as þei;  
. And aft þat þai wild ouerwhere,  
. aft þat ilk wilf now forfare. 108  
. þai sayd in so quante Inglis  
. þat many one wate not what it is.  
. þerfore [I] henyed<sup>1</sup> wele þe more [<sup>1</sup> MS. *henþed*]  
. In strange ryme to trauayle sore; 112  
. And my witte was oure thynne  
. So strange speche to trauayle in;  
. And forsoth I couth[e] noght  
. so strange Inglis as þai wroght; 116  
. And meñ besoght me many a tyme  
. to turne it bot in light[e] ryme;  
. þai sayd, if I in strange it turne,  
. to here it manyon suld skurne; 120  
. ffor it ere names full selcouthe  
. þat ere not vsed now in mouthe;  
. And þerfore for þe comonalte  
. þat blythely wild listen to me, 124  
. On light[e] lange I it begañ, [<sup>leaf 2, back, col. 2.</sup>]  
. for luf of þe lewed mañ,  
. to telle þam þe chaunces bolde  
. þat here before was don & tolde. 128  
. ffor þis making I wilf no mede  
. bot gude prayere when 3e it rede;  
. þerfore, [alle] 3e lordes lewed,

|                                          |     |                  |
|------------------------------------------|-----|------------------|
| .ffor wham I haf þis Inglis schewed,     | 132 |                  |
| .Prayes to God he gyf me <i>grace</i> ,— |     |                  |
| .I trauayled for <i>your</i> solace;—    |     | for whose        |
| .Of Brunne I am, if any me blame,        |     | solace I have    |
| .Robert Mannyng is my name;              | 136 | worked.          |
| .Blissed be he of God of heuene          |     | Of Brunne        |
| .þat me, Robert, with gude wille neuene; |     | I am,            |
| .In þe third Edwardes tyme was I         |     | Robert           |
| .when I wrote alle þis story,            | 140 | Mannyng's        |
| .In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe;   |     | my name;         |
| .Danz Robert of Maltoñ þat ȝe know,      |     | and I wrote this |
| .did it wryte for felawes sake,          |     | story in King    |
| .when þai wild solace make.              | 144 | Edward III.'s    |
|                                          |     | time             |
|                                          |     | for my fellows'  |
|                                          |     | delight.         |

Dares Frigius, qui historiam Troianorum scripsit, ait  
se militasse vsque dum Troia capta est, hosque  
duces se vidisse cum indutie essent & partim  
prelio interfuisse.

|                                         |     |                 |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|-----------------|
| .Dares the Freson of Troie first wrote, |     | Dares the       |
| . & putt it in buke þat we now wote;    |     | Freson first    |
| .he was a clerk and a gude knyght,      |     | wrote of the    |
| .when Troie was lorn he sawe þat fight; | 148 | loss of Troy.   |
| .Alle þe barons wele he knewe,          |     |                 |
| .he tellis þer stature & þer hewe,      |     | He tells the    |
| .long or schorte, whyte or blak,        |     | stature and hue |
| .alle he telles, gude or lak.           | 152 | of all the      |
| .Alle þer lymmes, how þai besemed,      |     | barons who      |
| .In his buke has Dares demed,           |     | fought there,   |
| .Both of Troie & of Grece,              |     |                 |
| .whatkyns schappe was ilka pece;        | 156 | both Trojans    |
| .Of manyon he reknes & sayes,           |     | & Greeks.       |
| .both of Troiens & of Gregeis,          |     |                 |
| .þat it were oure long to telle,        |     |                 |
| .& many wald not þer-in duelle          | 160 |                 |
| .þare names alle forto here,            |     |                 |
| .bot þe Latyn is fayre to lere.         |     |                 |

[leaf 2.] **Ego Galfridus Arthurus Monemutensis, qui hanc historiam Britonum de eorum lingua in nostram transferre curavi, dimitto fortunas successoribus meis scribendas.**

Geoffrey of Monmouth turned a book out of Breton speech into Latin,

. Geoffrey Arthure of Minumue,  
 . fro Breton speche he did remue, 164  
 . & made it alle in Latyn

at the request of Erle Roberde of Gloucestre.

. þat clerkes haf now knawying in.  
 . In Gloucestre was fonden a buke  
 . þat þe Inglis couthe not rede no luke, 168  
 . On þat langage þai knew no herde ;

. bot an erle þat hyght Roberde,  
 . he prayed þat ilk clerk Geoffrey  
 . to turne it fro þat speche away 172  
 . In-to Latyn, as it mente,

Then came Mayster Wace, in 1055, and turned the Latin into French rhyme, up to Cadwaladre's time.

. þat þe Inglis mot know þe entente ;  
 . ffor Geoffrey knew þe langage wele,  
 . In Latyn he broght it ilka dele. 176

. Siþen com a clerk, Mayster Wace,  
 . to make romance had he grace,  
 . & turned it ro Latyne,  
 . & rymed it in Frankis fyne 180

. vnto þe Cadwaladres ;  
 . no forer, þer makes he ses.  
 . Als Geoffrey in Latyn sayd,  
 . so Mayster Wace in Frankis layd ; 184

. þe date of Criste was þan þis lyue,  
 . A thousand zere fifty & fyue.  
 . Than com out of Brydlyngton  
 . Pers of Langtoft, a chanon ; 188

Afterwards Pers of Langtoft put the same story into different verse, from Eneas, through the Brut, to the English deeds ; fairer language was never read.

. Als Mayster Wace þe same he says,  
 . bot he rymed it oþer ways ;  
 . he begynnes at Eneas,  
 . of alle þe Brute he tellis þe pas, 192  
 . & s[i]þen<sup>1</sup> alle þe Inglis dedis ; [1 or syen]  
 . feyrere langage non ne redis.

- . After þe Inglis kynges he says þer pris  
 . þat all in metir fulle wele lys; 196  
 . And I, Robert, fulle fayn wald bringe  
 . In Inglis tonge þer faire saiynge.  
 . <sup>1</sup>God gyve me grace wel to spede, [leaf 1, Lamb, MS.] into English  
 . þys rym on Englishe for to rede. 200 words.

Genealogia primi regis Troge & Enee a Noe et Saphet  
 vsque ad Loquerinum<sup>2</sup> deducta.

- . Now of þe story wyl we <sup>3</sup>gynne:  
 . Whan God took wreche of Kaymes<sup>4</sup> synne,  
 . þe erthe was waryed in his werk—  
 . Als y<sup>5</sup> þe bible seys þe Clerk/,— 204  
 . & perfore God sente a flood  
 . þat<sup>6</sup> fordide al flesche & blood,<sup>7</sup>  
 . Man & best þat beren lyues,  
 . Bot foure men & foure wyues. 208  
 . So mykel was þenne<sup>8</sup> mannes trespas,  
 . þat alle þat euer of Adam was  
 . Wyþynne a þousand þer & mo,  
 . In þat flod were lorn alle þo. 212  
 . Bot Noe & his þre sones  
 . And þeir wyues—þe bible hit mones—  
 . Wer none worthi in Godes sight,  
 . Ne non bot þese þat liueden<sup>9</sup> ryght. 216
- Through Cain's  
sin the earth  
was cursed,  
  
and God sent a  
flood which  
destroyed  
all flesh,  
  
save four  
men and four  
women,  
  
Noe and his  
three sons,

<sup>1</sup> The Lambeth MS. begins here, and the text is printed from it. A modern hand has put the following title to the MS.:—"A Chronicle of England, in olde Englishe meeter, from Brute to King Richard y<sup>c</sup> .I., made by Piers of Langtofte, chanonne of Bridlington, and putte into Englishe ryme by Robert de Brunne iuxta Depinge .v. infr. f. lxxij." The various readings are from the Petyt MS.

<sup>2</sup> loerinum.

<sup>3</sup> A later hand has struck out *wyl* (wille P.) and prefixed *be* to *gynne*.

<sup>4</sup> wreke of Caym.

<sup>5</sup> MS. scratched over with a pen. "as in," P.

<sup>6</sup> g.

<sup>7</sup> The later hand puts *both* for *al*, and *all* before *blood*; as also *both* before *Man* in the next line, and *g* left before *Bot* in the line after.

<sup>8</sup> þan.

<sup>9</sup> lyued.



|                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Shem, Ham,<br>and Japhet,<br>and their wives.             | . þyse were þo <sup>1</sup> þat skaped þe dep,<br>. Noe, Seem, Cam, & Sapheþ, <sup>2</sup><br>. And þer wyues þat <sup>3</sup> wiþ þem <sup>4</sup> nam;<br>. þo þat now ar, of þys folk þey <sup>5</sup> cam.       | 220 |
| These sons<br>divided the<br>world into<br>three parts,   | . þyse <sup>6</sup> Noe sonas, 3e han <sup>7</sup> wel herd<br>. How þey departed al þys werd: <sup>8</sup><br>. þey departed [it] <sup>9</sup> in þre parties,<br>. And names gaf at þeir deuis,                    | 224 |
| Asia, Africa,<br>and Europe.                              | . Assye, Aufryk, & Europe;<br>. þys ar <sup>10</sup> þe parties, wel y hope.                                                                                                                                         |     |
| Shem took<br>Asia;<br>Ham, Africa;<br>Japheth,<br>Europe. | . Sem was þe eldest: <sup>11</sup> he ches Assye;<br>. Cam took Aufryk til <sup>12</sup> his partie;<br>. Saphet, <sup>13</sup> Europè <sup>14</sup> he took;<br>. & þus þey parted, <sup>15</sup> als seyþ þe book. | 228 |

## Tot terre sunt in vniuerso mundo.

|                           |                                                                                    |     |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Asia had 15<br>divisions. | . How many landes in ilk of þyse,<br>. Ilk a partie haþ þeyr <sup>16</sup> assise: | 232 |
|                           | . In Assye fiftene landes are,<br>. Bot þer names we seye no <sup>17</sup> mare:   |     |
|                           | . India, Assery, and Partye,<br>. Sire, Perce, Mede, Mesapotanie,                  | 236 |
|                           | . Capadoce, Palestine, & Armenye,<br>. Cylyce, Cades, & Arrabye,                   |     |
|                           | . Al Egipte, & Lybye;<br>. þyse ar <sup>18</sup> þe landes in Assye.               | 240 |

<sup>1</sup> þes were þai.<sup>2</sup> Iapheth.<sup>3</sup> þai.<sup>4</sup> þam.<sup>5</sup> ere of þes aught.<sup>6</sup> This.<sup>7</sup> haf.<sup>8</sup> þe werlde.<sup>9</sup> parted it.<sup>10</sup> þes ere.<sup>11</sup> was eldest.<sup>12</sup> to.<sup>13</sup> Iapheth.<sup>14</sup> The accent is in the MS.<sup>15</sup> & þis departid.<sup>16</sup> has þer.<sup>17</sup> na.<sup>18</sup> ere.

|                                                        |                   |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| . ¶ Tyl Aufryk twelf landes longe, <sup>1</sup>        |                   | Africa had 12.  |
| . þat Cam til his partie gan fonge : <sup>2</sup>      |                   |                 |
| . Cireneus, Pentapolys, & Lyddya,                      |                   |                 |
| . Ethiopie, Tripolitan, & Pysancia, <sup>3</sup>       | 244               |                 |
| . Gentulye, <sup>4</sup> Natabrie, Numidye,            |                   |                 |
| . Maurytan & Tynguytanie ;                             |                   |                 |
| . Sirtes þe more & þe lasse,                           |                   |                 |
| . ffor þe twelfte teld hit es.                         | 248               |                 |
| . ¶ fiftene <sup>5</sup> landes ar in Europe,          | [leaf 1, col. 2.] | and Europe      |
| . Saphethes partie, þer dwelleþ <sup>6</sup> þe Pope : |                   | (where the      |
| . Romanie, <sup>7</sup> Calabre, Poille, & Spayne,     |                   | pope lives) 15. |
| . Massedoigne & Alemaygne,                             | 252               |                 |
| . Tracye, Dalmank, & Pamonie <sup>8</sup>              |                   |                 |
| . Lange-dok, ffraunce, <sup>9</sup> Acquitonie,        |                   |                 |
| . Brytaine, Irland,—þyse arn <sup>10</sup> þe best,—   |                   |                 |
| . And al þe Northe toward þe west.                     | 256               |                 |
| . Now schal <sup>11</sup> we telle as we fynde         |                   | This is the     |
| . How Eneas com of Saphethes <sup>12</sup> kynde ;     |                   | genealogy of    |
| . ffol merk hit ys for to here,                        |                   | Eneas :         |
| . Bot algate a man may lere.                           | 260               |                 |

## Genealogia, siue generacio.

|                                                   |     |            |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|------------|
| . Noe þat God saued fro <sup>13</sup> dep.        |     | 1, Noah,   |
| . His sone was cald sire <sup>14</sup> Saphet.    |     | 2, Japhet, |
| . Iauan, his sone þat cam <sup>15</sup> of hym,   |     | 3, Javan,  |
| . He hadde a sone þat hight Setym ; <sup>16</sup> | 264 | 4, Setym,  |

<sup>1</sup> lang. [leaf 2, back.]<sup>2</sup> parte vnderfang.<sup>3</sup> Bizancia.<sup>4</sup> Getulie.<sup>5</sup> ffouretene. To make 15, the pope's dwelling must be counted as one land.<sup>6</sup> was Iapheth parte þer es.<sup>7</sup> Rome. (Poille is omitted.)<sup>8</sup> Dalmatik, Pannonie.<sup>9</sup> Coloyne, Galle.<sup>10</sup> þes be.<sup>11</sup> saff.<sup>12</sup> Iaphet.<sup>13</sup> Noe god saued fro þe.<sup>14</sup> was sir.<sup>15</sup> com.<sup>16</sup> Cetim.

|                                                        |                                                                       |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 5, Ciprius,                                            | . Setymes <sup>1</sup> sone, Ciprius hight,                           |     |
|                                                        | . A man of ffame & of myght;                                          |     |
|                                                        | . So mikel þat tyme was his fame,                                     |     |
| (who gave his<br>name to<br>Cyprus,)                   | . þe lande of Cipre of <sup>2</sup> hym had name.                     | 268 |
|                                                        | . Of þys noble sire Cyprius,                                          |     |
| 6, Cretus,                                             | . Was a sone þat hight <sup>3</sup> Cretus;                           |     |
|                                                        | . þis Cretus an ilde he augte, <sup>4</sup>                           |     |
| (from whom<br>Crete was<br>called,)                    | . þe name of hym Cret hit laughte.                                    | 272 |
|                                                        | . Cretus sone hyghte Cellius,                                         |     |
| 7, Celus,                                              | . And Cellius sone was Saturnus;                                      |     |
| 8, Saturn,                                             | . Saturnus sone highte Iubiter,                                       |     |
| 9, Jupiter,                                            | . In astronomie he lerede fer.                                        | 276 |
| (who was<br>learned in<br>astronomy,<br>had two wives, | . þis ilk Iubiter had twey <sup>5</sup> wyues,                        |     |
|                                                        | . Kynges doughtres, faire lyues;                                      |     |
| May & Electra,<br>daughters of<br>king Atlas,          | . þat on <sup>6</sup> hight Maye, þat oper <sup>7</sup> Electra,      |     |
|                                                        | . þe <sup>8</sup> ffader hight Aclas <sup>9</sup> of þem twa;         | 280 |
|                                                        | . ffor Aclas alle hise men calde, <sup>10</sup>                       |     |
|                                                        | . Mons Aclatis <sup>11</sup> 3if hit now halde;                       |     |
|                                                        | . þe <sup>12</sup> hil was so hey, as men hit leet, <sup>13</sup>     |     |
|                                                        | . þat heuen (men seye) hit vnder-feet. <sup>14</sup>                  | 284 |
|                                                        | . þys noble kynge sire Aclas, <sup>15</sup>                           |     |
|                                                        | . In his orchard <sup>16</sup> a tre þer was,                         |     |
| and a tree that<br>bore golden<br>apples               | . þat gilden apples hit bar ere-more <sup>17</sup>                    |     |
|                                                        | . Al þe tyme þat apples wore; <sup>18</sup>                           | 288 |
|                                                        | . & alwey on dragon hem kepte; <sup>19</sup>                          |     |
| which were<br>stolen).                                 | . Syn <sup>20</sup> were þey stolen þe while <sup>21</sup> he slepte. |     |

<sup>1</sup> *Cetim.*<sup>2</sup> *for.*<sup>3</sup> *meñ called.*<sup>4</sup> *MS. augste; P. has aught.*<sup>5</sup> *þis Iubiter had twa.*<sup>6</sup> *þe ton.*<sup>7</sup> *þe toper.*<sup>8</sup> *þer.*<sup>9</sup> *Atlans.*<sup>10</sup> *for Atlans a hitt men called.*<sup>11</sup> *Atlantis.*<sup>12</sup> *þat.*<sup>13</sup> *so hij meñ lette.*<sup>14</sup> *sayd it vndersette. ? feet = took.*<sup>15</sup> *Atlas.*<sup>16</sup> *lordschip.*<sup>17</sup> *euermore.*<sup>18</sup> *tymes þat appilles are.*<sup>19</sup> *Alle tymes a dragon þam.*<sup>20</sup> *Sipen.*<sup>21</sup> *whils.*

|                                                     |     |                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------|
| .pys Iubiter lay dame Maye by,                      |     |                  |
| . & gat on hure <sup>1</sup> sire Mercury;          | 292 |                  |
| . Of Electra he gat an oper,                        |     |                  |
| . Dardanium, Mercurius <sup>2</sup> brother.        |     | 10, Dardanus,    |
| . Iubiter loued wel more Maye                       |     |                  |
| . And Mercury þan þe oper twaye,                    | 296 |                  |
| <sup>3</sup> . Wel more Maye & Mercurium            |     |                  |
| . þan Electra or Dardanium. <sup>3</sup>            |     |                  |
| . ffor loue of Maye he dide calle                   |     |                  |
| . þe monthe of May þat we knowe <sup>4</sup> alle;  | 300 |                  |
| . ffor in that month made þey feste,                |     |                  |
| . þat time þey helden most honeste. <sup>5</sup>    |     |                  |
| . pys Darda[n]um gaf hym to chivalrie;              |     | (who took to     |
| . Mercury gaf him al to clergie.                    | 304 | chivalry,        |
| . ꝯ pys Dardanus was a noble kynge, [leaf 1, back.] |     |                  |
| . Hys Godes schewed hym mykel þynge,                |     | and was bidden   |
| . & bed him gon <sup>6</sup> til Ytalye,            |     | by his gods      |
| . Toward Samo, þorough Tracye;                      | 308 | to go to Italy.  |
| . (Tracie for-sothe ys a lond,                      |     |                  |
| . Samo a contre, y vnderstond;)                     |     |                  |
| . þe whilk Dardan þorow maistrise                   |     | He united        |
| . Mad hem <sup>7</sup> boþ on, Samo-Tracye;         | 312 | Samos and        |
| . Samo-Tracie hap <sup>8</sup> his deuise.          |     | Thrace into      |
| . Syþen he wente in-til <sup>9</sup> frise,         |     | Samothracia,     |
| . & gaf hit <sup>10</sup> name when he þer cam,     |     |                  |
| . After him self Dardanium;                         | 316 |                  |
| . þe name of ffryse calde Dardanye,                 |     | and named        |
| . Als he calde Tracye Samotracye.                   |     | Frisia Dar-      |
| . Of pys Dardan com a sone                          |     | dania).          |
| . Erectorius, <sup>11</sup> þat þer gan wone.       | 320 | 11, Ericthonius, |

<sup>1</sup> of hir.<sup>2</sup> Mercury.<sup>3</sup> P. omits these two lines.<sup>4</sup> know.<sup>5</sup> þai helde fairest & Mest.<sup>6</sup> P. omits gon.<sup>7</sup> Made þam.<sup>8</sup> at.<sup>9</sup> into.<sup>10</sup> P. omits hit.<sup>11</sup> Erictonius.

|                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 12, Tros,                                                | . þys Erectorius a sone he gat,<br>. Troius <sup>1</sup> ; a noble man was þat<br>. Of rightfulness & pitee;<br>. Ouer alle oper praised was he<br>. ffor a rightful man & hende,<br>. Of hym ys mynsyng wip-outen ende,<br>. ffor he made a cite of ioie | 324 |
| (who built<br>Troy).                                     | . After his name, & <sup>2</sup> calde hit Troye;<br>. Of þys Troye, þys <sup>3</sup> stori mones,<br>. Com of hym to <sup>4</sup> noble sones,                                                                                                           | 328 |
| 13, Assaracus,                                           | . þat on <sup>5</sup> hight Ile, þat oper Asserak,<br>. þys wer þer names, þe stori spak;<br>. Ile was after his ffader kyng,                                                                                                                             | 332 |
| (whose brother<br>Ilus built<br>Ilium,                   | . He made a cite of fair byggyng,<br>. And after him selue <sup>6</sup> made hit ryght,<br>. Ilye after Ile hit hight.                                                                                                                                    | 336 |
| & had a son<br>Laomedon,<br>whom                         | . Of þis Ile a sone was on,<br>. & his name was Laomedon;<br>. þys Laomedon a bataille chees;                                                                                                                                                             | 340 |
| Hercules slew ;                                          | . He was slayn wyþ Ercules.<br>. Of Troye was mad destructione<br>. þorow Iason, kyng Pelles sone.<br>. Of þys nys nought to tellen her,<br>. ffor hit ys nought of oure mater.                                                                           | 344 |
| Laomedon<br>begat Priam,                                 | . Of Laomedon com Priamus,<br>. Volcontus, and Ysypilus;<br>. & a doughter of him cam,<br>. Hure name was Esionam.                                                                                                                                        | 348 |
| & he Hector,<br>and six other<br>sons and<br>daughters). | . ¶ Of Pryamus, eldest & mor,<br>. He had a sone men cald Ector,<br>. & oper syxe, & doughtres two,<br>. þe names may ȝe here of þo;                                                                                                                      | 352 |

<sup>1</sup> Troys.<sup>2</sup> & after his name. [leaf 8.]<sup>3</sup> troys þe.<sup>4</sup> tuo.<sup>5</sup> þe tone.<sup>6</sup> self.

- . Alysandre, Parys, Deyphebum,  
. Elenim,<sup>1</sup> Troyl, Amphimacum;  
. & two doughtres þat of him cam,  
. Cassandram & Pollixenam. 356  
. Of Troies bifore an oþer sone,  
. Asserak, 3e herde me mone.  
. of þys Asserak now geten es  
. A sone men callede Kapes; 360 14, Capes.  
. & of Kapes Enches was, 15, Anchises.  
. An[d] of Enches cam Eneas: 16, Eneas.  
. þys ys þe kynde, fro gre til<sup>2</sup> gre, [leaf 1, back, col. 2.]  
. Bytwyxten<sup>3</sup> Eneas & Noe. 364  
. ¶ Bot now donward hit ys þus,  
. ffro Eneas vntil<sup>4</sup> sire Brutus:  
. Sire Eneas hadde sones twa,  
. Askaneus was by dame Creusa; 368 17, Ascanus,  
. I þe bataille of Troye y-monge<sup>5</sup> þe pres,  
. Hys wyf Creusa þere he<sup>6</sup> les.  
. ¶ Whan þe Duk sire Eneas  
. ffro þe bataille a-scaped was, 372  
. He cam in-to<sup>7</sup> þe lond of Latyne,  
. & þer wedded dame Lauyne.  
. Latin highte þenne þe<sup>8</sup> landes  
. þat men sayn þat Rome in<sup>9</sup> standes. 376  
. By dame Lauyne þat leuedy<sup>10</sup>  
. He gat a sone þat highte Syluy; (Eneas also  
. Hys eldeste sone Ascanus, begat Silvius  
. on Lavinia).  
. He gat a child<sup>11</sup> Cycillius;<sup>12</sup> 380 18, Cycillius.  
. pylke Cycylli<sup>13</sup> gat þat man

<sup>1</sup> Helenum.<sup>2</sup> to.<sup>3</sup> betuen.<sup>4</sup> till.<sup>5</sup> the y has been altered.<sup>6</sup> þer he hir.<sup>7</sup> com to.<sup>8</sup> þan þo.<sup>9</sup> þer men says þat rome.<sup>10</sup> lady.<sup>11</sup> son (or sone).<sup>12</sup> "ascane siluius" substituted  
by a later hand; P. has *Sisillius*.<sup>13</sup> *siluius* in the later hand; P. has  
þat ilk *Sisilli*.

|                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 19, Brutus.                                             | . Brutus, pat al þys land first wan.                                                                                                                                                                |     |
| 20, Locrin<br>(and his<br>brothers).                    | . Of Brutus cam sire Lokeryn,<br>. Kamber, Albanak, Euen, Iulyn :                                                                                                                                   | 384 |
|                                                         | . How þey departed þys land in þrynne,<br>. pat may 3e heren wel wyþynne.<br>. Now haue y s[eyd] <sup>1</sup> al þe kynde<br>. Vntil Lokerynes, <sup>2</sup> as we ffynde ;                         | 398 |
| Reversing the<br>genealogy of<br>Assaracus,<br>we have, | . Now ageynward vntil <sup>3</sup> Noe,<br>. Schortly to seye, wilt <sup>4</sup> þou se<br>. þe kynde of alle pat y er of <sup>5</sup> spak,<br>. And of Troies sones, <sup>6</sup> Ile & Asserak/. | 392 |
| 20, Lokeryn.                                            | . Lokeryn com of Brutus,                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
| 19, Brutus.                                             | . Brutus was geten of Cicillius ;                                                                                                                                                                   |     |
| 18, Cycillius.                                          | . Cicilli, Askaneus sone was,                                                                                                                                                                       |     |
| 17, Ascanews.                                           | . & Askaneus com of Eneas, <sup>7</sup>                                                                                                                                                             | 396 |
| 16, Eneas.                                              | . Eneas com of Enchise ;                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
| 15, Anchises.                                           | . Enches, Kapes sone was he ;                                                                                                                                                                       |     |
| 14, Capes.                                              | . Capes com of Asserak ;                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
| 13, Assaracus.                                          | . Asserak, of Troies blod he brak, <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                     | 400 |
| 12, Tros.                                               | . Troies cam of Eryctonius,                                                                                                                                                                         |     |
| 11, Eriethonius.                                        | . Erycton com of Dardanus,                                                                                                                                                                          |     |
| 10, Dardanus.                                           | . Dardan <sup>9</sup> com of Iubiter,                                                                                                                                                               |     |
| 9, Jupiter.                                             | . Iubiter was Saturnus heyr,                                                                                                                                                                        | 404 |
| 8, Saturnus.                                            | . Saturnus cam of Cellius,                                                                                                                                                                          |     |
| 7, Celus.                                               | . & Selius cam of sire Cretus,                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
| 6, Cretus.                                              | . And Cretus cam of Cyprim,                                                                                                                                                                         |     |
| 5, Ciprius.                                             | . & Ciprius cam of Setym,                                                                                                                                                                           | 408 |
| 4, Setym.                                               | . Setym com of Iauan,                                                                                                                                                                               |     |
| 3, Javan.                                               | . & Iauan of Saphet <sup>10</sup> gan,                                                                                                                                                              |     |
| 2, Japhet.                                              | . And Saphet <sup>10</sup> cam of sire Noe :                                                                                                                                                        |     |
| 1, Noah.                                                | . Of Asserak þys ys þe degre.                                                                                                                                                                       | 412 |

<sup>1</sup> MS. rubbed. *sayd*.<sup>2</sup> *vnto Lokeryn*.<sup>3</sup> *vnto*.<sup>4</sup> *wilt*.<sup>5</sup> *I are*.<sup>6</sup> *of troys*.<sup>7</sup> *sir Eneas*.<sup>8</sup> *blode brak*.<sup>9</sup> ? MS. *Dardari*.<sup>10</sup> *Iaphet*.

|                                                    |           |                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| . Now schul we seye of ylke <sup>1</sup> parti :   |           | And reversing<br>the genealogy<br>of Ilus, we get,                    |
| . Ector cam of Pryamy,                             |           | 16, Hector.                                                           |
| . Priamus com of Laomedon,                         |           | 15, Priam.                                                            |
| . Laomedon of Ile gan; <sup>2</sup>                | 416       | 14, Laomedon.                                                         |
| . Ile cam of Troyus,                               |           | 13, Ilus.                                                             |
| . & Troyus of Erectonius;                          |           | 12, Tros.                                                             |
| . Erector <sup>3</sup> cam of kynges Dardan,       |           | 11, Erich-<br>thonius.                                                |
| . Dardanus of Iubiter ran,                         | 420       | 10, Dardanus.                                                         |
| . And Iubiter cam of Saturnus,                     |           | 9, Jupiter.                                                           |
| . And Saturnus of Celius,                          |           | 8, Saturnus.                                                          |
| . Celius com of Cretus,                            | [leaf 2.] | 7, Celius.                                                            |
| . And Cretus com of Cyprius,                       | 424       | 6, Cretus.                                                            |
| . Ciprius of Cetym gan,                            |           | 5, Cyprius.                                                           |
| . & Cetyn com of Iauan;                            |           | 4, Cetym.                                                             |
| . Iauan, Iaphethes <sup>4</sup> sone was he,       |           | 3, Javan.                                                             |
| . And Saphet <sup>4</sup> com of sire Noe :        | 428       | 2, Japhet.                                                            |
| . Of Troius sones hyse ar þe kyndes,               |           | 1, Noah.                                                              |
| . pat bothe in-to Noe byndes.                      |           |                                                                       |
| . Now, lordynges, hit were to witen                |           |                                                                       |
| . Whi þe bataille of Troye was smiten :            | 432       | The battle of<br>Troy was<br>fought for<br>Helen, queen<br>of Greece, |
| . þe laste meschaunce & þe peyne                   |           | whom Paris<br>ravished.                                               |
| . Was for þe Quene of Grece, Eleyne;               |           |                                                                       |
| . þe kynges wyf of Grece scheo <sup>5</sup> was,   |           |                                                                       |
| . pat Parys rauished <sup>6</sup> þorow a cas.     | 436       |                                                                       |
| . pat werre was in tyme ser,                       |           |                                                                       |
| . & lasted <sup>7</sup> two & twenty ȝer.          |           |                                                                       |
| . ffor pat werre þe barons fledde                  |           |                                                                       |
| . pat weren in Troye born & fedde;                 | 440       |                                                                       |
| <sup>8</sup> . How hit bigan, þe laste bale,       |           |                                                                       |
| . Listneþ, & [I] schal telle þe tale, <sup>8</sup> |           |                                                                       |
| . Of Troye þe firste destructione,                 |           | Troy was first<br>destroyed by<br>Jason,                              |
| . pat cam <sup>9</sup> þorow Iasan, Pelles sone,   | 444       |                                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> *sail we say of Ile.* [leaf 8, back.]<sup>2</sup> *began.*<sup>3</sup> *Ereton.*<sup>4</sup> *Iaphet.*<sup>5</sup> *scho.*<sup>6</sup> *rauyst.*<sup>7</sup> *lastand.*<sup>8</sup> *P. omits these two lines.*<sup>9</sup> *com (for þat cam).*



who won the  
ram with the  
fleece of gold,

& levelled  
Troy ;  
but Priam  
built it again,

though since  
its last ruin it  
has never been  
rebuilt.

Here is the tale  
of its fall.

. pat wan the Ram wip the fles<sup>1</sup> of golde,  
. pat neuere man of erthe molde  
. Mighte hit<sup>2</sup> wyne byfore wip fyght,  
. Bot sire Iasan þe gode knyght<sup>3</sup> 448  
. Whan<sup>4</sup> þe Ram wip<sup>5</sup> gilden flees,  
. & stryed Troye wip alle þe cites ;  
. Bot þe kyng sire Pryami  
. Bigged hit a-geyn fol noblely,<sup>6</sup> 452  
. & vitailled hit of ston & corn ;<sup>7</sup>  
. Was hit neuer so fair biforn ;  
. Bot sipen þe laste sorewe & payne  
. Was hit neuere bygged ageyne. 456  
. How hit bygan, þe laste bale,  
. List<sup>8</sup> a partie of þe tale.

**Exe de Troia de qua causa bellum fuit ammotum.**

Paris was  
Priam's son,  
and the custom  
then was that  
none but  
knights

should keep  
beasts ;

. In Troye was a Duc of prys,  
. Pryamy sone þat highte Parya 460  
. Custume was bi þo dawes,  
. In tyme of þe elde lawes,  
. Knygtes scholden<sup>9</sup> kepe bestes,  
. Als y haue herd rede[n] in gestes. 464  
. þe Bible wytnesseþ<sup>10</sup> wel þys þynge  
. Of Moyses & Daud þe kyng ;  
. Schold<sup>11</sup> non bot of gentil blod,  
. Erl or duc, or also<sup>12</sup> god, 468  
. Bestes kepe, bot he were knyght,  
. & stalworthe in arnes for to fyght,

<sup>1</sup> fleez.

<sup>2</sup> Mot it.

<sup>3</sup> MS. knyght.

<sup>4</sup> wān.

<sup>5</sup> with þe.

<sup>6</sup> nobly.

<sup>7</sup> & vouted it oft ston all corn.

<sup>8</sup> Listes.

<sup>9</sup> suld.

<sup>10</sup> wytnes.

<sup>11</sup> suld.

<sup>12</sup> als.

|                                              |     |                 |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------|
| . And hardy, & of honour,                    |     |                 |
| . He kepte bestes y <sup>1</sup> þe pastour, | 472 | so Paris        |
| . Swylk on was þys ilke Parys,               |     |                 |
| . A duk hardi, & a knyght wys; <sup>2</sup>  |     |                 |
| . He kepte bestes in þe feld                 |     | keeps beasts in |
| . As a knyght armed wip scheld.              | 476 | the field.      |
| . Als Parys <sup>3</sup> sat at his hole,    |     |                 |
| . Out fro Grece þer cam a bole;              |     | To his beasts   |
| . To Paris bestes was his draught,           |     | comes a bull    |
| . And wip Parys bole he faught.              | 480 | from Greece,    |
|                                              |     | and fights      |
|                                              |     | with Paris's    |
|                                              |     | bull,           |

**Exe pugnum inter Taurum Troie & Taurum  
Grecie.**

[leaf 2, col. 2.]

|                                                        |     |                |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------|
| . ¶ Ilkon oper gan faste assaille,                     |     |                |
| . & Parys biheld þeir bataille;                        |     |                |
| . þey foughte so longe, <sup>4</sup> hit was a wonder, |     | one day,       |
| . Bot at þe laste þey ȝede a sonder.                   | 484 |                |
| . An oper day he com ageyn,                            |     | two days,      |
| . & foughte to-gydere, þys boles tweyn;                |     |                |
| . So foughte þei mani daies longe,                     |     | many days;     |
| . ffelenuous <sup>5</sup> batailles & fol stronge.     | 488 |                |
| . Paris seide, "Now schal y se                         |     | and Paris      |
| . " Whilk is worthi to haue þe gre,                    |     |                |
| . " & whilk of hem maistri schal haue,                 |     |                |
| . " To coroune hym y vouche hit saue." <sup>6</sup>    | 492 | resolves to    |
| . ¶ A day þei foughte fol felonlike,                   |     | crown the      |
| . & stalworly <sup>7</sup> to-gyder gon stryke;        |     | conqueror.     |
| . So longe þey foughte, þat atte <sup>8</sup> laste    |     |                |
| . þe bole of Troye doun was caste.                     | 496 | At last the    |
|                                                        |     | Trojan bull    |
|                                                        |     | is beaten, and |

<sup>1</sup> in.<sup>2</sup> hardy knyght & wys.<sup>3</sup> as þis Paris.<sup>4</sup> þai faught so long.<sup>5</sup> felons.<sup>6</sup> vouchsaue.<sup>7</sup> stalworþely.<sup>8</sup> long þai faught at þe.

Paris gives the  
Grecian bull  
the crown.

. When Parys saugh his bole doun,  
. þe bole of Grece he gaf þe croun ;  
. & þat was gret curtesye,  
. To gyue þe bole þe maistrie, 500  
. & late hym gon corouned quit <sup>1</sup>  
. þat hadde ydon his bole despit.

Three witches,  
called ladies,  
see this bull-  
fight,

. þere biside þre wicches ware,  
. Ladies were cald, & in þe eyr dide fare; 504  
. þyse þre stoden & byheld <sup>2</sup>  
. þe boles bataille in þe feld,  
. & praised mikel sire Paris  
. þat he gaf þat <sup>3</sup> bole þe pris; 508  
. þey seide he was a man of skyl  
. þat gaf þe dom as fel þer til;  
. ffor he þat was þe pris worpy,  
. He corouned hym, <sup>4</sup> and gaf þe maistri. 512

Juno, Pallas,  
and Venus,

. þyse þre leuedies were of might;  
. þe principale, <sup>5</sup> Iuno scheo hight;  
. þat oper Pallas, þe þrydde Venus,  
. Alle þre leuedies highten <sup>6</sup> þus. 516  
. Iuno, scheo was gyuere of myght,  
. Pallas gaf wysdam & right,

and begin to  
argue which of  
them is fairest.

. Dame Venus, sche <sup>7</sup> gaf loue til man.  
. Bytwyxt <sup>8</sup> þise þre a strif bigan, 520  
. Whilk of hem <sup>9</sup> were fayrest:  
. At Paris dom þei wolde <sup>10</sup> hit kest.  
. Dame Iuno seide, " hit am y;"  
. þat oper seid, " nay truely! <sup>11</sup> 524

They agree to  
refer the ques-  
tion to Paris.

. " To Paris dom we graunten alle,  
. " þe whilk of vs fairest schal falle."

<sup>1</sup> quite.

<sup>2</sup> þe þre stode & behelde.

<sup>3</sup> þe.

<sup>4</sup> he crowned.

<sup>5</sup> þat mast was

<sup>6</sup> ladyes hight

<sup>7</sup> scho.

<sup>8</sup> betwex.

<sup>9</sup> þam.

<sup>10</sup> dome þai wald.

<sup>11</sup> certanty.

¶ *De consilio Iuno et adulacione sua.*

|                                                    |     |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------|
| . Dame Iuno seide hure auys,                       |     |                  |
| . "We schal don hit vpon <sup>1</sup> Parys,       | 528 |                  |
| . "& he schal ben oure <sup>2</sup> domes man."    |     |                  |
| . þe opere <sup>3</sup> seide, "We graunte þan."   |     |                  |
| . "Now," sche <sup>4</sup> seide "we graunten al ; |     |                  |
| . "Go we now & make a bal,                         | 532 | They'll make a   |
| . "& gyue we hit <sup>5</sup> Parys alle þre,      |     | ball, and ask    |
| . "And preye we hym for specialte                  |     | Paris to give it |
| . "To gyue hit hure þat semes best,                |     | to the fairest   |
| . "Of vs þre whilk ys <sup>6</sup> fairest."       | 536 | of them,         |
| . þys ilke conseil þey toke til <sup>7</sup> pay ; |     |                  |
| . Whan hit schold be þey sette a day.              |     | on a certain     |

day.

¶ *Lege per totum vltimus.*

|                                                         |                 |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| . Hereþ <sup>8</sup> now of a quynte wyle, <sup>9</sup> | [leaf 2, back.] |                  |
| . How eche of þo þoughte oper gyle. <sup>10</sup>       | 540             |                  |
| . Ar þat day com þat þey set,                           |                 | Before that      |
| . Iuno wiþ sire Parys met:                              |                 | day Juno         |
| . "Paris," scheo seyþ, "y schal 3ow <sup>11</sup> seye  |                 | tells Paris      |
| . "A priuete by-twixte vs beye : <sup>12</sup>          | 544             |                  |
| . "We þre ladies han <sup>13</sup> ordeyned so          |                 | what they ladies |
| . "þat alle þre schulle come þe to,                     |                 | are going to do, |
| . "& take þe a bal, & preye þe                          |                 |                  |
| . "To gyue hit þe fairest of vs þre ;                   | 548             |                  |
| . "& wham þou gyue <sup>14</sup> hit, ys oure deuys,    |                 |                  |
| . "Scheo schal <sup>15</sup> for euere bere þe prys.    |                 |                  |

<sup>1</sup> *satt do it on.*

<sup>2</sup> *he satt oure.*

<sup>3</sup> *þat oper.*

<sup>4</sup> *scho.*

<sup>5</sup> *& gyf it.*

<sup>6</sup> *þre to be.*

<sup>7</sup> *to.*

<sup>8</sup> *Here.*

<sup>9</sup> *quante gyle.*

<sup>10</sup> *how alle þre thoght a wyle.*

<sup>11</sup> *scho said .I. satt þe.*

<sup>12</sup> *tweye.*

<sup>13</sup> *haf.*

<sup>14</sup> *whom þou gyffes.*

<sup>15</sup> *scho satt.*

and prays him  
to give her the  
ball;  
then she'll set  
him above all  
in Troy.

She gone,  
Pallas prays  
him too for the  
ball,

and promises  
him wisdom  
over all.

Last comes  
Venus, tells  
him

she is coming  
to be judged by  
him,

and if he'll give  
her the ball,  
she'll give him  
the fairest lady  
alive.

“ & ȝif y myghte biseke þe so,  
“ þou woldest<sup>1</sup> gyue hit me, Iuno; 552  
“ I schal þe<sup>2</sup> graunte þorow my power,  
“ In Troye schold neuere<sup>3</sup> be þy per.”  
Parys seide, “dame, graunt mercy!  
Right as þou wilt, al so wil y.”<sup>4</sup> 556  
Whan scheo was gon, cam Pallas  
ffor þat same þat Iuno was;  
Scheo preied Parys, als scheo had seyde,  
þat þe bal were til hure y-leyd: 560  
“Of wysdam y schal gyue þe grace  
“ Ouer alle oper in ilk a place.”  
Parys seide, þat was curteys,  
“Hit may be, lady, ȝyt as þou seys.” 564  
¶ Whan scheo was gon, cam dame Venus,<sup>5</sup>  
“& to Parys scheo seide,<sup>7</sup> al þus:  
“Parys,” scheo seide,<sup>7</sup> “we ladies are  
“ þre in gret þought & in care; 568  
“ & þou may bate al þat gilt<sup>8</sup>  
“ Of vs alle ȝif þat þou wylt.  
“ Y am,” scheo seide,<sup>7</sup> “on of þo  
“ þat ys in þought to þe to go. 572  
“ A day we set to þe to come,  
“ ffor to stonde al at þy dome;  
“ A bal,” scheo seide,<sup>7</sup> “we schul<sup>9</sup> þe brynge,  
“ & preie þe vpon alle þynge 576  
“ þou gyue hit hure þat fairest semes,  
“ ffor þy dom vs alle quemes.  
“ & ȝif þou gyue hit me, Parys,  
“ I schal<sup>9</sup> þe gyue a loue of pris, 580  
“ þe fairest lady þat now lyues,  
“ ffor þe bal, ȝif<sup>10</sup> þou hit me gyues.”

<sup>1</sup> wild.<sup>2</sup> I saff.<sup>3</sup> ne suld.<sup>4</sup> als þou wilt þan wilt .I.<sup>5</sup> to hir layd.<sup>6</sup> com Venus.<sup>7</sup> scho said.<sup>8</sup> abate þat gylte.<sup>9</sup> saff.<sup>10</sup> g. [leaf 4, back.]

|                                                         |     |                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------------|
| .ff Parys poughte, & stod þen stille ;                  |     | Paris thinks,                                      |
| .To þat loue turnd al his wille ;                       | 584 |                                                    |
| .He seide, "Iuno hyghte <sup>1</sup> me poer ;          |     | he cares not for power                             |
| ." þerof," he seid, "ys no mester ;                     |     |                                                    |
| ." Kynges <sup>2</sup> sone y am, & lord schal be ;     |     | (being a king's son),                              |
| ." Poer ynow schal come to me.                          | 588 |                                                    |
| ." & Pallas highte me gret wysdam ;                     |     | nor wisdom                                         |
| ." In Troye nis wyser þan y am ; <sup>3</sup>           |     | (there's no wiser than he in Troy) ;               |
| ." Of þyse gyftes ys no ned ;                           |     |                                                    |
| ." To loue þat lady ys al my sped."                     | 592 | love is his need.                                  |
| .To þat gift his herte gaf al :                         |     |                                                    |
| ." Venus," he saide, "þou getes þe bal                  |     | So he promises the ball to Venus.                  |
| ." 3yf þou me hold þat þou hast het, <sup>4</sup>       |     |                                                    |
| ." þou getest <sup>5</sup> þe bal at 3oure day set."    | 596 |                                                    |
| .þey graunted boþe atter <sup>6</sup> pay,              |     |                                                    |
| .& com alle þre at þer day,                             |     | On the day fixed the three witches come.           |
| .& bytok <sup>7</sup> Parys þe bal ;                    |     |                                                    |
| .At his dom þey stoden <sup>8</sup> al.                 | 600 |                                                    |
| .Parys tok þe bal in his hand : <sup>9</sup>            |     | [leaf 2, back, col. 2.] Paris decides              |
| ." So faire ladies ar none lyuand ; <sup>10</sup>       |     |                                                    |
| ." Bot me þynkes <sup>11</sup> of 3ow þre               |     |                                                    |
| ." Dame Venus semes fairest to be.                      | 604 | that Venus is the fairest, and gives her the ball. |
| ." Haue here þe bal, dame Venus ;                       |     |                                                    |
| ." ffairrest to be, me þynkeþ ryght <sup>12</sup> þus." |     |                                                    |
| .þys lady Venus was al glad,                            |     |                                                    |
| .þe opere <sup>13</sup> were for wrayth al mad ;        | 608 | The others are mad with rage.                      |
| .Venus held <sup>14</sup> wiþ hym certeyn,              |     |                                                    |
| .þe opere boþe were hym ageyn ;                         |     |                                                    |
| .Poer & wysdam he forsok ;                              |     |                                                    |
| .& womman loue, þer-til he tok.                         | 612 |                                                    |

<sup>1</sup> hett.<sup>2</sup> kyng.<sup>3</sup> wisere of troie es ne yan .I. am.<sup>4</sup> halde þat þou has hette.<sup>5</sup> getes.<sup>6</sup> at þer.<sup>7</sup> betaght.<sup>8</sup> þai stode.<sup>9</sup> in hande.<sup>10</sup> ere non lyffande.<sup>11</sup> thynk.<sup>12</sup> thynk reght.<sup>13</sup> toþer.<sup>14</sup> was.

Venus tells  
Paris to provide  
furs, jewels,  
purple and fine  
linen ;  
to take a ship

with a fine bed  
in it covered  
with cloths of  
gold,

go to Greece,  
land where the  
queen is,

and she'll yearn  
to see his wares;  
but he's not to  
show them un-  
less she'll go on  
board ;

and that she'll  
do,

for woman  
craves what  
man forbids  
her.

¶ Dame Venus seide to<sup>1</sup> sire Parys,  
" pou schalt don at myn ays :<sup>2</sup>  
" Puruey þe," scheo seide, " veir & grys,  
" ffaire iueles, & pourpre<sup>3</sup> & bys ; 616  
" Do dight a schip wiþ sail & ore  
" Ryght as þou a marchaund wore ;  
" Of alle queyntise þat þou may se,  
" Haue<sup>4</sup> vn-to þy schip wyþ þe ; 620  
" Do make þerinne a fol fair bed,<sup>5</sup>  
" Wiþ cloþes of gold hit be al<sup>6</sup> spred ;  
" þy schip wiþoute be fol fair<sup>7</sup> dight,  
" Lykyng to þat lauedy<sup>8</sup> sight. 624  
" þerinne<sup>9</sup> to Grece schalt<sup>10</sup> þou wende ;  
" In an hauene schalt<sup>10</sup> þou lende  
" þer þe kyng ys, & þe Quene ;  
" & whan scheo haþ þe schip al<sup>11</sup> sene, 628  
" Scheo schal ȝerne<sup>12</sup> on alle wyse  
" ffor to se þy marchaundise ;  
" Bot loke þou schewe non of þo,  
" Bot scheo wile in to þy schip<sup>13</sup> go ; 632  
" & whan scheo heres þat tydyng<sup>14</sup>,  
" Scheo schal praie ful faste<sup>15</sup> þe kyng  
" To gyue hire leue to se þy ware,  
" To bye þerof þat so riche are. 636  
" <sup>16</sup>Loke þou schewe noman nought  
" Til þat sche first be hider brought,<sup>16</sup>  
" ffor out of wyt wommen<sup>17</sup> ȝernes  
" þat men forbedes hure, & wernes. 640

<sup>1</sup> said titl.

<sup>2</sup> sañt do at my deuys.

<sup>3</sup> purpure.

<sup>4</sup> haf.

<sup>5</sup> a full fayre bedde.

<sup>6</sup> gold be it all.

<sup>7</sup> full faire.

<sup>8</sup> likand to þat lady.

<sup>9</sup> MS. þerime.

<sup>10</sup> sañt.

<sup>11</sup> scho has þi schippe.

<sup>12</sup> Scho sañt ȝern.

<sup>13</sup> in to schippe.

<sup>14</sup> tyding.

<sup>15</sup> Scho sañt pray full fast.

<sup>16-16</sup> luke þou schew no mañ nought  
of þe

bot he wilñ in to þe schippe go.

<sup>17</sup> witte womañ.

- |                                                          |     |                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------|
| . " & whan scheo his brought vnto <sup>1</sup> py schip, |     | Then he's to take her by the hand, |
| . " By þe hand redy þou hure kyp; <sup>2</sup>           |     |                                    |
| . " & curteysly þat scheo be led,                        |     |                                    |
| . " & set hure faire opon <sup>3</sup> py bed;           | 644 | set her on the bed,                |
| . " Do cortine hit al aboute                             |     | curtain it all round,              |
| . " þat scheo se nought wyþynne ne <sup>4</sup> wyþoute, |     |                                    |
| . " & whan scheo ys on py bed set,                       |     |                                    |
| . " Loke wel þat py schip be get;                        | 648 |                                    |
| . " Lat non come vnder py telde                          |     |                                    |
| . " Mo þan þou may lightly welde;                        |     |                                    |
| . " Loke py schip be <sup>5</sup> vnfest,                |     | then cast off the ship,—           |
| . " & py folk be al <sup>6</sup> prest;                  | 652 |                                    |
| . " And what þynge þat sche wil craue,                   |     | let the queen have every-          |
| . " Do hit hure redy for to <sup>7</sup> haue,           |     | thing she wants,                   |
| . " þat scheo tende to no þynge elles                    |     | that she may attend to             |
| . " Bot til þat ware þat þou hure selles.                | 656 | nothing else,                      |
| . " Whan redy ys þyn apparail,                           |     |                                    |
| . " Lat py men haue vp þe sayl; <sup>8</sup>             |     | hoist up the sail,—                |
| . " & loke <sup>9</sup> þou be to myle or þre            |     |                                    |
| . " Ar scheo wite <sup>10</sup> wyþynne þe se;           | 660 |                                    |
| . " & do þenne þat lady to wyte                          |     | and then let her know how his      |
| . " How py iueles wyl hure syte."                        |     | jewels will suit                   |
| . Parys dide as Venus kende,                             |     | [leaf 3.] her.                     |
| . & dighte þe schip,—wel he <sup>11</sup> wende,—        | 664 | Paris does as Venus tells him,     |
| . Wyþ alle queintyse þat was <sup>12</sup> gay,          |     | fits out his ship,                 |
| . & aryued vp <sup>3</sup> þer þe kinge lay.             |     | and lands where Menelaus is.       |
| . Menlaus highte þe kyng;                                |     |                                    |
| . He sente to wyte what maner þynge                      | 668 | He asks what Paris has to sell:    |
| . Was in þe schip for to selle.                          |     | Rich jewels, in the ship, not      |
| . " Riche iueles," þey gan him telle,                    |     |                                    |

<sup>1</sup> *bot whenñ is brought in to.*

<sup>2</sup> *kippe.*

3  $0\bar{n}$ .

<sup>4</sup> *scho se no thynq.*

*\* it be.*

**6 att.**

7 *redy to.*

<sup>8</sup> þat þi meñ haf up þi saile.

**9 at.**

<sup>10</sup> *Or scho* (no *wite*).

<sup>11</sup> *his schippe wele .I.* [leaf 5.]

**12 were.**

<sup>13</sup> *vp* omitted.



|                            |                                                   |     |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| out of it.                 | . " Bot non ne mighte for gold ne <sup>1</sup> fe |     |
|                            | . " Out of þe schip gete ought to se."            | 672 |
| Helen                      | . þat herde telle þe quene Heleyne,               |     |
|                            | . Nyght & day sche dide <sup>2</sup> hire peyne,  |     |
|                            | . Of þe kyng to haue grauntyse                    |     |
|                            | . To se þat ylke marchaundyse.                    | 676 |
| gets leave to see<br>them, | . What wyþ wel oþer <sup>3</sup> wyþ wo,          |     |
|                            | . Leue scheo gat <sup>4</sup> þyder to go.        |     |

¶ Exe de Raptu Helene Regine Grece.

|                                                        |                                                         |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| and goes on<br>board.                                  | . Vnto þe schip was scheo brought :                     |     |
| Paris                                                  | . Parys þe [duk] <sup>5</sup> forgat he nought          | 680 |
|                                                        | . þat he ne dide as <i>Venus</i> bad.                   |     |
|                                                        | . ffor þe quene comynge he was fol glad ;               |     |
|                                                        | . ffaire iueles forth þey drowe, <sup>7</sup>           |     |
| shows her fair<br>jewels ;                             | . & schewed þe <sup>8</sup> lady right ynowe ;          | 684 |
|                                                        | . & whyles þei richesse bifore hure caste,              |     |
| his men hoist<br>the sail,                             | . þer sayl þey drow vp by þe maste.                     |     |
|                                                        | . þys lady Heleyne gaf no tent,                         |     |
|                                                        | . Me non of hures, how þe schip out went ;              | 688 |
| and when they<br>are two or three<br>miles from land,  | . Wypynne a þrowe, to <sup>9</sup> mile or þre          |     |
|                                                        | . Was þe schip wypynne þe se.                           |     |
|                                                        | . ¶ Whan þey weren fro þe lond,                         |     |
| Paris welcomes<br>Helen ;                              | . Parys tok þe quene by þe hond :                       | 692 |
|                                                        | . " Welcome," he saide, <sup>10</sup> " art þou to me ! |     |
|                                                        | . " ffor þe cam y <sup>11</sup> to þys contre ;         |     |
|                                                        | . " Now <sup>12</sup> y haue þe, mykel is my ioye,      |     |
| and tells her<br>her beauty shall<br>rejoice all Troy. | . " py fairehede schal mende <sup>13</sup> al Troye ;   | 696 |

<sup>1</sup> no.<sup>2</sup> scho did.<sup>3</sup> wele or.<sup>4</sup> scho gate.<sup>5</sup> duke.<sup>6</sup> þe quene com in his herte was  
glad.<sup>7</sup> þai droghe.<sup>8</sup> þat.<sup>9</sup> tuo.<sup>10</sup> Welcom Heleyne.<sup>11</sup> I com.<sup>12</sup> ffor.<sup>13</sup> satt amend.

- . " pou were me gyuen;<sup>1</sup> þat gyft y haue;  
 . " Al my trauaille, y vouche hit saue."  
 . Y kan nought sey of þat leuedy  
 . Wheþer scheo was glad or sory;<sup>2</sup> 700  
 . Bot whan hure lord þe kyng hit wist,  
 . Ioye to make him ne lyst;  
 . After his barons alle he sent  
 . & schewede hem how þat<sup>3</sup> he was schent: 704  
 . 'þat a schip of Troye was comen,  
 . þe quene þorow treson þey<sup>4</sup> nomen.'  
 . Whan þei alle wiste þys<sup>5</sup> grete despit,  
 . Wiþ o wille þey seyde fol tyt, 708  
 . þei scholde neuere reste ne lende  
 . To struye<sup>6</sup> Troye wyþouten ende.  
 . Here-forþe bigan þe sorewe and peyne,  
 . þe slaughtre of Troye, for þys Heleyne; 712  
 . þys<sup>7</sup> slaughter was yn bataille seer,  
 . & lasted<sup>8</sup> two & twenty ȝer  
 . Bytwyxtē þe Troiens & þe Gregeys, [leaf 3, col. 2.]  
 . Als þe stories wytnesses & seys. 716  
 . At a batalle þat þey set,<sup>9</sup>  
 . Troye & Grece at ones met,  
 . At which<sup>10</sup> bataillē þe Troiens lees,  
 . & fledde fro þat mykel prees. 720  
 . þat mighte fle, fledde ay-whore,<sup>11</sup>  
 . & Troye destruyed for euere more.  
 . Al þe werd<sup>12</sup> makes ȝyt menyngē  
 . How Troye was struyed for þys þynge; 724  
 . Clerkes wyse yn boke hit wrot,  
 . þorow whiche wrytyngē wel alle hit wot<sup>13</sup>;  
 If Helen is not sorry,  
 Menelaus is.  
 He sends for his barons,  
 tells them how his queen has been stolen from him;  
 and they vow  
 to destroy Troy for ever.  
 The strife lasts twenty-two years.  
 The last battle  
 the Trojans lose,  
 and Troy is destroyed,  
 as wise clerks write.

<sup>1</sup> was gyfēn.<sup>2</sup> whedire scho were or sary.<sup>3</sup> þam how.<sup>4</sup> has.<sup>5</sup> þe.<sup>6</sup> destroye.<sup>7</sup> þe.<sup>8</sup> Lastand.<sup>9</sup> at ones Troie & Grece þai mette.<sup>10</sup> þat.<sup>11</sup> fled aschore.<sup>12</sup> world.<sup>13</sup> þorghe þer wrytyng we it wote.

|                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
|                                                      | . þey write <sup>1</sup> þe names of þe kynges<br>. & of alle þe <sup>2</sup> oper lordynges,<br>. Whilke were men of most honour,<br>. þat fledde fro þe <sup>2</sup> grete stour.                                                                                                                                 | 728 |
| Duke Eneas<br>flees,                                 | <b>A</b> gret lord of Troye þer was,<br>Men calde duk Eneas;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 732 |
| with his son<br>Askaneus,                            | ffor <sup>3</sup> þat grete slaughter he fled,<br>Hys sone Askaneus wiþ hym led;<br>Sone ne doughter had he namo<br>Whan he fledde þe cite fro;                                                                                                                                                                     | 736 |
| leaving his wife<br>Creusa behind.                   | In þe slaughtre a-monge þe pres,<br>Hys wyf Creusa, he hure les. <sup>4</sup><br>þys Eneas fledde him self to saue,<br>Hys sones lif & his to haue; <sup>5</sup>                                                                                                                                                    | 740 |
| Eneas firs out<br>twenty ships,                      | Wyþ mikel vitaille & tresor good<br>He charged twenty schipes on flood.<br>He dwelte longe in þe se,<br>& many perille <sup>6</sup> ascapede he.                                                                                                                                                                    | 744 |
| and lands in<br>Italy<br>(where Rome<br>now stands), | Wyþ alle þe wo þat he gan dreye,<br>He cam to þe lond of Ytalye.<br>( <sup>7</sup> Italye was kalled þenne<br>þe land þat Rome now standes ynne: <sup>7</sup><br>Of Rome þat ilke tyme was nought,<br>Ne longe after was hit wrought.)<br>Eneas þat had al þat trauaille,<br>What in se <sup>8</sup> & in bataille, | 748 |
|                                                      | Atte laste he gan aryue<br>In Ytalye, a lond plentyue.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 752 |
| by the water of<br>Tyber.                            | <sup>9</sup> By þe water of Tyber land þey nome,<br>By whilk water now standeþ Rome. <sup>9</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 756 |

<sup>1</sup> wrote.<sup>2</sup> þat. [Geoffrey and Wace begin.]<sup>3</sup> ffor.<sup>4</sup> Wace, p. 5, l. 85-89.<sup>5</sup> withouten ouþer zoman or  
knaue.<sup>6</sup> perille omitted.<sup>7-7</sup> Ytalie was þa ðe name

þat land þer now men Rome ame.

<sup>8</sup> in þe se. [leaf 5, back.]<sup>9-9</sup> þe water hate Tiber þer þai  
londe nome  
be þat water standes Rome.

## De Rege Italye siue Latinorum.

- þe kyng of þe land, Latyn he<sup>1</sup> hight,  
 A riche man, & mykel of myght,  
 & hadde<sup>2</sup> ynow his lond to welde,  
 Bot þat he was smyten in-to<sup>3</sup> elde. 760  
 He worschiped muche<sup>4</sup> sire Eneas,  
 & fayn of hys comynge was,  
 & seide, 'ȝyf he wolde leue stille,  
 He wolde<sup>5</sup> gyue hym land at wyll.' 764  
 Latynes þe kyng, he<sup>6</sup> had non eyr  
 Bote a maide<sup>7</sup> swythe fayr;  
 pys damysele highte Lauyne.  
 þe kyng seyde, "Scheo schal<sup>8</sup> be þyne; 768  
 " I wyle þat [þou]<sup>9</sup> after myn endyng [lf. 3, bk.]  
 " My doughter wedde, & be þou<sup>10</sup> kyng."  
 Bot þer-til graunted nought þe quen;  
 Scheo wold þat an oþer had[de]<sup>11</sup> ben. 772  
 ffor he dide nought as wold<sup>12</sup> his wyfe,  
 þerfore ros a newe strife:  
 ¶ þer biside a riche man,  
 Turnus he highte, lord of Tuskan; 776  
 pys Turnus hadde yloued<sup>13</sup> Lauyne,  
 & herde seye þat þe kyng Latyne  
 Had gyuen his doughter sire Eneas,  
 And hadde enuye þat hit so was, 780  
 ffor Turnus had loued hure longe ar hee,  
 & hadde grauntise<sup>14</sup> his wif to be;

Latinus the  
king

honours Eneas

and offers him  
land,

and his only  
daughter  
Lavinia, so that  
after his death  
Eneas may be  
king.

But Turnus,  
lord of Tuscany,  
who has long  
loved Lavinia,

<sup>1</sup> he omitted.

<sup>2</sup> Rychesse.

<sup>3</sup> in.

<sup>4</sup> mykell.

<sup>5</sup> wyl.

<sup>6</sup> Latyn þe kyng.

<sup>7</sup> maiden.

<sup>8</sup> sho sall.

<sup>9</sup> þou.

<sup>10</sup> þe.

<sup>11</sup> scho þat anoþer had.

<sup>12</sup> als wold.

<sup>13</sup> had lufed.

<sup>14</sup> grauntise had.

|                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| challenges<br>Eneas to fight<br>for her.                                       | He bed his body, his ouer myght,<br>Wyþ Eneas al-one to fyght.                                                                                                             | 784 |
| Eneas kills<br>Turnus,                                                         | Sire Eneas was <i>per-of</i> fayn,<br>þey faught <sup>1</sup> togyder, Turnus was slayn,<br>Eneas wedded þe <sup>2</sup> mayden ȝynge;                                     |     |
| weds Lavinia,<br>s king,                                                       | þen was scheo quen, & he <sup>3</sup> was kyng.<br>þanne fond <sup>4</sup> he non þat hym noyed,<br>Ne nought of his lond destruyed;                                       | 788 |
| and reigns in<br>peace.                                                        | Sipen he wedded Lauyne his wyfe,<br>He held þe lond wypouten strife.                                                                                                       | 792 |
| He builds a<br>castle,<br>and calls it<br>Lavioune.                            | In pes foure ȝer he regned wel;<br>Wyþynne þe ȝeres he made a castel,<br>& gaf hit name þorow euery <sup>5</sup> toun<br>After dame Lauyne, Lauyoun.                       | 796 |
| Lavinia con-<br>ceives,<br>but Eneas dies<br>before the birth<br>of her child, | In þe ferþe ȝer, last of his lyf,<br>Of hym conceiued Lauyne his wyf;<br>& er þe child fel to be born,<br>Sire Eneas was ded byforn. <sup>6</sup>                          | 800 |
| Silvius Polly-<br>nius.                                                        | When Lauynes <sup>7</sup> tyme was fulfylde,<br>Of hure was born (as grace hit wild,)<br>A knaue child, men kald him Syluius;<br>Hys to-name was Pollynius. <sup>8</sup>   | 804 |
| Ascanius                                                                       | Askaneus, Eneas oper sone<br>pat com wyþ him, (as ȝe wel mone,) <sup>9</sup>                                                                                               |     |
| succeeds Eneas,                                                                | After his fader þe lond he tooke,<br>His brother Syluius he dide hit <sup>10</sup> looke,<br>Syluius <sup>11</sup> his half brother was,<br>Gete of his ffader kyng Eneas. | 808 |
| builds a city,<br>Alba,                                                        | Askaneus dide make a citee,<br>þe name Albe þan <sup>12</sup> gaf hit he;                                                                                                  | 812 |

<sup>1</sup> *smyte.*<sup>2</sup> *þat.*<sup>3</sup> *he.* Lamb. MS. *scheo.*<sup>4</sup> *Sipen fand.*<sup>5</sup> *thorgh ilka.* [leaf 5, back, col. 2.]<sup>6</sup> *ore was Eneas dede beforne.*<sup>7</sup> *Lauine.*<sup>8</sup> *Postomius*, Wace, p. 5, l. 80;  
*Enéam*, MS. du Roy, 7515<sup>3-3</sup>. Colb.,  
*ib.*<sup>9</sup> *I gan ȝow mone.*<sup>10</sup> *to.*<sup>11</sup> *Silui.*<sup>12</sup> *þan* omitted.

- Askaneus let dame Lauyne take<sup>1</sup>  
 [þe castell þat Eneas did make;]  
 & al þat lond þat fel þer-til,  
 Dame Lauyne held hit at hire wyl. 816  
 þe mawmet þat Eneas brought fro Troye,  
 In Lauyon he sette hem<sup>2</sup> wyþ ioy;  
 Sythen com Askaneus his sone,  
 Brought þem tyl<sup>3</sup> Albe þer he gan wone; 820  
 & þer-inne hadde þey neuere rest,  
 ffor o þe morn þe[y]<sup>4</sup> were ageyn al prest  
 At þe castel of Lauyon,  
 & wold<sup>5</sup> nought dwelle in Albe toun:<sup>6</sup> 824  
 He ne wiste, ne was certeyn, [leaf 2, back, col. 2.]  
 On<sup>7</sup> what nanere þey come ageyn.  
 He regned foure & þrytty ȝer  
 In pes wyþouten wo & wer. 828  
 Whan Askaneus made<sup>8</sup> his endyngre,  
 Syluy his broþer regned kyng,  
 þat was born of dame Lauyne,  
 þe heritage he hadde in lyne. 832  
 ¶ A sone þen had Askaneus  
 His brother, highte Sysillius.<sup>9</sup>  
 þys ylke childe Sysilly  
 Loued Lauynes nece, & lay hure by— 836  
 & sche sone wax wiþ childe—  
 Als yonge men do þat ben wylde.  
 ¶ þe kyngs dide his clerke<sup>10</sup> calle,  
 & bad hem loke þer bokes<sup>11</sup> alle, 840
- and removes  
 Eneas's Trojan  
 gods from  
 Lauyon to  
 Albe; but they  
 won't stop  
 there,  
 and go back to  
 Lauyon every  
 morning.
- Ascanius  
 reigns thirty-  
 four years,  
 and is suc-  
 ceeded by  
 Silvius.
- Ascanius's son,  
 Sysillius,
- lies by Lavinia's  
 niece,
- (as wild young  
 men will,)  
 and Silvius  
 asks what will  
 come of the  
 child.

<sup>1</sup> *dame take.* The next line is  
 from P.

<sup>2</sup> *sett þam.*

<sup>3</sup> *to.*

<sup>4</sup> *þe morn þai.*

<sup>5</sup> *wilde.*

<sup>6</sup> *Albe his toun.*

<sup>7</sup> *In.*

<sup>8</sup> *did.*

<sup>9</sup> *his name was Sisillius.* [leaf 6.]

*Qui estoit només Silvius :*

*Le nom à son oncle porta,*

*Mais poi vesqui, et poi dura.*

Wace, p. 6, l. 112-114.

<sup>10</sup> *clerkes.*

<sup>11</sup> *bad þam cast lotes.*

**Hic natus  
est Brutus.**

“He'll kill his  
father and  
mother,  
leave the land,

and come to  
great honour.”

His mother  
dies in child-  
birth, her boy  
is named  
Brutus,  
and when he is  
fifteen

he accidentally  
shoots his  
father,

and then for  
fear runs away  
to Greece,  
where he finds  
the folk of Troy  
in servage

‘What schold of þat child bycome,<sup>1</sup>  
 . Good or wykke,<sup>2</sup> what maner dome.’  
 þey seide, ‘þey founde (als þeym was wo,)  
 ffader & moder scholde he<sup>3</sup> sloo, 844  
 & out of londe go for þat chaunce,  
 And sipen come to god cheuysance ;  
 Passe he scholde mani<sup>4</sup> a stour,  
 & syþen come to<sup>5</sup> gret honour.’ 848  
 þey founde syþen, als þey seyde,  
 þat of his burþe<sup>6</sup> his moder deide ;  
 His moder deide al so swiþe ;  
 þe child lyuede ; þey were al bliþe. 852  
 Brutus, þus his name þey teld,  
 Whan he was of fiftene ȝer<sup>7</sup> eld,  
 His ffader & he to wode þey went,  
 . To venerye he gaf his tent ; 856  
 An herde of hertes sone þey met,  
 At a triste<sup>8</sup> to schete, Brutus was set ;  
 He auysed hym opon an hert,—  
 . Hys ffader passed bytwixt ouerthwert,— 860  
 & wyþ þat schote his ffader he slow ;  
 Al vnwylland þat draught he drow.<sup>9</sup>  
 . Whan Brutus sey<sup>10</sup> hys ffader ded,  
 . He nyste what was best to red ;<sup>11</sup> 864  
 . ffor deol & drede away he nam  
 Tyl Grece fro when his fader cam ;<sup>12</sup>  
 þe folk of Troye þer he fond,  
 þat lyuede in seruage y þe lond.<sup>13</sup> 868  
 Elenum, Pryamyes<sup>14</sup> sone,

<sup>1</sup> childe com.

<sup>2</sup> itt.

<sup>3</sup> he suld.

<sup>4</sup> mony.

<sup>5</sup> itt.

<sup>6</sup> when he was born.

<sup>7</sup> was fiften ȝere.

<sup>8</sup> at triste.

<sup>9</sup> bot his willand not it drouh.

<sup>10</sup> sawe.

<sup>11</sup> best rede.

<sup>12</sup> untill þe londe of Grece he cam.

<sup>13</sup> in þat lond.

<sup>14</sup> Priami.

- Wyþ sext þowsand þer gan<sup>1</sup> wone,  
 & ȝyt mo lordynges ynowe,  
 þat [þe]<sup>2</sup> Gregeys to seruage drowe, 872 to the Greeks  
 þat Pyrrus held in his truage. under Pyrrus.  
 Achilles sone was þenne of age.
- Brutus was þer bot a þrowe,  
 þat many his name gon wel<sup>3</sup> knowe. 876 Brutus soon  
 ffor his grete<sup>4</sup> hardynesse, gains much  
 ffor curtesye & for largesse, love from the  
 Mykel louede hym his owen kynde, Trojans,  
 & oper til hym were ful mynde. 880  
 Grete gyftes þey gon hym<sup>5</sup> gyue,  
 & seyde, "ȝyf we myght frely lyue,  
 "Ouer vs alle we wolde<sup>6</sup> þe make [leaf 4.] who say that  
 "Kyng,<sup>7</sup> ȝyf þou wost<sup>8</sup> vndertake. 884 they'll make  
 "Oure folk ys waxen for þe maystri, him their king  
 " & stalworthe are, & right<sup>9</sup> hardy:  
 "ȝyf we had on þat we dredde,  
 "þat vs in-til<sup>10</sup> bataille ledde, 888 if he'll lead  
 " & mayntened vs, & lered al so them to battle,  
 "What in bataille we scholden do,  
 "Syker scholde he haue<sup>11</sup> al oure seruage  
 "To ffreedom brynge,<sup>12</sup> or a-suwage. 892 and win them  
 "Seuen<sup>13</sup> þousand now we are freedom:  
 "Of knyghtes<sup>14</sup> to bataille ȝare, they are 7000  
 "Wypoute seriauntz & oper pytaille<sup>15</sup> strong in  
 "þat ar nought for to sette in taille. 896 knights, besides  
 "ȝyf þou wilt vnder-take þys þynge, footmen not  
 "We wyl þe make our alder kyng,<sup>16</sup> worth count-  
 ing.

<sup>1</sup> gañ he.<sup>2</sup> þe.<sup>3</sup> his name manyon gañ.<sup>4</sup> mykell.<sup>5</sup> gyftes forto.<sup>6</sup> all with.<sup>7</sup> duc, Wace, p. 10, l. 182.<sup>8</sup> wild.<sup>9</sup> full.<sup>10</sup> vnto.<sup>11</sup> I trowe he suld.<sup>12</sup> bringe. Lamb MS. kyng.<sup>13</sup> See "sext," l. 870, above. (six, Wace, p. 10, l. 177.)<sup>14</sup> knyghtes redy.<sup>15</sup> sergeantes & oper pedale.<sup>16</sup> duc. Wace, p. 10, l. 182.



|                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                           |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
|                                                                                                | . " & at þy biddyng we wyl bowe:<br>" Doute þe nought, we are ynowe;"                                                                                                                     | 900 |
| Meanwhile<br>Assarakus is<br>born,                                                             | . Als þey til hym spek often <sup>1</sup> þus,<br>A bacheler men calde Assarakus<br>Was born y þe lond of Grece;<br>Of þat blod he hadde a spece,                                         | 904 |
| half Greek,<br>half Trojan,                                                                    | ffor his ffader was Gregeys,<br>Hys moder of Troye, þe stori seys;<br>. Hys ffader was a lordyng,                                                                                         | 908 |
|                                                                                                | . þe most of þe lond saue þe kyng,<br>And gat hym opon bastardie<br>. By on of Troye in rybaudie;<br>. & for he gat hym on his rage,                                                      | 912 |
| His father<br>gives him three<br>castles,<br>which his<br>brothers try<br>to take from<br>him. | He gaf hym in heritage<br>pre casteles þat weren gode,<br>Tyl his clopyng & his fode.<br>Hys brethren wold han <sup>2</sup> reft hit hym,<br>Bot he bar hym so stout & grym; <sup>3</sup> | 916 |
| But the Tro-<br>jans help him,                                                                 | ffor þe Trogens wiþ hym helde,<br>þe boldeloker <sup>4</sup> bar vp his schelde,<br>ffor he was on þat wolde þem saue,<br>& at his castles recet to <sup>5</sup> haue.                    | 920 |
| choose Brutus<br>king, who                                                                     | Wyþ his conseil & hys socour<br>Made þey Brutus þeyr gouernour. <sup>6</sup>                                                                                                              |     |
|                                                                                                | Brutus sey <sup>7</sup> & vnderstod<br>Hys folk was alle strong & god,                                                                                                                    | 924 |
|                                                                                                | . And hym self wel of myght<br>. þeym for to fende & to <sup>8</sup> fight.<br>He dide enforce <sup>9</sup> þe casteles <sup>10</sup> wel;<br>Hys folk he warned ilk a del,               | 928 |
| victuals the<br>castle, and<br>gathers all the<br>Trojans into it.                             |                                                                                                                                                                                           |     |

<sup>1</sup> *titt spak oft.*<sup>2</sup> *his breþer wild haf.*<sup>3</sup> *grym.* [leaf 6, back.]<sup>4</sup> *boldelyer.*<sup>5</sup> *castell rescet.* ? *retet*, Lamb. MS.<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. adds—& with his witt & his lokyng  
Was sir Brutus chosen kyng.<sup>7</sup> *sawe.*<sup>8</sup> *þam forto defende in.*<sup>9</sup> *did force.*

& bad hem to þe casteles<sup>1</sup> drawe,  
 . þo þat were of Troyes lawe,—  
 Men & wymen & children<sup>2</sup> ylkone  
 . þat to hym hadde mad þer mone—  
 & þider scholde þer godes<sup>3</sup> lede,  
 . Vntil þo casteles<sup>4</sup> for doute & drede.  
 . Whan þey hadde þer godes lad,  
 . Byside þe casteles busked<sup>5</sup> & spred,  
 . & Brutus saugh his men wel dyght  
 . All redy vnto þe fyght,  
 Brutus dide write a bref,  
 Vnto sire Pandras, kyng & chef;  
 þys ys þe lettre<sup>6</sup> þat he sent,  
 þe latyn, y vnderstonde,<sup>7</sup> þus ment :

932

936

[leaf 4, col. 2.] a letter, saying,  
 940

When Brutus  
 sees that all is  
 right,  
 and his men  
 ready for  
 battle,  
 he sends king  
 Pandras

### ¶ *Epistola Bruti ad Regem Grecorum.*

“ For þe schame & þe outrage  
 “ þat ys don þe noble lynage  
 “ Of kyng Dardan, our auncessour,  
 “ At meschef ys in deshonor,  
 “ In cheytifte longe haue<sup>8</sup> þey leyn,  
 “ Bot now þey hope to come ageyn;  
 “ Wip<sup>9</sup> o wille alle haue þey spoken,  
 “ In o conseil alle ar þey loken—  
 “ <sup>10</sup>& wyþ þeym alle y am leued—  
 “ Me to haue to þer heued;<sup>10</sup>  
 “ I sende to þe þer alder sawe,  
 “ þat to þe wode þey wil hem drawe;  
 “ þer ys hem leuere lyue yn wo,  
 “ In wyldernesse wyþ bestes go,

“ The outraged  
 944 descendants of  
 Dardanus

have long  
 948 been slaves,  
 but now mean  
 to be free.

They have  
 chosen Brutus  
 to be their  
 952 king,

and will rather  
 live free with  
 beasts in the  
 956 wilderness,

<sup>1</sup> castell.

<sup>2</sup> childere.

<sup>3</sup> þer godes þidere suld þei.

<sup>4</sup> vnto þe castell.

<sup>5</sup> castell busked.

<sup>6</sup> brefe.

<sup>7</sup> þat latyn vnderstode.

<sup>8</sup> caytifte long haf.

<sup>9</sup> In.

<sup>10-10</sup> Me to haf vnto þer heued.  
 & with þam all I am beleued.

|                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| than in thral-<br>dom have<br>plenty in<br>Greece. | " ffor to haue <i>per</i> wille fre, <sup>1</sup><br>" þan in þraldam haue plente;<br>" No maugre þou þeym cone<br>" þaw þey wolde <sup>2</sup> in fredom wone; 960<br>" Hit ys <i>per</i> kynde fredom to haue;<br>" <sup>3</sup> ffor þat whylom was <sup>4</sup> lord, now ys he knaue.<br>" Merueille þe nought <i>ȝyf</i> <sup>5</sup> þey haue grace,<br>" ffraunchise & fredom to purchase, 964<br>" ffor ilk man wolde— <i>ȝyf</i> he <sup>6</sup> myght—<br>" In fredom lyue, als hit ys <sup>6</sup> ryght.<br>" þerfore þey pray þe wiþ gode wille—<br>" And y comaunde for drede of ylle— 968<br>" þat heþen forward þou graunte hem fre,<br>" & namore <sup>7</sup> in þy seruage be.<br>" Sire kyng, we aske <sup>8</sup> þe bot skyle;<br>" Graunt vs to go wher þat <sup>9</sup> we wyle." 972 |
| King Pandras<br>wonders at the<br>demand,          | Whan þe kyng had herd <sup>10</sup> þys writ,<br>Hym merueillede out of wyt<br>þat þe Trogens were risen on heichte,<br>þat þey wolde ben fre oþer feyghte. <sup>11</sup> 976<br>He dide swythe make somons<br>ffor alle his erles and barons,<br>& ffor his broþer sire Antygon,<br>Sire Anacleton, & oþer on; 980<br>He telde hem þey of Troye were rysen,<br>& þoughte to make hem alle agrisen.<br>¶ Whan Brutus wiste al þer bost,<br>þat þe kyng þurueyed an host, 984<br>Byforn y þe kynges weye<br>Brutus did hym enbusche <sup>12</sup> & leye<br>Wip þre þousand armed & mo,                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| summons his<br>lords, and                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| tells them that<br>the Trojans<br>have rebelled.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| He raises an<br>army,                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| but Brutus lies<br>in ambush<br>with 3,000 men,    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

<sup>1</sup> ffor haf wilt þer fre.

<sup>2</sup> þat þe wilt.

<sup>3-5</sup> þat owe be.

<sup>4</sup> ne meruelt þe if.

<sup>5</sup> ilk wild be at þer.

<sup>6</sup> to lif as.

<sup>7</sup> no more.

<sup>8</sup> Sire we ask.

<sup>9</sup> go where.

<sup>10</sup> kyng herde.

<sup>11</sup> þei wild be fre or þei wild feght.

<sup>12</sup> busse.

þer<sup>1</sup> kyng Pandras wende sauely go. 988  
 Bot Brutus ros of his enbuschement,<sup>2</sup> attacks  
 & slow al þat he myghte hent; Pandras,  
 þe Gregeys schadden<sup>3</sup> sone asonder;  
 þey were vnarmed, hit was no wonder; 992  
 Intil a water highte<sup>4</sup> Akalon, drives many  
 þyder in flowe<sup>5</sup> many on, Greeks into the  
 And drenkled<sup>6</sup> þere a wel gret frape; [leaf 4, back.] water Akalon,  
 þe opere he closed, [t]hey<sup>7</sup> myghte nought skape;  
 Many were drenkled,<sup>6</sup> and mo were slayn, 997 slays more, and  
 þe kyng þer fledde wiþ<sup>8</sup> gret payn. Pandras flees.

## De bello inter Brutum &amp; Regem Grecorum.

þe kynges broþer Antygonus, His brother  
 He sey þe chaunce fel on þem þus; 1000 Antigonus  
 His folk he relyed<sup>9</sup> hym to, collects his  
 ffor to assay eft what þey might do;<sup>10</sup> men, and  
 "Schamely," he sais, "ar we desconfit!  
 "Lat hem nought passe fro vs so quit." 1004  
 Whan þey were to-gyder y-comen,  
 Ageyn þe Trogens boldely þey nomen;<sup>11</sup> attacks the  
 þanne bigan a scharp bataille; Trojans,  
 Egrelly þe parties gonne assaille 1008  
 Wiþ bowe & spere, &<sup>12</sup> swerdes dynt;  
 Bot atte þe laste<sup>13</sup> þe Gregeys tynt.  
 At þat metyng (among ylkon) who take many  
 Taken was sire Antygon, 1012 Greeks  
 prisoners.

<sup>1</sup> þe.  
<sup>2</sup> bussement.  
<sup>3</sup> schad.  
<sup>4</sup> hate.  
<sup>5</sup> þei fled.  
<sup>6</sup> drenkled.  
<sup>7</sup> þei.

<sup>8</sup> kyng fled with full. [leaf 7.]  
<sup>9</sup> relied þam.  
<sup>10</sup> & seid fraist zitt what we may  
 do.  
<sup>11</sup> MS. nomen.  
<sup>12</sup> with lance with.  
<sup>13</sup> so scharpe þei com.

|                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                                    | . & an oper, <sup>1</sup> sire Anacletoun.<br>& best of hem <sup>2</sup> were born doun :<br>pyse two prisons, <sup>3</sup> Brutus þem led ;<br>. Of þeym of Grece, fewe <sup>4</sup> þer fledde.                            | 1016 |
| Pandras                                                                                            | Pandras þe kyng had sorw in sight <sup>5</sup><br>þat he was so al desconfit,<br>& þat his brother taken was ;<br>He com ageyn into þat pas,                                                                                 | 1020 |
| gets more help,<br>and comes<br>again to the<br>ambush,<br>but Brutus is<br>safe in his<br>castle, | & wende haue founde Brutus þore,—<br>Help he hadde, & purueyed more,—<br>Bot Brutus was til his castles <sup>6</sup> gon <sup>7</sup><br>Wip Antygo & Anacleton ; <sup>8</sup>                                               | 1024 |
| where Pandras<br>hastes to<br>besiege him,                                                         | He warnysched hem wip men of armes,<br>ffor he dredde deseite & harmes.<br>. Whon þe kyng fond hym þer nought,<br>To bisege þe castel he pought ;                                                                            | 1028 |
|                                                                                                    | . Vnto þe sege he hym hastede<br>. His purueaunce he wold were wastede ;<br>Berfreys dide make to gyue assaut<br>þat Brutus mought falle y þe <sup>9</sup> faut ;                                                            | 1032 |
| and assault him<br>with man-<br>gonels.<br>Brutus's men<br>shoot with<br>arbalists,<br>cast trees, | To mangeneles <sup>10</sup> he dide make stones,<br>Wip þer assaut to casten alle at ones.<br>þey wyþynne stode in karneles,<br>Wyþ arblastes <sup>11</sup> schotten ageyn quarels,<br>& <sup>12</sup> grete tres ful vnryde | 1036 |

<sup>1</sup> & a lord.<sup>2</sup> & þe most of þam.<sup>3</sup> þe to prison. Wace has *Cals* (*ceux*) *anmen* Brutus a soi, p. 16, l. 305.<sup>4</sup> fo.<sup>5</sup> & site.<sup>6</sup> to his castell.<sup>7</sup> *Si mist le siège à Parantin.  
Ce quida que Brutus i fust  
Et ses prisons mis i tust ;  
Mais il fu el boschage entrés**Et ses prisons i a menées.*

Wace, p. 16, l. 310–15.

For Parantin the MS. de Ste-Genev. reads *Paladin*, which may be "*Palantenus*, a little town of which Pausanias and Xenophon have spoken." Le Roux de Lincy, *ib.*<sup>8</sup> Anacletun & Antigone.<sup>9</sup> with.<sup>10</sup> magnels.<sup>11</sup> alblastes.<sup>12</sup> þe.

PANDRAS DIGS A DITCH ROUND BRUTUS'S CASTLE. 37

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pey caste agein on ylk a side;<br>Enginours pey hadde wyþynne <sup>1</sup> ynowe,<br><sup>2</sup> At peym wyþouten ageyn to þrowe, <sup>3</sup><br>pat non dyrste comen <sup>4</sup> þe wal ney,<br>Bot for drede hel[d] peym a drey <sup>5</sup> ;<br>pey casten <sup>6</sup> wyldfyr wip <sup>7</sup> engynes.<br>Brent per bretaxkes, ropes, & lynes,<br>Cables, cordes, tymber per was. <sup>8</sup><br>Who was þen wo bot <sup>9</sup> kyng Pandras?<br>Bot he <sup>8</sup> saw hit myghte nought vaille,<br>peyr assaut ne peyr trauaylle;<br>He drow hym þepen, & gaf hym <sup>9</sup> place,[ll. 4, bk. col. 2.]<br>& bygan faste to manace;<br>He dyde make for fens a dyk<br>Aboute þe castel a gret stryk,<br>& closed yn al Brutes host,<br>pat non myght skape by no <sup>10</sup> cost.<br>pe kyng dide ȝyt pale hit <sup>11</sup> eftē;<br>Bot þre entres, non <sup>12</sup> was left.<br>pe kyng dide so wel loke þo,<br>pat non of hem myghte passe hem <sup>13</sup> fro<br>. To do Brutus no suwaute, <sup>14</sup><br>. So wel was loked ylkan <sup>15</sup> entre. | 1040<br><br><br><br><br>1044<br><br>1048<br><br>1052<br><br>1056<br><br>1060 | <br><br><br><br><br>and burn their<br>besiegers'<br>engines with<br>wild fire,<br><br>till Pandras's<br>attack is<br>repulsed.<br><br>Pandras then<br>digs a ditch<br>all round<br>Brutus's host,<br>so that no one<br>can get out. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ De obsidione Bruti per Regem Greecorum.

|                                                                                                                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| þe sege was hard to peym wyþynne,<br>& þey wyþoute myghte nought wynne,<br>Ne nought ne schold, of ful fer <sup>16</sup> longe, | Brutus's men<br>are hard<br>pressed, |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> had þei with þam.  
<sup>2-3</sup> þat þei without agayn þam  
throwe. [leaf 7, col. 2.]  
<sup>3</sup> MS. comen.  
<sup>4</sup> hast.  
<sup>5</sup> ? MS. wiy.  
<sup>6</sup> Tot l'ont mis em poldre et en  
cendre. Wace, p. 17, l. 335.  
<sup>7</sup> was wo bot þe.

<sup>8</sup> The kyng.  
<sup>9</sup> þien & gaf þam.  
<sup>10</sup> ascape at.  
<sup>11</sup> did it palace ȝitt.  
<sup>12</sup> nouht.  
<sup>13</sup> hym.  
<sup>14</sup> suate.  
<sup>15</sup> ilk.  
<sup>16</sup> of fult.

|                                                                                                            |                                                   |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                                            | zyf hit ne were for longer stronge ;              | 1064 |
| having little<br>corn, and ask<br>him what they<br>shall do.                                               | pe faute þey dredde comynge byforn, <sup>1</sup>  |      |
|                                                                                                            | pe host was mykel, & lite <sup>2</sup> had corn ; |      |
|                                                                                                            | þey asked Brutes of conseil,                      |      |
|                                                                                                            | What þey schold do for more vitail :              | 1068 |
|                                                                                                            | “Conseile vs er hit be goon,                      |      |
|                                                                                                            | “Hit ys to <sup>3</sup> late whan we haue non,    |      |
|                                                                                                            | “Whan we haue nough[t] <sup>4</sup> vs to fede,   |      |
|                                                                                                            | “pe castel most we zelde <sup>5</sup> nede.”      | 1072 |
| He thinks of a<br>plan,                                                                                    | þus þey seide, þe men were wyse,                  |      |
|                                                                                                            | & Brutus bypoughte hym of queintise :             |      |
|                                                                                                            | Queyntise bihouede <sup>6</sup> hym nedly þenke,  |      |
|                                                                                                            | pat his enemy schold waite <sup>7</sup> a blenk ; | 1076 |
|                                                                                                            | & mykel peril byhoues hym haue,                   |      |
|                                                                                                            | pat auntres hym his frend to saue.                |      |
|                                                                                                            | Brutus had yn his prison                          |      |
|                                                                                                            | Antygon & Anacleton ;                             | 1080 |
| and tells his<br>prisoner<br>Anacletus<br>that he may<br>save his own<br>life and the<br>king's brother's, | Brutes tok hym by þe top,                         |      |
|                                                                                                            | & seide, “Hedles schal þou hop <sup>8</sup> !     |      |
|                                                                                                            | “Bot þou do als y þe seye,                        |      |
|                                                                                                            | “Of myn hand[e] schalt þou deye, <sup>9</sup>     | 1084 |
|                                                                                                            | “Boþe þe kynges broþer and þou ;                  |      |
|                                                                                                            | “& boþe myght þou saue now.” <sup>10</sup>        |      |
|                                                                                                            | “Sire,” he seide, “do þour wille !                |      |
|                                                                                                            | “How <sup>11</sup> mygh[t] y vs saue fro ylle,    | 1088 |
|                                                                                                            | “Sey me, sire, on what manere ;                   |      |
|                                                                                                            | “& zyf y may, y wol þow here.”                    |      |
| if he'll go to<br>the Grecian<br>sentinels,                                                                | Brutus seyde, “þou schalt <sup>12</sup> go.       |      |
|                                                                                                            | “Alone to nyght, wyþouten mo, <sup>13</sup>       | 1092 |

<sup>1</sup> *Defaut þei dred comand afor.*<sup>2</sup> *litell.*<sup>3</sup> *ful.*<sup>4</sup> *haf non.*<sup>5</sup> *vs zelde.*<sup>6</sup> *behoues.*<sup>7</sup> *salt wate.* The next two lines  
are omitted in P.<sup>8</sup> *hedeles salt þou hoppe.*<sup>9</sup> *Mal cuivert, fait il, jà morras.*

Wace, p. 19, l. 375.

<sup>10</sup> *may þou saue þow.* [leaf 7, back.]<sup>11</sup> In the Lambeth MS. *Bot zyf y*  
are dotted under for omission, and  
*how* is written over.<sup>12</sup> *salt.*<sup>13</sup> *To-nyght at bedtyme without*  
*me.*

- " To þeym þat loke þat on<sup>1</sup> entre,  
 " & sey til hem als y sey þe:  
 " Sey þou hast stolen þe kynges brother  
 " Out of prison, & non oþer;  
 " In to þe wode þou hast<sup>2</sup> hym led,  
 " Bot ferrer may<sup>3</sup> þou nought, for dred,  
 " ffor þo men þat þe wode loke,  
 " þat hym ne þe þey ouertoke;  
 " Bot ilkon, bid hem come wiþ þe,  
 " þat noman byhinde be;  
 " & we schul be busched<sup>4</sup> þer biside,  
 " & ȝyf y may, þey schol<sup>5</sup> abyde  
 " þat þey ne go nought vs to wrye,  
 " Ne [nought] desturble me my weye."  
 Anacletus graunted wel,  
 ȝyf Brutus wold be tryst<sup>6</sup> as stel  
 þat his lyf he wolde<sup>7</sup> hym saue.  
 Brutus dide hym sykernesse haue.  
 Anacletus, forþ he went,  
 & dide als Brutus had hym sent.  
 At bed-tyme, when men were in<sup>8</sup> rest,  
 Brutus wiþ his folk was<sup>9</sup> prest,  
 & wel armed wente þer weye  
 þer he knew by o valeye.<sup>10</sup>  
 In þe wode bisides þat entre  
 He busched hem in parties þre.  
 When al were busched, man & stede,  
 Anacletus bygan<sup>11</sup> hym spede,  
 & com to þem þat kepte þe pas,  
 & seide, fro Brutus stolen he was.
- tell them he has  
 rescued the  
 king's brother,  
 and ask them  
 to fetch him  
 from the wood,  
 (while Brutus  
 lies in ambush  
 and seizes  
 their post.)  
 Anacletus  
 agrees to this.  
 Brutus puts  
 his men  
 in ambush  
 in a valley  
 in three  
 divisions,  
 and Anacletus  
 goes to the  
 Grecians who  
 keep the pass,

<sup>1</sup> þe ton.<sup>2</sup> has.<sup>3</sup> & ferrer myght.<sup>4</sup> schol be busched.<sup>5</sup> schol.<sup>6</sup> were treste.<sup>7</sup> wild.<sup>8</sup> to.<sup>9</sup> all.<sup>10</sup> þer he had purueied in a valcie.<sup>11</sup> he gan.



#### 40 BRUTUS'S AMBUSH KILLS ALL PANDRAS'S DIVISION.

tells them he  
has hidden  
Antigonus in  
the wood,

and they must  
come there and  
fetch him.

**The Grecians  
believe this, and  
rush off to the  
wood,  
past Brutus's  
ambush.**

**Brutus sur-  
rounds them,  
and kills every  
man.**

Alle þey kende<sup>1</sup> hym þat þer were,  
 & asked hym how he com þere; 1124  
 Sire Antigon, þe kynges broþer,  
 þey askede ȝif<sup>2</sup> he lyuede als oþer.  
 He seide, "þe kynges brother & y  
 " Ar skaped out fol queyntely; 1128  
 " In þe wode y haue hym hid  
 " ffor sight of men, ȝyf so bityd,  
 " ȝyf ony had perseyued vs  
 " & lad vs<sup>3</sup> a-geyn til Brutus; 1132  
 " Bot alone dar he nought go,  
 " þerfore come y after mo;  
 " þe gyues aboute his fet þey rynge,  
 " & alone dar y<sup>4</sup> hym nought brynge; 1136  
 " Comes wyþ me, y schal ȝow lede  
 " þer he ys, & has gret drede."  
 þey trowed hym, þat he soþ seyde,  
 & schet forthe al in a breyd,<sup>5</sup> 1140  
 In to þe wode alle on a route,  
 þey þoughte<sup>6</sup> of no treson ne doute.  
 Anacletus forþ þem led  
 Tyl Brutus folk, þer þey wer spred; 1144  
 & Brutus perseyued al þer pryde,<sup>7</sup>  
 & bylapped hem on ylk a<sup>8</sup> side  
 So þat non ne myghte scape,  
 Bot al wor flayd<sup>9</sup> at o frape; 1148  
 Com neuere non of þo a-geyn  
 þat myghte þem warne, knyght ne swayn.

<sup>1</sup> *Idem.*

<sup>2</sup> where.

<sup>3</sup> & led.

<sup>1</sup> & I alone dur.

• att a braid.

<sup>6</sup> & thouth.

**7 tide.**

<sup>8</sup> *umbilapped* þam oñ ilk.

<sup>9</sup> *were slone.*

*De capcione Regis Grecorum per Anacletum.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| þen parted Brutus his host in þre,<br>& sette þem alle in certeynte,<br>How priuely þey schold[e] <sup>1</sup> go<br>Wypoute noise, wypoute wo,<br>Neyþer byhynde ne byforn,<br>" Ne smite nought noman <sup>2</sup> born,<br>" Tyl y come þer þe kyng lys,<br>" & men wyþ me of god auys.<br>" & whan y am at his paулoun,<br>" þen schal y blowe <sup>3</sup> a gret soun,<br>" Myn horn þat ȝe wel knowe,<br>" A blast to ȝow y schal blowe.<br>" "þen spares non, bot sles on fast<br>" (When þat y haue blowe þat blaste), <sup>4</sup><br>" Slepyng, wakyng, <sup>5</sup> þat ȝe may fynde,<br>" þat ys of þe Gregeys kynde."<br>When þat Brutus his horn blew,<br>Hys men hit herde þat hit wel <sup>6</sup> knew;<br>þen spared þey non, bot slow al down;<br>On & oper, erl & baroun,<br>þey slowe þem alle right at þer wille,<br>On slepe þey founden hem fol stille;<br>Hadde þey <sup>7</sup> no grace ne pouste<br>To armen þem, neyþer <sup>8</sup> to fle.<br>Byhinde, bifore, on þeym þei cam,<br>Vneþes any a-wey þer nam;<br>ȝyf ani a-scaped þorow a <sup>9</sup> chaunce,<br>ȝit bifel þem as foule a chaunce; <sup>10</sup> | <p>He then divides<br/>his host into<br/>three,<br/>and orders all<br/>to go quietly<br/>through the<br/>enemy's camp</p> <p>till he reaches<br/>the king's<br/>pavilion;</p> <p>then he,<br/>Brutus, will<br/>blow a blast on<br/>his horn,<br/>and his men<br/>are to kill<br/>every one of<br/>Greekish kind<br/>they can find.</p> <p>This is done;</p> <p>all the Greeks<br/>are slain,</p> |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>1152</p> <p>1156</p> <p>1160</p> <p>1164</p> <p>1168</p> <p>1172</p> <p>1176</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

<sup>1</sup> *sulde.*<sup>2</sup> *MS. nomam.*<sup>3</sup> *I sett blawe.*<sup>4-5</sup> *& whan I haf blowen a blaste,  
Spares non bot slo att faste.*<sup>6</sup> *Slepend wakand.*<sup>6</sup> *& wele it.*<sup>7</sup> *had.* [leaf 8.]<sup>8</sup> *ne.*<sup>9</sup> *thorgh.*<sup>10</sup> *it fett þam a foule vengeance.*

42 PANDRAS IS TAKEN.—ARE THE TROJANS TO STAY OR GO?

|                                                       |                                                                                                 |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| or fall from<br>rocks,                                | Of <sup>1</sup> grete roches þey fulle al doun,<br>& al fur <sup>2</sup> -frusched bak & croun, | 1180 |
| or are<br>drowned;                                    | Oþer þey were drowned <sup>3</sup> in watres deþe,<br>Vneþes myghte ony þem <sup>4</sup> kepe.  |      |
| king Pandras<br>is taken<br>prisoner,                 | <b>B</b> rutes tok þe kyng Pandras<br>& al þat in his paulyon was.                              | 1184 |
|                                                       | Wypoute ani kynes ylle<br>Vnto þe morn he held hem stille.                                      |      |
|                                                       | At morn y <sup>5</sup> þe sonne rysynge,<br>Brutus led Pandras þe kyng                          | 1188 |
| and put in<br>hold,                                   | Vntil his <sup>7</sup> castel, his owen hold,<br>& dide hym kepe wiþ knyghtes bold.             |      |
| and his treasure<br>is distributed<br>by Brutus.      | Syþen tok Brutus al þe tresour<br>þat he had wonnen <sup>7</sup> yn þat stour,                  | 1192 |
|                                                       | & gaf his knyghte largely,<br>& als til oþer fol corteysly. <sup>8</sup>                        |      |
|                                                       | þat oþer <sup>9</sup> day, conseil he tok<br>Amanges <sup>10</sup> þe commune, & bad hem lok    |      |
| Next day<br>Brutus asks<br>his commons                | What were to done of kyng Pandras,<br>þat in his prison holden was,                             | 1197 |
|                                                       | Wheþer þey redden hym for to slo, <sup>11</sup><br>Oþer quyttly let hym go:                     | 1200 |
| whether<br>Pandras is to<br>be killed or<br>set free. | "Conseilles wel now alle of þys,<br>"þat non ne seye þat y do mys."                             |      |
| Some advise                                           | Many on seyde þeir auys,<br>Of on & oþer þat weren wys:                                         | 1204 |
|                                                       | þys conseyl was ofte an honde, <sup>12</sup><br>To take partie of þe londe, <sup>13</sup>       |      |
| that they shall<br>settle in<br>Pandras's land;       | & euere haue hit in heritage<br>ffirely wypouten seruage,                                       | 1208 |

<sup>1</sup> On.

<sup>2</sup> all to.

<sup>3</sup> Or were dronkend.

<sup>4</sup> couth any þam.

<sup>5</sup> In þe mornynge at.

<sup>6</sup> Vnto þe.

<sup>7</sup> won.

<sup>8</sup> & oþer yerof had curtesy.

<sup>9</sup> þe toþer.

<sup>10</sup> thorgh.

<sup>11</sup> MS. flo. P. has red hym forto slo.

<sup>12</sup> on hand.

<sup>13</sup> a partie of þe land.

- & to haue acquitaunce  
 Of þe barons for alle chaunce.  
 Oper seye,<sup>1</sup> þat þer ware,  
 " þem were bettere alle<sup>2</sup> whare ; 1212 others that they shall go elsewhere.  
 " Aske we leue at þe kyng, [leaf 5, back.]  
 " & go we seke vs oper wonyng  
 " Wyp oure children<sup>3</sup> & oure wyues ;  
 " ffor þo<sup>4</sup> þat hates, alday strives." 1216  
 pyse to skyles forþ þey kest,<sup>5</sup>  
 Whylk to take were þe best.  
 ¶ A knyght vp styrted als þey spek þus— Membricius counsels them  
 His name was sire Membricius— 1220  
 " Alle þe reson<sup>6</sup> ze haue forþ brought,  
 " þe beste of alle ne se ze<sup>7</sup> nought ;  
 " Sertes, þys were our most profit :  
 " Wip loue & leue he quepe<sup>8</sup> vs quyt, 1224 to go away, getting ships and food from Pandras,  
 " & gyue vs shipes in to wende,  
 " & of his vitaille,<sup>9</sup> als he ys hende,  
 " & oper þyng þat we haue nede,  
 " To chargen hem wip vs to lede, 1228  
 " & til oure lord Brutus, our kyng,  
 " Ignogyn his doughter zyng.  
 " Lete vs þenne go do<sup>10</sup> our beste,  
 " & seke vs land opon<sup>11</sup> to rest ; 1232  
 " ffor ȝif we dwelle on þeym<sup>12</sup> here,  
 " We be þeym neuere lef<sup>13</sup> ne dere ;  
 " What we dide ones, þey schold wel<sup>14</sup> þenk, as the Greeks will never like them, remembering  
 " & wait<sup>15</sup> vs wyp a wykked blenk ; 1236  
 " Schal we neuere rightly haue pees,

<sup>1</sup> seid.<sup>2</sup> elles. [leaf 8, col. 2.]<sup>3</sup> our childere.<sup>4</sup> þi.<sup>5</sup> þis tuo skilles forth þei cast.<sup>6</sup> reasons.<sup>7</sup> alle seie ze.<sup>8</sup> quede.<sup>9</sup> & of vitaille.<sup>10</sup> þan.<sup>11</sup> london.<sup>12</sup> with þam.<sup>13</sup> leue.<sup>14</sup> þat we did now þan saff þei.<sup>15</sup> wate.

the woe the  
Trojans have  
wrought them,  
and the men  
they have slain:  
"Be sure the  
Greeks will  
revenge this :

from old sores  
come grievous  
wounds.

They must  
increase,  
we decrease ;  
and if they get  
a chance,  
they'll kill  
every Trojan."

All agree to  
follow Mem-  
bricius's advice.

They fetch  
Pandras,

" Bot wait <sup>1</sup> vs wyþ som wykked res.  
 " Gret ferly ne were hit nought,  
 " ffor mykel wo we haue þem wrought, 1240  
 " ffor we han slayn of þer kynde  
 " þat we myghte eyþer take <sup>2</sup> or fynde ;  
 " þerfore syker mot 3e be,  
 " Whan þey se tyme, or haue pouste, 1244  
 " þys bale wil þey eft vs brewe,  
 " Oure olde skapes <sup>3</sup> þey wille make newe ;  
 " & þus men seys, & ofte ys founde,  
 " Of old sor comeþ greuous wounde. 1248  
 " Non of vs alle—wel y wene—  
 " þat we naue don hem treye & tene ;  
 " þer frendes þorow vs han þey lorn,  
 " Or þer godes a-wey han born, 1252  
 " & þo þat lyuen, <sup>4</sup> þat now ar left,  
 " Vengaunce on vs þey wyl seke eft ;  
 " ffor þey wil <sup>5</sup> waxe & we schal <sup>5</sup> wanye ;  
 " When we ben fewe, <sup>6</sup> þey schol <sup>5</sup> be manye ;  
 " 3yf we ought falle, & þey ought ryse, 1257  
 " þey schul <sup>5</sup> til vs do <sup>7</sup> swylk iustise  
 " þat alle our Troiens ilkon schold <sup>5</sup> deye.  
 " þerfore y rede 3ow, chese þe w[e]ye, <sup>8</sup> 1260  
 " 3yf þat oure kyng þerto wyl rede ;  
 " & elles gos our kynde <sup>9</sup> to dede."  
 þen cried þey alle, & speke at ones,  
 " <sup>10</sup> Sire Membryce says wel ffor þe nones ! 1264  
 " At þys conseill consente we alle ;  
 " <sup>11</sup> No bettere for ne mai byfalle. <sup>10</sup>"

þe kyng þey broughte forþ anon, [leaf 5, back, col. 2.]  
 And his broþer sire Antygon, 1268

<sup>1</sup> wate.<sup>2</sup> myght ouertake.<sup>3</sup> mysdedis.<sup>4</sup> lyf.<sup>5</sup> satt. [leaf 8, back.]<sup>6</sup> be fo.<sup>7</sup> be.<sup>8</sup> 3e chese þe weie.<sup>9</sup> L. has kyng ; P. kynde.<sup>10-10</sup> Bien dit, bien dit, ce dient tuit.

Wace, p. 28, l. 560.

<sup>11</sup> Non better for vs may satt.

|                                                   |      |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|
| & askede hym leue fo[r] to go                     |      | and ask him      |
| Wipouten any more wo;                             |      |                  |
| þey askede hym what þey wold haue,                |      | for all they     |
| & ȝif he vouched on þem saue,                     | 1272 | want,            |
| & his doughter to be þer quen,                    |      | and for his      |
| Als hit <sup>1</sup> was ordeyned hem bytwen.     |      | daughter.        |
| þen sey þe kyng <sup>2</sup> þer myght was more   |      | Pandras sees he  |
| þan his was; þat dred he sore.                    | 1276 |                  |
| He graunted hem ylk a del                         |      | must give way:   |
| To gon at þer wyllle wel: <sup>3</sup>            |      |                  |
| " At ȝoure wille ȝe me <sup>4</sup> haue,         |      |                  |
| " & my doughter ȝe me <sup>4</sup> craue;         | 1280 |                  |
| " Y se y may non oþer <sup>5</sup> do,            |      |                  |
| " Myn enemy most y gyue hure <sup>6</sup> to;     |      |                  |
| " <sup>7</sup> My moste fo & my feloun            |      | he promises      |
| " Schal haue my doughter to warisoun.             | 1284 | his daughter,    |
| " Bot of o þyng ys my ioie, <sup>7</sup>          |      |                  |
| " He ys þe doughtiest man of Troye,               |      |                  |
| " & comen of þe nobleste blod:                    |      |                  |
| " þat now gladeþ most my mod. <sup>8</sup>        | 1288 |                  |
| " I graunte ȝow schipes ȝour folk to lede,        |      | ships, and food. |
| " & vitailles þat ȝe haue nede,                   |      |                  |
| " Wel more þan ys ȝoure deuise,                   |      |                  |
| " ȝyf þat þys <sup>9</sup> lond may hit suffise." | 1292 |                  |
| ff þen sente þe kyng <sup>10</sup> his messegers  |      | Pandras sends    |
| Vntil þe hauenes & costes sers, <sup>11</sup>     |      |                  |
| þat alle þe schipes on water myght saille         |      | for ships        |
| Schuld ben brought tyl o ryuaille,                | 1296 |                  |
| pere þey schold chese þe beste,                   |      | for the Trojans  |
| þat weren most oþer strengeste. <sup>12</sup>     |      | to choose from,  |

<sup>1</sup> þat.<sup>2</sup> þe kyng sawe.<sup>3</sup> þare awen wille.<sup>4</sup> may.<sup>5</sup> no noþer.<sup>6</sup> boe me gyf hir.<sup>7-7</sup> Omitted in P.<sup>8</sup> þat me gladdes most in mode.<sup>9</sup> if at þe.<sup>10</sup> The kyng sent.<sup>11</sup> in costestes seres.<sup>12</sup> or strangest. [leaf 8, back, col. 2.]

|                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| and they soon<br>provision them.                           | When þey had chosen at þer pay,<br>þey charged þey[m] fro day to <sup>1</sup> day,<br>& of þe beste in ylk a <sup>2</sup> contre<br>þey ledde to schip[pe] <sup>3</sup> gret plente. | 1300 |
| Pandras gives<br>his daughter<br>in marriage to<br>Brutus, | þe kyng dide his doughter brynge,<br>& gaf hure Brutus in weddyng,<br>And dide hym bettere in <sup>4</sup> alle wyse<br>þan Brutus asked, or any of hyse;                            | 1304 |
| and presents<br>gifts to the<br>knights.                   | ffor alle þat þer were, <sup>5</sup> baroun & knyght,<br>þey geuen hym after þer myght. <sup>6</sup>                                                                                 | 1308 |

¶ *Recessus Troianorum de terra Grecorum.*

|                                          |                                                                                                                                                   |                   |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| The Trojans                              | When þe Troianes were al dight<br>Wyþ seyl vpon þe mast vpright, <sup>7</sup><br>. Wip anker & ore, & oper ware,<br>. & were al redy for to fare, | 1312              |
| set sail                                 | . When þe wynd was wel þem lent,<br>. þey toke þer leue, & forþ þey went.<br>. When þey were redy to saille;                                      |                   |
| in 304 ships,                            | pre hundred schipes þer was in taille, <sup>8</sup><br>& foure mo, þe story seys,<br>When þey departed fro þe Gregeys.                            | 1316              |
| and after two<br>days                    | Two dayes þey sailled, & two nyght,<br>þat lond ne hauene reche þey ne myght; <sup>9</sup><br>þe þrydde day in þe euen tyde,                      | 1320              |
| arrive at<br>Leogise,<br>a waste island, | In Leogise þey gon to <sup>10</sup> ride.<br>Leogyse, þat ys <sup>11</sup> an ilde;<br>þat tyme was hit wast & wylde;                             | [leaf 5.]<br>1324 |

<sup>1</sup> charged þam day be.

<sup>2</sup> ilk.

<sup>3</sup> led to schippe.

<sup>4</sup> oñ.

<sup>5</sup> For ilkan.

<sup>6</sup> had gyft of hym after his ryght.

<sup>7</sup> vp oñ mast oñ hyght.

<sup>8</sup> þei were be tale.

<sup>9</sup> þei myght.

<sup>10</sup> gañ.

<sup>11</sup> þañ es.

- Man ne woman, non þey fond, uninhabited  
 ffor outlandes hadden<sup>1</sup> wasted þat lond,  
 & þe godes a-wey had born.  
 Bot bukke<sup>2</sup> & do, & hert wyþ horn, 1328 except by deer,  
 In þat ilde þey founde ynowe  
 þat þey slowe, & to þe schip<sup>3</sup> drowe, of which the  
 & stored þem wel of venyson Trojans kill  
 þat lasted hem a long seson. 1332 great store.  
 Als þey wente þorough þat contre, Then they  
 þey come vntil<sup>4</sup> a wast cite, come  
 & founde þer-inne a temple stande, on a temple  
 . þat whilom þe folk mys-lyuande 1336 where the mis-  
 . Worschiped þer-inne Maumetry,— believing folk  
 Dyane in lyknesse of o lefdy;<sup>5</sup>— once wor-  
 Wyþ man<sup>6</sup> lyknesse þe fend dide take, shipped  
 In þat liknesse þe folk dide make 1340 Diana in the  
 . An ymage, & worschiped þat same. likeness of a  
 Dyane was þe<sup>7</sup> ffendes name, woman,  
 In þys temple stod yn a gage<sup>8</sup> and made an  
 Swich an Erlyk man<sup>9</sup> ymage; 1344 image of her  
 þe folk þat hadde þer recet,<sup>10</sup>  
 Leued on þat ylke<sup>11</sup> Maumet;  
 þat fend telde þem mykel þynge  
 To holden hem yn mys-leuyng. 1348 which foretold  
 On fele maners scho scheweid hem syngne, things to keep  
 þerfore whilom þey held hure dygne. the people in  
 . To Brutus penne<sup>12</sup> was hit told, unbelief.  
 . How yn a temple þat was old 1352 This is told to  
 . ffond þey an ymage Brutus,  
 . þat whilom hadde gret seruage

<sup>1</sup> had.

<sup>2</sup> buk.

<sup>3</sup> to schippe.

<sup>4</sup> þei vnto.

<sup>5</sup> a ladie.

<sup>6</sup> Woman. I keep Wyþ man in the text on account of the earthly "man" in l. 1344.

<sup>7</sup> þat. [leaf 9.]

<sup>8</sup> stode a cage.

<sup>9</sup> suilk a maner like an.

<sup>10</sup> MS. retet. (Fr. recet.)

<sup>11</sup> on þat.

<sup>12</sup> þa.



- Of þe folk þat þer was wone,  
& þe tokene ȝit wil we mone. 1356
- and he takes  
12 of his pet r:  
and a priest,  
Sir Gerion,  
goes in to the  
image  
with a cup of  
hind's milk,  
and wine,  
and asks Diana  
what good land  
he and his may  
live in in peace.
- Brutes tok twelue of his peres,  
Eldest, and of faire maneres,  
& a prest of þer lawe,  
Sire Gerion, als seiþ þe sawe. 1360  
Brutes alone to þe ymage gan<sup>1</sup> loute,  
& alle þe opere leften<sup>2</sup> wyþoute;  
In his right hand, whan he com yn,  
He brouhte a coppe wyþ<sup>3</sup> milk & wyn 1364  
þat milked was of a whit hynde;  
Bysoughte Diane wyþ hertly<sup>4</sup> mynde  
Scheo wolde hym schewe som certein þynge  
In word, oper elles oper<sup>5</sup> toknynges, 1368  
What good land he myghte wone ynne,  
In pes, he, & al his kynne:  
Ouyde witnesseþ<sup>6</sup> hit, & seys  
þat hit is non oper weys: 1372

¶ *Diaa potens nemorum, terror siluestribus apri,  
Cui licet* [?].<sup>7</sup>

- He prays nine  
times,  
kneels nine  
times,  
circles the altar  
and kisses it  
nine times,  
throws the  
milk in the  
fire,
- Nyne tymes he made hys<sup>8</sup> preyere  
Wyþ softe wordes &<sup>9</sup> symple chere,  
Wip nyne knelynges byfore þe auter, [leaf 6, col. 2.]  
Als scheo was a god<sup>10</sup> of power; 1376  
Nyne syþe<sup>11</sup> he ȝede aboute,  
& kiste þe auter, & gan hit loute.  
þe milk þat he abouten bar,  
In a fyr he caste hit þar; 1380

<sup>1</sup> Brutus gan þe ymage.

<sup>2</sup> he alone þei left.

<sup>3</sup> of.

<sup>4</sup> He souht Diane with herte-fult.

<sup>5</sup> worde or oper.

<sup>6</sup> witnes.

<sup>7</sup> licet [?] amfractus.

<sup>8</sup> þis.

<sup>9</sup> soft wordes in.

<sup>10</sup> was godes. P. transposes this  
line and the line above it.

<sup>11</sup> siþes.

Afterward,—*þus* we fynde,—  
 He tok *þe* skyn of *þat*<sup>1</sup> hynde,  
 & spredde hit *þer* on *þe* grounde,  
 & slepte *þeron* a wel god stounde.

spreads the  
 hind's skin on  
 the floor,

1384 sleeps on it,

### ¶ De Visione Bruty.

Brutus hym þoughte,<sup>2</sup> when he was leyd,  
 Diane com to hym & seyde:

and dreams  
 that Diana  
 tells him to go  
 beyond France  
 to a pleasant  
 isle,

1388

" Ouer ffrance, toward *þe* west,

" Is an Ilde, on of *þe* best;

" ffol lykyng<sup>3</sup> ys *þer* wonyng,

" & plentiuous of ylka þyng;

" ffruit to bere, god ys *þat*<sup>4</sup> lond;

" *þe* Geauntz haue hit now in hond;

1392

then in the  
 giants' hands,  
 even Albion,

" Albion ys now *þe* name,

" þorow *þe* schal hit haue oper fame,

" þer schal þou gynne a newe Troye,

and there make  
 a new Troy,

1396

" Til al þy kynde<sup>5</sup> newe ioye,

" & *þe* kynde *þat* comes of *þe*,

and beget a  
 renowned race.

" þorow al *þe* werld worschipe schul be;

" & *þat* Ilde þou hast of<sup>6</sup> herd,

" Wip se on alle halue ys sperd."<sup>7</sup>

1400

Brutus ros, & vp hym set,

Brutus

He þoughte on hys drem *þat* he met,

& þanked Dyane hure gode wille;

And 3yf scheo myghte his drem fu[l]fulle,<sup>8</sup> 1404

vows to build  
 in the Isle

*þat* he myghte *þat* Ilde take,

In hure name he scholde do make

A temple god, an<sup>9</sup> ymage hende,

a temple and  
 image to Diana.

& worschipe hit<sup>10</sup> til his lyues ende.

1408

<sup>1</sup> *þe*.

<sup>2</sup> *Brutus thought*. [leaf 9, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> *wel likend*.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *þer*.

<sup>5</sup> *to all þi kyne*.

<sup>6</sup> *þat þou has*.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *spred*; P. has *on ilk half*  
*is sperde*.

<sup>8</sup> *fulfille*.

<sup>9</sup> *g*.

<sup>10</sup> *hir*.

|                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                               |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| He tells his<br>friends his<br>dream.                                                                         | He telde <sup>1</sup> his drem sire Gerion,<br>& til piſe <sup>2</sup> oþer twelue ylkon.                                                                                                     |                 |
| They take to<br>their ſhips,<br>ſail off,                                                                     | So glad þey were, forth þey ȝode<br>Til þer ſchipes þat were on flode ;                                                                                                                       | 1412            |
|                                                                                                               | þeir ſeilles drowe þey right on hey, <sup>3</sup><br>Byfore þe wynd faſte þey fleȝ ; <sup>4</sup><br>Vmwhile weſt, vmwhile eſt, <sup>5</sup>                                                  |                 |
| and are driven                                                                                                | þer <sup>6</sup> ſchipes driuen in many tempeſt ;                                                                                                                                             | 1416            |
|                                                                                                               | What wyþ wele, what wiþ wo,<br>þe þrittyþe day, <sup>7</sup> leſſe ne mo,                                                                                                                     |                 |
| into the ſea of<br>Africa.                                                                                    | In-to þe ſe of Aufryke<br>þey comen, <sup>8</sup> & paſſed a gret ſtryke,                                                                                                                     | 1420            |
| They paſſe the<br>ake of<br>Salynes,                                                                          | A low <sup>9</sup> water of Salynes,<br>& oþer Loughes of Phyleſtynes, <sup>10</sup>                                                                                                          |                 |
| and Ruſticia-<br>dan ;                                                                                        | þe grete Lough of Ruſticiadan, <sup>11</sup><br>Bitwyxte þe hilles of Dazaran, <sup>12</sup>                                                                                                  | 1424            |
| and between<br>the hills of<br>Dazaran are<br>attacked by<br>robbers, but<br>fight their way<br>through them. | þey mette robbours of outlandes ;<br>þorow þem <sup>13</sup> þey paſſed wyþ dint of handes,<br>ffor þey gon hem faſte for to <sup>14</sup> aſſaille ;<br>þe Trogens paſſede al þeir bataille, | 1428            |
|                                                                                                               | And tok <sup>15</sup> þer vitaille ylk a del                                                                                                                                                  | [leaf 6, back.] |
|                                                                                                               | þat þey were ſtored of <sup>16</sup> ſo wel.<br>þey paſſede þe water of Maluan, <sup>17</sup>                                                                                                 |                 |
| The Trojans<br>land at Mauri-<br>tania,                                                                       | & aryuede y þe lond of Maurytan,<br>þer þey come vnto þe lond,<br>& tok þe vitaille þat þey fond. <sup>18</sup>                                                                               | 1432            |

<sup>1</sup> & tolde.<sup>2</sup> to þe.<sup>3</sup> reght hie.<sup>4</sup> with þe wynd gan þei flie.<sup>5</sup> eſt vmwhile weſt.<sup>6</sup> ere.<sup>7</sup> In thritty daies. en trois jors, MS. du Roi, No. 27 ; en trente jors, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3-5</sup>. Colb., Wace, p. 34, note b.<sup>8</sup> com.<sup>9</sup> A lough of.<sup>10</sup> Et les Auteus as Philistins, Wace. C'est un port d'Afrique, appelé Autels des Philènes (Philenorum

Aræ). De Lincy from Michaud, p. 35.

<sup>11</sup> Ruſciadan, Wace. *Rusicada* est une ancienne ville d'Afrique, située en Numidie, près du fleuve Thapsa. De Lincy, p. 35.<sup>12</sup> montaignes d'Azaré, Wace. *Montes Azariæ* : De Lincy, p. 35.<sup>13</sup> þorgh.<sup>14</sup> þam faſt.<sup>15</sup> had.<sup>16</sup> of ſtored.<sup>17</sup> Now *Muluya* : De Lincy, p. 36.<sup>18</sup> londe . . fonde.

ffro þat o se vntil þat oper  
 þey robbede alle on & oper; 1436 plunder,  
 þey charget al þat þey myght lede,  
 Set vp þer sayl, & forþ þey zede. and sail

¶ *Transfretauerunt versus Hyspanniam & ibi inuen-*  
*erunt Coryneum.*

Wyp alle þer schipes & al þer pres  
 þey comen to þe Merkes<sup>1</sup> of Erkules; 1440 to the bounds  
 .Ercules was so doughti<sup>2</sup> man, of Hercules,  
 .Out of Troye þider he cam  
 .By se: als he wan by londe,  
 A piler of bras þer þey fonde, 1444 where he had  
 pat he dide sette for honour, set up a pillar  
 pat he was þider conquerour. of brass in his  
 þer fond þey Nykeres<sup>3</sup> þat myry song, Here they find  
 Out of þe weye to turne hem<sup>4</sup> wrong, 1448 Sirens, who  
 .Or to<sup>5</sup> forgete þer schip to stere, sing to turn  
 þorow þer song þat þey schold here.<sup>6</sup> them wrong,  
 So ar þo Nykeres faste<sup>7</sup> aboute  
 To brynge schipmen þer hit ys<sup>8</sup> doute, 1452 and who try  
 .To som swelw<sup>9</sup> to turne or steke, to lead shipmen  
 Oper a-geyn roches to breke; to some whirl-  
 þerfore hit ys a gret peril, pool  
 Schipmen for to liste<sup>10</sup> þer tyl. 1456 or rock.

<sup>1</sup> MS. comen. com to markes.

<sup>2</sup> was doughty a.

<sup>3</sup> Nihers.

*Seraines sont monstre de mer;*

*Des ciés poent femes samblar;*

*Poisson sunt del nombril aval.*

Wace, p. 37, l. 735.

P. inserts after song,—

þat drecched þam ferly long.

In þe west see es þer wonynge;

*As women mery þei synge*

*& þo þat listen to þer song/*

<sup>4</sup> þer weis þei turne.

<sup>5</sup> þei.

<sup>6</sup> for þer songe þat þei here.

<sup>7</sup> nyheres fast.

<sup>8</sup> it es.

<sup>9</sup> swelhu (swallow).

<sup>10</sup> to listene.

But the Trojans  
do not listen  
to them,

and sail on  
to Spain,  
where they  
find folk of  
Trojan race,

whose leader is  
Corineus,

who offer to go  
with them,  
and do sail in  
their company

þe Trogens knewe<sup>1</sup> þer song wel,  
þey lystned to þem neuere a del;  
þey had herd tellen þer byforen<sup>2</sup>  
How schipes had ben wyþ hem forloren.<sup>3</sup> 1460  
Wyþ peyne þey passede at þat tyde,<sup>4</sup>  
Vpon Spayne þer flete gan ryde,  
þer<sup>5</sup> þey fond at o ryuage  
Gret folk of þe Troiens<sup>6</sup> lynage, 1464  
þat on of þer auncessour<sup>7</sup>  
ffled fro Troye out of þe stour,  
Als þey dide ilk a man  
Whan þey of Grece to Troye cam.<sup>8</sup> 1468

Coryneus highte þeir ledere,  
& meintened hym<sup>9</sup> in pes & were.  
He was a man als a Geaunt,  
Tyl hym þey drowe alle<sup>10</sup> to waraunt. 1472  
pys Coryneus, he hadde gret ioye  
When þey<sup>11</sup> wyste þey were of Troye;  
To Brutes men þey were<sup>12</sup> ful meke,  
& asked ȝyf þey ȝede lond to seke, 1476  
þat þey myghte fynde til þeir<sup>13</sup> prow;  
þey seyde, "We wole wenden<sup>14</sup> wiþ ȝow."  
So Coryneus & his partie  
Wente forth in Brutes compaignie.<sup>15</sup> 1480  
¶ Whan þeyr fflote wyþ al þer wayne [lf. 6, bk., col. 2.]  
Turnede fro þe lond of Spaigne,

<sup>1</sup> þe Troiens knew.

<sup>2</sup> tell befor.

<sup>3</sup> scippes were for þam lorn.

<sup>4</sup> l. 756-64 of Wace are not translated.

<sup>5</sup> MS. þat. þer, P.

<sup>6</sup> of troie.

<sup>7</sup> Que Anthénor, un des barons,  
Wace, l. 776, p. 38.

<sup>8</sup> troie wañ.

<sup>9</sup> he mantend þam.

<sup>10</sup> as.

<sup>11</sup> he. (L. he altered to þey.)

<sup>12</sup> he was.

<sup>13</sup> mot fynd unto þer: and puts  
this line after the next.

<sup>14</sup> will wend.

<sup>15</sup> P. adds—

Brutus luffed wole Corineus  
a frende of hym for sir brutus.

- On þeyr right hand toward Peyto,  
 þe wynd to þat half bar hem to<sup>2</sup>;  
 þore þe se receiues Leyre,  
 Alle þe flote com wyþ gret eyre.—  
 .Leyre rennes þorow many contre,  
 .And euere<sup>3</sup> he metes wiþ þe se.—  
 .Boþe þer flote gon þer dwelle<sup>4</sup>  
 .Seuen daye, fullyke<sup>5</sup> to telle.  
 Out of þe schipes þey wente grete route,  
 & spredde þe contre alle aboute.  
 Goffar was kyng of Peyters;<sup>6</sup>  
 He sente knyghtes & squiers  
 To waite<sup>7</sup> who made on hym pres,  
 & wheþer þey soughte werre oþer<sup>8</sup> pees:  
 1484      towards Poitou.  
 1488      All reach the mouth of the Loire.  
 1492      After seven days they land,  
 and Goffar, king of Poitou, sends  
 1496      Numbert to ask who they are.  
 Corineus was go for<sup>9</sup> to chace,  
 .Venison to take of grace;  
 1500      Numbert finds Corineus, hunting,  
 Wyþ hym were two hundred<sup>10</sup> men  
 To serche aboute in feld & fen.  
 Wyþ Numbert mette Coryneus,  
 & Numbert spak til hym right þus:  
 1504      and asks him by whose leave he kills the king's deer,  
 "By whas<sup>11</sup> leue & whas<sup>11</sup> warant  
 "Are ȝe here alle chasand?<sup>12</sup>  
 " & by whas conseil are ȝe<sup>13</sup> here  
 "ffor to destruye þe kynges dere?  
 1508      against the king's express command.  
 "He[re] ne scholde ȝe make<sup>14</sup> chace  
 "Bot þorow me or þe kynges grace;  
 " & þe kyng forbed ilkon  
 "þat noman scholde take her non.      1512

<sup>1</sup> *perto.*<sup>2</sup> *bare þam so.*<sup>3</sup> *þer.*<sup>4</sup> *þer flotes boþe þer gan duelle.*<sup>5</sup> *days fully.*<sup>6</sup> *þerters.*<sup>7</sup> *witt.*<sup>8</sup> *or.*<sup>9</sup> *was gone.*<sup>10</sup> *trois cens. Wace, l. 812.*<sup>11</sup> *whos. [leaf 10.]*<sup>12</sup> *chasant.*<sup>13</sup> *& be whos rede etc.*<sup>14</sup> *suld ȝe mak no.*

|                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
|                                                                              | " How dar ȝe do sylk <sup>1</sup> a þyng<br>" Wypouten leue of þe kyng?"                                                                                                                                                                                                |                          |
| Corineus says<br>he cares<br>nothing for<br>Goffar<br>or his mes-<br>senger. | ¶ Corineus spak al so hym <sup>2</sup> þought:<br>" Of ȝour kyng ne wite we nought;<br>" ffor hym ne wol <sup>3</sup> we leue to do,<br>" Ne for his bode come hym to ;<br>" We knowe þe for no messeger, <sup>4</sup><br>" Ne hym self, þey <sup>5</sup> he were her." | 1516<br><br><br><br>1520 |
| Numbert<br>shoots at<br>Corineus, who<br>dodges,                             | Numberte sone his bowe bent,<br>& schet <sup>6</sup> ; bot Corineus bleynt. <sup>7</sup><br>Corineus was wroþ, y trowe ;<br>He sesede Numbertes bowe,                                                                                                                   | <br><br>1524             |
| and kills Num-<br>bert.                                                      | & brak his bowe on his heued: <sup>8</sup><br>His felawes fledde, & lefte hym ded, <sup>9</sup><br>And wenten to telle <sup>10</sup> kyng Goffar<br>How men a-wey his venison bar ;<br>& ilkaday þey telde <sup>11</sup> hym how<br>þat Coryneus Numbert slow.          | <br>1528                 |

¶ *Bellum inter Goffar & Troianos.*

|                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                          |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Goffar swears<br>vengeance.                    | Goffar swor he schold <sup>12</sup> hym venge :<br>Of mikel folk he made a reнге<br>ffor to falle <sup>13</sup> on Brutes ost ;<br>& Brutus aspied on <sup>14</sup> what cost,<br>& sente vntil his flute on flod,<br>þat raskayl <sup>15</sup> to þe schip al ȝoð, | 1532<br><br><br><br>1536 |
| Brutus orders<br>his non-fighters<br>on board, |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                          |

<sup>1</sup> sylk.<sup>2</sup> as he.<sup>3</sup> with.<sup>4</sup> messengere.<sup>5</sup> þof.<sup>6</sup> schotte.<sup>7</sup> glent.<sup>8</sup> *Parmi le chief tant l'embati  
Que la cervelle en expandi.*

Wace, l. 833-4.

<sup>9</sup> *fled & dede hym leued.*<sup>10</sup> & ȝede & talde.<sup>11</sup> *Ilka dele þei tolde.*<sup>12</sup> *suore he suld.*<sup>13</sup> com.<sup>14</sup> *spied be.*<sup>15</sup> *þat þare rescaile. (ringaille,  
Wace, l. 846.)*

And *per* vitaille wyþ hem lede [leaf 7.]  
 Tyl þey wyste how þey schold<sup>1</sup> spede:  
 "Ne comes nought<sup>2</sup> out, y ȝow forbede,  
 "Tyl þat y come, for doute & drede." 1540  
 Hys men of armes þat wiþ hym war,<sup>3</sup>  
 þey went a-geyn þe<sup>4</sup> kyng Goffar.  
*per* hostes sone to-gydere mette,  
 Wyþ spere & swerd<sup>5</sup> to-gedere sette; 1544  
 þe Peyteuynes wel on þeym sought,  
 þe Trogens stode, þey<sup>6</sup> failled nought,  
 þey stoden wel a gret party,  
 Non wyste ho schold haue þe<sup>7</sup> maystri. 1548  
 till Corineus  
 Coryneus for tene wax al wod<sup>8</sup>  
 þat þe Peyteuyns so wel stod.  
 Out of þe reinge he ȝede biside,  
 & ches him folk þat dirste abyde,<sup>9</sup> 1552  
 & trauersed þe Peyteuynes bataille.  
 þenne bygan þey mykel<sup>10</sup> to faille;  
 þorow þe<sup>11</sup> host he made hem weye,  
 On ilk a side he dide þem deye. 1556  
 Corineus *per* his swerd he lees,<sup>12</sup>  
 An ax he wan sone yn<sup>13</sup> þat pres,  
 (As auenture fel, hit cam til<sup>14</sup> hande,)  
 Agaynes þat mought *per*<sup>15</sup> noman stande, 1560  
 Neyþer<sup>16</sup> byhynde ne byforn;  
 þat he ouer-rougt,<sup>17</sup> þe lif was lorn.  
 þe Peyteuines stode & byhelde  
 How Coryneus faught in þe felde; 1564  
 and kills every  
 one he hits.

<sup>1</sup> *he suld.*<sup>2</sup> *com not.*<sup>3</sup> *was.*<sup>4</sup> *ageyn to.* [leaf 10, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> *with dynt of launce.*<sup>6</sup> *g.*<sup>7</sup> *who suld haf.*<sup>8</sup> *wex*<sup>9</sup> *durst wele bide.*<sup>10</sup> *for.*<sup>11</sup> *þorgh þer.*<sup>12</sup> *suerde les.*<sup>13</sup> *wañ in att.*<sup>14</sup> *was it com to.*<sup>15</sup> *ageyn þat mot.*<sup>16</sup> *noþer.*<sup>17</sup> *ouertok.*





- penne cam Brutes y<sup>1</sup> þat stounde, [leaf 7, col. 2.] Brutus kills  
 Many on he slow & leide<sup>2</sup> to ground; many,  
 . Wip þe Trogens was no feyntise,  
 Bot Swerd<sup>3</sup> was slayn, & alle hyse; 1596 and all the  
 . Vneþes ascaped þe kyng wip<sup>4</sup> chaunce, Poitevins are  
 He zed to seke<sup>5</sup> hym help in ffraunce;— Goffar seeks  
 . Hit highte nought Fraunce, þe name was Galle, help in France.  
 . Galle hit was cald þat tyme of alle;<sup>6</sup>— 1600 The Douze-  
 þe twelue dosze-peres of pris pairs  
 departed þe lond in twelf partys;  
 Ilkon of þes, Goffare þey hight,  
 7 ' Wyþ þe Troiens for hym to fight, 1604 promise to  
 & do þem alle to fle þe lond, fight for him,  
 Or do, þem deye wip dint of hond.'<sup>7</sup>  
 Goffar þanked þem alle twelue,  
 & ilkon gadered an ost<sup>8</sup> hym selue. 1608 and each  
 collects his  
 host.  
 Brutus & his men of Troye, Brutus and his  
 ffor þeyr wynnyng þey mad<sup>9</sup> gret ioye, Trojans  
 & desconfyted<sup>10</sup> þeyr enemys;  
 A castel þey dide make<sup>11</sup> of pris 1612 build a castle  
 In þe contre als þey nam;  
 On a fair hil þey rested þam,<sup>12</sup> on a hill,  
 A castel þey maden to haue rescet,<sup>13</sup>  
 Byfor hand was þer non set,<sup>14</sup> 1616  
 Toun ne castel þat non may wyten;<sup>15</sup>  
 Bot als yn olde story ys wryten,  
 þorow þat makynng þat þey dide same,  
 Tours hadde þey gyuen hit þe<sup>16</sup> name; 1620 and call it  
 Tours.

<sup>1</sup> Brutus com in.<sup>2</sup> slow & leid.<sup>3</sup> Suhard.<sup>4</sup> escaped þe kyng o.<sup>5</sup> zede & souht.<sup>6</sup> was it called þat tyme att.<sup>7</sup> A vengier de ses anemis, Wace,  
l. 928.<sup>8</sup> gedred oste.<sup>9</sup> wynnyng made.<sup>10</sup> discomfite had.<sup>11</sup> did mak.<sup>12</sup> & cam.<sup>13</sup> mad to haf rescette. (Fr. recet,  
lieu de defense et de retraite. Lat.  
receptus.)<sup>14</sup> ore was þer non sette.<sup>15</sup> no man witten.<sup>16</sup> had gynnyng þerof &.

|                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Two days after<br>it is pro-<br>visioned, | Tours was cald, <sup>1</sup> þat wyde ys kyd,<br>porow a knyght a ded <sup>2</sup> bytyd.<br>When þe castel was mad & set, <sup>3</sup><br>& þer godes þerto yfet, <sup>4</sup>      | 1624 |
| Goffar comes<br>to assault it             | Bot two dayes <sup>5</sup> sithen <sup>6</sup> hit was dight,<br>Com Goffar wiþ alle his myghte,<br>On þe Troiens to gyue bataille,<br>& þer castel þey gonne <sup>7</sup> assaille, | 1628 |
| and appeals to<br>his men                 | Bot whan þe kyng saw þat hil,<br>Tyl <sup>8</sup> his men he seide his skyl:<br>" Lo! þey haue y-mad <sup>9</sup> a Tour<br>" ffor to abesen our <sup>10</sup> honour.               | 1632 |
| and lords<br>to attack it at<br>once.     | " Sorewe in herte wil me slo<br>" Bot y be venget or þey go!<br>" þerfore, lordes, y preye <sup>11</sup> ȝow alle,<br>" Helpes now þat hit may falle.                                | 1636 |
| They form in<br>twelve bat-<br>talions.   | " Arme vs swyþe al redy,<br>" Assaille we þem doughtyly!"<br>þey armed þeym alle, baron & knyght, <sup>12</sup><br>In twelue <sup>13</sup> batailles redy to fyght;                  | 1640 |
| The Trojans<br>sally from the<br>castle,  | To gyue assaut, al wer þey bone. <sup>14</sup><br>þey of þe castel com on ful <sup>15</sup> sone,<br>& smyten <sup>16</sup> to-gyder al so smert<br>Wyþ ful egre wyl of hert.        | 1644 |
|                                           | þat bataille was nought a lyte, <sup>17</sup><br>So felonly þey gon <sup>18</sup> to smyte;<br>At þasseemble, in <sup>19</sup> þe fi[r]ste tyde<br>þe Troiens had þe bettere side;   | 1648 |

<sup>1</sup> *Toures called.*<sup>2</sup> *þat dede.*<sup>3</sup> *made & sette.*<sup>4</sup> *fette.*<sup>5</sup> *Douse jors.* Wace, l. 947.<sup>6</sup> *sen.*<sup>7</sup> *gan.*<sup>8</sup> *To.* [leaf 10, back, col. 2.]<sup>9</sup> *haf mad.*<sup>10</sup> *abate myn.*<sup>11</sup> *lordes pray.*<sup>12</sup> P. transposes this line and the next.<sup>13</sup> *deus*, MS. du Roi, 27; *douse*, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>2-3</sup>, Colb. Wace, p. 47.<sup>14</sup> *þei were alle boune.*<sup>15</sup> *com out.*<sup>16</sup> *þei smyte.*<sup>17</sup> *þer was bataile of no lite.*<sup>18</sup> *þai gan.*<sup>19</sup> *In þer strokes at.*

|                                                                    |                 |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| ffor vnto twey <sup>1</sup> þousand or mo                          |                 | and kill 2,000   |
| þe Troiiens slowen <sup>2</sup> sone of þo.                        |                 | of the French,   |
| . þo twelue batailles þe Troiens brak,                             |                 |                  |
| & dide þe ffrensche arere hem <sup>3</sup> bak.                    | 1652            |                  |
| þe ffrankysch þenne cast <sup>4</sup> a cry,                       | [leaf 7, back.] | who then call    |
| þerfore men drowe to þeym ney, <sup>5</sup>                        |                 | up more men,     |
| & stode ageyn, & smyten <sup>6</sup> sore,                         |                 |                  |
| & þeir folk wax <sup>7</sup> ay more,                              | 1656            |                  |
| þey come ay fresche, & stoden wel,                                 |                 |                  |
| & drof <sup>8</sup> þe Troiens to þer castel.                      |                 | and drive the    |
| þen had þe ffrankysche <sup>9</sup> þe fairer ende,                |                 | Trojans back     |
| þat ded hem wyþ force a-geyn <sup>10</sup> to wende; <sup>11</sup> |                 | to their castle; |
| Alle a <sup>12</sup> day þey held hem fight                        | 1661            |                  |
| Tyl hem failled dayes <sup>13</sup> lyght;                         |                 | but they fight   |
| . þey wyþ-drowen, to <sup>14</sup> logges þey zeðe,                |                 | on till night-   |
| . þe nyght was come, þey moste <sup>15</sup> nede.                 | 1664            | fall.            |
| þe Troiens þat had ben yn turpel, <sup>16</sup>                    |                 |                  |
| At midnight tok þey <sup>17</sup> conseil,                         |                 | The Trojans      |
| þat Coryneus out scholde <sup>18</sup> go                          |                 | resolve to put   |
| Wip his owen ost, & no <sup>19</sup> mo,                           | 1668            | Corineus and     |
| & busche hym in <sup>20</sup> a wode byside:                       |                 | his host in      |
| " þe frankisch ost ze schul <sup>21</sup> here bide,               |                 | ambush,          |
| " & whan þer ost ys al <sup>22</sup> comen,                        |                 |                  |
| . " & ze haue <sup>23</sup> a-geyn þem nomen,                      | 1672            | so that their    |
| . " þan <sup>24</sup> schol <sup>25</sup> þey se þat ze ar fo,     |                 | fewness may      |
| . " þey schol <sup>25</sup> nought drede on þow to go.             |                 | tempt the        |
|                                                                    |                 | French to        |
|                                                                    |                 | attack them.     |

<sup>1</sup> in two. L. has an old *w* and a modern *el* (*wel*) after *ffor*.

<sup>2</sup> *slouh*.

<sup>3</sup> *did þe frankes go*.

<sup>4</sup> *frankes þan kest*.

<sup>5</sup> *foreyn men drouh þam nehi*.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *smyten*.

<sup>7</sup> *wex*.

<sup>8</sup> *drofe*.

<sup>9</sup> *frankes*.

<sup>10</sup> MS. *ageyn*.

<sup>11</sup> *with force agayn did þam wend*.

<sup>12</sup> *þat*.

<sup>13</sup> *day*.

<sup>14</sup> *withdrouh tiff*.

<sup>15</sup> *com nere þei most*.

<sup>16</sup> *tirpelt*. [*trepel*, (trepidatio), Wace, l. 981, p. 48.]

<sup>17</sup> *þer*.

<sup>18</sup> *suld*.

<sup>19</sup> *oper*.

<sup>20</sup> *busse in*.

<sup>21</sup> *frankes ost ze satt*.

<sup>22</sup> *be alle*. [leaf 11.]

<sup>23</sup> *be*.

<sup>24</sup> MS. *þ'an*. þen, P.

<sup>25</sup> *satt*.

|                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Brutus will then take them in rear, and conquer them.                                      | . " & take non auisement,<br>. " ffor 3e ar fewe, <sup>1</sup> þey schol <sup>2</sup> nought tent, 1676<br>. " & 3e schal <sup>3</sup> abate 3ow hardely,<br>. " ffor atte here <sup>3</sup> bak y come redy;<br>. " þe maistris schal <sup>3</sup> oures be;<br>. " ffor coward elles hald þou <sup>4</sup> me." 1680                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Accordingly, Corineus at daybreak goes into ambush,                                        | Coryneus he dighte hem 3erne,<br>& went out at þe day[e] sterne, <sup>5</sup><br>& busched þem on a rowe<br>þat þe Frensche moughte þem <sup>6</sup> nought knowe.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| and attacks the Poiteuins when they come out. Turnus rides right through the Poitevin host | þe Peyteuyns comen atte morwen <sup>7</sup> tyde, 1685<br>þe Troiens a-geyn þem gon ride<br>Turynus a knyght, Brutus <sup>8</sup> cosyn,<br>. He parted þe host of [þe] Peyteuyn, 1688<br>. & rod þer host al þorow out,<br>. Might noman <sup>9</sup> bere his strokes stout;<br>. Merueyloslike <sup>10</sup> was he hardy,<br>. His hardinesse was foly ; 1692<br>In al þe host ne hadde he pere,<br>Of no strengthe þat men myght <sup>11</sup> here,<br>(Bot þe geaunt, sire Coryne, <sup>12</sup><br>3it was he al so <sup>13</sup> strong as he :) 1696<br>He triste to <sup>14</sup> mykel on his myght;<br>Ouer fer he 3ede on hem <sup>15</sup> to fight:<br>He had slayn, þe story seys,<br>. Six hundred Peyteuyns & Fraunceys; 1700<br>Sipeu com alle þe frankische route,<br>& closed hym yn al aboute. |
| foolhardily,                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| and too far, till he has slain 600 men.                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Then he is surrounded                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> 3e ere.<sup>2</sup> schol.<sup>3</sup> at þer.<sup>4</sup> hold 3e.<sup>5</sup> al coc cantant. Wace, l. 995.<sup>6</sup> frankische houth þam.<sup>7</sup> com at þe morn.<sup>8</sup> brutus is written above Coryneus dotted out. ("un niès Bruti," Wace, l. 1004.) brutus, P.<sup>9</sup> mot non.<sup>10</sup> Meruelly.<sup>11</sup> mot.<sup>12</sup> Corrine. (Fors Corineus solemn, Wace, l. 1010.)<sup>13</sup> als.<sup>14</sup> trost hym.<sup>15</sup> þam.

De occisisione Turnij, & edificacione castri de  
Toures in Turonia.

Er þan ouer cam<sup>1</sup> Coryneus,  
Er<sup>2</sup> was he slayn, þis knyght Turnus. 1704 and slain.  
Right to ded<sup>3</sup> as he was kast,  
Brutus hasted<sup>4</sup> hym ferly fast, Brutus carries  
And tok þe body fro þeym alle [leaf 7, back, col. 2.] the corpe  
Er he of his hors gan falle, 1708  
And bar hit vp vntil his tour, to his tower,  
þer was he beryed wyþ<sup>5</sup> honour.  
ffor loue of Turnus, þat gode knyght,  
Toures in Tureyne now hit hight;<sup>6</sup> 1712  
& after Toures þat ilke cite,  
Tureyne hat<sup>7</sup> al þat contre.  
Brutus retorned to þat<sup>8</sup> fyght, and returns to  
And Coryneus halp wip al<sup>9</sup> his myght; 1716 the fight.  
þe ffrankische host was al<sup>10</sup> by-twene, Corineus and  
Bytwyxt þeym to<sup>11</sup> þey made al clene he make a  
Of ffrankische & of Peyteuyns; clean sweep of  
þey leye in dykes & in kynes, 1720 the Franks and  
þey soughten how<sup>12</sup> þey mought hem hyde, Poiteuins,  
In bataille woltey<sup>13</sup> no lenger hyde.  
Whan al was fled, & [þe]<sup>14</sup> feld was playn,  
Brutus turned his folk<sup>15</sup> a-geyn; 1724 then return to  
Ilkon to þer castel went, the castle,  
& þen þey helde<sup>16</sup> a parlement. hold a parla-  
ment there,

<sup>1</sup> Or euer com.<sup>2</sup> ore.<sup>3</sup> dede.<sup>4</sup> abatid.<sup>5</sup> for.<sup>6</sup> Tours hes now þe name right<sup>7</sup> Turoyne hate [was called].<sup>8</sup> com ageyn to þe.<sup>9</sup> halpe at.<sup>10</sup> þam.<sup>11</sup> two.<sup>12</sup> To what stedes.<sup>13</sup> to bataile wild þei.<sup>14</sup> & þe.<sup>15</sup> oste.<sup>16</sup> þer þei held.

62 BRUTUS AND HIS MEN LAND IN ALBION, 1200 B.C.

|                                         |                                                                                           |      |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                         | per parlement, þys was þe ende,<br>"Euerylkon to schip schold wende,                      | 1728 |
| and resolve to<br>leave the<br>country. | "& drawe per vitaille to þe se,<br>" & weyue al þat ilk <sup>1</sup> contre."             |      |
| They sail to                            | When þey had don as y ȝow seye,<br>þey set vp seyl, & went <sup>2</sup> per weye;         | 1732 |
|                                         | þey seyled boþe day & <sup>3</sup> nyght,<br>. þat neuere striken, bot ay vpright,        |      |
| Dartmouth,                              | Til <sup>4</sup> þey aryved—as our book seys—<br>In Dertemuithe at <sup>5</sup> Toteneys. | 1736 |

¶ Hic primo Brutus intrauit Albion cum suo nauigio  
apud Toteneys.

|                                               |                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| in the isle that<br>Diana promised<br>Brutus, | Al holyke <sup>6</sup> com per flote<br>In Dertemuthe, at o <sup>7</sup> schote;<br>þat ys þe Ilde þat dame Dyane<br>Hyght <sup>8</sup> Brutus & his kynde alane. | 1740 |
|                                               | Out of þe schip þey com tyl land<br>Wiþ mykel ioie, y vnderstand,<br>When þey wyste þat þey were set                                                              |      |
| even Albion,                                  | To wone per Diane had þem het,<br>. In þat Ilde of Albyon,<br>& þenked per godes euerilkon.                                                                       | 1744 |
|                                               | . þat ylke tyme was nought late,—<br>. fful longe hit ys, <sup>9</sup> as seyþ þe date,—                                                                          |      |
| in 1200 B.C.                                  | . þat tyme þat <sup>10</sup> Brutes aryued her,<br>. A þousand & two hundred ȝer,                                                                                 | 1748 |

<sup>1</sup> all þat.

<sup>2</sup> furth.

<sup>3</sup> sailed day & on þe.

<sup>4</sup> to.

<sup>5</sup> Dertmuthe in.

<sup>6</sup> All holy.

<sup>7</sup> a.

<sup>8</sup> hete.

<sup>9</sup> long tyme.

<sup>10</sup> þe tyme.

- .So mykel was hit byforn  
 .Er Iesu was of Marye born. 1752  
 In þat tyme wer here non hauntes  
 Of no men bot of geauntes.  
 (Geaunt ys more þan man;  
 .So seys þe bok, for y ne can; 1756  
 .Lyke men þey ar<sup>1</sup> in flesche & bon;  
 .In my tyme saw y neuere non.  
 .Of membres haue þey<sup>2</sup> liknes  
 .þe lymes alle þat in man ys.) 1760  
 .Twenty geauntz were in þys lond;  
 Of on þe name wryten y fond,  
 Gogmagog, þus was told;  
 ffor he was strong, gret, & bold, [leaf 8.]  
 Gogmagog þus men hym calle; 1764  
 þey seyden<sup>3</sup> he was most of alle.  
 þe Troiens, when þey þe geauntz sawe,  
 Wyp þer bowes at þeym gon drawe, 1768  
 & also wyp dart & spere.  
 þe geauntz couþe hem nought<sup>4</sup> were;  
 Vp to þe hilles fro þem þey wend,  
 & left þe Troiens þe pleyn lond. 1772  
 A day þe Troiens made þer feste  
 After þe manere of þer geste,  
 Wyp caroles, trompes, & pypyng,<sup>5</sup>  
 ffor ioie of þer newe wonyng.<sup>6</sup> 1776  
 .Whan þey<sup>7</sup> had karoled alder best,  
 .& ilkon schold han go<sup>8</sup> to rest,  
 So come þe geauntz<sup>9</sup> þat ylke nyght,  
 & on þe Troiens smyte down ryght. 1780
- In Albion then  
 were only  
 giants (that is  
 big men, as is  
 said: I know  
 nothing about  
 'em),  
 20 of them,  
 of whom the  
 biggest was  
 Gomagog.  
 The Trojans  
 shoot at the  
 giants,  
 who retreat to  
 the hills.  
 The Trojans  
 hold a feast,  
 and at night  
 the giants  
 attack them,

<sup>1</sup> ere.<sup>2</sup> haf þe.<sup>3</sup> It says.<sup>4</sup> couþ þam not.<sup>5</sup> carols & with oþer glewe.<sup>6</sup> wonyng newe.<sup>7</sup> as þei.<sup>8</sup> schold haf gon.<sup>9</sup> vingt gaians, Wace, p. 52, l. 1085.

See the "twenty," l. 1761 above.



64 THE GIANTS ARE KILLED, AND GOGMAGOG TAKEN.

|                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                             |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| that foul frog<br>Gogmagog<br>leading.                 | fformest was sire Gogmagog,<br>He was most, þat foule froge;                                                                                                                                |      |
| The giants<br>fight with trees<br>and stones.          | þey faught wyþ trees þat þey vp drowe,—<br>Y can nought seye whilk þey slow,—                                                                                                               | 1784 |
|                                                        | Oþer wepen had þey non,<br>Bot smyten wiþ tres or casten <sup>1</sup> ston,<br>When þey had fought, & went to fle,<br>In to þe hilles a-gayn to be,                                         | 1788 |
| The Trojans                                            | þan <sup>2</sup> were þe Troiens þeym bifore,<br>& gaf þem woundes depe & sore,<br>& slowe þem þe moste part<br>Wiþ spere & bowe, swerd & <sup>3</sup> dart.                                | 1792 |
| kill most of<br>them,                                  | Gogmagog, þe Troiens tok; <sup>4</sup><br>þan saide Brutus 'þat þey schold lok <sup>5</sup><br>' Wheþer he wer strengre, or Cornyus.' <sup>6</sup><br>. A place to pleye, ordeyned Brutus,— | 1796 |
| and take<br>Gogmagog,<br>to wrestle with<br>Corineus.  | Corineus was wel of þat graunt <sup>7</sup> —<br>ffor to wrastle wyþ þat geaunt;<br>On a clyf faste <sup>8</sup> by þe se<br>þe wrastlyng was ordeyned <sup>9</sup> to be;                  | 1800 |
| The wrestling<br>match is held<br>close to the<br>sea. | Alle þey zede, zonge & elde,<br>þat wrastlyng to byhelde.                                                                                                                                   |      |

¶ De ludo inter Coryneum & Gogmagogum.

|              |                                                                                   |      |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Corineus     | Coryneus first vp he stirt, <sup>10</sup><br>& wyþ a cloþ his body gyrt;          | 1804 |
| comes first, | Strait in þe flank dide hym lace,<br>& com & stod forth y <sup>11</sup> þe place. |      |

<sup>1</sup> *cast with.*

<sup>2</sup> *are.*

<sup>3</sup> *with bowe with spere & with.*

<sup>4</sup> *take.*

<sup>5</sup> *brutus sayd þat þei suld loke.*

<sup>6</sup> *Corineus.*

<sup>7</sup> *wel o grante.* [lf. 11, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>8</sup> *felde fast.*

<sup>9</sup> *set.*

<sup>10</sup> *first.*

<sup>11</sup> *He com & stode forth in.*

|                                                                 |                   |                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| pen <sup>1</sup> Gogmagog ros vp sone ;                         |                   | then Gog-        |
| He hadde hym dight, & was al bone.                              | 1808              | magog.           |
| þe firste pul so harde <sup>2</sup> was set                     |                   | They wrestle,    |
| þat þeyr brestes to-gyder met ;                                 |                   |                  |
| þeir handes ouer bakkes þey caste, <sup>3</sup>                 |                   |                  |
| Syde to syde was set ful faste ;                                | 1812              | try dodges,      |
| þer was turn ageynes turn ; <sup>4</sup>                        |                   |                  |
| þat waykest was, byhoued spurn. <sup>5</sup>                    |                   |                  |
| ffor-setten byfore, & eke byhynde, <sup>6</sup>                 |                   |                  |
| Wyþ crokes ilkon oper gan bynde ; <sup>7</sup>                  | 1816              | and clutch       |
| Oft aboute ilk oper þrew,                                       | [leaf 8, col. 2.] | limbs,           |
| þe stem stod vp, so þey blew. <sup>8</sup>                      |                   | till they steam. |
| þey handled boþe sore þer nekkes ;                              |                   |                  |
| Chynnes, chekes, gef harde <sup>9</sup> chekkes ;               | 1820              | Chins, cheeks,   |
| þeyr teþ gnaisted wiþ nose <sup>10</sup> snore,                 |                   | and heads        |
| Hurtlede hedes set ful sore ;                                   |                   | clash.           |
| Ilk oper pulled, ilk oper schok,                                |                   | They pull,       |
| Wiþ fet in fourche <sup>11</sup> ilk oper tok.                  | 1824              | shake,           |
| Wyþ trip forsetten, <sup>12</sup> ilk oper to gyle,             |                   | trip,            |
| In lyft in wryþyng þey sayed vmwhile ; <sup>13</sup>            |                   | writhe,          |
| Ilkon fro erthe dide oper ryse <sup>14</sup>                    |                   | and lift.        |
| Wyþ strengþe more þan wyþ queintise.                            | 1828              | Gogmagog         |
| Gogmagog proued his strengþe,—                                  |                   |                  |
| Twelue cubyte he was in lengþe, <sup>15</sup> —                 |                   | crushes in       |
| In armes Coryneus he laught,                                    |                   |                  |
| & on hym drow so strong a draught                               | 1832              | three of Cori-   |
| þat þre rybbes <sup>16</sup> brosten <sup>17</sup> in his side, |                   | neus's ribs.     |
| & had ner cast him [at] þat tyde.                               |                   |                  |

<sup>1</sup> &.

<sup>2</sup> pulle so hard.

<sup>3</sup> ouer bakkes handes þe cast.

<sup>4</sup> set to turne.

<sup>5</sup> scurn.

<sup>6</sup> Forset befor forset behynd.

<sup>7</sup> oper bynd.

<sup>8</sup> stode whan þei blewe.

<sup>9</sup> chokes gaf harde.

<sup>10</sup> nese.

<sup>11</sup> fouche.

<sup>12</sup> forset.

<sup>13</sup> MS. *vn while*. P. has *In liste*  
& *wriþyng þei fraist vmwhile*.

<sup>14</sup> *Ilk oper fro þe erthe did vp rise*.

<sup>15</sup> *Tuelf elbous he was o length*.

<sup>16</sup> *une coste*, MS. du Roi, 27, l.  
1160 ; *trois des côtes*, MS. de Ste.-  
Genev. Y. fol. 10. Wace : *Le Roux*  
*de Lincy*, l. 56.

<sup>17</sup> brak.

|                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                        |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Corineus                                                                     | . þen was Coryneus a-schamed <sup>1</sup><br>pat he was for þe geaunt <sup>2</sup> lamed;                                                                              | 1836 |
|                                                                              | He recouered his strengþe for tene,<br>. Of skape wold he <sup>3</sup> hym no more mene;                                                                               |      |
| squeezes Gog-<br>magog till he<br>swoons,<br>then drops him<br>over the rock | Wyþ þat <sup>4</sup> þe geaunt [anon] he hente,<br>& in his armes so hym wente                                                                                         | 1840 |
| still called<br>Falaise, and<br>his mangled<br>body falls<br>into the sea.   | þat Gogmagog gan to swowene,<br>& bar hym <sup>5</sup> wyþ þe bank [a]doun;<br>Doun of þe roche he let hym falle—<br>þerfore ffaleys men gon hit calle; <sup>6</sup> — | 1844 |
|                                                                              | Er he cam <sup>7</sup> doun, was flesche & bon<br>Al to-ryuen fro ston to ston.<br>. A gret þrowe <sup>8</sup> þer he lay ded,<br>þe water of his blod was red.        | 1848 |

**Brutus ordinavit & fecit maniciones per loca.**

|                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Then the<br>Trojans<br>feel comfort-<br>able, build<br>themselves<br>houses, stake<br>out land,<br>and till it. | When þe geauntz were o dawes,<br>þe Troiens hadden na more <sup>9</sup> awe;<br>Tounes, houses, dide þey make,<br>& mesured lond, & dide hit stake                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 1852         |
| England was<br>then called<br>Albion;<br>but Brutus<br>names it<br>Britain,                                     | . þat ilkon dide his owen <sup>10</sup> knowe;<br>þen tyled þey <sup>11</sup> lond, & dide hit sowe.<br>þat tyme þys lond hight Albyon;<br>When Brutus cam, þat name was gon;<br>. ffor Albion was Brutes wayne,<br>þerfore he dide hit calle Brutayne.<br>When he & hise fro <sup>12</sup> Troye nam,<br>Troiens were called til <sup>13</sup> þey þer cam; | 1856<br>1860 |

<sup>1</sup> *oschamede.*

<sup>2</sup> *for geant lamede.*

<sup>3</sup> *he wild.*

<sup>4</sup> *All with Ire. [leaf 12.]*

<sup>5</sup> *& bare.*

<sup>6</sup> *þe name 3it falseise men calle.*

<sup>7</sup> *are he com.*

<sup>8</sup> *a grete þer.*

<sup>9</sup> *had more no.*

<sup>10</sup> *his owen ilk did.*

<sup>11</sup> *þei tilled.*

<sup>12</sup> *his of.*

<sup>13</sup> *to.*

- . After þe Troiens þys name was set,  
 . ffor name of Brutes first highte <sup>1</sup> Bret;  
 . Afterward hit turned eftsones,  
 ffor Brutus folk <sup>2</sup> was cald Brutones. 1864 are called Britons.  
 þat name held hit of Bretoun The name Briton lasts  
 . Long syþen <sup>3</sup> þe Incarnacion, till Gormund comes and  
 Til Gormound cam & he[re] <sup>4</sup> gan aryue, 1868 drives the Britons away.  
 þe Brutons away he dide hem <sup>5</sup> dryue.  
 . Vneþe siþen any on <sup>6</sup> ros  
 . þat longe bar any los.  
 . þat of his <sup>7</sup> spoken mykel in dede;  
 . Ney atte <sup>8</sup> þe ende 3e may hit rede. 1872
- Coryneus hadde <sup>9</sup> a god party [leaf 8, back.] Corineus  
 Of þe lond, for he was worþy.  
 . per Corineus dide bataille,  
 . þat contre he tok þat highte Waille; <sup>10</sup> 1876 conquers Waille, and  
 . Of Corni & Waille, þat was <sup>11</sup> wynnyng, calls it Cornwaille after himself.  
 Hadde Cornewaille þe name gynny[n]g;  
 . Cornewaille com of Coryneus, 1880  
 . & Brutayne com of sire Brutus. The Trojans, now Britons,  
 Ilkon to þeym <sup>12</sup> per frendes drow,  
 . & bygged lond[e] for þeir prow:  
 ffor stede to stede gon <sup>13</sup> þey wende;  
 . per best was, per wolde <sup>14</sup> þey lende, 1884 settle on the best lands,  
 & <sup>15</sup> multeplyed, & wel prof, <sup>16</sup> breed, and wax rich.  
 . & woxen riche, kant & cof. <sup>17</sup>  
 In fewe 3eres <sup>18</sup> al þe kynde  
 Of folk, þey woxen <sup>19</sup> mykel mynde. 1888

<sup>1</sup> was.<sup>2</sup> brutus his folk.<sup>3</sup> sen.<sup>4</sup> here.<sup>5</sup> did he.<sup>6</sup> neuer siþen unneþis non.<sup>7</sup> þerof is.<sup>8</sup> nere at.<sup>9</sup> sesed.<sup>10</sup> toke to waile.<sup>11</sup> corn & kataile þat is.<sup>12</sup> Ilkon. [leaf 12, col. 2.]<sup>13</sup> gañ.<sup>14</sup> wild.<sup>15</sup> þei.<sup>16</sup> throfe.<sup>17</sup> wex ryche cante & kofe.<sup>18</sup> a fo 3ers.<sup>19</sup> wex þei.

§ Constructio Noue Troie, qui iam dicitur Londonia.

Brutus

examines all  
the country,

and resolves  
to build a new  
city for Troy's  
sake.

He finds a  
river, calls it  
Tamyse,  
and declares  
that he will set  
there a new  
city for the  
love of Troy.  
"New Troy"  
shall be its  
name.  
(And it kept  
this name  
long, till it was  
renamed  
Trenouant.

Then king Lud  
called it

Brutus byhel[d] þe mountaynes  
& auised hym o<sup>1</sup> þe playnes,  
biheld þe wodes, watres,<sup>2</sup> & ffen,  
. Where esyest wony[n]g were<sup>3</sup> for men; 1892  
Als watres ronnen wel, he byheld,  
& mede wip þe erylde feld,<sup>4</sup>  
. What fruyt he hoped hit wolde bere.  
His folk wax faste his<sup>5</sup> lond to were, 1896  
He þoughte in herte he wolde<sup>6</sup> do make  
A newe biggyng for Troyes<sup>7</sup> sake;  
A stede to seche<sup>8</sup> he zede to se,  
Wher he best þoughte,<sup>9</sup> & most ayse. 1900  
A water he fond, & cald hit Tamyse,  
. After his langage, þer on his wyse:  
" Y schal sette her,<sup>10</sup> oure kynde to ioye,  
" A cite for þe loue<sup>11</sup> of Troye; 1904  
" ffor Troye was so noble a cite,<sup>12</sup>  
" Newe Troye þe name schal be."  
. Newe Troye longe hit hight,  
. Tyl som men come wip<sup>13</sup> langage lyght,— 1908  
. Schort speche hadde<sup>14</sup> þey in haunt,—  
& cald Newe Troye, Trenouant.  
Al ys on, ho<sup>15</sup> so hit knewe,  
Trenouant & Troye newe; 1912  
Troye newe ys Trenouant,  
Two wordes in on, & non ys<sup>16</sup> want.  
þen cam<sup>17</sup> a kyng, Lud was his name,

<sup>1</sup> oñ.

<sup>2</sup> water.

<sup>3</sup> was eyse wonnyng.

<sup>4</sup> & þe medew with ardwafelde.

<sup>5</sup> fast þe.

<sup>6</sup> þouht in his hert he wald.

<sup>7</sup> troie.

<sup>8</sup> he chese.

<sup>9</sup> him thouht best.

<sup>10</sup> I. will here.

<sup>11</sup> luf.

<sup>12</sup> noble cite.

<sup>13</sup> till quant meñ com of.

<sup>14</sup> Schorte speche had.

<sup>15</sup> one who.

<sup>16</sup> one & nouht is.

<sup>17</sup> com.

- & made a gate in *pat*<sup>1</sup> same ; 1916  
*Kaer Lud* *pe* name laught,<sup>2</sup> *Kaer Lud* ;  
*.ffor loue of Lud pat* hit aught;<sup>3</sup>  
*.ffor to haue of hym renoun,*  
*.Kaer Lud pey calde*<sup>4</sup> *pe toun.* 1920  
*.When Saxons*<sup>5</sup> *com, pat* name ne couthe,— and next the  
*.per owen speche was best yn moupe—* Saxons called it  
*pey cald hit Ludden & London:* Ludden and  
*pus pe* name cam eft don,<sup>6</sup> 1924 London.  
*London, on Saxons*<sup>7</sup> *langage.*  
*.Now Englysche holden pate*<sup>8</sup> *heritage,* The English  
*Als men of ope*<sup>9</sup> *nations* now hold the  
*pat* han be here syb *pe Bretons ;* 1928 land.  
*As pe*<sup>10</sup> *names of contres* [leaf 8, back, col. 2.] For names of  
*Ben chaunged, & lawes & fees,*<sup>11</sup> places change  
*ffro pe firste pat pey were named,*  
*Als straunge folk han hider y-samed.*<sup>12</sup> 1932 with the  
 ¶ *Whan Brutus had set his cite* foreign folk  
*& burgeys mad,*<sup>13</sup> *& gaf peym fee,* that gather in  
*In lawe wysly to welde,* them.)  
*& pes to haue in zonkpe*<sup>14</sup> *& elde,* 1936  
*He regned ffoure & twenty zer*  
*In al Bretaigne fer & ner.* Brutus reigns  
 24 years over  
 all Britain,  
*.Al was Brutaigne, by elde tales,*  
*.Engelond, Scotlond, & Walys,* 1940  
*.pyse pre were penne*<sup>15</sup> *al on,*  
*.pat erest was cald*<sup>16</sup> *Albyon ;* that was first  
 called Albion.  
*.Albion highte pyse londes pre,*  
*.ffor pey ar closed al wip pe se.* 1944

<sup>1</sup> *pe.*<sup>2</sup> *lauht.*<sup>3</sup> MS. *lauht.* *pe tounne auht.*<sup>4</sup> *pei called.*<sup>5</sup> *whan Sessions.*<sup>6</sup> *son.* [leaf 12, back.]<sup>7</sup> *Session.*<sup>8</sup> *Anglis hold pat.*<sup>9</sup> *Als ope* *of.*<sup>10</sup> *Has ye.*<sup>11</sup> *Bien changed lawes & fees.*<sup>12</sup> *outen folk haf hidere samed.*<sup>13</sup> *set.*<sup>14</sup> *zouth.*<sup>15</sup> *pan.*<sup>16</sup> *are was called.*

¶ *Post decessum Bruty, regnavit Lokerynus filius eius.*

Brutus has  
three children,

1. Locrin,
2. Kamber,
3. Albanak,

who, after his  
death,

divide his  
lands.

Locrin chooses  
Logres.

Kamber  
chooses

Kambria

(now called  
Wales, either  
from queen  
Galeas

or duke  
Galon).

Albanak  
chooses

Albania

Brutus had wyþ Ignogyn  
pre childre: þe eldest hight Lokeryn,  
pat oper,<sup>1</sup> Kamber & Albanak;  
þise lyuede byhynde Brutus bak, 1948  
& buryed hym, his <sup>2</sup> sones pre.  
When he was ded in his cite,  
pyse þre brethere in loue & pes  
Parted þe lond, & ilkon ches, 1952  
& held þem payed on <sup>3</sup> þer partys,  
. Als þe pre royames lys.<sup>4</sup>  
Lokeryn ches first, he was eldest;  
þys lond of Logres hit fel hym best. 1956  
Logeres hit ys after his name;<sup>5</sup>  
ffor Lokeryn, Logers had hit þe name.<sup>5</sup>  
Kamber til his part gan ȝerne  
North west þe water of Seuerne, 1960  
In length, in brede, als hit [gan] <sup>6</sup> lye,  
& for his name kald hit Kambrie:  
Kambrie hit highte, by þo tales,  
pat lond þat now ys cleped Wales<sup>7</sup>; 1964  
& for þe quen dame Galaes,  
ffor loue of hure, þat name þey ches.  
Somme now seye<sup>8</sup> for oper reson  
Galeys was cald, for duk Galon: 1968  
Whylom þys duk was of power,  
& gret renoun hadde fer & ner.  
Albanak was ȝongest of alle,  
þe moste wodeland gan hym falle. 1972  
Albanak kalde his partie  
After his name, Albanie:

<sup>1</sup> þe toþer.      <sup>2</sup> þise.

<sup>3</sup> & were paid of.

<sup>4</sup> *remes lis.*

<sup>5</sup> P. omits these two lines.

<sup>6</sup> & brede as it gan.

<sup>7</sup> *All þe lond þat is now Wales.*

Lamb. MS. has *Weles.*

<sup>8</sup> *Som say.*

- Albanie highte þat now ys<sup>1</sup> Scotland,  
 . As y schal ȝow telle how y<sup>2</sup> fand: 1976 (now called  
 . þe name of Scotlon,<sup>3</sup> þe firste rote *nota.* Scotland,  
 . Hit was gyuen a mayden Scote; from Scote, the  
 . Scote was ffaraoones<sup>4</sup> doughter þe kyng, daughter of  
 . Tyl<sup>5</sup> Scotland was scho wedded ȝyng, 1980 king Pharoah).  
 . And was til<sup>6</sup> hire gyuen, & scheo hit aughte;  
 . Of hire þe name Scotland laughte.  
 ¶ Numbert,<sup>6</sup> a kyng o Huneys, [leaf 9.] Humbert, a  
 A robbour he was al, hit<sup>7</sup> seys; 1984 king of the  
 He robbed þe ildes alle a-boute; Huns, and a  
 Of lyper<sup>8</sup> men he hadde gret route. robber,  
 . Of Albanye men til<sup>6</sup> hym spak, hears that  
 . þat was a childe<sup>9</sup> Albanak: 1988 Albanak is a  
 Wip Albanak fayn wold he fyght, child,  
 & Albanak faste<sup>10</sup> ageyn hym dight; and attacks  
 Bot Albanak sone þer he slow; and slays him.  
 His folk fledde, & southeward drow, 1992 His folk tell  
 & pleyned þem to sire<sup>11</sup> Lokeryn Locrin, who  
 . How þey ascaped wip mykel pyn. with Kamber,  
 Lokeryn vntil Kamber sent; 1996 gathers a host,  
 þey gadered host, & þyder went.  
 A-gayn þeim com sire Numbert;<sup>6</sup>  
 . Of þeym boþe was he nought ferd.  
 . In an arme of þe se  
 . Met þey to-gidere alle pre. 2000 and in an arm  
 . þe Bretons were wel mo þan he; of the sea  
 In-to þat water þey dide hem fle;<sup>12</sup> attacks Hum-  
 . þey ne ascaped<sup>13</sup> for no thyng bert,  
 & so þer drenkled<sup>14</sup> Humbert þe kyng. 2004 and drives him  
 into the water.

<sup>1</sup> þat is.<sup>2</sup> As I sað telle ȝow who it.<sup>3</sup> Scote.<sup>4</sup> Pharaon.<sup>5</sup> to.<sup>6</sup> Humbert.<sup>7</sup> was it.<sup>8</sup> felon.<sup>9</sup> bot a childe was.<sup>10</sup> herd.<sup>11</sup> plenyd vnto.<sup>12</sup> þe breþer had more powere þen  
he!

In þat water fast gan he fle.

<sup>13</sup> He ascaped nouht.<sup>14</sup> He drenkled þer.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Locrin calls<br>the water<br>Humber.                                                                                                                                                                                                | ffor Humbert gan <i>per</i> mys-falle,<br>Sire Lokeryn dide <i>pe</i> water calle<br>Humber, after sire Humbert,<br>ffor he dreynte <i>perin</i> in apert. <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 2008                 |
| Locrin takes<br>out of Hum-<br>bert's ship<br>three maidens,<br>of whom the<br>daughter of<br>the king of<br>Germany,                                                                                                               | ffro Alemaigne sire Humbert cam;<br><i>pe</i> ildes he robbed al so he nam.<br>Sire Lokeryn tok <i>pat</i> he had reft,<br><i>pre</i> faire maydenes in his schip <sup>2</sup> were left: 2012<br><i>pe</i> kynges doughter of Gemyne<br>Was <i>pe</i> fairest of alle <sup>3</sup> <i>pre</i> .<br>Sire Lokery[n] byheld faste <sup>4</sup> <i>pat</i> may,<br>. Scheo was <i>pe</i> fairest til <sup>5</sup> his pay;                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 2016                 |
| Estrilde, is<br>fairest in his<br>sight.                                                                                                                                                                                            | Tendrelly he dide hure <i>zeme</i> ,<br>Of alle scheo was most til his <sup>6</sup> <i>queme</i> ;<br>Estrilde <i>pat</i> maiden hight,<br>Was non so fair in Lokerynes <sup>7</sup> sight.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 2020                 |
| Now Corineus<br>had one<br>daughter,<br>Gwendoline,<br>and Locrin had<br>agreed to<br>marry her,<br>but for love for<br>Estrilde, would<br>have broken<br>his troth.<br>So Corineus<br>takes an axe,<br>looks sternly<br>at Locrin, | Corineus, <i>zit</i> lyued he <i>po</i> ,<br>He hadde a doughter, & <sup>8</sup> no mo;<br>He had spoken wip Lokeryn<br>To wedde his doughter Gwyndolyn; <sup>9</sup><br>Lokeryn & he were in couenaunt, <sup>10</sup><br>& <i>pey</i> bope had mad <i>pe</i> graunt,<br><i>pat</i> , for <i>pe</i> loue of fair Estrilde,<br>Lokeryn haf brokene hit, fayn he wylde. <sup>11</sup><br>Corineus herde hit sone seye:<br><i>per</i> Lokeryn was, he tok <i>pe</i> weye;<br>An ax in his hand he tok,<br>. On Lokeryn lopliche gan he lok,<br>& angrily til <sup>12</sup> hym he spak,—<br>. Nought bot wrathe <sup>13</sup> his mouþ brak,— | 2024<br>2028<br>2032 |

<sup>1</sup> for he dronkend *per* in apert.<sup>2</sup> *pe* maydens in his schyppe.<sup>3</sup> *pase*. [leaf 13.]<sup>4</sup> *zened mykitt*.<sup>5</sup> *scho* was fairest vnto.<sup>6</sup> of alle women *scho* mot hym.<sup>7</sup> non *fuirere* in Lokeryn.<sup>8</sup> & childere.<sup>9</sup> Guendoline.<sup>10</sup> *conaunt*.<sup>11</sup> broken it wilde.<sup>12</sup> wrothfully to.<sup>13</sup> ne bot wreth of.

- He seide, " Lokeryn, pou art a fol !  
 " þy selue dightest<sup>1</sup> þe to dol: 2036 says  
 " þy ded of me þen schalt pou haue; " Locrin,  
 " þer-fro noman schal þe saue. and I'll kill you  
 " Why hast<sup>2</sup> þou my doughter forsaken [it. 2. c. 2.] for forsaking  
 " þat in troupe þow haddest<sup>3</sup> taken? 2040 my girl,  
 " þat ys þe þank þat pou me cones! Gwendoline.  
 " I hope<sup>4</sup> to wynne þat þou inne<sup>5</sup> wones. This is your  
 " Y serued þy fader in many nede, thanks!  
 " & yuel zeldest<sup>6</sup> þou me my mede. 2044 I helped to win  
 " I auntred me in many chaunce your land,  
 " þy fader Brutus forto auauunce; I risked my  
 " Many strok gaf in many stour life for your  
 " To brynge þy fader til his honour; 2048 father,  
 " & zit þy self auauunce y wylde. and was will-  
 " Bot for on þey calle Estrylde, ing to help  
 " fforsake[st]<sup>7</sup> my doughter Gwyndolene, you too:  
 " & dost<sup>8</sup> me despit & tene! 2052 but for Estrilde  
 " Whil (þou wost)<sup>9</sup> y am on lyue, you forsake my  
 " Schalt pou haue<sup>10</sup> non oper wyue! daughter,  
 " þou bryngest<sup>11</sup> þe in foul fame, and shame me!  
 " & dost<sup>8</sup> me gret onoy<sup>12</sup> & schame, 2056  
 " & my doughter Gwendolyn!"  
 & leyde hand on Lokeryn,  
 & wolde han venged þer<sup>13</sup> his tene,  
 Nadde lordes schoten hem<sup>14</sup> bytwene 2060  
 & departed hem<sup>15</sup> o twynne, some lords  
 And preied Cornyus forto blynne. separated  
 them,

<sup>1</sup> dighthes.<sup>2</sup> haf.<sup>3</sup> þow had.<sup>4</sup> For holpe? halpe, P.<sup>5</sup> MS. ime.<sup>6</sup> ille zeldes.<sup>7</sup> Forsakes. [leaf 13, col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> dos.<sup>9</sup> Titt þow wote.<sup>10</sup> Satt þow haf.<sup>11</sup> bringe.<sup>12</sup> me dispite.<sup>13</sup> wild haf venged.<sup>14</sup> & lordynges schet þam.<sup>15</sup> þam.

## § Lokerynus desponsauit hic Gwendolenam.

|                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| and advised<br>Locrin to give<br>in.                                                                                                          | pey conseilled sire Lokeryn:<br>He zede & wedded Gwyndolyn.                                                                                                                                  | 2064 |
| So Locrin<br>weds Gwen-<br>doline,<br>but he keeps<br>Estrilde in a<br>cellar in<br>London<br>for seven years,<br>and when he<br>goes to her, | Bot he forgat in none <sup>1</sup> manere<br>ffaïre Estrilde þat was hym dere:<br>In Londone he dide hure kepe<br>Vnder erthe <sup>2</sup> in a seler depe ;                                 | 2068 |
| tells his wife<br>that he's going                                                                                                             | Estrylde was longe þare,<br>Seuen 3er & somewhat mare.<br>When Lokeryn schold til <sup>3</sup> hire go,<br>To dwelle wip hure a day or to,                                                   | 2072 |
| to sacrifice to<br>his gods.                                                                                                                  | Vntil his wyf þen tolde <sup>4</sup> he<br>" þat he schold <sup>5</sup> go in priuete,<br>" & stille make <sup>6</sup> his sacrificise<br>" Til his Godes þer <sup>7</sup> wyþ his seruise ; | 2076 |
| Locrin begets<br>on Estrilde a<br>fair girl,<br>Sabren ;                                                                                      | " ffor openly ne fel hit <sup>8</sup> nought<br>" To do þat seruise þat he had wrought." <sup>9</sup><br>So longe he pleyed wip Estrilde<br>þat scheo hadde <sup>10</sup> a mayden childe :  | 2080 |
| and on Gwen-<br>doline a son,<br>Madan, whom<br>Corineus<br>brings up.                                                                        | Sabren hit highte, as whit as <sup>11</sup> glas,<br>& fairere þan þe moder was.<br>Gwyndolene a child <sup>12</sup> had þan,<br>A sone <sup>13</sup> þat highte Madan :                     | 2084 |
| After Cori-<br>neus's death,<br>Locrin                                                                                                        | Coryneus hadde hit to loke ;<br>When tyme was, set hit to boke.<br>Whan <sup>14</sup> þat Corineus was ded,<br>Dame Gwyndolene he misbed ; <sup>15</sup>                                     | 2088 |

<sup>1</sup> on no.<sup>2</sup> þe erth.<sup>3</sup> suld vnto.<sup>4</sup> tald.<sup>5</sup> suld.<sup>6</sup> stilly mak.<sup>7</sup> MS. þ<sup>t</sup>. vnto his godes, P.<sup>8</sup> in.<sup>9</sup> he wroht.<sup>10</sup> scho had.<sup>11</sup> white so.<sup>12</sup> sone.<sup>13</sup> childe.<sup>14</sup> MS. What. Whan, P.<sup>15</sup> misbede.

- .ffor hure fader dide him tene,  
 He drof away dame Gwyndolene,  
 & tok Estrild[e] til his quene  
 .As dame Gwyndolene had bene. 2092 drives away  
 Gwendoline,  
 and makes  
 Estrilde queen.  
 Scheo sey no bettere myghte auaille,  
 Scho gadered an ost in Cornewaylle;  
 Tyl hure frendes scheo pleyned hyre; [leaf 9, back.]  
 Ageyn Lokeryn pey gon hem<sup>1</sup> atyre 2096  
 Wyp gret host out of mesure.  
 Vpon a water men calde Esture,  
 In Dorsete-schire, pey mette,  
 .& to bataille swyþe pey<sup>2</sup> sette. 2100  
 þe kyng was slayn þer wiþ a schote,  
 þe host destroyed<sup>3</sup> ilk a crote;  
 þe quen had þer þe heyer hand,  
 Scheo dide seise al þe land, 2104  
 Scheo did þen take faire Estrilde,  
 & Sabrin þat was hure child,  
 & dide þem yn a water cast;  
 ffor þeym þe name ys roted fast;<sup>4</sup> 2108  
 Seuerne hit hight,<sup>5</sup> for þe child Sabren,  
 .ffor þat child þat name we ken:  
 .þat tyme þat þis chaunce fel,  
 .Lyuede þe prophete SAMUEL. 2112  
 Gwyndolene was þen stout,  
 Scheo dide þe folk vntil hire lout:  
 Ten ȝer wiþ Lokeryn had scheo ben,  
 & sipen fiftene wynter, quen. 2116  
 When Madan couthe kepe his þyng,  
 In hure lyue was he mad kyng.  
 To Cornewaille sche turnede eft,  
 To kepe þat hure fader left. 2120  
 Madan gat vpon his wyf  
 Madan begets

<sup>1</sup> gañ þam. [leaf 18, back.]

<sup>2</sup> batale smertly.

<sup>3</sup> discomfet.

<sup>4</sup> rotefast.

<sup>5</sup> hate. Robert of Brunne leaves  
 out the Fr. à Cirecestre en mer  
 descent, Wace, I. 71, l. 1473, as it is  
 wrong.

|                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Malyn and<br>Membrice,<br>reigns 40 years,<br>and dies.                | Two sones þat ay lyued <sup>1</sup> in strif;<br>Malyn highte þe eldest broþer,<br>Membrice men calde þat oþer.<br>Madan regned fourty ȝer,<br>& left his sones þat lond in wer. <sup>2</sup><br>þyse brethere were euere wrothe,<br>ffor þe lond þey striuen boþe.                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 2124<br><br>2128             |
| Membrice *<br><br>kills his brother<br>Malyn, and<br><br>rules alone.  | Membrice for trewes to Malyn sent,<br>In pes to holde a Parlement;<br>Bot Membrice to treson drow,<br>His broþer Malyn priuely he slow;<br>þorow slaughter & þorow treson <sup>3</sup><br>Membrice hadde þe region.<br>þys Membrice wax <sup>4</sup> vnkynde,<br>ffordede god men þat he myght <sup>5</sup> fynde,<br>Reften oþer <sup>6</sup> land or lyf,<br>Or forsok <sup>7</sup> his wedded wyf,<br>& haunted synne <sup>8</sup> of Sodome:<br>. Vnkyndely to bestes he com. | 2132<br><br>2136<br><br>2140 |
| and after 20<br>years' reign<br><br>is torn to<br>pieces by<br>wolves. | Twenty ȝer þen had <sup>9</sup> he space,<br>& als he went in <sup>10</sup> wode to chace,<br>Many <sup>11</sup> wolues alone he mette;<br>. Also þeues abouten hym þey set, <sup>12</sup><br>Lym fro lym hym al to-rent;<br>& so Membrice to deþe <sup>13</sup> went.<br>þen Saul regned in Iudea,<br>. And Eristeus in Lacudemonia. <sup>14</sup>                                                                                                                               | 2144<br><br>2148             |
| Saul reigned<br>then in Judea.<br><br>Ebrauk<br>succeeds<br>Membrice.  | Ebrauk his sone was of age,<br>Had þis lond in heritage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | [leaf 9, back, col. 2.]      |

<sup>1</sup> þat lyued.<sup>2</sup> wehere.<sup>3</sup> & treson.<sup>4</sup> he wax.<sup>5</sup> þe gude men, we.<sup>6</sup> Reft þam ouþer.<sup>7</sup> & forsoke.<sup>8</sup> þe syn.<sup>9</sup> ȝere had.<sup>10</sup> to.<sup>11</sup> With.<sup>12</sup> As deuēles þai about hym sette.<sup>13</sup> dede.<sup>14</sup> Dunc estoit Samūel prophètes,

Et Homer ert prisez poētes.

MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé. Wace, I.  
73, note (b).

- He was a ful noble knyght,  
 A gret nauye he dide hym<sup>1</sup> dight;  
 He was þe first man of þys lond  
 þat robbed by se oper by sond.<sup>2</sup>  
 . Wip Cornewaleys he stod to chaunce,  
 pey & he robbed al ffraunce;  
 pey robbed tresor & vitaille;  
 Hom in to Bretaigne þen<sup>3</sup> gan pey saille.  
 When he hadde y-now tresour & fe,<sup>4</sup>  
 In þe North he made a cite;  
 Kaer Ebrak he calde þat toun;  
 Anoper, Aclud, vpon Brutoun.  
 Kaer Ebrak first men spak,  
 Syþen men caldyt Eborak;  
 ffor frankysche speche ys nought so lyk,<sup>5</sup>  
 ffor Eborak þey caldit Euerwyk.  
 Aclud he calde Maidenenes toun,  
 . Carlauerok es now þe renoun;  
 . Maydeneskastel by þat day,  
 . Wip maydenes had he þer his play.<sup>6</sup>  
 Sexti wynter he regned lyues,<sup>7</sup>  
 & twenty sones had by<sup>8</sup> twenti wyues,  
 & prytty doughtres by þe same.  
 Of þyse children, lystnep þer<sup>9</sup> name :
- 2152 He is the first  
British sea-  
robber,
- 2156 and he plunders  
France.
- 2160 Then he builds  
Kaer Ebrac  
(York) and  
Aklud (Dum-  
barton)
- 2164
- 2168 now Caerlave-  
rock.
- 2172 Ebrauk reigns  
60 years,  
and has 20  
sons and 30  
daughters.

<sup>1</sup> he gert.<sup>2</sup> bi see & sond.<sup>3</sup> Home to Bretayn.<sup>4</sup> had tresore & fees.<sup>5</sup> not so like.

<sup>6</sup> Mais j'o n'en sai por quel raison  
 Li castiax ot nom de Pucèles  
 Plus que de dames, ne d'anceles  
 Ne me fu dit, ne jo nel di;  
 Ne jo n'ai mie tot ol,

Ne jo n'ai mie tot vtu,

Ne demandé, ne retenu.

Mult estourait à home entendre

Qui de tot volroit raison rendre.

Wace, I. 75, 76, l. 1566-74.

<sup>7</sup> in lyue.<sup>8</sup> he had twenty soñs with.<sup>9</sup> of þe sons listē þe.

§ Nomina filiorum & filiarum Regis Eboracy.

Here are the  
names of the  
20 sons.

§ Brutes Grenescheld, Margadu,  
Cisillus, Regien, Bladu, 2176  
Moryod, Lagon, Ebolan,<sup>1</sup>  
Kynbar,<sup>2</sup> Spadan, Gaul, Pardan,  
Eldade, Chagus, Cherin,<sup>3</sup> Luwor,  
Lud,<sup>4</sup> Assarak, Buwel, Ector. 2180

And here the  
names of the  
30 daughters.

pise aren þe sonas name ryght;  
Now lystnep<sup>5</sup> how þe maidones hight:  
§ þe firste highte Gloyglyn,  
Otyda, Anrar, Nynogyn,<sup>6</sup> 2184  
Gardid, Rodan, Gwedian,  
Angart, Gwenlode, Medlan,<sup>7</sup>  
Mayleure, Echab,<sup>8</sup> Tangustel,  
Stadirt, Lambrada,<sup>9</sup> Methael,<sup>10</sup> 2188

Galaes is the  
prettiest,

Anor full of  
courtesy,

Gaat, Etheyn, Neest, Egorgon,<sup>11</sup>  
Gladus, Abren, Langon, Egron,<sup>12</sup>  
Edra, Abalak, & Agnes,<sup>13</sup>  
Anor, Stahad,<sup>14</sup> Angalaes.<sup>15</sup> 2192  
Galaes was þe gentilest<sup>16</sup> lady  
þan any of al þe opere<sup>17</sup> nyne & twenty;  
Anor, scheo was ful curteyse,  
& well couþe demeyne richeyse; 2196

<sup>1</sup> *Jagon et Bolloan*, Wace, I. 76, l. 1583.

<sup>2</sup> *Kinkar*, P. [leaf 14.] *Ringar*, Wace, l. 1584.

<sup>3</sup> *Cangu*, *Revi*, ib. l. 1585.

<sup>4</sup> *Rut*, ib. l. 1586.

<sup>5</sup> *Listens*.

<sup>6</sup> P. transposes this line and the next.

<sup>7</sup> *Leticias*, *Orar*, *Vinogin*, *Gaudis*, *Rodan*, *Guellian*, *Angaint*, *Gelloe*, *Meldan*.

Wace, I., 76, l. 1590-92.

<sup>8</sup> *Ecub*, Wace, l. 1593.

<sup>9</sup> *Kambreda*, P.

<sup>10</sup> *Staclud*, *Ransbreda*, *Mécabel*, Wace, l. 1594.

<sup>11</sup> et *Gorgon*, Wace, l. 1595.

<sup>12</sup> *Blagon*, *Engron*, Wace, l. 1596.

<sup>13</sup> *Angues*, Wace, l. 1597.

<sup>14</sup> *Staliad*, P.

<sup>15</sup> *Stadial*, *Galves*, Wace, l. 1598.

<sup>16</sup> *was gentilere*.

<sup>17</sup> *þan þe toþer*.

Gloyglyn, sche was eldest,  
 & scheo was of maneres best.<sup>1</sup>  
 Alle were þey dight, þyse madenes gent,  
 & in-to Lombardy war sent  
 To þe Kyng Syluy, Latynes<sup>2</sup> sone,  
 To brynge þem<sup>3</sup> to warisone.  
 Al were þey gyuen, als þey ȝode,  
 To þe Troiens men of gode.  
 Þe twenty bretheren, als hit seys,  
 To purchasen hem þey<sup>4</sup> wente þer weys;  
 þey dide þem intil Alemaygne,  
 & alle þe lande was þer wayne.

and Gloglyn  
 the best  
 mannered.  
 All 30 are sent  
 to Silvi, in  
 Lombardy,

2200

and married to  
 rich Trojans.

2204

[leaf 10.] Ebrauk's  
 younger sons

conquer Ger-  
 many.

2208

### ¶ Brutus Grenescheld Rex.

¶ Brutus Grenescheld, his<sup>5</sup> eldeste sone,  
 In þys lond he lefte to wone;  
 Twelue wynter he regnede here  
 Al in þes & gode manere.  
 ¶ He hadde a sone þat hyghte Leyl,  
 He made a toun wip his conseil:  
 Caerlel hit hatte, as men hit seye.  
 Bot Leyl ageyn þat he schold deye,  
 . Preyed faste in his elde,  
 ffor his lond he mought nought<sup>6</sup> welde.  
 Ilkon on oþer werre sought;  
 ffor doute of hym left þey ryght nought,  
 Ne he couþe be no<sup>7</sup> iustyser:  
 He regned fyue & twenty ȝer.

Brutus Green-  
 shield  
 rules Britain  
 12 years,  
 2212 Rex leylys.

and is suc-  
 ceeded by his  
 son Leyle, who  
 builds Carlisle,  
 2216 and who, in  
 his old age,

fails to keep  
 his people in  
 order.

He reigns 25  
 years,

2220

<sup>1</sup> *et plus séné*, Wace, I. 77,  
 l. 1608.

<sup>2</sup> *Latyn*.

<sup>3</sup> *at bring þam*.

<sup>4</sup> *purchace þam*.

<sup>5</sup> *þe*.

<sup>6</sup> *& his lond couth not*.

<sup>7</sup> *couth no bettir*. [leaf 14, col. 2.]



. ¶ *Nomina prophetarum tempore isto.*

in the days  
of Haggai,  
Amos,  
and Zachariah.

- . In his tyme was þe prophete Amos ;  
 . And Hyen and Aggos,<sup>1</sup> 2224  
 . And þe prophete Sakarye,<sup>2</sup>  
 . In þat tyme preched prophecie.  
 . He lys<sup>3</sup> at Karlel, as þe stori spak,  
 . & Brutes<sup>4</sup> at ȝork biside Eborak 2228

¶ *Rehudybras Rex fecit Wyntonium & Canterburyum & Schefton.*<sup>5</sup>

Rehudibras  
reigns, sets all  
in order,

builds Winchester,  
Canterbury and  
Chester castle,

¶ *Aquila Septonie.*

at which an  
eagle is said to  
have spoken.

- After Lleyl regned Rehudybras ;<sup>6</sup>  
 To iustice þe folk, fol wys<sup>7</sup> he was ;  
 He acorded al his barons  
 Pees to holde, &<sup>8</sup> made hem somons ; 2232  
 He made Wyncestre & Canterbury,  
 & þe castel of Chestebury ;<sup>9</sup>  
 Awhileon<sup>10</sup> spak þanne, & prophesied,  
 Bot som men seide þat he lyed.<sup>11</sup> 2236  
 Rehudybras, in his power,  
 He regned nyne & fourty ȝer.<sup>12</sup>

¶ *Bladutus Rex fecit Balneum.*<sup>13</sup>

- ¶ After þe Kyng Rehudybras,  
 Bladut his sone corowned was. 2240

<sup>1</sup> *Hien & Aggeos.*

<sup>2</sup> From Geoff. Mon. Wace (I. 79, l. 1660-4) puts "Solemons, Amos, "Aggeus et Johel" in Rehudybras's reign, after l. 2238 here.

<sup>3</sup> *Leyl lygges.*

<sup>4</sup> *Brutus lygges.*

<sup>5</sup> & *Schefton* in another hand.

<sup>6</sup> *Rudhudibras.*

<sup>7</sup> *folk noble.*

<sup>8</sup> *he.*

<sup>9</sup> *Chestirschire. (Cestebire, Wace.)*

<sup>10</sup> *eagle* inserted by a later hand.

<sup>11</sup> *One spak þer & prophesied*

*Aquile : men sais he lied. P.*

*Uns aigles, MS. du Roi, 27. un*

*ange, MS. de Ste.-Genev. Y. fol. 10.*

*Wace, I. 79. note a.*

<sup>12</sup> *Qarante ans, un mains, réna cil.*

*Wace, I. 79, l. 1657.*

<sup>13</sup> In another hand.

- Bladut dide many maystri,  
 He gaf hym al to nygromaunci;  
 Hote<sup>1</sup> bathe he dide make,  
 ffor mikel god to mannes sake;  
 2244 He dide leye perin<sup>2</sup> springes,  
 Tonnes of bras wip queynte<sup>3</sup> pynges  
 put make þe water euere hot;  
 2248 What ys þerynne, noman wel wot;  
 Bathe, for bapyng, þe name hight;  
 Byside þe bape a<sup>4</sup> temple he dight,—  
 þe temple name was Mynerue,—  
 þe folk to receyue & to serue;  
 2252 A fire<sup>5</sup> he dide make per-inne,  
 Euere to brenne & neuere to blynne.  
 Bladut wrought many meruaille,  
 2256 Many god þyng þat ȝit wyl vaylle;<sup>6</sup>  
 Atte laste he wolde fleye,  
 ffeper-hames he made hym sleye;  
 At Londoñ he tok his flyght,  
 & fley as fer as he myght  
 2260 Vpon a temple sire<sup>7</sup> Appolyn,  
 peron he fel, & m[a]de his fyn;  
 Sire Appolyn so doun hym cast,  
 2264 þat body & bon hit al to-barst:<sup>8</sup>  
 Twenty wynter was he kyng,  
 At Londoñ he mad his endyng.
- Bladud takes  
 to necromancy  
 makes hot baths  
 with springs of  
 brass and  
 quaint things,  
 at Bath;  
 then he builds  
 a temple,  
 with ever-burn-  
 ing fire;  
 [leaf 10, col. 2.] lastly he makes  
 wings,  
 and flies from  
 London,  
 to a temple of  
 Apollo,  
 who casts him  
 down, and  
 breaks all his  
 bones.

¶ *Leyr Rex fecit Leycestre.*

- After hym þen regned Leyr,  
 þat was his sone & his eyr;  
 ffourty wynter þen regned he;
- Then Bladud's  
 2268 son, King Lear,  
 reigns,

<sup>1</sup> þe hate.<sup>2</sup> þer it.<sup>3</sup> bras quante.<sup>4</sup> MS. &. P. has a.<sup>5</sup> ? MS. *After*. A fire, P.<sup>6</sup> many a gude þat ȝit auaille.<sup>7</sup> þe temple of. [leaf 14, back.]<sup>8</sup> to brast.

|                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| and builds on<br>the river Soar,<br>Kaer Leyr,<br>now Leicester.<br>He has three<br>daughters,<br><br>Gonorille,<br><br>Ragaw, and<br>Gordille. | Vpon Sore he made a cite,<br>Kaer Leyr he dide hit calle,<br>Leycestre þe name ys now wiþ alle.<br>pre doughtres hadde sire Leyr,<br>Mighte he haue non oþer eir,<br>þe eldeste highte Gonorille,<br>pat oþer Ragaw, <sup>1</sup> þe prydde Gordylle, <sup>2</sup><br>Bot Gordille, <sup>3</sup> was ȝengest,<br>& hure louede þe fader best.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 2272                                                                 |
| When Lear<br>grows old, he<br><br>resolves to<br>divide his lands<br>between his<br>daughters.                                                  | Leyr, when he was in elde,<br>His lond fol wel myght he nought welde ;<br>He þoughte his doughtres gyue hosebandes,<br>& twyxten hem parten his landes ;<br>Bot of hem first he þoughte <sup>4</sup> here<br>Which of hem had hym most dere ;<br>He assaied <sup>4</sup> ilk by þeym self one,<br>þe eldest first of ylkone.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 2280<br><br><br><br><br>2284                                         |
| So he asks<br>Gonorylle how<br>much she'd<br>love him if she<br>were his ruler.                                                                 | ¶ He com & spak to Gonorylle,<br>“ Doughter, sey me new þy wylle,<br>“ How mykel woldest þou me loue<br>“ ȝyf þou were lady me aboue ? ”<br>Whan swylk a <sup>5</sup> word scheo herde neuene,<br>Scheo swor by þe Godhed of heuene,<br>Wheþer scheo were mayden or wyf,<br>Scheo wolde loue <sup>6</sup> hym as hure lyf.<br>“ Doughter,” he seyde, “ graunt mercy !<br>“ Of me þou getes gret curtesy.”<br>¶ He com & spak vnto Ragawe :<br>“ Doughter, sey me þe soþe sawe :<br>“ How mykel louestou me wyþ wylle ? ”<br>& Ragaw þoughte on <sup>7</sup> Gonorylle,<br>Scheo seide : “ ffader, y loue þe more | 2288<br><br><br><br><br>2292<br><br><br><br>2296<br><br><br><br>2300 |
| Then Lear asks<br>Ragawe how<br>much she loves<br>him.<br><br>“ More than<br>any thing else<br>in this world ! ”                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                      |

<sup>1</sup> Ragau (but Ragawe l. 2297, &c. below.) Wace has Ragau.

<sup>2</sup> Gordille. (Cordéille, Wace.)

<sup>3</sup> wald he.

<sup>4</sup> asked of.

<sup>5</sup> whan þat.

<sup>6</sup> scho wild luf.

<sup>7</sup> thought of.

- " þan al þat in þys werld euere wore!"  
 " Doughter, þat ys loue ynow;  
 " þat louyng schal be<sup>1</sup> for þy prow." 2304  
 ¶ He com to Gordylle þat was 3ongest;  
 Of boþe þe oper he loued hure best.  
 Scheo wyste how þat hure systres seyde,  
 Of a gyle hit was a-breyde. 2308  
 " Doughter, how mikel louest<sup>2</sup> þou me?"  
 " fader," scheo seyde, " y schal sey þe:  
 " Als my fader y haue þe loued,  
 " And euere more schal to be proued."<sup>3</sup> 2312  
 " Ne louest þou<sup>4</sup> me namore, mi dere?"  
 " 3ys, fader, þou lyst<sup>5</sup> & here:  
 " Ryght als þou has, so artow worþy, [leaf 10, back.]  
 " So mykel loue to þe owe y." 2316  
 þat word tok he yuel til<sup>6</sup> herte,  
 He vnderstod hit al ouerþwerte;  
 Scheo seyde nought glosyng til<sup>7</sup> his wille,  
 Als Ragaw dide, & Gonorille; 2320  
 perfore he answerd þus a-geyn:  
 " Of me þe þynkes<sup>8</sup> gret desdeyn,  
 " & hast<sup>9</sup> myn elde in despit;  
 " Of myn for euere þou art quyt;  
 " þou seist nought as þy sistren seis,  
 " þyn answeare his nought<sup>10</sup> so curteys;  
 " perfore y schal<sup>11</sup> myn heritage  
 " Gyue þy sistres in mariage; 2328  
 " þey schol<sup>11</sup> depart hit þeym by-twene,  
 " & þou þer-fro [go] quit & clene:  
 " Of þem alle y loued þe mest,<sup>12</sup>  
 " & now y se þou loues me lest!" 2332

Then Lear asks  
Gordylle, whom  
he loves best,

how much she  
loves him,

" As my  
father."

" No more?"

" Yes father,  
according to  
your worth."

Lear takes this  
on the cross,

says she

scorns his age,

and that he'll  
divide his  
heritage  
between her  
sisters.

<sup>1</sup> þi lufyng saff falle.

<sup>2</sup> lufes.

<sup>3</sup> & euere saff to be reprovied.

<sup>4</sup> Loues þou.

<sup>5</sup> listen.

<sup>6</sup> ill to.

<sup>7</sup> glosand to.

<sup>8</sup> þink.

<sup>9</sup> has.

<sup>10</sup> of þin ansuere.

<sup>11</sup> saff.

<sup>12</sup> chirest þe mastre.

Gordylle leaves  
him,

Gordille wolde namore<sup>1</sup> seye,  
Ne strive ageyn, bot zede hure weye;  
Ne he ne saide namore til hire,  
Bot wente fro hure al in<sup>2</sup> ire. 2336

and he marries  
Gonorille to  
the Scottish  
King,  
and Regawe to  
the Duke of  
Cornwall.

In þys tyme þat þey were wrothe,  
He mariede þe opere doughtres boþe;  
þe kyng of Scotland þat on dide wedde;  
Hennieis<sup>3</sup> of Cornewaille, Ragaw hom ledde;  
þey acorded alle at her pay 2341  
To parte þe lond al by his day.

Gordylle

Dame Gordylle wiþ wrapthe sche went,  
Of many men mikel was by-ment,<sup>4</sup> 2344

has no pro-  
vision made  
for her,

pat sche hadde no warisoun  
Neyþer of rente, lond,<sup>5</sup> ne toun;  
& he forbed hire lord to take  
In his lond, for warison sake; 2348

but sorrows for  
her father's  
wrath more  
than that.

perfore he schamede hure<sup>6</sup> sore;  
& hure ouer-poughte<sup>7</sup> mykel more  
þe wrapthe of hure fader þe kyng  
Wel more þan any oþer þyng.<sup>8</sup> 2352

The French  
king,  
Aganyppus,  
hears of

¶ Aganyppus, þe kyng of fraunce,  
Herde speken of Gordylles<sup>9</sup> chaunce,—  
Alle men leyde on hure<sup>10</sup> gret pris  
pat sche was fair, curteys, & wys,— 2356

Gordylle's  
beauty and  
wisdom,

& poughte ȝyf<sup>11</sup> he myght hure haue,  
Al his honour schold sche saue.<sup>12</sup>

and asks Lear  
for her.

He sente messegers to Leyr,  
To wedde his doughter he was in speyr; 2360  
Bot Leyr had nought ȝit forgotten

<sup>1</sup> no more wild.

<sup>2</sup> he went away full of.

<sup>3</sup> Hennis.

<sup>4</sup> was ment.

<sup>5</sup> rent of lond. [leaf 15.]

<sup>6</sup> perfor aschamed hir so.

<sup>7</sup> hir forþought.

<sup>8</sup> þan þe tynsett (loss) of oþer thyng.

<sup>9</sup> Gordille.

<sup>10</sup> how men said of hir.

<sup>11</sup> he þought if.

<sup>12</sup> ? MS. haue. P. reads suld scho saue.

How lyghtly sche had of hym<sup>1</sup> leten :

Leyr sent hym ageyn to seye,

" His land was gyuen to his<sup>2</sup> doughtres tweye ;

" Hure body on hym he vouched saue ; 2365

" Wip hure nought elles myghte he haue."

To Leyr he sente ȝut eft ageyn,

& seyde Leyr<sup>3</sup> for certeyn 2368

" þat he ne askede non oþer þyng,

" Bot onlike his doughter ȝyng."

Leyr þen graunted þem also sone ;<sup>4</sup>

Wip hure to wende þey made hem bone ; 2372

To schip þey wente, & vp þe sayl,

þey askede namore<sup>5</sup> apparayl.

Now ys hure falle þe fairest chaunce,[*fr. 10, bk., col. 2.*]

Gordylle ys mad her<sup>6</sup> quene of ffraunce. 2376

þenne þe<sup>7</sup> men þat kyng Leyr

Had ordeyned to ben his eyr,

þey nolde soffre hym nought to take,

Hys owen propre<sup>8</sup> for to make.

When<sup>9</sup> þe Duk of Cornewaille,

Al þe soup tyl hym gan taylle ;

Manglanus,<sup>10</sup> þe kyng of Scotlonȝ,

þe north he tok hit til<sup>11</sup> his hond ; 2384

Leyr was al at þer baundoun,

& þey sette hym to lyuersoun ;<sup>12</sup>

þey sette hym honorable to be,

Wip fourty knyghtes<sup>13</sup> of meygne. 2388

Leyr held hym payed of þat coueinaunt ;<sup>14</sup>

To holde hym þat, þey swore þe graunt.

¶ Wyþ Menglanus was Leyr þe kyng

Lear says he  
can give no  
land with her,  
but Aganypus  
may have her  
body.

He accepts this,

and his men  
sail off with

Cordylle, who  
becomes Queen  
of France.

Lear is

dispossessed of  
his land,

but allowed to  
have 40  
knights.

Lear is treated  
well at first,

<sup>1</sup> of him had.

<sup>2</sup> he had gyfen his lond to.

<sup>3</sup> & told hym.

<sup>4</sup> þam alsone.

<sup>5</sup> asked þei non.

<sup>6</sup> is mad.

<sup>7</sup> Lo þo.

<sup>8</sup> awen propir.

<sup>9</sup> Hewyn.

<sup>10</sup> Meglan.

<sup>11</sup> north toke to.

<sup>12</sup> liuerison.

<sup>13</sup> à cinquante chevaliers, Wace.

<sup>14</sup> was payed of þat conant.

|                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| but then his allowances                                | fful wel serued atte þe comyng; <sup>1</sup><br>Sone afterward þey fillede of <sup>2</sup> Leyre,<br>& dide his liuere for to apeire.<br>After þe peirement <sup>3</sup> of his liuere,                 | 2392 |
| and attendants are cut down.<br>Gonerille complains of | Were abated of his meyne;<br>þe quene, his doughter Gonorille,<br>Hure þoughte most scorn & ille<br>Of þe meyne hure fader held;<br>Gret outrage scheo hit held.                                        | 2396 |
| her father's dotage and his followers,                 | Sche seyde vntil Manglanus,<br>" ffolyly <sup>4</sup> hold we þis meyne þus,<br>" pat mykel þyng al day notes;<br>" & my fader in elde dotes<br>" To halde <sup>5</sup> swylk a squierey,               | 2404 |
| and sends away 10 of his knights.                      | " & gret costage in ryotrye.<br>" perfore y rede, doþ als y seye,<br>" Lat somme of hem go <sup>6</sup> þer weye."<br>þen was ordeyned to lesse þer men;<br>Of fourty knyghtes abated <sup>7</sup> ten. | 2408 |
|                                                        | þen was sire Leyres rente abated;<br>. He auaunsed first hure pat hym hated;<br>. Scheo was first married of alle,<br>. And first dide scheo his honur falle.                                           | 2412 |
| Nota.                                                  | . Alas! to fewe <sup>8</sup> childre men fynde,<br>. pat ben to fader & moder kynde!                                                                                                                    | 2416 |

## De ingratitude filiarum, &amp; planctu patris eorum, Leyr.

Lear dislikes this,

Now gynnes Leyr to myslyke;  
" Sone," he seyde, " þey gynne me swyke  
" ffro myn aboue<sup>9</sup> y am put lowe,  
" & zit scha[l] more<sup>10</sup> wyþynne a þrowe. 2420

<sup>1</sup> gynmyng.<sup>2</sup> þei filled.<sup>3</sup> After apeyrment.<sup>4</sup> ffolyly (? for folly, foolishly).<sup>5</sup> hold. <sup>6</sup> som of þise go forth.<sup>7</sup> MS. abyde þe. abatid, P. (30 are left, see. l. 2428.)<sup>8</sup> Allas fo.<sup>9</sup> MS. alone. aboue, P.<sup>10</sup> zit more.

" Myn oper doughter wyl y proue,  
 " pey scheo be<sup>1</sup> wroþ to my byhoue ;"  
 & dight hym wyþ his apparaille  
 To wende<sup>2</sup> in to Corne-waille. 2424 He goes to  
 He dwelt nought þer fullyk<sup>3</sup> a ȝer, Cornwall,  
 þat þey ne made hym gret daunger,  
 & lessede his knyghtes &<sup>4</sup> oper men : and there his  
 Of þritty þey abated ten, 2428 knights are  
 And ȝit of twenty abated fyue ; reduced to 20,  
 þen wold Leyr han ben of lyue ;<sup>5</sup> and then to 15.  
 " Alas !" he seyde, " y hider cam ! [leaf 11.]  
 " firo wycke vntil wors y nam." 2432  
 To Gonorille a-gayn he ȝede,  
 He wend sche wold heue mended<sup>6</sup> his nede,  
 Haue gyuen hym als scheo hadde<sup>7</sup> byforn,  
 Sche swor by god þat hurs leet<sup>8</sup> be born, 2436  
 þat scheo ne wolde, day ne nyght,  
 Halde bot hym & a knyght. So he goes  
 back to Gono-  
 rille, thinking  
 she'll give him  
 30 knights  
 again,  
 but she'll only  
 allow him one.

¶ Lamentacio Regis Leyr.

þenne bygan Leyr to sorewe,  
 & ment his mone euen & morwe ; 2440 Lear laments  
 þe grete richesse he hadde byforn, his hard case,  
 Al was a-weye & y-lorn :  
 " To longe a lyue haue y be,<sup>9</sup>  
 " þat euere scholdy þys day se ! 2444  
 " Ensamþle of<sup>10</sup> me men may take,  
 " & warnyng of sibbe,<sup>11</sup> for my sake !

<sup>1</sup> what scho is worth.

<sup>2</sup> & went him.

<sup>3</sup> had not bene þer fully.

<sup>4</sup> his.

<sup>5</sup> De trente homes l'ont mis à dix,

Puis le misrent de dix à cinc. .

Wace, p. 91, l. 1946-7.

<sup>6</sup> wold amend. [leaf 15, back.]

<sup>7</sup> as he had.

<sup>8</sup> suore þat god lete hir.

<sup>9</sup> Now ouer long o lyus haf .I. bene.

<sup>10</sup> forbiȝen bi.

<sup>11</sup> & warned be.



|                                                                           |                                                          |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                           | " Y hadde richesse ; now haue y non !                    |      |
| and reproaches<br>Fortune for her<br>changeableness,                      | " My wyt & al myn help <sup>1</sup> ys gon !             | 2448 |
|                                                                           | " Lady ffortune, pou art chaungable ;                    |      |
|                                                                           | " O day art pou neuere stable ;                          |      |
|                                                                           | " No man may of þe affye,                                |      |
| She turns down<br>the high, turns<br>up the low ;                         | " pou turnes hym doun þat er was heye ;                  | 2452 |
|                                                                           | " þat now ys doun, vpward pou turnes ;                   |      |
|                                                                           | " Wyþ þe, nys non þat he ne mournes ;                    |      |
| and honour or<br>dishonour fol-<br>lows her look.                         | " Bot þere pou gyuest þy loue lokyng/,                   |      |
|                                                                           | " He ys worschipped als a kyng ;                         | 2456 |
|                                                                           | " & whom pou turnest þy lokyng fro,                      |      |
|                                                                           | " Sone ys he doune yn sorewe & wo ;                      |      |
|                                                                           | " þe vnkynde pou wilt vp reyse,                          |      |
|                                                                           | " þe kynde pou puttest to meseysey ;                     | 2460 |
|                                                                           | " Wyþ kyng & erl, when þe myslikes,                      |      |
|                                                                           | " þer welþe a-wey to wo pou strykes.                     |      |
|                                                                           | " When y had god <sup>2</sup> & welþe ynnow,             |      |
| Lear's friends<br>have gone with<br>his riches ;                          | " þen fondy frende þat to me drow ; <sup>3</sup>         | 2464 |
|                                                                           | " Now pouerte ys put me byforn,                          |      |
|                                                                           | " þat al þer sight fro <sup>4</sup> me ys lorn ;         |      |
|                                                                           | " þer loue schold lange to me <sup>5</sup> þorow ryght,  |      |
|                                                                           | " þat schewe me of loue <sup>6</sup> semblaunt ne syght. |      |
| his ill-fortune<br>began when he<br>blamed Gor-<br>dyle for her<br>truth, | " Dame fortune, þy louely lok                            | 2469 |
|                                                                           | " & þy gode wille fro me þou tok,                        |      |
|                                                                           | " When y blamed my doughter ȝyng,                        |      |
|                                                                           | " & 'gaf no kepe til hure kennyng/,                      | 2472 |
|                                                                           | " þat seyde me soþ apertely :                            |      |
|                                                                           | " ' Als y had, so was y worthy,                          |      |
|                                                                           | " ' And also mykel scheo loued me :'                     |      |
|                                                                           | " Scheo seide bettere þan y coup se ;                    | 2476 |
|                                                                           | " Hure word noþyng y ne vndestod,                        |      |
| and was angry<br>with her.                                                | " But mad me wroþ : y coupe no god,                      |      |

<sup>1</sup> & my *happe*. P. omits the next fourteen lines, which are, however, in Wace (p. 92-3), and are taken more or less from Boethius, *de Consolatione*.

<sup>2</sup> *gold*.

<sup>3</sup> *my frendes vnto me sust drouh*.

<sup>4</sup> *of*.

<sup>5</sup> *ould longe to*.

<sup>6</sup> *þei mak of huf*.

- " Y parceyued nought what was hure tent,  
 " Bot now fele y wel what scheo ment; 2480  
 " Y fele hit we[l] þe soþe hit endes;  
 " Whyder may y now to seke my<sup>1</sup> frendes?  
 " ȝyf y seke hure for any frame,  
 " þey sche me weyue, scheo nys<sup>2</sup> to blame,  
 " ffor y defended hure my lond, 2485  
 " Ne nought hure gaf, ne hure<sup>3</sup> ne fond:  
 " Napeles, hure wol y seke, Nevertheless  
he (Lear) will  
seek her,  
 " Y fond hure euere god and meke; [leaf 11, col. 2.]  
 " Wisdam sche has me ytaught, 2489  
 " Wysdam schal make hure wiþ me saught;  
 " ȝyf y may nought bryng hure þerto,  
 " Wors þan þe opere may sche nought do; 2492  
 " Scheo seyde<sup>4</sup> a þyng y scha[l] now proue,  
 " ' Als hure ffather scheo wolde me loue;'  
 " & als scheo seyde, proue schal y for she pro-  
mised to love  
him as a father.  
 " Hire kyndenesse & hure curtesy." 2496

When Leyr had louge sore syked, Lear  
 Hys mone ment, & myslyked;  
 He dighte hym, als of chaunce,  
 Right ouer þe se forþ into<sup>5</sup> ffraunce. 2500 sails to France,  
lands at Calais,  
and sends to  
tell Gordyle  
 Vp at Calays<sup>6</sup> he hauene<sup>7</sup> hent,  
 To þe quene priuely he sent;  
 At a cite he abod,  
 Whyle a man his<sup>8</sup> message rod, 2504  
 & telde þe quene al hys cas,  
 And how he vp aryued was;  
 How hys doughtres had wyþ hym wrought,  
 . Al his meschef, furgat [he]<sup>9</sup> nought. 2508 all his mis-  
fortunes.

<sup>1</sup> may I to seke me.<sup>2</sup> & scho me weyue scho nes.<sup>3</sup> Ne nouht I gaf hir. [lf. 15, bk., col. 2.]<sup>4</sup> He said.<sup>5</sup> & ouer þe se he ferde to.<sup>6</sup> Chaus, MS. du Roi, 27; Kaleis,MS. Cot. Vitel. A. x.; Chain, MS.  
de Ste. Gen. Y. fo. 10; Wace, p. 95.<sup>7</sup> At kaleis vp heuen he.<sup>8</sup> till a man þe.<sup>9</sup> mischefe forgate he.

§ De gratitudine Gordylle.

|                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Gordille                                                                                      | Gordille, when sche wystè þe pleynt,<br>. Hure faire colour gan wex al <sup>1</sup> feynt                                                                                                                                                                                                          |              |
| sends all she<br>has to her<br>father, tells<br>him to dress,<br>come to her,                 | Al þat scheo had yn hure power,<br>Scheo bitaught hit þe messenger,<br>& bad hym go hym forte atyre<br>Wyþ honour, to come & speke wyþ hire;<br>“ Bot byforn sendes <sup>2</sup> my lord þe kyng,<br>“ & warne hym of his comyng.”                                                                 | 2512<br>2516 |
| and then warn<br>the King of his<br>coming.                                                   | þe messenger spedde hym swyþe,<br>& broughte Leyr tydyng blyue;<br>Vntyl anoþer cyte he zede,<br>& dight hym al þat hym was nede.                                                                                                                                                                  | 2520         |
| Lear apparels<br>himself fity,                                                                | When he was dight at hys wylle,<br>To þe kyng he sent, & to Gordylle,<br>þat he was ryued y þat contre,<br>To speken þe kyng, & his doughter se.                                                                                                                                                   | 2524         |
| and announces<br>his arrival to<br>the King of<br>France,<br>who welcomes<br>him,             | . § When he wyst þat Leyr schold come,<br>Agaynes hym ful faire þey nome,<br>& fair receyues hym afor <sup>3</sup> þe quen<br>Als a man he hadde nought seen:                                                                                                                                      | 2528         |
| and orders<br>honour to be<br>paid to him.                                                    | He comaunded yn hys kynedam<br>To worschipe hym where þat he cam.<br>When he had dwelled longe space,<br>& telde how his doughtres dide him chace,                                                                                                                                                 | 2532         |
| King Aga-<br>nyppus also<br>takes up Lear's<br>cause,<br>lands with an<br>army in<br>Britain, | Sire Aganyppus was curteys;<br>He samned an ost of his ffraunceys,<br>& comen wyþ Leyr ouer þe se<br>To helpe to wynne a-gayn his fe.<br>Cordille wyþ hure fader went,<br>. Wyþ leue of hure lord his host had sent.<br>þe dukes sone byforn hem þey fond,<br>þey slowe þem boþe, & wonne þe lond. | 2536<br>2540 |
| and makes Lear<br>king again.                                                                 | pre 3er after was he kyng,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |              |

<sup>1</sup> gan att to.<sup>2</sup> biforhand send.<sup>3</sup> fbr. [leaf 16.]

|                                                  |                  |                             |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| In ful seysyne made <sup>1</sup> hys endyng;     |                  | In three years              |
| Dame Gordylle he made his heyr;                  |                  | Lear dies,                  |
| In Leycestre sche leyde hure fader Leyr,         | 2544             | (making Gordylle his heir), |
| In a temple solempnely;                          |                  | and is buried               |
| pe temple highte temple Iany.                    |                  | in Leicester.               |
| Sone after fel pe chaunce <sup>2</sup> þus,      | [leaf 11, back.] | Then Ag-                    |
| Deide hure lord Aganyppus.                       | 2548             | nyppus dies,                |
| In hure wydewehod sche had pe honur              |                  | and Gordylle                |
| . ffyue zer als conquerrou. <sup>3</sup>         |                  | reigns 5 years,             |
| Hire two sistres had two sones;                  |                  | till her two                |
| . How þey dide, pe story mones:                  | 2552             | nephews,                    |
| . Gonoriffes sone highte Mongan, <sup>4</sup>    |                  | Morgan and                  |
| . þat oper Condage, a noble man.                 |                  | Condage,                    |
| When þys Morgan and þys Condage <sup>5</sup>     |                  |                             |
| . Waxen were, & of age,                          | 2556             |                             |
| To Gordylle þey gaf bataille.                    |                  |                             |
| . & scheo ageyn dyde hem trauaille.              |                  |                             |
| ffirst were þey boþe ouercomen,                  |                  |                             |
| & at pe laste Gordille was <sup>6</sup> nomen,   | 2560             | take her, and               |
| And held hire longe in þer prison,               |                  | keep her in                 |
| ffor hure <sup>7</sup> myght go no raunson.      |                  | prison                      |
| When no raunson myght for hure <sup>7</sup> go,  |                  |                             |
| Hure <sup>7</sup> self for sorewe dide sche slo. | 2564             | till she slays              |
|                                                  |                  | herself.                    |

¶ Exe fratres diuiderunt regnum.

|                                          |      |                 |
|------------------------------------------|------|-----------------|
| Wha[n] þat Condage & Morgan <sup>8</sup> |      | . Condage takes |
| Of Gordylle þus pe land wan,             |      | Northumbria;    |
| Condage tok (als hym þoughte best)       |      |                 |
| Ouer Humber pe Northwest.                | 2568 |                 |

<sup>1</sup> *plenere seisen.*  
<sup>2</sup> *þat chance fell.*  
<sup>3</sup> Not in MS. du Roi, 27; but four other French MSS. have "Fuls a 'cinq ans tenu l'onor." Wace, p. 98.  
<sup>4</sup> *Gonoriff son hight Morgan.*

<sup>5</sup> Cinedagius, Wace, p. 98, l. 2108.  
<sup>6</sup> *þei.*  
<sup>7</sup> *hir.*  
<sup>8</sup> *Morgan* (like Wace and Geofrey, and henceforth to line 2599.)

|                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                        |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Morgan, the South.                                                                                        | penne Morgan þe South ches,<br>& <sup>1</sup> two 3er þey helde þe lond yn pes;<br>Bot Couetyse þat neuere restes,<br>Venym amonges men hit kestes.                                    | 2572 |
| But soon<br>Morgan is in-<br>cited by evil<br>fellows                                                     | Morgan hadde enuiousse felawes,<br>þat wyckedly seyde til hym sawes;<br>þem were leuere werre þan pes.<br>He lystned hem, & þat he ches.                                               | 2576 |
|                                                                                                           | þus þey seyde vntil Morgan,<br>" þat <sup>2</sup> þow art eldest, & baldest man,<br>" & hast <sup>3</sup> bot half, & 3it þe leste;<br>" & he ys 3ongest, & hap <sup>4</sup> þe meste, | 2580 |
|                                                                                                           | " And þat ys al þyn owen gylt.<br>" þou may haue hit al 3yf þat þou wilt;<br>" To ride, 3yf þat þou wile bygynne,<br>" & al <sup>5</sup> þe lond[e] myght þou wynne;                   | 2584 |
| to seize his<br>cousin's land.                                                                            | " þou getest <sup>6</sup> folk wypoute noumbre<br>" To sese þe londe by-3onde Humbre.<br>" 3yf þou bygynne forto ryde,<br>" Condage schal nought þe abyde."                            | 2588 |
|                                                                                                           | Morgan dide atte her <sup>7</sup> conseille<br>& wroughte hym self to wroþer haylle;<br>He passed Humber, destruyed þe lond,<br>Brente & robbed al þat he fond.                        | 2592 |
| He crosses the<br>Humber, and<br>burns and robs.<br>Condage calls<br>out his host,<br>and Morgan<br>flees | ¶ Condage herde hit sone seye;<br>He dighte his host to stoppe hys weye<br>Morgan herd telle þat Condage<br>Com wiþ gret host & outrage;                                               | 2596 |
|                                                                                                           | He turned bak, & gan to fle<br>South, fro contre to contre.<br>ffer yn to Walys fled Morgan;<br>& Condage folewed, & hym ouer-ran.                                                     | 2600 |
| into Wales.<br>Condage<br>follows,                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                        |      |

<sup>1</sup> bot. [leaf 16, col. 2.]<sup>2</sup> þat left out.<sup>3</sup> has.<sup>4</sup> he 3ongere & has.<sup>5</sup> aff.<sup>6</sup> getis.<sup>7</sup> did after.

§ De morte Morgan per contumeliam.

And þer yn Walys Morgan slow. [leaf 11, back, col. 2.] slays Morgan,  
 þorow hit hap þat þe name now, No/a.  
 "Clow Morgan" <sup>1</sup> ys now þe name,  
 ffor Morgan deide in þat same. 2604

§ Condagens Rex.

þen had al, sire Condage, and rules  
 þe lond holyk <sup>2</sup> in heritage; Britain 30  
 pryttý wynter was he kyng, years,  
 In þes he made his endyng. 2608

§ De prophetis & Romulo.

Ysaayas.

§ In his tyme was Isaye, while Isaiab  
 & preched þenne þe prophecie; and Hosea  
 & þe prophete Osee, prophesy,  
 . Y þat tyme þan <sup>3</sup> lyuede he; 2612  
 And þe Emperour Romulus  
 & his broþer sire Remus, and Romulus  
 pyse two brethere made Rome, and Remus  
 . þer holy chirche gyueþ þe <sup>4</sup> dome; 2616 build Rome.  
 . þre hundred 3er & foure score  
 . & seuentene, þus fer <sup>5</sup> byfore So England had  
 . Regned kynges y þis landes kings 397  
 . Ar Rome wer set þer hit now standes. 2620 years  
 before Rome  
 was built.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Marge*; that is, Margate in Kent! says de Lincy. *Wace*. i. 100.  
<sup>2</sup> *holy*.

<sup>3</sup> *þat tyme*. [leaf 16, back.]

<sup>4</sup> *kirk gifes his*.

<sup>5</sup> *fett*. [Not in Geoffrey.]

## ¶ Ryual Rex.

Then Condage's  
son, Ryual,  
reigns ;  
and in his time  
it rains blood,  
  
and there is a  
plague of flies.

After þe kynges tyme<sup>1</sup> Condage,  
Ryual his sone tok<sup>2</sup> þe heritage.  
pre dayes in his [tyme] reyned blod—  
Y ne wot why, ne vndestod,— 2624  
& wox so mykel mynde of flies,  
Men deide by gates<sup>3</sup> & by styres :  
Alle men hadde þerof gret drede  
Tyl hit sesede & ouer zede. 2628

## ¶ Gargustius Rex.

Then reign  
Gargustius.  
  
Cycyllius,  
  
Lago,  
  
and Garbodian,  
whose two sons,  
Ferrex and  
Porrex,  
are ever at  
strife

After þe kynges tyme Ryual,  
Gargustius<sup>4</sup> his sone had al ;  
After þis<sup>5</sup> Cargustius,  
Regned his sone CYCYLLIUS ; Rex 2632  
& after þe kyng Cyailly,  
Was Lago kyng, his cosyn nay ;<sup>6</sup> Rex  
After Lago was Kynmar<sup>7</sup> kyng, Rex  
Cysillies sone, & had þe þynge. 2636  
After Kynmare regned þan  
Hys sone, þat highte Garbodian.<sup>8</sup> Rex  
Garbodyan<sup>8</sup> had two sones,  
fful enemys, þat zit men<sup>9</sup> mones ; 2640  
þe eldest he hight sire fferreus,  
þat oper men calde Porreus ;  
Might þer neuere pes be þeym bytwene  
In non acord, bot euere tene. 2644

<sup>1</sup> þis hyng.<sup>2</sup> held.<sup>3</sup> bi strete.<sup>4</sup> Gurgustius, P. and Wace.<sup>5</sup> þis, P. his sone, Lam.<sup>6</sup> kyng cosyn gurgusti.<sup>7</sup> Rimar, Wace, p. 102, l. 2194 :  
Kinmarcus, Geoffrey.<sup>8</sup> Gorbodian (Gorbodiabo, Wace.)<sup>9</sup> of.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>þe while<sup>1</sup> þer fader was on lyue,<br/>         ffor þe royalme gon þey to stryue;<br/> <sup>2</sup> Al þus þey ferde wiþ gret enuye,<br/>         Whilk scholde haue þe seignurie.<sup>3</sup><br/>         Porrex was 3ongest,<sup>3</sup> &amp; most felon,<br/>         His þought was ay vpon treson<br/>         Where-þorow he moughte<sup>4</sup> his broþer slo.<br/>         þat oþer herd þat, dide hym to go<sup>5</sup> [leaf 12.]<br/>         fforþ in to ffraunce, for doute of gyle.<br/>         þe king Syward he serued a while,<br/>         &amp; gadered þer god<sup>6</sup> party;<br/>         Wiþ schipes com ouer baldely,<br/>         &amp; til his broþer gaf bataille,<br/>         And deyde sone, hit myght nought vaille,<br/>         Bot at þe firste was he slayn,<br/>         &amp; al his folk, knyght &amp; swayn.<br/>         Iudon, þer<sup>7</sup> moder, herde wel how<br/>         þat þe ton þat oþe[r]<sup>8</sup> slow;<br/>         Scheo louede mykel þe slayn broþer,<br/>         &amp; dedlyk<sup>9</sup> hated sche þat oþer;<br/>         . ffor als vnkyndely as þey wrought,<br/>         . þerfore vnkyndenesse<sup>10</sup> sche þought.<br/>         A nyght hure sone to bedde was gon,<br/>         On hym com his moder Iudon;<br/>         Ilk of hure maydones, a knyf she bar,<br/>         Porrex þrote a two sche schar,<br/>         And on peces hym al to-hewe;<sup>11</sup><br/>         Swylk a vengauce noman knewe:<br/>         Longe was spoken of þis<sup>12</sup> chaunce,</p> | <p>2648 for the mastery.<br/>         Porrex is<br/>         treacherous;<br/> <br/>         2652 so Ferrex goes<br/>         away to France,<br/> <br/>         where he gets a<br/>         party together,<br/>         2656 and invades<br/> <br/>         England,<br/>         but he and all<br/>         his are slain.<br/>         2660 When Iudon,<br/>         the mother of<br/>         Ferrex, whom<br/>         she loved, hears<br/>         2664 of his death,<br/> <br/>         she goes at<br/>         night to her son<br/>         2668 Porrex's bed,<br/> <br/>         and cuts his<br/>         throat in two,<br/>         and him all to<br/>         2672 pieces.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *tochils*.

<sup>2-2</sup> not in P.

<sup>3</sup> *eldest* (wrongly; see line 2642.)

<sup>4</sup> *þer þorh he thought*.

<sup>5</sup> En France oltre mer s'enfui.

Wace, p. 103.

<sup>6</sup> *a*.

<sup>7</sup> *his*. (Luclon lor mere, Wace : Widen, *Geoffrey*.)

<sup>8</sup> *þe toþer*.

<sup>9</sup> *dedely*.

<sup>10</sup> *an vnkyndes*.

<sup>11</sup> MS. *alto hewe*. P. better, *att to hewe*.

<sup>12</sup> *men spak of þat*.



|                                                                  |                                                       |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------|
| No direct heir<br>being left,                                    | Of Iudon <sup>1</sup> & of hure vengauce.             |      |
|                                                                  | ¶ When þyse breþer þus werre bygon, <sup>2</sup>      |      |
|                                                                  | Eyr of blod was þer non                               | 2676 |
|                                                                  | pat oughte haue <sup>3</sup> þe heritage,             |      |
|                                                                  | Was þer non left of ryght lynage ;                    |      |
| the land falls<br>to five kings,<br>who fight for<br>forty years | Bot to ffyue kynges þey lefte <sup>4</sup> þe lond,   |      |
|                                                                  | . pat fourty wynter þe werre fond ;                   | 2680 |
|                                                                  | Ilk of þem pat most was of myght, <sup>5</sup>        |      |
|                                                                  | Bynam pat oper of his right ; <sup>6</sup>            |      |
| lawlessly.                                                       | Mesure ne lawe, ne held no man,                       |      |
|                                                                  | Bot whoso myghte, of oper wan ;                       | 2684 |
|                                                                  | pat rycchest were, most bar þem stout,                |      |
|                                                                  | In loue ne in lawe <sup>7</sup> wold non of hem lout. |      |

¶ *Diuisio regni.*

|                                                             |                                             |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                             | pat tyme in Scotlond regned Stater ;        |      |
|                                                             | In Logers was þe kyng Pyncer ; <sup>8</sup> | 2688 |
|                                                             | Rudak was kyng of Walsche men ;             |      |
|                                                             | & Cornewaille had þe duk Cloten.            |      |
| Cloten, duke of<br>Cornwall, is<br>the nearest in<br>blood, | Cloten of kynde was next of alle            |      |
|                                                             | To wham þe heritage sholde falle ;          | 2692 |
|                                                             | Bot for þe oper were most of myght,         |      |
|                                                             | þey gaf nought of al his ryght.             |      |
| and his son,                                                | pys duk Cloten hadde a child,               |      |
|                                                             | . A doughti bacheler & a wyld ;             | 2696 |
|                                                             | pat tyme was he man most worþy,             |      |
|                                                             | & ffayr waxen, & wel an hey ;               |      |
| Doughty<br>Donwal,                                          | "Donwal doughti" <sup>9</sup> was his name, |      |
|                                                             | Of curtesey had he þe fame,                 | 2700 |

<sup>1</sup> *Lucien*, Wace, p. 104.<sup>2</sup> *were gon.*<sup>3</sup> *myght haf.*<sup>4</sup> *till ffyue kynges.*<sup>5</sup> *most myght.*<sup>6</sup> *þe powere of his myght.*<sup>7</sup> *In lawe ne luf.*<sup>8</sup> *Piguer*, Wace, l. 2250, p. 105.<sup>9</sup> *Donvalomolinus*, Wace ; *Donvalmolus*, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>2-3</sup>, Colh. ib. *Dunwallo Molmutius*, Geof. frey.

|                                            |                                             |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Ouer peym alle passed his power ;          |                                             |
| ffor first he slow þe kyng Pyncer,         |                                             |
| & seysed þe lond til his byhoue.           | slays the king<br>of Logers,                |
| Vpon Stater zit wolde he proue ;           | 2704 and then re-                           |
| Wyp force of armes he gan to ride,         | solves to                                   |
| Stater & Rudak he þought to hyde.          | attack Stater,                              |
| Rudak & Stater herde so <sup>1</sup> seye, | king of Scot-                               |
| pey swore to-gydere on hym to deye.        | land, and<br>Rudak, king of<br>2708 Wales ; |

¶ *Respice Donwalem Conquestorem.* [leaf 12, col. 2.]

|                                                    |                                |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Ageyn Donwal pey broughte þer host,                |                                |
| . In to halues, <sup>2</sup> by diuerse cost ;     | but they, in-                  |
| Rudak of Walys had þut o <sup>3</sup> syde ;       | stead, invade<br>him,          |
| Toward þe northe Stater gan ride ;                 | 2712                           |
| pey brente & slowe, nought wolde þey spare,        |                                |
| Of castel & toun þey made bare.                    | and ravage<br>his land.        |
| Donwal <sup>4</sup> herde his lond þey wasted,     |                                |
| He dighte his host, & to þem hasted ;              | 2716 Donwal                    |
| He mette wip hem, and dide hem stande,—            | marches to<br>meet them,       |
| pey were in feld þritty þousande ;                 |                                |
| Gret noise at her samny[n]g was, <sup>5</sup>      |                                |
| Wip trompe & taber, & horn of bras, <sup>5</sup> — | 2720                           |
| & grete strokes, & sore sette,                     | and a fierce<br>fight follows, |
| Wer gyuen when þey to-gedere mette,                |                                |
| Helm þorow smyten, & many a scheld, <sup>5</sup>   |                                |
| Many a knyght was feld in feld, <sup>5</sup>       | 2724                           |
| Of many hauberks was hewen þe maille. <sup>5</sup> |                                |
| Longe þey stode, & gaf bataille; <sup>5</sup>      |                                |
| Non wyste ho scholde haue <sup>6</sup> þe maystri, | with doubtful<br>result,       |
| þe parties were boþe so doughti.                   | 2728                           |
| Donewal was werreour god,                          | til the artful<br>Donwal       |
| Hym ouerþoughte <sup>7</sup> þey so wel stod ;     |                                |

<sup>1</sup> son.

<sup>2</sup> tuo parties.

<sup>3</sup> þe to.

<sup>4</sup> Donvale, Wace.

<sup>5</sup> P. omits these lines.

<sup>6</sup> wist who suld haf.

<sup>7</sup> forþouht.

picks out 600  
of his tried  
men,

arms them  
like their  
enemies,

takes them into  
the enemies'  
lines,

as part of their  
host,

gets close to  
the kings, and

suddenly slays  
both of them  
(Rudak and  
Stater).

Then his men  
resume their  
own arms,

join their  
own host,

Sex hundred of hyse he coled<sup>1</sup> out  
pat proued were, hardy & stout; 2732

. He dide per armes al doun leye  
. Pryuely biside þe weye,  
& armed þem on alle manere 2736

Als here enemis armes were,  
. per scheldes toke, helm & gleyue,  
. þeyr enemyes forto deseyue.  
. þey diden alle at his auys, 2740

. & toke þe armes of þere enemis<sup>2</sup>  
. pat leyn dede, wyþ here<sup>3</sup> queyntise,  
& dight hem on her enemys wyse.  
Donewal saide, "comes alle wyþ me,  
"& þider as y go, so schol<sup>4</sup> 3e." 2744

þey 3ede spiande her & per  
In what bataille þe kynges wer;  
When þay wyste alle at ones, 2748

Trauersed þem for þe nones  
Als þey had ben of<sup>5</sup> þeyr party,  
& syde by side ryden hym by;<sup>6</sup>  
. þe kynges to þem gaue no tent,  
. Bot forþ in here bataille went. 2752

"Haue at!" seyð Donwal, "now ys leyser!"<sup>7</sup>  
& seysede Rudak & Stater,  
& boþe at ones þeym lyghtly slow,  
& of þat pres þem smartly drow, 2756

& caste per armes of, þe vnknownen,<sup>8</sup>  
And armede hem eft wyþ here owen.  
When þey hadde per armes nomen,  
And to per host ageyn were comen, 2760

<sup>1</sup> *weled* he. (Cole, cull, L. colligere;  
*wel*, Old Icel. *velga*; O. H. Germ.  
*wellen*, choose: Stratmann.)

<sup>2</sup> *of armes of his*.

<sup>3</sup> *& att þer*.

<sup>4</sup> *sað*.

<sup>5</sup> *oñ*. [leaf 17, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *þam bic*.

<sup>7</sup> Puis s'eseria : férés, férés  
[strike]. Wace, p. 107.

<sup>8</sup> *vnknewen . . . . awen*.

- ffaste þey fullen opo þem<sup>1</sup> alle,  
 þat sone þer force gan doun falle ;  
 þat oper side stod nought<sup>2</sup> in stour,  
 ffor þey had lost<sup>3</sup> þer gouernour ;  
 þey fledde to wode & to mountaynes,  
 ffor slayn were þeyr cheuentaynes.  
 Whan Donewal hadde þe maistrise,  
 Hys pes he dide hit sette & crye,  
 þat so god pes was neuere or,  
 Ne þerafter schal namor.<sup>4</sup>  
 A coroune of gold he dyde hym make,  
 Swylk on neuere for kynges sake  
 Was in Bretaigne wrought byforn,  
 Ne on kynges heued set ne born.  
 He stabled swylk pes & gryth,  
 & wyþ his sel confermed<sup>5</sup> wyþ,  
 þat ylka temple & ilk cite  
 Schold haue & holde<sup>6</sup> þys dignite,  
 þat ȝif a man had don trespass,  
 Robbed, or slayn, or oper cas,  
 ȝyf he tyl a temple cam  
 Er men hym wiþ handes nam,<sup>7</sup>  
 Or to a cite go þan his weye,  
 Non yuel scholde men til hym eft seye ;<sup>8</sup>  
 & also to hem þat<sup>9</sup> at plowes ȝede,  
 ȝyf any man dede hem yuel dede,<sup>10</sup>—  
 Oper til<sup>11</sup> market ȝyf on schold go,  
 ȝyf men dide hem any wo,  
 Hit was teld<sup>12</sup> for felonye,  
 & worþy was<sup>13</sup> þer-fore to deye.
- and put the  
enemy to flight.  
2764  
[leaf 12, back.] Donwal then  
establishes a  
firm peace,  
2768  
has a grand  
crown of gold  
made for him,  
2772  
and ordains  
2776  
that if a culprit  
can escape to  
any temple or  
city  
2780  
before he is  
caught,  
2784 he shall go  
quit.  
Also, that any  
injury to an  
agriculturist  
2788 shall be felony,  
and punished  
with death.

<sup>1</sup> folowed on þam.<sup>2</sup> stoute (bad reading).<sup>3</sup> tynt.<sup>4</sup> neuer more.<sup>5</sup> confermed it.<sup>6</sup> suld haf & hald. 7 MS. nan.<sup>8</sup> of itt suld no man to him say.<sup>9</sup> to þat (qui as carnes, Wace).<sup>10</sup> did ille dede.<sup>11</sup> or to. [leaf 17, back.]<sup>12</sup> told.<sup>13</sup> were.

|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Donwal dies at<br>London, after<br>40 years reign,    | ffourty wynter was he kyng;<br>At Londoñ he made his endyng;<br>A temple þere dide he make<br>ffor þe pes & concordes sake;<br>In þat temple mad for þat pes<br>Was he leyd, & þere he ches.<br>Of hym were two noble sones,<br>. Als þe story of þem mones: | 2792         |
| and his sons<br>Belyn and<br>Brenne suc-<br>ceed him. | Belyn þe eldest, þat oper Brenne;<br>. Donewal þer fader, God y bykenne.                                                                                                                                                                                     | 2796<br>2800 |

§ Diuisio Regni inter Belynum & Brennum.

|                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Brenne holds<br>all Northum-<br>bria,<br>up to Caithness,<br>of Belyn,                                                            | Belyn and Brenne parted þe lond<br>. On þys manere, als y hit fond:<br>Brenne schold of Belyn holde<br>His lond, fro Humber northward he tolde;<br>Ilk del in-tyl Katenesse <sup>1</sup><br>Held Brenne of Belyn, more ne lesse;<br>Seruise schold he do þer fore,<br>He & hyse for euere more. | 2804         |
| and is to do<br>homage for it.                                                                                                    | Belyn held til his partie,<br>Logers, <sup>2</sup> Wales, & Cornubye.<br>So þey helden hit <sup>3</sup> fyue ȝer<br>In pes & in faire maner;<br>. Bot kontek & couetyse                                                                                                                         | 2808         |
| Belyn has the<br>rest of England,<br>and Wales;<br>and for five<br>years they<br>live in peace.<br>But strife and<br>covetousness | . Out of þe north wyl alwey <sup>4</sup> ryse,<br>. ffor þus men seide by elde <sup>5</sup> dawe,<br>. & ȝit hit ys a comun sawe:<br>. " Souþerne <sup>6</sup> der gos Northward,<br>. " & Norþerne <sup>7</sup> werre to þe south ys hard;                                                     | 2812<br>2816 |
| Nota.<br>rise alway in<br>the North,<br>as the common<br>saw is.                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |              |

<sup>1</sup> Belyn lete brenne of him holde  
fro humber north his lond he tolde  
Ilk a dele vnto Cathenesse.

<sup>2</sup> Londres, Wace.

<sup>3</sup> held it.

<sup>4</sup> with algate.

<sup>5</sup> be olde.

<sup>6</sup> sothron.

<sup>7</sup> northren.

- . " Bot norþern<sup>1</sup> der & þouþern<sup>2</sup> werre,  
 . " Non dredeþ, oþer þey come nought nerre ;  
 . " Bot norþerne [werre]<sup>3</sup> þat ys þe doute, 2821  
 . " & southern<sup>4</sup> der þe norþ dos loute."  
 In Brennes tyme, als ȝe may here, [leaf 12, bk., col. 2.] And in  
 Hit ferde in þys ilke manere ; 2824 Brenne's time  
 Abouten Brenne were lozengeours, he has liars  
 Bakbiteres & werreours : about him,  
 On was þer þat ful euele spak one of whom  
 To whette Brenne to reyse kontak ;<sup>5</sup> 2828 tries to stir up  
 þus he spak al wiþ tresoun :— strife,  
 . Y gyue swyche<sup>6</sup> Crystes malisoun !— and says,—  
 Christ curse  
 him !—

¶ Respice verba detractorys.

- " We haue merueille in oure þought—  
 " Bot non to þe dar sey ryght nought— 2832 " We wonder  
 " þat of so gret an heritage,  
 " þat long & broð ys in passage,  
 " þat þy fader hadde in his baillye,  
 " & hast þerof so litel partie ! 2836 that of so great  
 " And ȝit, als litel as þow has, a heritage as  
 " þou schalt<sup>7</sup> hym serue at alle cas ! your fader  
 " Wiltow holde longe<sup>8</sup> þat wyse, held, you have  
 " To serue þy broþer in alle seruise ? 2840 so litel,  
 " Artow þral or bastard, and have to  
 " Or more vyl or more coward,<sup>9</sup> serve your  
 " þat þou schalt<sup>7</sup> do hym þer-fore homage, brother for it.  
 " & art of þe same parage ? 2844 Are you a slave  
 " þe ffader hym gat, he gat þe, or a coward,  
 " & of o moder born ar<sup>10</sup> ȝe. thus to do him  
 homage ?

<sup>1</sup> soþron.

<sup>2</sup> northren.

<sup>3</sup> northern were.

<sup>4</sup> souhren.

<sup>5</sup> One þer was þat wikly spake  
bituez þe breþer raised kontake.

<sup>6</sup> gyf suylk. [leaf 17, back, col. 2.]

<sup>7</sup> schalt.

<sup>8</sup> wilt þou hald.

<sup>9</sup> cuhard.

<sup>10</sup> er.

|                                                                           |                                                                     |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Why is Belyn<br>to be your<br>lord ?                                      | " Sythen ze bope breþere are,                                       |      |
|                                                                           | " & of o ffader & moder ware,                                       | 2848 |
|                                                                           | " Wherefore has Belyn, & why,                                       |      |
|                                                                           | " Of þe & þyne swych seýgnury ? <sup>1</sup>                        |      |
|                                                                           | " Brest a two þat ilke <sup>2</sup> bond,                           |      |
|                                                                           | " Do hym no seruise for þy lond !                                   | 2852 |
|                                                                           | " ffor no lord holdeþ <sup>3</sup> þe, Belyn,                       |      |
|                                                                           | " Namore schaltow holde <sup>4</sup> hym for þyn.                   |      |
|                                                                           | " Trowe til vs & oure consayl !                                     |      |
|                                                                           | " To þy worschipe hit wole auayl !                                  | 2856 |
| Belyn once<br>chose the best<br>share :<br>now, let the<br>strongest win. | " To non of þy vasselage                                            |      |
|                                                                           | " Ne seye we neuere do suche outrage !                              |      |
|                                                                           | " þorow whas <sup>5</sup> queyntyse, & þorow whas <sup>5</sup> art, |      |
|                                                                           | " Ches Belyn hym þe beste part ?                                    | 2860 |
|                                                                           | " þer falles non oper chesyng to ;                                  |      |
| You are the<br>braver,<br>as we know,<br>by your killing<br>Duke Cenflo.  | " Bot most schal haue, þat most <sup>6</sup> may do.                |      |
|                                                                           | " More artow worth, & more hardy !                                  |      |
|                                                                           | " þat haue we sen fol certeynly                                     | 2864 |
|                                                                           | " When þou slowè þe Duk Cenflo <sup>7</sup>                         |      |
|                                                                           | " þat al Morine langede <sup>8</sup> to,                            |      |
|                                                                           | " þat al Scotland wolde haue wasted ;                               |      |
|                                                                           | " þy doughtinesse to deþe hym hasted.                               | 2868 |
|                                                                           | " I trowe of þys þou þoughte byforn,                                |      |
|                                                                           | " Bot priuely þou hast hit boren,                                   |      |
|                                                                           | " þat we ne scholde mynge <sup>9</sup> for drede.                   |      |
| Seize all<br>Belyn's lands.                                               | " Now [we] rede, þow <sup>10</sup> do hit in dede,                  | 2872 |
|                                                                           | " And forto <sup>11</sup> wyne hit ilkadel.                         |      |
|                                                                           | " Doute þe nought, þou may ful wel,                                 |      |
|                                                                           | " ffor we ne schulle <sup>12</sup> þe neuere faille,                |      |
|                                                                           | " þe while we lyue & mowe <sup>13</sup> trauaylle,                  | 2876 |

<sup>1</sup> *suylk sengnori.*<sup>2</sup> *Brist it þat þou with þe.*<sup>3</sup> *ffor lord ne holdes.*<sup>4</sup> *no more saff þou hald.*<sup>5</sup> *whos.*<sup>6</sup> *Mast saff haf þat mast.*<sup>7</sup> *Césio . . . Moriane, Wace.*<sup>8</sup> *longed.*<sup>9</sup> *suld nemppe it.* [leaf 19.]<sup>10</sup> *we þe.*<sup>11</sup> *fond to.*<sup>12</sup> *saff.*<sup>13</sup> *untill we lyf & may.*

- " ȝyf þou ne trowest<sup>1</sup> þat we þe seye,  
 " Do þe ouer vntil Norweye,  
 " And þe kynges doughter þou take ;  
 " þy party may þou þe bettere make.  
 " Haue þou Norweye & Scotland,  
 " & vs alle vnto þyn hand ;  
 " Agaynes no land schuldestow wende,<sup>2</sup>  
 " þat þou ne gete þe fairere ende ;  
 " Ne Belyn durste þe nought<sup>3</sup> abide  
 " ȝyf þou ageyn hym woldest<sup>4</sup> ride.  
 " ȝyf þou haue y-bought<sup>5</sup> make þy bone,  
 " Go by tyme, & come right sone,  
 " Al by þe syde of Myrreyue,  
 " þat Belyn no þyng aparseyue.  
 " Peraenture he wolde hym greue  
 " ȝyf þou wyf toke wyþoute leue,  
 " Or oþer wyse men wold<sup>6</sup> hym seye  
 " þat þou haddest<sup>7</sup> of hym non eye."  
 On þis wyse counselled þey hym so,  
 & Brenne trusted<sup>8</sup> þer conceille to :  
 He passed in Norweye, he gan aryue,<sup>9</sup>  
 & asked þe kynges doughter to wyue.  
 þe kynges name was Alfynge,  
 He graunted Brenne al his askynges,  
 Holyk<sup>10</sup> Bretaygne for to wyne,  
 When he wolde his werre bygynne.
- Often tydyng to Belyn was brought,  
 Whider Brenne ȝede, & what he sought ;  
 Belyn had þanne suspencion  
 þat for felonye was hit don,
- If you think  
 your army is  
 not strong  
 enough, marry  
 the king of  
 Norway's  
 daughter,  
 and he'll help  
 you.
- Belyn will  
 never stand  
 against you.
- Go to Norway  
 at once,
- unknown to  
 Belyn."
- Brenne con-  
 sents, goes to  
 Norway,
- and gets king  
 Alfynge's  
 daughter, and  
 help.
- Belyn is told  
 of Brenne's  
 doings,

<sup>1</sup> *troue.*

<sup>2</sup> *suld þou wend.*

<sup>3</sup> *neuer.*

<sup>4</sup> *wille.*

<sup>5</sup> *pouht.*

<sup>6</sup> *wald.*

<sup>7</sup> *had.*

<sup>8</sup> *triste.*

<sup>9</sup> *passed ouer in Norway gan ryue.*

<sup>10</sup> *holy.*



resolves to be  
even with him,  
 and meet trick  
by trick.  
 So he seizes  
Northumber-  
land,  
 stores the  
castles with  
corn and men,  
 and himself  
occupies the  
seashore, to  
oppose Brenne's  
landing.  
 Brenne bears  
of this,  
 and sets sail  
with his wife.  
 But she has  
long loved  
 the king of  
Denmark,  
 Goodlak, and  
writes to him,  
 [leaf 13, col. 2.]  
 praying him to  
rescue her.

& boughte he scholde<sup>1</sup> wyþynne a whyle  
 His owen deseite hym self bygile: 2908  
 . He seyde, "on stelþe he sekas hym pray;  
 . " Hit schal nought helpe, ȝyf þat y may;  
 . " Ne schal nought Brenne bede me trypet<sup>2</sup>  
 . " þat y ne schal turne hym wiþ a forset." 2912  
 Belyn seysede Northhumberland,  
 Boþe castel & toun tok in-to his hand;  
 Alle þat were Brennes byforn,  
 ffor werre he storede<sup>3</sup> þem wyþ corn, 2916  
 & folk ynow to þeym dide sende,<sup>4</sup>  
 Agaynes Brenne þem forto defende.  
 Hym seluen ȝede wiþ an ost,  
 & rengede by þe se<sup>5</sup> cost; 2920  
 Hauen to aryue<sup>6</sup> þey hym wyþsette,  
 Bot þorow bataille oper barette.  
 ʃ Tyl Brenne men broughte broð<sup>7</sup> tydyng  
 þat Belyn had sesed his þyng/. 2924  
 He hadde his wyf, & was al ȝare  
 Wyþ fair folk in flod to fare.  
 Lyperly lyked þat lady gent;  
 Sche wepede<sup>8</sup> weddyng, & mykel hit ment,  
 ffor scheo had loued longe byfore 2929  
 þe kyng of Denmark, er Bren com þore;<sup>9</sup>  
 & þe kyng had loued hyre,  
 Longe scheo was of his desire. 2932  
 þe kyng of Denmark highte Goodlak,<sup>10</sup>  
 Scheo sent hym a *lettre* þat þus spak/:  
 . " Longe haue y loued þe kyng of Denmark/;  
 . " þat loue is loken & leyð in ark; 2936  
 . " An vncoup on of fer schal fonge<sup>11</sup>  
 . " py loue þat þou hast loued so longe;

<sup>1</sup> *suld.*<sup>2</sup> *treget* (from *trans* and *jactare*).<sup>3</sup> *stroyed.* [leaf 13, col. 2.]<sup>4</sup> *to þam he send.*<sup>5</sup> *seis.*<sup>6</sup> *Hauen & lond.*<sup>7</sup> *broth* (1. *hasty, fierce*; 2. *direful*).<sup>8</sup> *scho wepe.*<sup>9</sup> *or brenne com þore.*<sup>10</sup> *Gutlake* (*Gurlac, Wace*).<sup>11</sup> *MS. fonde. P. has saitt fong.*

- " & bot þou come, rescours to make,  
 " Neuere in armes schalt þou<sup>1</sup> me take." 2940  
 Whan Goodlak wyste, his herte gan<sup>2</sup> drede Goodlak  
 þat Brenne a-wey his lef schold<sup>3</sup> lede.  
 He dide samne al his flet, collects his  
 & Brenne & he in se þey<sup>4</sup> met. 2944 fleet, attacks  
 Brenne's,  
 When boþe fflutes come at a frosche,<sup>5</sup>  
 þe fyrste hortlyng<sup>6</sup> gaf a gret crusche ;  
 Ende til ende, syde by<sup>7</sup> side ;  
 þe heyest of bord, best fel<sup>8</sup> his tyde. 2948  
 ffaste þey foughte boþe fflutes,  
 . Persed schipes wip arblast schutes ;  
 . Wyp ax & swerd ilk oper on hew,  
 In to þe water ouer bord þey þrew ; 2952  
 On boþe parties were þey goode,  
 Bote þe Daneys best þey stode,  
 . Speres & darts þykke þay schote,  
 & persed þorow-out Brennes fflote. 2956 routs it ; and  
 Brenne flees.  
 Brenne fledde, als<sup>9</sup> desconfit,  
 & Goodlak seysede a schip fol tyt. Goodlak  
 As auenture fel, þat schip he wan carries off  
 þat scheo was inne, Brennes lemman. 2960 his love ;  
 Whan he hadde wonnen<sup>10</sup> þat he sought,  
 Of al þat oper gaf he nought ;  
 & Brenne fledde wip sayl & ore ; and so Brenne  
 His wyf he les, þat playned he sore. 2964 loses his wife.
- When Goodlak hadde þat may in hande,  
 He ȝerned faste to þe lande.  
 Als he seyled his lond toward,  
 List of a chaunce þat hym fel hard : 2968
- But as Goodlak  
 is sailing home  
 with Alfynge's  
 daughter,

<sup>1</sup> *sait.*<sup>2</sup> *was.*<sup>3</sup> *wyf suid.*<sup>4</sup> *see gan.*<sup>5</sup> *at frusse.*<sup>6</sup> *hurtyng.*<sup>7</sup> *to.*<sup>8</sup> *burde best felt.*<sup>9</sup> *ȝ was.* [leaf 18, back.]<sup>10</sup> *won.*

|                                                      |                                                                                                                           |                  |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| a storm rises,                                       | In þe se a storm hym <sup>1</sup> grew,<br>þe water rored, þe wynd vp blew,<br>pundred, reyned, lemed <sup>2</sup> lyght, |                  |
| [* MS. myght.]                                       | þe sky wax blak as hit were nyght * ;                                                                                     | 2972             |
|                                                      | þe se gan fighte, þe wawes ros,<br>þe streme woxe, & þem agros ; <sup>3</sup>                                             |                  |
| the ships are in<br>danger,                          | þeir schipes alle in peril were,<br>Ropes, borde, broste ay where ;                                                       | 2976             |
|                                                      | Mast & sayl, doun hit lusched, <sup>4</sup><br>Cordes, kables, casteles, tofrusched : <sup>5</sup> —                      |                  |
|                                                      | To knowe þer names y am al wyl,<br>Al þat þer was was in peryl.—                                                          | 2980             |
| and get dis-<br>persed.                              | þer flute sone was al to-spreð,<br>& into diuerse londes fled ;                                                           |                  |
| The tempest<br>lasts five days,                      | fifue daye atte þe leste<br>Lasted thenne þat <sup>6</sup> tempeste.                                                      | 2984             |
| and after it<br>Goodlak lands                        | Gutlak had þre schipes, & <sup>7</sup> mo,<br>Wiþ hem he skaped in peyne & wo,                                            |                  |
| in England.                                          | & aryued vp in þys londe,<br>& fayn he was þat hap he fonde,                                                              | 2988             |
|                                                      | Bot for þe loue of his lemman<br>þat in þe tempest wax al wan ;                                                           |                  |
|                                                      | He ne wyste what lond ne port<br>He was aryued, for mys-confort ;                                                         | 2992             |
|                                                      | Bot þo þat kepte þe se side,                                                                                              | [leaf 18, back.] |
|                                                      | & seye þe schipes til haue[n] glyde, <sup>8</sup><br>Godlak þey toke, wyþ þat may <sup>9</sup> gent ;                     |                  |
| He and his love<br>are taken, and<br>given to Belyn, | Tyl Belyn of hem þey made present ;                                                                                       | 2996             |
|                                                      | & alle hyse men wyþ hym þey tok,<br>& Belyn dede þem alle to lok,                                                         |                  |
| who prisons<br>them till he                          | zyf he wayted, <sup>10</sup> what tyme or whenne,<br>þat he myght here tydyng of Brenne.                                  | 3000             |
| hears tidings of<br>Brenne.                          |                                                                                                                           |                  |

<sup>1</sup> *it.*<sup>2</sup> *leuende.*<sup>3</sup> *stremes wer & þam at gros.*<sup>4</sup> *lused.*<sup>5</sup> *kastels frussed.*<sup>6</sup> *þan þat grete.*<sup>7</sup> *& no (cinq nes, Wace, p. 120).*<sup>8</sup> *to haven ride.*<sup>9</sup> *þei toke Gutlak þat may so.*<sup>10</sup> *For waited.*

þo þat were take wyþ þe mayden,  
 Vnto Belyn þe soþe sayden,  
 Ilka del how Brenne had wrought,  
 & þe kyng of Norway sought,  
 & how þat Godlak had hym met  
 Vpon þe se wyþ strong baret.

These, their  
 companions tell  
 Belyn.

3004

¶ De applicacione Brenne, & de bello inter fratres.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>B</b>renne wolde nought longe abide,<br/>         His flute he gadered on ilka side,<br/>         Aryued vp in Albanye<br/>         Wyþ gret force of god<sup>1</sup> nauye;<br/>         He sente to Belyn messengers,<br/>         Of worthy<sup>2</sup> knyghtes &amp; squiers,<br/>         Preynge<sup>3</sup> forto deliuere his wyf<br/>         &amp; his casteles, &amp; bate alle st[r]yf;<br/>         And bot he wolde zelde þeym on haste,<br/>         More of his he wolde waste.<br/>         Belyn gaf nought of his manace,<br/>         Bot þoughte he scholde ȝit don<sup>4</sup> him chace,<br/>         &amp; sent hym bode by his men bolde,<br/>         " þat he had taken, þat wolde he holde;<br/>         " ffor his praieres<sup>5</sup> noþyng wolde do,<br/>         " Ne for his loue namore þan so."<br/>         Hys folk were al redy &amp;<sup>6</sup> dight<br/>         Agaynes Brenne for to fyght:<br/>         Bysyde a wode at<sup>7</sup> Kalenters<br/>         Mette þe breþere wyþ here baners;<br/>         Eyþer oþer mykel þey<sup>8</sup> hated,<br/>         þe felonloker<sup>9</sup> þey hem abated;</p> | <p>3008 Brenne gathers<br/>his fleet,<br/>lands in Scot-<br/>land,<br/>and demands<br/>3012 his wife and<br/>castles from<br/>Belyn.<br/>3016 Belyn<br/>3020 refuses them,<br/>and marches<br/>against Brenne.<br/>3024 They meet<br/>near the forest<br/>of Galtres (in<br/>the North<br/>Riding of<br/>Yorkshire).<br/>3028</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> & gode.

<sup>2</sup> Meñ of gode.

<sup>3</sup> Praied him.

<sup>4</sup> suld ȝit.

<sup>5</sup> prayng.

<sup>6</sup> folk redied & att.

<sup>7</sup> hate.

<sup>8</sup> þe tone þe toþer mykett.

<sup>9</sup> Fersliere.

A fierce battle  
follows ;

the Norse-  
men are put to  
flight,

and 2,000 slain  
in the pursuit.

Brenne, with

twelve com-  
rades only sur-  
viving,  
escapes to  
France.

Brenne takes  
refuge in  
France.  
Belyn asks his  
Parliament

what is to be  
done with  
Goodlak ?

Dartes til oþer þey schotte ful faste,  
Grete stones wyþ slynges caste,  
Scharpe launces þorow scheldes smot,  
& brighte swerdes þorow helmes bot ; 3032  
Sone<sup>1</sup> by nekkes þey sesede sore  
Wyþ knyues smyten to dep<sup>2</sup> ay-whore,  
þorow heued & prote, breste & bak,  
ffruschte to-gidere, þat nekkes brak/. 3036  
þe Bretons bolded styfly to stande,  
& nought þe norþerne, bot were fleande ;<sup>3</sup>  
To flyght<sup>4</sup> þey fledde, ilk bataille seer,  
& Belyn folewede, & neyghed hem ner ; 3040  
Two þousand fleyng he þer slow,<sup>5</sup>  
Als þey vntil þer schipes drow.  
Brenne, þat made most þat wo,  
Wyþ peyne he skaped þe slaughtre fro ; 3044  
Vneþes he skaped, þe<sup>6</sup> hauene he hent ;  
His twelfte<sup>7</sup> & he, to se þey went ;  
Alle he les bote þo twelue,  
To ffraunce he wente wyþ hem hym selue. 3048  
ffyftene þousand slayn were told,<sup>8</sup> [leaf 13, back, col. 2.]  
Wypoute prisoners þat were in hold.<sup>9</sup>

Whan al þis wo was brought til ende,  
& Brenne in-til ffraunce gan wende,<sup>10</sup> 3052  
Belyn vntil ȝork he went,  
& þere he held his parlement.  
He askede his barons, and spak,  
“ What scholde be don of sire Guthlak ? ” 3056  
Gutlak byform sent to Belyn,<sup>11</sup>  
Out of prison þer he lay<sup>12</sup> yn,

<sup>1</sup> Som.

<sup>2</sup> smyte togidere.

<sup>3</sup> þe norþeren nouked ay fleand.

<sup>4</sup> flete. [leaf 19.]

<sup>5</sup> Thousandz hundrethes fleand he  
slough.

<sup>6</sup> vneþis a schip in haueu.

<sup>7</sup> twelf.

<sup>8</sup> MS. cold. P. were þor told.

<sup>9</sup> of men slayn without in hold.

<sup>10</sup> lende.

<sup>11</sup> sent Belyn.

<sup>12</sup> was.

- " þat of Belyn he wolde<sup>1</sup> holde  
 " Al his honour, ȝif þat he wolde,  
 " Denmark his lond, quyt & cler,  
 " And gyuen<sup>2</sup> hym truwage ilka ȝer;  
 " Syker þerof he wolde hym make,  
 " Wyþ bond,<sup>3</sup> & god ostage to take;  
 " Wyþy<sup>4</sup> he myghte lede safly  
 " His lemman, wyþouten vyleny."  
 Belyn had fol gret desyr  
 To haue truwage of his enpir.  
 porough leue of þe parlement,  
 Gutlak & his lemman went,  
 When he had sworn & don omage,  
 & bondes mad,<sup>5</sup> & gyuen hostage,  
 To Belyn to halde þer couenaunt,<sup>6</sup>  
 fforto wende he hadde þe graunt.  
 Gutlak, to go, sone he was ȝare,  
 Wyþ schip vntil his lond to fare.<sup>7</sup>
- 3060 Goodlak offers  
 to hold Den-  
 mark of Belyn,  
 and pay tribute  
 for it,  
 3064  
 3068 if Belyn will  
 give him up his  
 wife.  
 3072 Goodlak's offer  
 is accepted,  
 3076 and he sails to  
 Denmark.
- Belyn held wel þenne his honour,  
 & wysly was god governour;  
 He louede pes wyþ al<sup>8</sup> hys myght,  
 & pesyble men held he to ryght.  
 Hys lond Bretayne he went<sup>9</sup> þorow-out,  
 & ilka countre biheld about;  
 Byheld þe wodes, watres, & fen,  
 & no passage fond he mad<sup>10</sup> for men,  
 Ne heye strete þorow no contre,  
 Neyþer to burgh ne to cyte.
- 3080 Belyn rules  
 Britain well;  
 3084 finds out the  
 wants of each  
 county, and

<sup>1</sup> wild he.<sup>2</sup> ȝyf.<sup>3</sup> treuh.<sup>4</sup> with þi (with that, so that).<sup>5</sup> Whan had don his homage  
othe suorn.<sup>6</sup> conant.<sup>7</sup> Manning should have translated  
Wace's*Sa mie en a à soi menée,  
Que par sa paine acatée.*

i. 125, l. 2643-4.

<sup>8</sup> pes at.<sup>9</sup> ȝode. [leaf 19, col. 2.]<sup>10</sup> no passage was maked.

|                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| builds bridges,<br>and causeways<br>or high roads ;                              | porow myres, hylles, & vales,<br>He made brugges & causes, <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 3088               |
| 1. The Fosse,                                                                    | Heye stretes for comun passage,<br>Brugges ouer watres dide he stage:<br>þe firste he made, he cald hyt "ffosse ;"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 3092               |
| from Totness<br>to Caithness ;                                                   | porow-out þys londe hit gop til Scosse ;<br>Hit bygynnes atte Toteneys,<br>& endeþ þenne at Cateney's. <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 3096               |
| 2. Ikenild<br>street,<br>from South-<br>ampton<br>to Menia, now<br>St. David's ; | An oper strete þan ordeyned he :<br>ffro Souþ-haumpton on <sup>3</sup> þe se,<br>To Mene yn Walys, (Seint Daui's now hight,)<br>. Ikenyldestrete reches ful ryght : <sup>4</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 3100               |
| and proclaims<br>safety for all<br>travellers.                                   | Two causes ouer þe lond in lengþe & brede, <sup>5</sup><br>pat men ouerthwert in passage zede.<br>When þey were maked als he ches,<br>He comaunded till alle haue pees ;<br>Alle schold haue <sup>6</sup> pees & fredam<br>pat in his stretes zede or cam ;<br>& ȝyf hit were any of hyse<br>pat for-dyde his ffraunchise,<br>fforfeted schold ben al his þyng,<br>. & hym self <sup>7</sup> taken til þe kyng. | 3104<br>3108       |
| Brenne, mean-<br>time,                                                           | Brenne þat was gon in to ffraunce,<br>Hym schamed sore of his chaunce<br>. pat hit <sup>8</sup> was so wyde yspred<br>pat his lemman was a-wey led.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | [leaf 14.]<br>3112 |
| serves the king<br>of France,                                                    | Hym self & his twelf felawes<br>Serued þe kyng ȝeres & dawes ;<br>Knyght he was, curteys & wys,<br>Oueral he hadde los & pris ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 3116               |
| and is greatly<br>liked,                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                    |

<sup>1</sup> cauceiz.<sup>2</sup> endes vnto cateneis.<sup>3</sup> at Southampton vpon.<sup>4</sup> & gos to Wel's to seynt dauy  
þe toun hight Menne þat tyme  
redy.<sup>5</sup> tuo kaucez ouer þe lond o brede.<sup>6</sup> suld haf.<sup>7</sup> His body.<sup>8</sup> MS. his. P. has it.

- What ony knyght hadde to þer<sup>1</sup> lyuere,  
 His was largest, for he was fre ;  
 Mykel was he preysed of prowessse, and praised.  
 & ful wel loued for his largesse ; 3120  
 . He coupe mykel<sup>2</sup> of curtesy,  
 . & faire hym bar, as man worþy.  
 When his los was þorow ronnen, When high in  
 & in þe lond his pris hadde wonnen, 3124 favour with all,  
 Wip wham he made any soiour,  
 He preyed for help & for socour he begs for help  
 ffor to conquere his heritage, to conquer  
 þat Belyn reftym<sup>3</sup> wip outrage ; 3128 Britain.  
 &<sup>4</sup> zede to Burgoyne, to Duk Segwyn, Duke Segwyn  
 . Bysought hym of help ageyns Belyn. of Burgoyne  
 þe Duk louede his compaignie,  
 & gaf hym of his tresorie. 3132 gives him trea-  
 Brenne was yn speche curteys, sure,  
 & konnyng<sup>5</sup> knyght by many weys ;  
 He coupe of chas<sup>6</sup> & of ryuere,  
 Inow of game of here<sup>7</sup> manere ; 3136  
 Gentil of body, wyþ fair visage,  
 . He semed a man of hey parage,  
 . & was plesaunt & seruisable.  
 þe Duk was riche wyþoute fable,<sup>8</sup> 3140  
 & of his body had non heyr and further, as  
 Bot a mayde ferly feyr. he has no heir,  
 Inough sche hadde þat tyme of elde,  
 þat scheo myght take a lord to welde ; 3144  
 He spak louely, wysly, & stille.  
 & serued þe Duk at al his wyll,

<sup>1</sup> When any knyght toke his.<sup>2</sup> couth Inowh.<sup>3</sup> held. [leaf 19, back.]<sup>4</sup> he.<sup>5</sup> a konand knyght on.<sup>6</sup> wod.<sup>7</sup> gamen on oþer.<sup>8</sup> he was meke to serve and briche  
& þe duke was noble riche.



|                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                           |                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
|                                                         | & wel hym payed alle his dedes,<br>& oueral wel he spedde his nedes.                                                                                                                      | 3148                       |
| his daughter,<br>and the heir-<br>ship of his<br>duchy. | þe Duk his doughter gaf hym to wyue,<br>To haue þe Duche after his lyue.<br>þen þoughte þe Duk, þat hym fel feir<br>þat God had sent hym suche on til heyr. <sup>1</sup>                  | 3152                       |
|                                                         | . Brenne obeysed hym curteysly,<br>. & seide "Sire Duk, graunt mercy!"<br>Al men <sup>2</sup> hym louede, & held hym dere,<br>Ech man hym payed wel his <sup>3</sup> manere.              | 3156                       |
| Soon duke<br>Segwyn dies,                               | ffel þanne wyþynne þe twelf-monþ <sup>4</sup> ende,<br>Swyche a grace God gan hym sende,<br>þat he deyde, þe Duk Segwyn.                                                                  |                            |
| Brenne suc-<br>ceeds to the<br>duchy of Bur-<br>goyne,  | Of al þe Duche, Brenne tok seysyn;<br>Hys barons þat louede hym wel byfore,<br>After louede hym mykel more;<br>Wel louede hym ilka Burgyloun,<br>& knyghtes of peyr <sup>5</sup> nacioun; | 3160<br>3164               |
|                                                         | He hadde þe lond wyþ al þe <sup>6</sup> rente,<br>And a ȝong lady <sup>7</sup> fair & gente.<br>In al his welþe <sup>8</sup> forȝat he nought                                             | [leaf 14, col. 2.]<br>3168 |
|                                                         | How Belyn hadde wyþ hym wrought,<br>& held þe londes þat his schold be;<br>Bot whan he sey his tyme eyse,                                                                                 |                            |
| collects a great<br>host,                               | He sent for knyghtes & squiers,<br>ffrendes he soughte, & waged <sup>9</sup> souders;                                                                                                     | 3172                       |
| raises a navy<br>in Normandy,                           | Wyþ gret ost cam til Normandie,<br>& purueyde þer a gret nauye.                                                                                                                           |                            |
| and invades<br>England.                                 | Whan hit was <sup>10</sup> tyme, had wynd at wille<br>He passed þe se wyþouten ylle.                                                                                                      | 3176                       |

<sup>1</sup> *saue þis he had þe speire  
þat god gaf him a son till heire.*

<sup>2</sup> *þei.*

<sup>3</sup> *& he þam paid on all.*

<sup>4</sup> *not was it siþen a tuelmoth.*

<sup>5</sup> *oper.* [leaf 19, back, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *lond Inouh &.*

<sup>7</sup> *& ȝeng lemman.*

<sup>8</sup> *þis weth.*

<sup>9</sup> *hired.*

<sup>10</sup> *he sawe.*

Belyn herde wel þat he cam ;  
Wyþ folk ynogh ageyns hym nam ;  
þer bataylles assembled wyþynne a lite,  
& redy were almost to fyghte.

Belyn is ready  
3180 to fight Brenne,

§ De Humilitate Tonewenne, matris Belyni & Brenni.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| So com þeyr moder, dame Tonewenne,<br>pat bar bope Belyn & Brenne,<br>Bytwyxt þer hostes, trembling <sup>1</sup> for drede ;<br>ffol old scheo was, haltyng scheo zede ;<br>Ouer al scheo asked where was Brenne.<br>Atte þe laste, men gan hure kenne ;<br>& Brenne herd seye þat hit was sche ;<br>He saide " Moder, welcome be ze !"<br>Hure armes aboute his nekke sche <sup>2</sup> cast,—<br>Bope ostes wondred þer-ate <sup>3</sup> fast,—<br>Vntil hure girdel hure clopes sche rent ;<br>Naked byfore þe host sche went ; <sup>4</sup><br>Vntil Brenne gretynge <sup>5</sup> sche spak,<br>Hur fynGRES sche wrast, þe blod out brak,<br>Sche tremblede & sykede inderly, <sup>6</sup><br>Handes & face brest <sup>7</sup> al bloody : <sup>8</sup><br>" Dere child !" sche seid, <sup>9</sup> " wher hastow ben ?<br>" Now þanky God y haue þe sen !<br>" Sone," sche seide, " list now to me,<br>" & do als y schal conceille þe.<br>" Lo, here þe pappes þat þou on sok !<br>" pyse armes hit arn <sup>10</sup> þat þe bylok ! | <p>3184</p> <p>3188</p> <p>3192</p> <p>3196</p> <p>3200</p> | <p>but their old<br/>mother, Tone-<br/>wenne, totters<br/>up between the<br/>hosts,</p> <p>casts her arms<br/>round Brenne's<br/>neck,<br/>rends her<br/>clothes,</p> <p>wrings her<br/>fingers till they<br/>bleed,</p> <p>and appeals to<br/>Brenne to stay<br/>the strife :<br/>" Son,</p> <p>here are the<br/>paps that you<br/>sucked,</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *tremblund . . . . haltund.*

<sup>2</sup> *hals* [neck] *scho.*

<sup>3</sup> *þe ostes biheld þam.*

<sup>4</sup> *Ses mamèles li mostra nues,  
Flestres, et vielles, et pelues.  
Wace, i. 132, l. 2769-70.*

<sup>5</sup> *gretand.*

<sup>6</sup> *sighed inerly.*

<sup>7</sup> *handes face breste.*

<sup>8</sup> Mistaken translation of Wace's  
" *Carele soglotoit* [sobbed] *forment*,"  
i. 132. l. 2773.

<sup>9</sup> *Dere son.*

<sup>10</sup> *armes ere.*

here is the  
womb that bore  
you and your  
brother.

Think on my  
pain in giving  
you birth: add  
not to it.

Lay down your  
arms !

Bring not  
strangers to  
slay us !

Let us live in  
peace !

You began the  
wrong,

" Here ys þe wombe ȝe boþe ynne ware !  
 " þys body ȝow bar wiþ wo & kare ! 3204  
 " Y am sche þat for ȝow kneled !  
 " Now þenk o þat sorwe þat y þenne feled !  
 " Ley now<sup>1</sup> no sorewe me more byforn,  
 " ffor hym þat let ȝow of me be born ! 3208  
 " Ley doun þyn armes, me forto saue !  
 " Wylle nought þat y for þe dep<sup>2</sup> haue !  
 " pou mysdost, þat þou now fandest<sup>3</sup>  
 " To brynge straungers of outlandes<sup>4</sup> 3212  
 " Vs forto robben & to<sup>5</sup> slo !  
 " Rest þe ! let þy mod ouer go !<sup>6</sup>  
 " pou hast namo breþere in wold ;  
 " py fader ys ded,<sup>7</sup> þy moder ys old ; 3216  
 " Suffre, for no þyng in lyue,  
 " py pore frendes a-way to dryue !  
 " pou scholdest vs presente & gyue,  
 " & helpe vs alle in pes to lyue ; 3220  
 " Bot now þou comest to reue vs our [socour],<sup>8</sup>  
 " þat scholdest ben oure mayntenour.  
 " Lef folye ! & y vndertake,<sup>9</sup>  
 " ȝyf þou on hym wilt pleynte make, 3224  
 " And y fynde he haue þe gylt, [[leaf 14, back.]  
 " He schal amenden right als þou wilt ;  
 " Bot ȝyf þou seist he dide þe fle,  
 " I seye nay ; witnesse on þe !<sup>10</sup> 3228  
 " ffyrst þou bygonne al yn wrong ;  
 " So al þe folye ys on þe longe,  
 " þe firste folye & yuele<sup>11</sup> dedes.  
 " When þou intil Norway ȝedes, 3232

<sup>1</sup> *Schew.* [leaf 20.]

<sup>2</sup> *dede.*

<sup>3</sup> *fondes.*

<sup>4</sup> *aliens of vnknown londs.*

<sup>5</sup> *vs forto.*

<sup>6</sup> *þin owen demeyns to wirke wo.*

<sup>7</sup> *dede is þi fadere.*

<sup>8</sup> *socoure.*

<sup>9</sup> *do þis foly now to slake.*

<sup>10</sup> *þe wrong is in þe.*

<sup>11</sup> *in alle.*

- " Wyf to take, wypouten leue,<sup>1</sup>  
 . " pat schewede pou mentest hym to <sup>2</sup> greue,  
 " & broughtest Norn men hym tasaille :<sup>3</sup>  
 " perfore pou lostest py <sup>4</sup> bataille ; 3236 you brought  
 Northmen to  
 attack Belyn !  
 And now you  
 " py blame ys now 3yt fol grym,  
 " pat swiche<sup>5</sup> an host bryngest on hym  
 " & schapest <sup>6</sup> oure desherytysoun,  
 " & pys londes<sup>7</sup> destruccioun ! 3240 plot our de-  
 struction !  
 " So mykel yuel wold he nought pe,<sup>8</sup>  
 " Al-pey his power so mykel<sup>9</sup> myght be.  
 " Brenne, sona! what penkest pou ?  
 " Com til acord now for py prow ! 3244 Son !  
 Be at one with  
 thy brother ;  
 " Ley down py swerd, do wey py scheld,  
 . " Wypdraw py folk out of pe feld ;  
 " & sek pe pes, for<sup>10</sup> charite ! seek peace !"  
 " pe same schal he do to pe." 3248

- Brenne hure preyere vnderstod ;  
 ffor loue of hure changed his mod ;  
 His helm, his hauberk, he dide vnlace ;  
 . Al bar-heued, wyþ open face, 3252  
 Cam he wiþ his moder Tonewenne,  
 & also dide<sup>11</sup> Belyn to Brenne :  
 peyr moder dide hem to-gedere kysse.  
 . ffor pat saughtlyng was mykel blisse ; 3256 and kisses his  
 brother Belyn.  
 More of wrath was per nought spoken ;  
 ffor<sup>12</sup> loue in armes ilk oþer pey loken.  
 Al þus þen ended<sup>13</sup> þe breþere wrathe,  
 per tene turned to game & glathe. 3260  
 ffro þeþen<sup>14</sup> to Londone þey went, go to London,

<sup>1</sup> his leue.

<sup>2</sup> þou wild him.

<sup>3</sup> brought þe north him to assaile.

<sup>4</sup> þou sped nouht at þat.

<sup>5</sup> suylk . . . bringes.

<sup>6</sup> þat is titt.

<sup>7</sup> & to þi lond.

<sup>8</sup> itt wild he not þe.

<sup>9</sup> if his powere so wele.

<sup>10</sup> & seke pe pour.

<sup>11</sup> þe same did. [leaf 20, col. 2.]

<sup>12</sup> with.

<sup>13</sup> þusgate endid.

<sup>14</sup> þien.

|                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| and agree to<br>invade France.                                  | & þer þey helde a parlement;<br>Of þeyr parlement was þe ende,<br>To wynne ffraunce wolde þey wende.                                                                                                                                                                | 3264         |
| They gather<br>their hosts,                                     | <b>B</b> elyn dide somone his Bretons,<br>& Brenne hap <sup>1</sup> alle his Burgylons.<br>By tyme & terme þat þey had set,<br>Boþe ostes atte hauene met,                                                                                                          | 3268         |
| sail to France,                                                 | & schiped ouer into ffraunce;<br>To wynne hit, þey hoped was her chaunce. <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                              |              |
| win the first<br>battle,                                        | By-twixt hem was þen a batille don:<br>þe force of ffraunce fel ful son,                                                                                                                                                                                            | 3272         |
| seize castles,<br>and gain all<br>France.                       | þey durede nought to fighte in feld;<br>þe breþere dide hem to þeym zeld;<br>Casteles þey sesede fer & ner,<br>& wonne alle ffraunce <sup>3</sup> wyþynne a ȝer.                                                                                                    | 3276         |
| Then they re-<br>solve to conquer<br>Rome.                      | <b>W</b> hen al þe folk were atter <sup>4</sup> dome,<br>þey seide þey wolde wende to Rome,<br>And leue non þat þey fond,<br>Bot ȝyf þey helde of þeym þer lond.                                                                                                    | 3280         |
| They collect<br>men,                                            | þey sente aboute to diuerse costes,<br>Of doughti folk þey gadered hostes<br>ffor to wynne pris & prow; [leaf 14, back, col. 2.]                                                                                                                                    |              |
| cross the Alps,<br>take Turin,<br>Ieghorn, and<br>all Lombardy, | þey passed þe Mountaynes of Moungow; <sup>5</sup><br>Taurynus þey toke, & Iuerye,<br>& alle þe Cytes of Lombardye,<br>Vrceles, Pauye, & Tremoygne, <sup>6</sup><br>Melan, Plesence, & grete Boloyne;<br>þey passed þe water of Tauron,<br>& þe hul of Mount Bardon; | 3284<br>3288 |

<sup>1</sup> P. omits *hap*.<sup>2</sup> þe lond to wyn awnterd þer  
chance.<sup>3</sup> *wan þam att*.<sup>4</sup> *was at þer*.<sup>5</sup> Mon Giu, Wace. "Mons Jovis,

"montagne qui separe la Savoie de

"l'Italie: le grand Saint-Bernard."

De Lincy's Wace, i. 138.

<sup>6</sup> Vécialz . . Crémone.

Wace, i. 138.

- þey robbed þorow al Tuskane,  
 & al ouer rod, & þorow ran. 3292 ravage Tui-  
cany,  
 Als þey ryffled<sup>1</sup> landes ay whore,  
 Rome þey neighed ay þe more. and draw near  
Rome.  
 Romayns dredden hem for to deye,  
 ffor þo tydynges þat þey herd seye; 3296 The Romans  
dread the Bri-  
tons.  
 Al day of passande men þey herd,  
 þe two breþere wonnen al þe werd.  
 þey of Rome had chosen þat 3er  
 Two noble men of gret power, 3300 The two Roman  
chiefs,  
 þat þey scholde, when þey had nede,  
 þer folk vntil bataille lede,  
 & saue þer landes, holde þem to ryght,  
 ffor doughtiest þey were in fyght: 3304  
 Sire Procenna, þat on hight so,  
 þat oþer men calde sire Galbao;<sup>2</sup>  
 þyse to<sup>3</sup> were þeyr conseilours,  
 & speke vnto þe senatours 3308 ask the Senate  
whether they'll  
yield or fight.  
 "What þey wolde, how hadde þey tight,  
 "þeyr cite zelde, or stande to fyght."  
 þe Sene scide þey were affrayed,  
 Non hem wyþstod, bot þorow alle strayed: 3312 The Senate say  
they can't with-  
stand the Bri-  
tons,  
 "Wip swilk to fighte, we haue non host,  
 "ffor þey han folk wyþ þe most;  
 "& 3yf we myghte oure pes haue,  
 "þorough mekenesse oure gode<sup>4</sup> saue, 3316  
 "& oure seluen at here pes lyue,  
 "Gold & seluer we wolde þem gyue.  
 "Ouer þat, þey schul haue truage,  
 "To passe & do vs non vtrage; 3320 but will pay  
them ransom  
and tribute.  
 "ffor strong hit were for oure cite  
 "To be destruyed, & al þe contre."  
 In al þer drede, & al þer dome,

<sup>1</sup> *robbed.* [leaf 20, back.]

<sup>2</sup> *Gabao.* Gabius, *Wace*, l. 2930.

<sup>3</sup> *tuo.*

<sup>4</sup> *godes.*

- This is done;  
 . þe breþere come & byseget<sup>1</sup> Rome. 3324  
 þorow comun assent of þe senatours,  
 þey presented<sup>2</sup> þe breþere gret tresours;  
 & to be in here auowery,<sup>3</sup>  
 Truage þey graunted hem for þy. 3328  
 and Belyn and Brenne take  
 þe breþere tok of þem hostage;  
 Twenty childre of þe beste lynage  
 & of þe richest of al þe toun,  
 þey presented<sup>2</sup> hem as for raunson : 3332  
 þus was þe pes bytwixt hem graunted,  
 Bot lytel þrowe<sup>4</sup> þey hit haunted.
- and then draw  
 off to fight the  
 Alemans.  
 Belyn & Brenne remued<sup>5</sup> þer host,  
 By Lombardye þey wente þe cost, 3336  
 To werren opon þe Alemauntz,<sup>6</sup>  
 & take truage of þe remenauntz.<sup>7</sup>  
 But the Romans  
 rise against  
 them,  
 þey were letted by þe<sup>8</sup> Romayns,  
 þat couenaunt breke; rise þeym a-geyns; 3340  
 & proue þey wolde þeir hardinesse,  
 And seide þey wolde do more pruesse.  
 þey send for knyghtes oueral aboute, [leaf 15.]  
 & gaderet<sup>9</sup> ost gret & stoute, 3344  
 Wel armed in ilke a conreye;<sup>10</sup>  
 After þe breþere þey tok þeir weye;  
 think to catch  
 them in the  
 mountains,  
 On þem þey þowte to smyte al fresse,  
 Ithe Mountaingnes to holdem at destresse,<sup>11</sup> 3348  
 þat non of hem scholde namore come  
 Of þo breþere eft<sup>12</sup> to Rome.  
 and call on the  
 Alemans  
 þey sente messages on þer partye,  
 In to Alemayne,<sup>13</sup> þe breþere to spie, 3352

<sup>1</sup> *seged.*<sup>2</sup> *present.*<sup>3</sup> *þer auowri.*<sup>4</sup> *while.* [leaf 20, back, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> *remoued.*<sup>6</sup> The *m* has 4 strokes in the MS.<sup>7</sup> *heue trewage at Remanans.*<sup>8</sup> *destorbled þorgh.*<sup>9</sup> MS. *gaderest.* P. reads *gadred.*<sup>10</sup> *armed were in all conrey.*<sup>11</sup> *hald þam at stresse.*<sup>12</sup> ? MS. *est. oste,* P.<sup>13</sup> *vnto þe almayns.*

pat ilka pas þey scholde<sup>1</sup> so wayte,  
 Ithe Mountz holden hem so straitē,  
 ȝyf þey schold<sup>1</sup> passe on eyþer syde, to help in  
 Wyþ force þey schold<sup>1</sup> hem ouer ryde. 3356

Al þus on ilk a side þey ros,  
 To haue þe breþere host in clos;  
 & attter passyng in to þe mount,  
 þe Alemauntz schold<sup>1</sup> ben in þer frount; 3360 stopping the  
the Britons'  
passage.  
 þorow force of þer god ordynaunce,  
 þey schold<sup>1</sup> nought passe þorow<sup>2</sup> no chaunce.

When Belyn perseyued þe ffelonye,  
þey conſeilled on þer partie

3364 But Belyn and Brenne agree to divide ;

pat Brenne scholde<sup>1</sup> turne a-gayn  
To wyſtande þe hoſt Romayn,  
And Belyn ſcholde<sup>1</sup> on his ſide  
Agayns þe hoſt of Alemauntz ryde ;  
3368

Schold<sup>1</sup> turne & helpe þe toþer at nede.  
When Romyans wyste Bren schold<sup>1</sup> come,  
þey toke þe wey<sup>s</sup> agayn to Rome,  
pat Brenne schold<sup>1</sup> neighe Rome no ner,  
& þe breþere a sondre fer.

3372 The Romans  
retreat, to  
separate Brenne  
from Belyn.

porow a spye Belyn herde seye,  
 & taughte Brenne a geyner weye;  
 To trauersen hem al ouer þere score,  
 & passe þe Romainys wel byfore.  
 þey chose gyours þe contre knew.

3376

But Brenne  
 marches round  
 the Romans'  
 flank.

To lede þem wye trist & trew, 3380  
 & brynge þem wel to þat strete  
 þer þeym byhoused Romayns mete.  
 þey iourneyed <sup>4</sup> bope dayes & nyght  
 Al so stille as þey myght, 3384

<sup>1</sup> *suld.*

2 be.

**8 gate.**

<sup>4</sup> *Ioneyd.* [leaf 21.]



|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| reaches the<br>pass of Moun-<br>gow, [the St.<br>Bernard, p. 116]<br>before them, | Wypoute noise, cry, or how, <sup>1</sup><br>Vntil þe entre of Moungow.<br>. & when þey were in þe valeye,<br>. þer ledere seide, "þys ys þeir weye!<br>. " By þys þey come, hit is certeyn;<br>. " Oþer wey haue þey non ageyn." <sup>2</sup>            | 3388 |
| and in full<br>moonlight                                                          | T To þat passage þey come at nyght;<br>þe mone schon ful <sup>3</sup> faire & bright;<br>Brenne bad þem ber ham [al] pryue,<br>Wip-oute noyse, til tyme schold <sup>4</sup> be.<br>Sone after cam þe Romaynes route;<br>Of non þey hadde drede ne doute. | 3392 |
| meets them,<br>who suspected<br>no foe.                                           | . By þe mone þat so lyght schon, <sup>5</sup><br>. þey spedde hem faste swythe to gon.<br>Atte passage glyfte þey þer eyene; <sup>6</sup><br>Agayns þe mone sawe þey schyne<br>Helmes, hauberkes, scheldes vp-lyfte. [leaf 15, col. 2.]                  | 3396 |
| The Britons<br>dash on the<br>Romans,                                             | . þenne were þe Romayns al a-glyfte: <sup>7</sup><br>þe Bretons hadde þe Romay[n]s byden;<br>Al so swyþe þey to þem ryden;<br>Brenne þem boldede, bad þem wel smyle, <sup>8</sup><br>. "ffelleþ þour fos þat wolde þou byte!"                            | 3404 |
| who give way,                                                                     | Oueral þe Bretons þeym <sup>9</sup> assailed;<br>þe Romayns route fel & failed;<br>þey nadde no tome for to fle,<br>Ne place to huyden hem <sup>10</sup> priue.                                                                                          | 3408 |
| and are<br>slaughtered<br>all that night                                          | þe Bretons bowaylled þeym, <sup>11</sup> & hew;<br>. In buskes, bankes, doun þeym þrew;<br>þe slaughtre lasted al þat nyght,<br>Til hit sprang þe dayes lyght;                                                                                           | 3412 |

<sup>1</sup> noyse or any crie.<sup>2</sup> non oþer may þei gayne.<sup>3</sup> schone.<sup>4</sup> to tyme.<sup>5</sup> þat bright schone.<sup>6</sup> þei glyft Ine.<sup>7</sup> oglyft.<sup>8</sup> MS. smyle.<sup>9</sup> þe bretons ouer att halfe þam.<sup>10</sup> ne to tapise in stede.<sup>11</sup> bouweld þam.

|                                                      |                 |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| & al þat day afterward,                              |                 |
| Vntil þe nyght, was bataille hard.                   | and all next    |
| þe nyght departed þem o sunder:                      | 3416 day.       |
| þat any askaped, hit was a wonder.                   |                 |
| þat oþer day in þe morwen tyde,                      |                 |
| Toward Brenne, Belyn gan ryde;—                      | 3420 Then Belyn |
| ffer from his broþer wold he nought <sup>1</sup> go, |                 |
| What chaunce so bytidde of mo;—                      |                 |
| & Brenne þat byfore nam,                             | joins Brenne,   |
| Abod [þer] vntil Belyn cam.                          | 3424            |
| When þey were to-gyder comen,                        |                 |
| Boþe vntil Rome nomen,                               | and they march  |
| & byseged <sup>2</sup> hit aboute,—                  | to Rome, and    |
| & þey of Rome were ful stoute,—                      | besiege it.     |
| On alle sides þey sette engyns,                      | 3428            |
| Als Brenne ordeyned, <sup>3</sup> & belyns.          |                 |
| Mynours þey hadde ynowe, & sleye,                    | They set miners |
| þe wal to perce <sup>4</sup> & vndermye.             | 3432 to work,   |
| þo wyþynne deffended hem wel,                        |                 |
| At þat tyme lostey nought <sup>5</sup> a del;        |                 |
| Wyþ arblastes schoten quarels vnryde,                |                 |
| Inow men broughte, & leide by syde;                  | 3436            |
| Wyþ grete stones þey hem affrayed.                   |                 |
| þe Romainys were nought desmayed,                    | but the Romans  |
| þey launced darte, bowes drowe,                      | fight well,     |
| ffele þey felde, & manye slowe.                      | 3440            |
| þe breþere leften þer assaut al,                     |                 |
| & persed no þyng of þe wal.                          | and prevent     |
| Longe lastede þat ilk distaunce,                     | their walls     |
| To þe breþere gret noyaunce;                         | being pierced.  |
| Galewes dide þe breþere reinge;                      | 3444 Then Belyn |
| Of þer blod þey wol þeym venge;                      | and Brenne      |
| þe galewes þey reysed vp ful heye,—                  | hang all the    |
|                                                      | Roman host-     |

<sup>1</sup> *ne wild he.* [leaf 21, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> MS. *byseded.* P. *biseged.*

<sup>3</sup> *at brenne ordenance.*

<sup>4</sup> *hole.*

<sup>5</sup> *les not.*

ages in sight of  
their parents.

þe Romayns wel myght hem se wyþ eye,— 3448  
& hongeden alle <sup>1</sup> þer hostagers,  
Burgeyses sones, lordes peres.  
þat kynde, y trowe, had sorewe & wo,  
To schames deþ þat saw hem go. 3452

### ¶ De Subuersione fratrum.

The Romans  
swear revenge,

Alle olyke <sup>2</sup> þer fore were wroþ,  
& alle seide, & swore þer oþ,  
In pes ne schold þey passe quyt,  
Bot þey wer wroken <sup>3</sup> on þat despit. 3456

and on the day  
that Prosenna  
and Gabao

On þyse men trusted þe Romayns þo,  
On Prosenna & on sire Gabao,  
ffor þyse wer gon to Lumbardy [leaf 15, back, col. 1.]  
To procure Rome more partye. 3460

have promised  
to return with  
help,

After þeyn <sup>4</sup> abyden þe Romayns ;  
A day to come þey sette certayns ;  
þat day was ner of þer comyng,

the Romans

þe Romayns þat day mad þer samnyng, <sup>5</sup> 3464  
& ber hem ful egrely <sup>6</sup> & stout ;

sally out,  
and fall on  
Belyn and  
Brenne,

þey armede hem, & isseden <sup>7</sup> out,  
& oþe breþere faste þey sought,  
& þey ageyn ne spared hem nought. 3468

who are also  
attacked by

Als þey foughten best in stour,  
Com her chefteyns wyþ more <sup>8</sup> socour ;  
Oþe breþere þey fullen alle on a res : <sup>9</sup>  
þan were þey boþe in hard destres ; <sup>10</sup> 3472

Prosenna's and  
Gabao's men.

þe Romayns vpon þe oþer partz,  
þat oþer side, Poyles & Lombartz,  
& felde <sup>11</sup> fele of þe Burgoylons,

<sup>1</sup> hanged ilkon.

<sup>2</sup> only.

<sup>3</sup> venged.

<sup>4</sup> þam. [leaf 21, back.]

<sup>5</sup> samenyng.

<sup>6</sup> & were right full egre.

<sup>7</sup> issued.

<sup>8</sup> com þe tuo men with att þer.

<sup>9</sup> Vpon þe breþer & ilkon fresse.

<sup>10</sup> þe breþer in hard stresse.

<sup>11</sup> fellid.

- & calde þem "cowardz! hore sons! 3476 The Romans  
 " We schol<sup>1</sup> 3ow do drynke 3our owen blod, upbraid the  
 " & spare oure water of Tyber<sup>2</sup> flod! Britons  
 " On þys half Moungow, what do 3e,  
 " Vs to chalange of vur fe? 3480  
 " & þat 3e henge our children heye, for hanging  
 " þat vilenye 3e schulle<sup>1</sup> abyē! their children,  
 " To 3ow was hit an yuel<sup>3</sup> conseil;  
 " þat schul 3e fele to<sup>4</sup> wroper hayl." 3484  
 Wip suche vmbreides þey hem<sup>5</sup> missayde,  
 & grete strokes vpon þeym leyde; and attack  
 Obak<sup>6</sup> a-geyn [þey] dide þem go, them fiercely.  
 & dide þem braye & crye for wo. 3488
- Belyn & Brenne were al dysmayed  
 þat þe Romainys so þem affrayed;  
 þe Bretons sawe þer syde 3ede lowe,  
 þey rempede<sup>7</sup> þem to reste a þrowe; 3492 The Britons  
 In þer restyng þey gan hem mene, suffer, and re-  
 A parlement made þem bitwene, treat,  
 & gadered þer folk a-geyn to fyght, They re-ar-  
 Armed hem newe, & renged hem right, 3496 range their  
 In sere batailles set þeym a sondres, men,  
 Bope by þousands & by hundreds. in battallions,  
 Of þe hardiest & defensables, under the  
 Made þey Mayster<sup>8</sup> Conestables, 3500 bravest of their  
 & bad hem in þer bataille holde, leaders,  
 þat non fro oper schold flitte ne folde. with orders to  
<sup>9</sup> [beside were set to þer socours, keep their for-  
 archers to maynten þam in stours; 3504 mation,  
 þe alblasters on þe toper side,

<sup>1</sup> *satt.*<sup>2</sup> in þe.<sup>3</sup> *it was a wikke.*<sup>4</sup> *3e satt se fult.*<sup>5</sup> *swytk upbraid þei þam.*<sup>6</sup> MS. *Olak. P. obak.*<sup>7</sup> *runethed or rinethed.*<sup>8</sup> & þer maistres &. [lf. 21, bk., col. 2.]  
 ont fait maistres et. *Wace*, i. 150, l.  
 3168.<sup>9-1</sup> Lines 3503-8 are from the Petyt  
 MS., translating *Wace*, lines 3174-8,  
 vol. i., p. 150-1 of *De Lincys* ed.  
 P. has not lines, 3509-10.

|                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                     | ilkon for <i>oper</i> better to hide.<br>doun on fote þe moste gan light<br>on fote þei renged þam to fight.] <sup>1</sup>                                                                                    | 3508 |
| to put the<br>strongest in<br>front,                | þo þat were strong, hardy, & wyght,<br>fformest þey were set to fyght;<br>þey bere þe launces vp and doun,                                                                                                    |      |
| and let none<br>press before the<br>others,         | On þe manere of a scheltroun; <sup>2</sup><br>& non for wele ne for wo<br>Ne scholde byforen <sup>3</sup> <i>oper</i> go,<br>Ne go swyþer þan softe <sup>4</sup> paas,                                        | 3512 |
| but all hold and<br>move together.                  | At ones to smyte, as comeþ þe cas; <sup>5</sup><br>& non schold baldere þan <i>oper</i> be,<br>Ne noman [schold] fro <i>oper</i> fle.                                                                         | 3516 |
| Then the                                            | When þey had set ilk a bataille,<br>On what manere þey schold assaille,                                                                                                                                       | 3520 |
| trumpets ring<br>out, and the<br>fight begins.      | Trompe blewe, & greyles <sup>6</sup> ronge,<br>On boþe parties þer batailles <sup>7</sup> sprong.<br>On ilka side were strokes ynowe, [leaf 15, back, col. 2.]<br>Speres dide þem <sup>8</sup> breste & bowe; | 3524 |
|                                                     | . After þe speres þat þey <sup>9</sup> set, <sup>10</sup><br>. Syþen wiþ sword & knyf þey met;<br>Ilk <i>oper</i> on ran ilk <i>oper</i> to styke;<br>. Vpon þe dede zede þe quyke.                           | 3528 |
| Many are slain.                                     | Al to telle hit, nought y ne can,<br>Bot loren was þer many a man;<br>. Þe Bretons seye non <i>oper</i> weye,<br>. Þey most wel fyghte, <i>oper</i> elles deye; <sup>11</sup>                                 | 3532 |
| The Britons<br>must either<br>fight well or<br>die: | . <i>Oper</i> al to wynne, or al to lese,<br>. þat on of þo byhoued hem chese.<br>. þe best fyghters ber <sup>12</sup> forth þe brest,                                                                        |      |

<sup>2</sup> *cheltroun*.<sup>3</sup> *suld forþer þan*.<sup>4</sup> *a*.<sup>5</sup> *whan com a has. en la grant  
presse, el tas [heap, mass]: Wace,  
i. 151, l. 3184.*<sup>6</sup> *greilles*.<sup>7</sup> *to bataille*.<sup>8</sup> *lances did þei*.<sup>9</sup> *MS. sey*.<sup>10</sup> *after lances þat þei sette*.<sup>11</sup> *þer behoued þam lyue or deie*.<sup>12</sup> *bare*.

- . Archers & arblasters þem next;<sup>1</sup> 3536  
 . þe Myle[ne]rs & þe Centaynes<sup>2</sup>  
 . ffolowed faste on þo Romaines;  
 . Sire Galbao,<sup>3</sup> þer gouernour,  
 . He bated hym o þe Bretons stour;  
 . Bot slayn was sire Galbao,<sup>3</sup> 3540  
 . þat al þer trist was vnto;  
 . &<sup>4</sup> Prosenna was brought right<sup>6</sup> doun,  
 . On hem þe Bretons wonne þe toun;  
 . Prosenna þey tok a[l] quyk;<sup>6</sup> 3544  
 . þey persed þe Romainys bataille þyk,  
 . & al þer force doun þey slow,  
 . & to þe cite faste þey drow. 3548  
 . þe toun might þey defende namore,  
 . þe cheftayns were slayn þat þer wore;  
 . þe breþere come vntil þe cite,  
 . & founde þer-inne richesse plente. 3552  
 . Belyn gaf Brenne al þe empyre,  
 . And he was Enperour & sire;  
 . þe folk of hym þey had gret doute,  
 . His fomen þorow force dide þem aloute,<sup>7</sup> 3556  
 . [Long he regned Emperoure<sup>8</sup>]  
 . þat neuere dirst Romain stire in his stour.<sup>9</sup>
- B**elyn to Bretayne þen gan turne,  
 . He wold no lengere þer sojourne;  
 . & when he com vntil þis lond,  
 . þe olde cites þat he fond,  
 . He closed þem, & mad hem newe,  
 . þe walles he reisede trist & trewe. 3564  
 . In Walys he dide make a toun;  
 . Kaerusik<sup>10</sup> he caldit on bretoun,

They press on  
the Romans,

kill Galbao,

take Prosenna,

break the  
Roman line,  
kill their men,

and seize the  
city.

Belyn makes  
Brenne em-  
peror,

comes back to  
Britain,

rebuilds the old  
cities;

and in Wales  
builds Kaer-  
usk,

<sup>1</sup> *nete.*

<sup>2</sup> *Milleners & centeners.*

<sup>3</sup> *Gubao.*

<sup>4</sup> *þat.* [leaf 22.]

<sup>5</sup> *was born.*

<sup>6</sup> *a[l]l quike.*

<sup>7</sup> *did he loute.*

<sup>8</sup> *From the Petyt MS.*

<sup>9</sup> *romeyn durst stir him stoure.*

<sup>10</sup> *kaerusk.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                       | ffor hit stande <sup>1</sup> vpon Vsk,<br>A water þat rennes by bank & busk ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 3568                 |
| afterwards<br>called Kaer-<br>legion,<br>because the<br>Romans<br>wintered<br>there when they<br>came to collect<br>their tribute.                                                    | Sipen men caldit Kaer-legion :<br>List now what was þe enchesoun. <sup>2</sup><br>Whylon <sup>3</sup> Romayns had þis lond<br>In þer demeynes, in þer hond ;                                                                                                                                               | 3572                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                       | Whan Romayns com for þer truaga,<br>At Kaerusy <sup>4</sup> þey helde hostage,<br>& þere þey made most dwellynge,<br>ffor þer was gret ese of mikel þyng ;                                                                                                                                                 | 3576                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                       | At Kaerusy <sup>4</sup> in Clamorkan, <sup>5</sup><br>In wynter þey dwelt þer, ilkaman ;<br>& for þey had so longe þer hold,<br>Kaer-legion þe name was told.                                                                                                                                              | 3580                 |
| Then came folk<br>who liked short<br>words,<br>and they cut<br>Kaerlegion<br>down to<br>Carlyon ;<br>but Legion<br>means the 6660,<br>Romans who<br>came there to<br>collect tribute. | Com after, men of diuerse <sup>6</sup> language,<br>þat schortly to speken haue in <sup>7</sup> vsage,<br>And schorted hit wyþ name & soun,<br>And afterward kaldyt Carlyon ; <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                 | [leaf 16.]<br>3584   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                       | Bot legion ys noumbre of folk þat wex,<br>Sex þousand, sex hundred, sexti & sex ;<br>þus many alwey fro Rome com, <sup>9</sup><br>þat ay for truwege to Carlyon nom. <sup>10</sup>                                                                                                                         | 3588                 |
| Then Belyn<br><br>returns to Lon-<br>don,<br><br>builds a gate<br><br>with a tower<br>over it,                                                                                        | Whan Belyn Carlion had set,<br>þe walles he reysed, & folk to fet ;<br>To Londone þenne tok he þe way,<br>And þer he dwelled many a day.<br>þer dide he a <sup>11</sup> gate by-gynne,<br>Ouer þe water, þer schipes come ynne ;<br>& ouer þat gate he made a tour,<br>þer-inne he held [ful] long soiour. | 3592<br><br><br>3596 |

<sup>1</sup> it standes.<sup>2</sup> why þe encheson.<sup>3</sup> whilom.<sup>4</sup> kaerusk.<sup>5</sup> clamorgan.<sup>6</sup> Com diuers men of þer.<sup>7</sup> schorte to speke haf.<sup>8</sup> brak þe word to kaerlioun.

[leaf 22, col. 2.]

<sup>9</sup> cuer fro Rome cam.<sup>10</sup> ay vnto kaerlion nam.<sup>11</sup> MS. g. P. a.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| He reysed <sup>1</sup> alle his fader lawes,<br>& dide þem holde by his dawes ;<br>Dom he gaf wysly & right,<br>Trowþ held he wel wip <sup>2</sup> al his myght.<br>Mykel pleynte was in his tyme,<br>On no mannes more may men <sup>3</sup> ryme ;<br>Longe he lyuede, longe <sup>4</sup> to welde,<br>& faire he ended in his elde ;<br>ffor of þat gate þat Belyn aught,<br>Of Belyn [þen] þe name hit laught ;<br>Longe men caldit <sup>5</sup> til now late,<br>After Belyn, Belynes gate ;<br>. þorow schort langage, y tolde er how<br>Byllyngesgate men calle hit now. | rules wisely,<br>3600<br><br><br><br><br>and dies at a<br>3604 good old age.<br>His gate is<br><br>called Belyn's<br>3608 Gate,<br><br>or Billingsgate. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ *Hic moriebatur nobilis Belynus.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ¶ Whan he was ded, sire Belyn,<br>þe people for hym hadde sorwe & pyn ;<br>ffor manye a man fol sore gret<br>þat day þat he ys lyf for-let.<br>þey dide make for his honour<br>A barel of gold of his tresour,<br>& brente his body, flesche & bon,<br>Iþe barel of gold þey leid ilkon ;<br>. More worschip þem þought hit so,<br>. þan his body in erthe to do.<br>When þe barel was al dight,<br>. & wel y-burnuscht fair & <sup>6</sup> bryght,<br>Vp yþe Tour þey made a stage,<br>& heye it henge bifore <sup>7</sup> þe passage,<br>pat alle þat passed, more & lasse,<br>Schold preyse <sup>8</sup> Belyn for his prowesse. | 3612 His people<br>lament him,<br><br>3616<br>burn his body,<br>and put the<br>ashes in a gold<br>barrel,<br>3620<br><br>3624 which they<br>hang up in the<br>Tower<br>for honour to<br>Belyn. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> raised.

<sup>2</sup> at.

<sup>3</sup> of no man more may we.

<sup>4</sup> þe lond.

<sup>5</sup> called.

<sup>6</sup> barred all & burnessid.

<sup>7</sup> & hang it befor.

<sup>8</sup> Praised. [leaf 22, back.]



## § Gurgoynt Rex.

|                                                                  |                                                                                             |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Gurgoint succeeds Belyn,                                         | After Belyn, Gurgoint his sone<br>Hadde þe heritage þorow <sup>1</sup> resone.              | 3628 |
|                                                                  | Gurgoynt Beretruk, þus was his name ;<br>Of gret godnesse he bar þe <sup>2</sup> fame ;     |      |
| and rules well.                                                  | Pes to loke, & ryght to holde,<br>He lyknede his ffader, Belyn þe bolde.                    | 3632 |
|                                                                  | þat Belyn left, he heldit wel ;<br>Noiaunce had he neuere a del,                            |      |
| The Danes stop<br>paying their<br>tribute,<br>[leaf 16, col. 2.] | Bot þe Daneys, <sup>3</sup> þey forsok<br>To gyue truage þat Belyn tok.                     | 3636 |
|                                                                  | Gurgoynt þoughte he hadde ryght þer-ynne,<br>His truwege he wolde al gate wyne ;            |      |
| so he invades<br>and beats them,                                 | His host he gadered, & schipes <sup>4</sup> did come ;<br>þey set vp sail, & forþ þey nome. | 3640 |
|                                                                  | To bataille þey samnde, boþe partys,<br>Bot Gurgoynt wan þer sone þe pris ; <sup>5</sup>    |      |
| kills their king,                                                | Hym self yn bataille slow þe kyng,<br>& tok homage of ilka lordynge ;                       | 3644 |
|                                                                  | & his truwege dide restore,<br>Als his fader had hit byfore.                                |      |
| takes hostages<br>from them, and<br>sails homeward.              | When he had take of hem ostage,<br>Gurgoynt forþ went on his viage :                        | 3648 |
| Near the Ork-<br>neys                                            | He passed forþ by Orkeneye ;<br>pritty schipes he mette in weye,                            |      |
| he meets 30<br>ships                                             | Charged wyþ folk <sup>6</sup> & wyþ vitaille,<br>Bot þey ne wyste whider to saille ;        | 3652 |
| under Pantalius,                                                 | Pantalius, þer maister hight,<br>þat mayntende hem, & held to ryght.                        |      |
|                                                                  | Gurgoynt asked what men þey were,<br>& what þey soughte, & why come þere.                   | 3656 |

<sup>1</sup> be.<sup>2</sup> a man of gode þerof had.MS. *Dameys*. P. has *danes*.<sup>4</sup> he gadred schippes.<sup>5</sup> P. wrongly transposes this line  
and the one above it.<sup>6</sup> Charged fult.

- Pantalius spak ful curteysly.  
 " We ar men of pes, sekyng auowery,  
 " Wey-farende men þat wolde haue gryp;  
 " We aske þe leue to speke þe wyþ." 3660  
 þe kyng ne wolde no pes<sup>1</sup> breke,  
 Wyþ loue he gaf hem leue to speke.  
 He saide, " We ar men of diuerse lynage,  
 " Exiled of Spayne, comen by þys ryuage, 3664 banished from  
 " 3yf þat we any stede fond, Spain, and  
 " On to reste, a certeyn lond. seeking land to  
 " ffor oþer half 3er<sup>2</sup> þus haue we went; settle in;  
 " Hunger, þurst, cold, haþ vs schent; 3668  
 " Many a cost haue we þorow sought;  
 " Lond on to lende, ne fond we nought;  
 " & we ar alle onoyed þer fore,  
 " ffor oure trauaille & grete lore. 3672  
 " Bot, lord, 3yf hit were 3our wylle,  
 " Suffre vs to reste on þy londe stille!  
 " Seruise þer fore we wole þe do;  
 " þy men bycome, 3yf þou wilt so." 3676  
 Bot Gorgoynt wolde þem nought graunt  
 Of his to haue a remenaunt;  
 Nought for þy he gaf hem conseil  
 Toward Irlond to sette þer sayl; 3680 and tells them  
 & of his schipes he lente þem tweye, to go to Ire-  
 To techen hem þe ryghte weye.— land,  
 ff Irlond þat tyme was bygged no þynge  
 Wyþ hous<sup>3</sup> ne toun, ne man wonynge. — 3684 which was then  
 So longe þey sailed, þe se þorow ronne, uninhabited.  
 þat algate to Irlond þey wonne;  
 þey stryken sayl, & anker cast,  
 Vp to lande þey 3ede ryght fast; 3688 land,  
 Al þey founde wast<sup>4</sup> & wylde.

<sup>1</sup> Pes wild nouht þe kyng.<sup>2</sup> a 3ere & half. An et demie,  
Wace i. 159, l. 3337.<sup>3</sup> londes. [leaf 22, back, col. 2.]<sup>4</sup> all fond þei wildernes.

|                |                                              |      |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------|------|
|                | .pey spredde hem aboute in ilkan ylde ;      |      |
| plough, build, | Sone þey maden eryl <sup>1</sup> feld,       |      |
|                | pey logged hem, & tymber <sup>2</sup> teld ; | 3692 |
| and multiply,  | þer folk wax faste, & fostred more,          |      |
|                | & tyled þe lond aboute ay whore.             |      |

¶ *Pantalyus primus Rex Hibernie.* [lf. 16, bk., col. 1.]

|                                                                   |                                                    |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|------|
| and make Pan-<br>talius the first<br>king of Ireland.             | Pantalius, þey maden hym kyng ;                    |      |
|                                                                   | . In Irlond þen made he <sup>3</sup> first wonyng. | 3696 |
|                                                                   | When Gurgoynt had þem pider ysent,                 |      |
|                                                                   | Hom vntil his lond he went ;                       |      |
| Gurgoynt<br>comes back to<br>Britain,<br>and dies in 30<br>years. | . pritty 3er in þys lyf gan lende ;                |      |
|                                                                   | At Kerlyoun he made hys ende.                      | 3700 |

¶ *Gwyntelyn Rex, cuius vxor Marciena Sapiens fuit.*

|                                     |                                                                              |      |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Gwyntelyn<br>succeeds ;             | Whan Gurgoynt hadde don his fyn,<br>Regned <sup>4</sup> his sone Gwyntelyn ; |      |
|                                     | A god man was for þe maystrie,                                               |      |
| and his wife<br>Marcye              | & his wyf highte dame Marcyne.                                               | 3704 |
|                                     | Dame Marcyne was mikel of <sup>5</sup> pris ;                                |      |
| is wise, and<br>makes the           | Of landes lawe scheo was ful wys ;                                           |      |
|                                     | Scheo studyed faste to make þe lawe.                                         |      |
|                                     | . ffor hure þey caldyt by þat dawe,                                          | 3708 |
|                                     | In Bretons tyme, als y wene,                                                 |      |
| law Marcyne,                        | pey calde þat lawe Marcyne.                                                  |      |
|                                     | ffro kyng to kyng þat lawe men wrot,                                         |      |
|                                     | . & Englysche kynges 3it hit wot ;                                           | 3712 |
| or Marchenlage,<br>which still pre- | Marchenlage, þe Englisch hit calde ;                                         |      |
|                                     | . In eyghte <sup>6</sup> schires þat lawe 3it men halde,                     |      |

<sup>1</sup> *mad ardawe.*

<sup>2</sup> *timbred.*

<sup>3</sup> *ireland mad he.*

<sup>4</sup> *after him com.*

<sup>5</sup> *in.*

<sup>6</sup> *auht.* [leaf 23.]

. Gloucestre, Chestre, Warewyk, Oxenford, vails in eight  
 . Hereforde, Wynchestre,<sup>1</sup> Schropschire, Stafford. English shires.  
 And Gwyntelyn & Marcyen, 3717  
 A knaue child hadden þem bytwen.

## ¶ Syluius Rex.

¶ Syluius his name þey told,  
 & er he were seuen 3er old, 3720  
 Deyde his fader: þat tyme here Gwyntelyn  
 He regned namore bot ten 3ere. dies.  
 After Gwyntelyns deces,  
 Kepte Marcyen þe lond yn pes; 3724 His widow  
 & when þat he was wel of elde, reigns till her  
 þat he couþe þe londes welde, boy  
 Scheo hym dide coroune kyng;—  
 . Y telde 3ow his regne in alle<sup>2</sup> þynge;— 3728 Sylvius is  
 Stalworth he was, yn armes<sup>3</sup> bone; crowned;  
 Bot after his fader he deyde<sup>4</sup> sone. but he dies  
 soon,

## ¶ Kynmar Rex.

þenne com his heir, Kynmar, her,<sup>5</sup>  
 . & regned<sup>6</sup> on & twenty 3er. 3732 and is suc-  
 DANEUS his broþer þen hadde<sup>7</sup> þe lond; ceeded by Kyn-  
 . Ten 3er he regned, wyþ werre he fond. Rex. mar, and he  
 by Daneus,

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. rightly substi-  
 tutes *Wircester* for this:—

*Gloucester. Wircester. Herford.*

*Werwik.*

*Oxenford. Schropschire. Chester.*  
*staforð.*

<sup>2</sup> & he regned in all þe.

<sup>3</sup> was till.

<sup>4</sup> die.

<sup>5</sup> *Kymare his sonne his heire was*  
*here.*

<sup>6</sup> he lyued.

<sup>7</sup> siþen had.

## § De Morpydeo Rege Bastardo.

|                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| whose bastard<br>son, Morpydus,                                                                     | <b>Þ</b> ys Daneus hadde on bastardie <sup>1</sup><br>A sone þat wan hit wyþ maistrie ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 3736                         |
| a wrathful man,<br>conquers the<br>land.                                                            | Morpydus, <sup>2</sup> hit seys he hight ;<br>He was a merueillous <sup>3</sup> mody knyght.<br>þorow hardynesse wan hit of chaunce ;<br>Egreliche <sup>4</sup> he tok vengeance,                                                                                                                                            | 3740                         |
| When angered,<br>he will kill any<br>man ;                                                          | Hys ire, when hit on hym ran,<br>ffor nought wold <sup>5</sup> he slo no man <sup>6</sup> ;<br>ffor loue wold <sup>5</sup> he noman spare,<br>þe <sup>7</sup> whyles þat his wrathe ware.                                                                                                                                    | 3744                         |
| but when not<br>angry, he is<br>very good,                                                          | In al þe regne ne was þer non<br>So fair of vertues als he on.<br>Hys body was gent, & fair of vis ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                              |
| liberal,                                                                                            | Til alle he gaf gyftes of pris ;<br>Out of mesure þen was he large, [leaf 16, back, col. 2.]<br>Tresour to holde ne made he charge.<br>þe <sup>7</sup> while his ire was a-weye,                                                                                                                                             | 3748                         |
| gracious,<br>and meek.                                                                              | Al wold <sup>5</sup> he do þat men wold <sup>5</sup> seye,<br>& also meke was as a child,<br>Tyl þat his wrap wax <sup>8</sup> on hym wyld.                                                                                                                                                                                  | 3752                         |
| The duke of<br>Morreue in-<br>vades Northum-<br>berland.<br>Morpheus at-<br>tacks and kills<br>him, | <b>I</b> n Morpidus tyme þat was so stout,<br>þe duk of Morreue robbed a-bout ;<br>Northumberland gan he waste ;<br>& Morpydus til hym gan haste,<br>And angerly <sup>9</sup> gan hym assaille,<br>& þer hym slow in pleyn bataille.<br>þus seide men, & 3it mes seys, <sup>10</sup><br>þat hit was proued (y not what weys) | 3756<br><br><br><br><br>3760 |

<sup>1</sup> *bascardie*. The second scribe of P. writes from here to l. 3965. See *qwen*, l. 3881, note.

<sup>2</sup> *Morwidus*. *Morbidus* in l. 3755 ; *Morpidus* in l. 3758, 3763, &c.

<sup>3</sup> *Ouer mesure was he*.

<sup>4</sup> *Iroustik*. <sup>5</sup> *wild*.

<sup>6</sup> *a man*. <sup>7</sup> *To*.

<sup>8</sup> *Bot whan his wrathe was*.

<sup>9</sup> *egrelike*. [leaf 23, col. 2.]

<sup>10</sup> *& 3it sais*.

- pat Morpidus slow mo men,<sup>1</sup> alone,  
 pan alle his host[e] dide ilkone.  
 When he had slayn al pat he myght,  
 & was al wery more to fyght,  
 þe bodies<sup>2</sup> he dide brenne of þo,  
 Er his grete ire myght ouer go.  
 þe<sup>3</sup> tyme pat he was best in elde,  
 & stalwordest hym self to welde,  
 A best com out of þe Irysche se  
 & destroyed al þe contre;  
 An hydous best was hit by sight,  
 'Monstre Maryne' men seide hit hight;  
 & som men caldit 'Marebellew',<sup>4</sup>  
 So wonderful best no man þer knew.  
 (Swylk calle men 'Monstre,' als y fynde,  
 . pat lymes hauen<sup>5</sup> out of kynde;  
 . pat hauen<sup>5</sup> lymes more or lesse,  
 . 'Monstre' men seis pat swilkou ysse.)<sup>6</sup>  
 . 'Marebellow'<sup>7</sup> ys þe se hound:  
 . I not wheþer hit suiymmes<sup>8</sup> or is atte ground.  
 Was non þat wonede by þe se syde,  
 pat durste for þat best abyde;  
 Man & best he swelwed & et<sup>9</sup>;  
 pat he ouertok, on<sup>10</sup> lyue ne let.  
 ¶ Morpidus herde þerof gret cry;  
 Hys herte was bold & euere<sup>11</sup> hardy,  
 On himself he affyed so,  
 Allone, þe best he zede hym to,  
 & faught wyþ hym,—hit was folye  
 On hym self so mykel forto affie;<sup>12</sup>—
- 3764 and slays more  
 men than all  
 his host does.  
 3768 He burns the  
 bodies of his  
 foes.  
 In his time  
 3772 comes out of  
 the Irish sea  
 a hideous  
 marine monster,  
 or Marebellew,  
 3776  
 3780  
 3784  
 3788 that eats every  
 one it gets hold  
 of.  
 Morpidus  
 3792 boldly goes  
 against the  
 monster,

<sup>1</sup> *sleu me.*<sup>2</sup> "All alive," says Wace, l. 3463.<sup>3</sup> *Be.*<sup>4</sup> marine bélue, Wace, i. 166.  
Lat. *belua maritima*, *De Lincy*, ib.<sup>5</sup> *has.*<sup>6</sup> *es.*<sup>7</sup> *Mare Bellu.*<sup>8</sup> ? MS. *smymmes*. *suimmes*, P.<sup>9</sup> *etc . . leet.*<sup>10</sup> *of.*<sup>11</sup> *ouer.*<sup>12</sup> *mikil affie.*

134 MORPIDUS IS SWALLOWED. GORBODIAN SUCCEEDS HIM.

|                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |              |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| attacks it with a<br>spear,            | Hym self alone <sup>1</sup> þe best assailed,<br>Gret hardynesse hym non <sup>2</sup> ne failled;<br>Wyþ spere first he til hym schet; <sup>3</sup><br>& wounded hym þat was so gret.                                  | 3796         |
| and then a<br>sword.                   | Whan he had schoten, & til hym cast,<br>penne wyþ swerd hew on hym fast.<br>Ouer neygh he cam in þat fyghtyng:                                                                                                         |              |
| The monster<br>swallows Mor-<br>pidus, | He gaped wyde, & swelwed <sup>4</sup> þe kyng.<br><sup>5</sup> [þus gate deid sir Morpidus;<br>So did þe best þat swalud him thus.] <sup>5</sup><br>ffor þe kyng men made gret mone,<br>þe bestes deþ confortd ilkone. | 3800<br>3804 |
| but is killed it-<br>self.             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |              |

¶ Gorbodyan rex.

|                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                            |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Of Morpidus's<br>five sons,                        | Morpydus hadde sones fyue,<br>& alle þey leftym byhinde alyue. <sup>6</sup><br>Gorbodyan, fairest of flour,<br>& Argayl, & sire Elydour,<br>Iugenes, <sup>7</sup> & sire Perodour,<br>Alle fyue were kynges of honur.                                                                                                                                                   | 3808                       |
| Gorbodian suc-<br>ceeds him, a<br>true, wise, man, | Gorbodian was flour & pris,<br>He was trewe, feyghtful, <sup>8</sup> & wys;<br>Neuere kyng wyþ so mykel loue<br>Ouer no lond regned <sup>9</sup> aboue,<br>Neuere louede he no lye, <sup>10</sup><br>No dide men wrong, lowe ne heye. <sup>11</sup><br>He was kyng ful mesurable,<br>To don alle right he was ful stable; <sup>12</sup><br>Loue & pes his tyme was ryf; | [leaf 17.]<br>3812<br>3816 |
| loving truth,                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                            |
| and doing<br>right.                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                            |

<sup>1</sup> *Al on him self.*

<sup>2</sup> *Hardines of hert.*

<sup>3</sup> *launce first he to him scet.*  
[leaf 23, back.]

<sup>4</sup> *opind his mouth & swalhid.*

<sup>5-8</sup> *From the Petyt MS.*

<sup>6</sup> *all left be-hind him on lye.*

<sup>7</sup> *Vigenius, Galf. Mon. i. 18.*

<sup>8</sup> *rihtful.*

<sup>9</sup> *Ouer lond ne folk ne was.*

<sup>10</sup> *witand he ne leith.*

<sup>11</sup> *dide wronge to man þat deith.*

<sup>12</sup> *P. wrongly omits this line.*

Ten ȝer he lyuede þer inne his lyf.  
In Trenouante þer he lys,  
His broþer hym leyde at his deuīs.

3820 He reigns 10  
years,

### ¶ Argayl Rex.

Argayl, þat next hym was born,  
Was kyng as he had be byforn.  
Wykkedly þen gan hym falle,  
ffor he discorded wyþ hem alle;  
þe godmen he abesed<sup>1</sup> mykel,  
& auaunsed þo þat were swykel;  
þe tresor þey hadden, he it hem reft;  
He loued wel lyes;<sup>2</sup> þe soþes he left;  
Trowe men ne louede he nought;  
Glad was he whan wo was wrought.  
þe barons conseilled þeym bytwene;  
þe lond þey refte hym quyt & clene.

3824 and is suc-  
ceeded by his  
bad brother  
Argayl,

3828 who puts down  
the good, lifts  
up the deceitful,  
  
and loves lies.

3832  
  
His barons turn  
him out,

### ¶ Elydourus Rex.

þenne corouned þey sire Elydour,  
Man of pite & of socour.  
Argail, þat was dryuen out,  
He ȝede to prynces ouer al about  
ffor help to haue his regne ageyn;  
Bot his trauaille was al in veyn,  
Non wolde helpe restore his perd;  
þen lyued he ffyue ȝer in pouert.  
Sone afte[r] þe ffyue ȝeres ende,  
Elydour þorow a wode schold wende,  
ffor to pleye by o ryuer;  
þat wode, men caldit Calduter.<sup>3</sup>

3836 and make his  
brother Eli-  
dour king.  
Argail in vain  
seeks help to  
recover his  
land,

3840

and lives five  
years in  
poverty.

3844  
  
Then he meets  
Eli-dour,

<sup>1</sup> *abeissed* . . . *auanced*.

<sup>2</sup> *Blepely* wild lie.

<sup>3</sup> *halamiter*. [leaf 23, back, col. 2.]

Galatère, *Wace*, l. 3570, where  
Brenne fought Belin, p. 107, l. 3025  
above.



136 ELIDOUR'S PLAN FOR RESTORING KING ARGAYL.

|                                                                |                                       |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------|
| prays for<br>mercy,<br>which Elidour<br>grants, and then       | Argail þer sire Elydour mette;        |      |
|                                                                | . On knes sire Elydour he grette,     | 3848 |
|                                                                | & asked hym grace & mercy;            |      |
|                                                                | & he hym graunted al redy;            |      |
| takes Argail to<br>Aclud, and<br>keeps him in his<br>own room. | On hym he hadde gret pyte,            |      |
|                                                                | pat in pouerte schold hym se.         | 3852 |
|                                                                | His armes abute his nekke he kast,    |      |
|                                                                | . His grete pouerte he pleyned fast;  |      |
|                                                                | . Whan he had longe ment his mone,    |      |
|                                                                | Tyl Aclud þey wente ilkone;           | 3856 |
|                                                                | In his chaumbre he dide hym be,       |      |
|                                                                | pat non hym wiste bot in pryuete.     |      |
|                                                                | . Hereþ now of sire Elydour,          |      |
|                                                                | . How he dide his broþer gret honour. | 3860 |

¶ De pietate Elydory.

|                                                           |                                                                 |                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Then Elidour<br>shams illness,<br>sends for his<br>barons | ¶ Elydour feyned hym sik to lye,                                |                    |
|                                                           | & seide he hopede <sup>1</sup> forto deye.                      |                    |
|                                                           | After his barons þenne he sent,                                 |                    |
|                                                           | And þey alle til hym went;                                      | 3864               |
| to come and<br>see him,                                   | A day was ordeyned for to be,                                   | [leaf 17, col. 2.] |
|                                                           | pat þey schold visiten <sup>2</sup> hym, & se;                  |                    |
|                                                           | Wypoute noyse til hym schold <sup>3</sup> go,                   |                    |
|                                                           | On alone, wypouten mo,                                          | 3868               |
| and swears<br>them separately                             | & speke softe & priuely,                                        |                    |
|                                                           | ffor he ne moughte suffre no cri.                               |                    |
|                                                           | Ilkon dide þe kynges wille,                                     |                    |
|                                                           | As þey come yn, þey held hem stille;                            | 3872               |
|                                                           | & als þey comen, þe kyng hem tok,                               |                    |
|                                                           | & dide þem sweren on þe bok                                     |                    |
| to do homage<br>to Argail.                                | ffor to don Argail homage;                                      |                    |
|                                                           | Were he neuere of so hey parage,                                | 3876               |
|                                                           | Wold he, ne wolde, <sup>4</sup> pat scholde <sup>3</sup> he do, |                    |

<sup>1</sup> *hopid*, expected.

<sup>2</sup> *suld visit*.

<sup>3</sup> *suld*.

<sup>4</sup> *wild he ne wild*.

ARGAYL GETS BACK HIS KINGDOM, AND REFORMS. 137

Oper þe deþ schold he<sup>1</sup> go to.  
 þus sonderlypes<sup>2</sup> he dide þem swere,  
 .Tyl Argayl schulde þey faiþ<sup>3</sup> bere. 3880

¶ Deposito Elidoro, Argayl iterum factus est Rex.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When <sup>4</sup> þey had alle sworn an oþ<br>Tyl Argail, wer hem lef or loþ,<br>Elydour & þey alle went<br>To ȝork, & helde a Parlement.<br>Elydour þer þe coroune leued,<br>And set hit vpon Argailles heued,<br>& seide, "here gyue y þe Argayl<br>"þe coroune of Bretayne holyke al."<br>þan seide men of sire Elydour,<br>þat he of pite was fruyt & flour,<br>þat forsok þe regalte, <sup>5</sup><br>& gaf hit his broþer for pite;<br>.þerfore in ilka lordes <sup>6</sup> hous<br>Was he cald Elydour Pytous.<br>¶ Argail amended his maners,<br>& louede his barons, & m[a]de þem pers; <sup>7</sup><br>Was non of hem so mesurable,<br>Ne of his word-so wys & stable;<br>Alle his wykked tecches he left <sup>8</sup><br>.When [he] had take þe corown <sup>9</sup> eft;<br>.Alle hym louede þat hym er hated,<br>.ffor alle his vices were abated.<br>Ten ȝer he regned in honour,<br>& syþen <sup>10</sup> fel in a langour,<br>& ended his lif fair & wel:<br>.þey byried hym at Karlel. | <p>They all hold a<br/>         Parliament at<br/>         York.</p> <p>3884</p> <p>Elidour sets his<br/>         crown on Ar-<br/>         gail's head,<br/>         and gives up to<br/>         him the rule of<br/>         Britain.</p> <p>3888</p> <p>3892</p> <p>Argail mends<br/>         his manners,</p> <p>3896</p> <p>gives up his<br/>         wicked tricks,<br/>         and all men<br/>         love him.</p> <p>3900</p> <p>He reigns 10<br/>         years,</p> <p>3904</p> <p>dies, and is<br/>         buried at Kar-<br/>         lel.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> Or ye dede be suld.

<sup>2</sup> sunder leys (separately).

<sup>3</sup> To Argail suld þei feche þe bere.

<sup>4</sup> Qwen.

<sup>5</sup> regaunte.

<sup>6</sup> lordyng.

<sup>7</sup> his pes.

<sup>8</sup> tecchis left.

<sup>9</sup> whan he toke ye croune.

<sup>10</sup> syn.

§ Iterum elegerunt Elydorum.

|                                                                 |                                                                                                     |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Elidour is<br>chosen king,                                      | Sire Eliadour eft þey ches,<br>pat loued so mikel pite & pes.                                       | 3908 |
| but his brothers<br>Jugens and<br>Peredur rebel<br>against him, | Bot Iugens & Perodours<br>Agayn hym gonne be <sup>1</sup> werreours;<br>Pryuely gadered þey partye, |      |
| take him,<br>prison him in<br>London,                           | & tok hym al wyþ tricherie;<br>At Londone þey dide hym in hold,<br>In a prison hard & cold.         | 3912 |

§ De falsitate fratrum.

|                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                          |                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| and divide his<br>land,                                                      | Perodour & Iugenes,<br>þey parted al þis lond, & ches:                                                                                                   | 3916                     |
| Jugens taking<br>Northumbria,                                                | Iugenes tok, as hym þought best,<br>By northen Humber, Est & West.                                                                                       |                          |
| and Peredur<br>the rest.                                                     | Perodour hadde pat oþer partie,<br>& in a þrowe al þe seignurye;                                                                                         | [leaf 17, back.]<br>3920 |
| In seven years<br>Jugens dies<br>heirless,<br>and Peredur<br>has all Britain | ffor Iugenes lyued bot seuen ȝer,<br>Wythouten heyr, quyt & cler.<br>§ Perodour gan hit þenne vnderfonge;                                                | Rex.<br>3924             |
| till he dies of<br>fever.                                                    | Bot he reioysed hit nought <sup>2</sup> longe,<br>ffor þe ffuerynges <sup>3</sup> deþ hym tok;<br>Wyþ synne hit wan, wiþ sorewe hit fursok. <sup>4</sup> |                          |
| Then Elidour<br>is crowned<br>again.                                         | § þen brought þey forthe sire Elydour,<br>& corouned hym wyþ honour.                                                                                     | Rex.<br>3928             |
| He sets right<br>the wrongs<br>done by his<br>brothers,                      | When he had take <sup>5</sup> þe coroun,<br>He dide þat tyme þe folk somoun<br>To se þe skapes his breþere had don,<br>& amended hem al so son.          | 3932                     |
|                                                                              | Of folyes was he god iustice,<br>He reſte nere man his fraunchise;                                                                                       |                          |

<sup>1</sup> him were.

<sup>2</sup> ne ioyed it neuer. [leaf 24, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> ferynges.

<sup>4</sup> schame for soke.

<sup>5</sup> þis had he takyn.

He gaf ensample of alle wysdam,  
 pat helden þe lond, or after hym cam ; 3936  
 Large of herte, of wyllle fre,  
 He hight Elydour of pyte ;  
 In al his tyme hit was hende,<sup>1</sup>  
 In alle godnesse his lyf gan ende ; 3940  
 In Aldeburghe castel was he leyd,  
 'Klud'<sup>2</sup> pat tyme þe name was seyð.  
 is generous and  
 good,  
 dies,  
 and is buried in  
 Aldborough  
 castle.

After Elydour of pite,  
 His cosyn hadde þe regalte, 3944  
 þe eldest sone of Gorbodian, Rex.  
 Syþen Argailles sone,<sup>3</sup> pat hight Morgan. Rex.  
 pys Morgan was god & meke,  
 His gode wyl was nought to seke ; 3948  
 He was god lord<sup>4</sup> wypouten ylle,  
 And alle hym louede wyþ gode wyllle.  
 After Morgan, Argailles sone,<sup>3</sup>  
 ¶ Ermaneus<sup>5</sup> hadde þe regyone. Rex.  
 Eumanus<sup>5</sup> was Morganes broþer,  
 Bot his maners were alle oper, 3953  
 He coupe hym neuere ffrendes gete ;  
 Tyl al he hadde ire & hate,<sup>6</sup> 3956  
 & alle hated hym right sore,  
 ffor he dide ylle to alle pat wore ;  
 Ilkon þey found hym vengauce ful,  
 Wyþ schrewes he dide hem many yl pul.<sup>7</sup> 3960  
 Six wynter he regned in his lyf,  
 In felonye & in stryf:  
 Alle þe comune seide right þus,  
 " We haten hym, so dop he vs." 3964  
 Elidur is suc-  
 ceeded by  
 Argail's son,  
 Morgan,  
 a good lord,  
 loved by all.  
 Him, his bad  
 brother Erma-  
 neus succeeds,  
 and all the peo-  
 ple hate him  
 so for his evil  
 doings

<sup>1</sup> *att ende*, and leaves out the next line.

<sup>2</sup> *Ghud*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *Argaillesone*.

<sup>4</sup> *Lord tiff att*.

<sup>5</sup> *Emmanius*, or *Ennuanius*. En-  
 niaunus, *Geoff. Mon*.

<sup>6</sup> *niht and hete*.

<sup>7</sup> *with yuel men did him manie a  
 putt*.

that they drive  
him out of the  
land,

. þer-ouon conseilled þey,  
& dryue hym out of þe lond away ;  
. þus þey reftym<sup>1</sup> þe kynedam,  
. & noman wyste whe[re]<sup>2</sup> he bycam. 3968

and chose Ju-  
geneus's son,  
Yvalon, king.

þenne made þey a parlement,  
& chosen a kyng þorow alle assent,  
[þe comon of þe region]<sup>3</sup>  
Iugeneus sone, sire Yvalon.<sup>4</sup> **Rex.** 3972

He rules well,

Yvalon gaf hym to trauaille,  
. Al to gode þat myghte auaille ;  
He dide make many estres,  
And lykned muche his gode auncestres ; 3976  
Bot his lyf lasted<sup>5</sup> no stounde, [leaf 17, back, col. 2.]  
Ouer sone had deþ cast hym to grounde.

and Peredur's  
son is made  
king.  
Then come in  
succession,  
Gerunces,  
Catillus,

When Yualo had mad his endyng,  
Perodours his sone þey chose kyng. **Rex.**  
After Perodours sone deces, 3981  
Was Elydours sone Gerunces ; **Rex.**  
After Gerunces was Catillus ; **Rex.**  
After Catillus was Coyllus ; **Rex.**  
þenne was Porrex ; & þenne Cheryn, **Reges.**

Porrex,  
Cheryn,

He þat was a drynkere of wyn ; 3986  
Ouer mykel drynke he ches ;  
Hys ȝougthe al þer-inne he les, 3988  
In drynke & in dronkenesse,  
Dide he neuere oper prowesse.

(a terrible  
drunkard,

but his three  
sons were all  
kings succes-  
sively :)

By his wyf had he þre sones,  
& alle were kynges (þe story mones) 3992  
Ilkon were after oper :  
ffulgenius was þe eldest broþer ; **Rex.**  
Eldadus, & Androcheus, **Reges.**  
þis oper breþere men caldem<sup>6</sup> þus ; 3996

Fulgenius,  
Eldadus,  
Androcheus.

<sup>1</sup> reft him. [leaf 24, back.]

<sup>2</sup> where.

<sup>3</sup> From P.

<sup>4</sup> Vigenius . . Idrovallo, Geoff. M.

<sup>5</sup> bot lif was.

<sup>6</sup> þe toþer breþer called men.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lytel while was ilkon kyng,<br>Alle made þey sone þer endyng.<br>Androcheus sone highte Vryan,<br>He regned a ȝer, & deide þan.<br>After Vrian, Elyud men ches;<br>He hadde his tyme þe lond yn pes.<br>After Elyud, Endacius; <sup>1</sup><br>After þan, Doten <sup>2</sup> ; syþen Gurguttus;<br>Syþen was Merian, fayr in chere,<br>He coupe of wode & of ryuere;<br>In alle manere venurye,<br>Hym lyked best swylke maystrie.<br>Ladies bed hym of loue ynow,<br>Bot to non of hem wolde his loue bow,<br>Bot onlyke til his owen wyf;<br>So ended Merian his lyf.<br>After Meryan was Bleludo<br>His sone, & couthe of wode also;<br>Large he was, & gaf blepely,<br>He spared to <sup>3</sup> non þat was worþy;<br>Alle men hym loued, for he was fre,<br>Erl, baron, & knyght, & oþer meyne. | <b>Rex.</b> Then Uryan,<br>4000<br><b>Rex.</b> Elyud,<br><br><b>Rex.</b> Endacius,<br><b>Reges.</b> Doten, Gurgut-<br>tus,<br><b>Rex.</b> and Merian,<br>4006 skilful in hunt-<br>ing,<br><br>4008<br>and loved by<br>ladies.<br><br>4012<br><b>Rex.</b> Then his son<br>Bleludo reigns,<br><br>a free giver,<br>4016<br>and loved by<br>all. |
| After þys noble Bleludo<br>Cam Capes,—hys name was so;—<br>After Capes, Oeneus;<br>After Oeneus cam Sysillius;<br>After Sysilly com Glegabret, <sup>4</sup><br>A syngere of þe beste get; <sup>5</sup><br>Of song & of mynstreche<br>Alle men gaf hym þe maystrie;<br>þe note he coupe of alle layes,<br>Of mynstreche al þer assayes; <sup>6</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <b>Rex.</b> 4020 Then reign<br>Capes,<br><b>Rex.</b> Oeneus,<br><b>Rex.</b> Sysillius,<br><b>Rex.</b> and Glegabret,<br>4024<br><br>the best singer<br><br>4028                                                                                                                                                                               |

<sup>1</sup> Cledamus, *Geoff. M.* Clédan-  
tius, *Wace*, l. 3737.

<sup>2</sup> Cletonus, *Geoff. M.* Cloten,  
*Wace*, l. 3738.

<sup>3</sup> of.

<sup>4</sup> Blegabret.

<sup>5</sup> þat was a syngere of þe get.

<sup>6</sup> & mynstralcie all þe saies.

|                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| and fiddler of<br>his time ;                                                            | He coupe so mykel musyk & thume<br>pat þe people [saide <sup>1</sup> ] in his tyme<br>He was þe best <sup>2</sup> of ffythelers,<br>Of iogelours & of sangesters, 4032<br>ffor he was euere glad & <sup>3</sup> gamen,<br>ffele in seruise held he samen.<br>Of ioye & song was his spel ;<br>Was he neyþer irous ne <sup>4</sup> fel, 4036<br>Bot led his lyf in melodye [leaf 18.]<br>Ynto þe tyme þat he schold deye.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| a gentle man,<br>who lives in<br>melody<br>till he dies.<br>Next, Archyval<br>is king ; | After hym was Archyuaul, <sup>5</sup> <b>Rex.</b><br>Pesable he was,—God haue ys saul!— 4040<br>After hym was his sone Eldol ; <b>Rex.</b><br>Hit seys he hadde a folted pol,<br>ffor he was euere lecherous,<br>Of women ouer coueytous. 4044<br>A gentil womman, where he myght <sup>6</sup> fynde,<br>Were scheo neuere so noble of kynde,<br>Wheþer scheo were wedded or nought,<br>His lecherie he wolde haue y-wrought ; 4048<br>& for þencheson of his folye,<br>Men hated hym, as was worthie.<br>After Eldolf, þys folted fon,<br>Cam his sone hight Redyon. <b>Rex.</b><br>Redyon hadde þe kynedam, 4053<br>& after Redyon, Redryk cam ; <b>Rex.</b><br>Syþen was ffamour, & kyng Myssel ; <sup>7</sup> <b>Reges.</b><br>And after hym com kyng Pynchel : <b>Rex.</b><br>Pynchel had fair heued wiþ her, 4057<br>þorow gift of kynde þat was er ; <sup>8</sup><br>Som what was hit fair out of kynde,<br>.pat ȝut of his her <sup>9</sup> write men fynde. 4060 |

<sup>1</sup> said.      <sup>2</sup> was god.<sup>3</sup> ? for in or to.<sup>4</sup> not irous no.<sup>5</sup> Archmaul, or Archiuaul.<sup>6</sup> if he mot. [leaf 25.]<sup>7</sup> & Famur & Missel, for which  
Geoff. Mon. has "Samuelpenissel,"  
and Wace "rois Phanupenisel," l.  
3799.<sup>8</sup> heire.

|                                          |      |               |
|------------------------------------------|------|---------------|
| After hym cam Caporus ;                  | Rex. | Caporus,      |
| Syben, his sone Elignellus. <sup>1</sup> | Rex. | Elignellus    |
| pys Elygnellus, fol wys was he,          |      | (a wise man), |
| Man of mesure wel auyse ;                | 4064 |               |
| After hym regned his sone Ely            | Rex. | and Ely,      |
| ffully to-gidere zeres fourty ;          |      |               |
| . A noble man was he, & a wys ;          |      | a noble man,  |
| . ffaire he deyde, & at Castre lys.      | 4068 |               |

### ¶ Lud Rex.

|                                                 |      |                |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|----------------|
| Helye had þre sones wyghte :                    |      | who has three  |
| þe eldest sone, Lud he highte ;                 |      | sons,          |
| pat oper was Cassibalan ;                       |      | Lud,           |
| þe þrydde, Nemny, <sup>2</sup> a doughti man.   | 4072 | Cassibalan,    |
| Lud was eldest, most of age,                    |      | and Nemny.     |
| Hym fel to haue þe heritage ;                   |      | Lud is first   |
| Knyght was he fol god in stour,                 |      | king,          |
| & lyberal man, & vyaundour ; <sup>3</sup>       | 4076 | makes feasts,  |
| Cites & casteles newe dide set ;                |      | builds cities, |
| Of þe olde mad he god recet ; <sup>4</sup>      |      |                |
| He louede London best of alle,                  |      | puts a wall    |
| perfore vmb-closedit wyþ a <sup>5</sup> walle ; | 4080 | round London,  |
| Manye ar þe clos me <sup>6</sup> se zit stande, |      |                |
| pat Lud dude make, hym <sup>7</sup> lyuande.    |      |                |
| ffor barons & for burgeys sake,                 |      |                |
| Grete stedes til hem dide he make ;             | 4084 |                |
| perfore men seye, & zit men may,                |      |                |
| pat neuere bifore vnto þat day                  |      |                |
| Made kyng byforn so fele cites,                 |      |                |
| Ne castels, ne clos, þat zit men ses.           | 4088 |                |

<sup>1</sup> Cligneillus, *Geoff.* ; Elignellus, *Wace. MS. du Roi, 7515*<sup>3.3</sup> Colb. De Lincy, i. 181, note \*.  
<sup>2</sup> *Nenny* (Nennius, *Geoff.* and *Wace*, l. 3812).

<sup>3</sup> & metegist man viandoure. [lf. 25.]

<sup>4</sup> gude rescette.

<sup>5</sup> he closed it about with.

<sup>6</sup> men.

<sup>7</sup> whils he was.



|                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| which was first<br>called Treno-<br>vant,                                                       | ¶ Tyl Luddes tyme men held þat haunt,<br>To calle London Trenouant;<br>ffor þe loue of Lud ylk del,<br>pat woned þer longe, & closed hit wel,                                                                                           | 4092         |
| then (after Lud)<br>Kaer Lud,                                                                   | . & was of hym so gret renoun;<br>Kaer Lud þer fore men calde þe toun.<br>þenne come opere men were straunge; [ff. 18, col. 2.]                                                                                                         |              |
| then London,<br>then (by the<br>Saxons)                                                         | ffor þe Lud, London dide hit chaunge,<br>þenne come Saxoyns, men of Angle,                                                                                                                                                              | 4096         |
| Ludden,                                                                                         | . Als þey coupe on þer speche iangle,<br>ffor Kaer-lud caldyt Ludden,<br>pat coupe þey best com on & ken;                                                                                                                               | 4100         |
| and (by the<br>Normans)                                                                         | þenne come þe Normaunz & þe Frankisch,<br>Coupe nought com on to calle hit þis;<br>ffor London, Londres þey hit calde;                                                                                                                  |              |
| Londrea.                                                                                        | zit Frensche men þat name <sup>1</sup> halde.<br>ffor regnyng <sup>2</sup> of kynges straunge,<br>ffor diuerse speche, langage men chaunge,                                                                                             | 4104         |
| (Through<br>foreign kings<br>who've con-<br>quered this<br>land,<br>names have got<br>changed.) | pat han þis lond often ywonnen,<br>. & þorow riden & þorow ronnen,<br>& <sup>3</sup> þe names chaunget þer fore;<br>. Som names ar lasse, & som ar more;<br>I hope fo <sup>4</sup> tounes þat now are<br>Hold þer names þat first ware. | 4108<br>4112 |
| When Lud dies,                                                                                  | When sire Lud, þe gode kyng,                                                                                                                                                                                                            |              |
| he is buried by<br>Ludgate.                                                                     | Was ded, & don was <sup>5</sup> his endyng,<br>Byside his gate þey hym leyd,<br>pat, for his name, Ludgate ys seyð:                                                                                                                     | 4116         |
| He leaves two<br>infant children,                                                               | . He yt made, & he yt aughte,<br>. Lodgate for hym þe name laughte.<br>Of Lud were left two childre zyng;<br>Lond to kepe coupe þey no þyng:                                                                                            | 4120         |

<sup>1</sup> on frankis zit þat name men.  
[leaf 25, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> be remouyng.

<sup>3</sup> Ere.

<sup>4</sup> MS. þe. P. reads fo.

<sup>5</sup> & mad.

þe eldest hight Androcheus,  
 þat oper men calde Tenuacius.<sup>1</sup>  
 Cassibolon was þer em,  
 . þe nexte sibbe of þat tem, 4124 and their uncle,  
 He kepte þe childre & þat lond;  
 Men held hym kyng, faire he þem fond;  
 He mayntende þe lond to ryght, is made king.  
 He was curteys & doughty knyght; 4128  
 þe folke he couþe wel iustise,  
 Of hem he hadde fair seruise.

When þe childre were of elde  
 þat þey couþe lordschip welde, 4132 When the chil-  
 In to<sup>2</sup> erldomes he dide þem seyse, dren come of  
 . Worschipfoly, al atter ayse. age,  
 Androcheus hadde, þorow assent,  
 Londoñ, & þe erldom<sup>3</sup> of Kent; 4136 he gives Andro-  
 þat oper broþer had þe baylle cheus London  
 Of þe erldom of Cornewaille. and Kent,  
 When ilk was sesed in his erldam, and Tenuacius  
 þey were cald Erles, whare þey cam. 4140 Cornwall.  
 To whyle þe kyng & his cosyns  
 In loue loken ar þer lynes,  
 Richesse þey hadde ynow to wylle, 4144  
 & of no lond dredde þey non ylle,  
 Ne neuere þurt hem haue<sup>4</sup> drad no tyde.  
 . Bot ouerwenyng of herte pride  
 Ros a discord hem bytwene,  
 þat longe in þys londe was sene; 4148 but pride raises  
 . ffour hundred zer hit lasted, & nyne, strife between  
 . In þis lond þat firste pyne; them, which  
 . Hit bigan, as ze may se, lasts 400 years,  
 . Of Cassibolon & Androche, 4152  
 þorow whilk sorewe þe Romainys wan and makes Cas-  
 sibolan pay

<sup>1</sup> Tenuantius, *Geoff.* Tenuenci-  
us, *Wace.*

<sup>2</sup> two.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *Erldon.*

<sup>4</sup> *thorte haf.* [leaf 25, back.]

146 HOW BRITAIN BECOMES TRIBUTARY TO ROME.

|                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| tribute to the<br>Romans,             | <p>Truage of Cassibolan,<br/>         pat myghte nere be wonne<sup>1</sup> byforn, [leaf 18, back.]<br/>         . Tyl þer loue þorow pride was lorn; <sup>2</sup> 4156<br/>         . Whyle þer loue to-gedere held,<br/>         . Might neuere no Romayn bide þem in feld,<br/>         . pat þey ne chased, þorow force of fight,<br/>         . Cesar of Rome, &amp; al his myght. 4160<br/>         . How hit bygan bytwyxt þem bale,<br/>         . Listep, &amp; y schal rede þe tale.</p> |
| whom they<br>always beat be-<br>fore. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| This is how it<br>comes about.        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

¶ Exe de Iulio Cesare, Romanorum Inperatore.

|                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In Cassibolan's<br>time is Julius<br>Cæsar emperor<br>of Rome, | <p>In þe tyme of Gassybolan,<br/>         Iulius Cesar, a myghty man, 4164<br/>         pat tyme was Emperour of Rome.<br/>         Of alle knyghtes<sup>3</sup> he bar þe blome,<br/>         Of alle þo pat men of<sup>4</sup> herd,<br/>         ffor he conquered al þe werd; 4168<br/>         Als he was doughti knygt, &amp; god,<br/>         In clergie wel he hym vnderstod,<br/>         Of conseil he was man ful wys,<br/>         &amp; of manhod he bar þe pris; 4172<br/>         Hys gyftes he gaf largely,<br/>         . He wyste to wham hit<sup>5</sup> was worthi;<br/>         . ffals &amp; felon he coupe wel knowe;<br/>         . þe ouer proude, he held þem lowe. 4176<br/>         þe Romayns werē þan of pride,<br/>         ffor þey hadde wonne on ilka side;<br/>         þe londes oueral þem aboute,<br/>         . &amp; gauen þeym truage for doute. 4180<br/>         When Iulyus had wonne þus þere,<br/>         ffurþer he þoughte to conquere;<br/>         . Long nold he soiourne<sup>6</sup> ne rest,</p> |
| and a doughty,<br>learned,<br>wise,<br>and liberal man.        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| The Romans<br>are masters of<br>all lands around<br>them,      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| but Cæsar<br>wants to con-<br>quer farther-off<br>lands.       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

<sup>1</sup> *not neuer wyn it.*

<sup>2</sup> P. omits the next four lines.

<sup>3</sup> *of knyghthede.*

<sup>4</sup> *tyme were.*

<sup>5</sup> *whom &.*

<sup>6</sup> *ne wald he soioure.* [lf. 25, bk. cl. 2.]

- . Tyl he had wonnen toward þe west. 4184  
 Hardy Iulius, knyght war & wys,  
 . Preysed of prowesse, of poer had<sup>1</sup> pris;  
 He gadered hym of knyghte 3onge,  
 . Of alle nacions þat speke wyþ tonge, 4188  
 & tok his leue at [þe] Romainys,  
 . To wende fro þem for longe teymes;<sup>2</sup>  
 . West, he seide he wolde wende,  
 To wynnen to þe wordles ende.<sup>3</sup> 4192
- Whan Iulys was wel dight ynow,  
 He passed Burgoyne & Moun Gow.<sup>4</sup>  
 ffyrst he wan al Burgoyne,  
 ffraunce, Nawuarre, & Gascoigne, 4196 all France,  
 Peytowe, Normandye, þe lesse Bretayne;  
 Syþen went agayn til Alemayne;  
 Alle he wan hit ar he þepen<sup>5</sup> nam,  
 Sipe to Boloyn & to fflaundes he cam, 4200 and Flanders,  
 & al conquered vnto þe se,  
 Al gaf truage to Rome in fe.  
 . Whan al was wonne, wel heldyn<sup>6</sup> payd,  
 . By þe se a day he 3ede & playd; 4204  
 Toward þe se his eye<sup>7</sup> gan kest,  
 & faste byheld toward þe west:  
 " What ys 3one lond y 3onder se,  
 " & what [folk]<sup>8</sup> euere þer may be?" 4208  
 Men hym tolde hit was a lond  
 þat folk of Troye first[e] fond;  
 Brutus highte þer firste cheftayn, [leaf 18, back, col. 2.]  
 & after hym hit hatte Bretayn; 4212  
 þe heires þat of hym ar comen,  
 In heritage þey haue hit nomen.
- He gathers a host,  
 and leaves Rome,  
 to conquer to the world's end.  
 Cæsar wins  
 all France,  
 Germany,  
 and Flanders,  
 and then from the seashore, sees  
 a land in the west.  
 He is told  
 it is Britain, held by Brutus's descendants.

<sup>1</sup> *pruesse powere &.*  
<sup>2</sup> *to wyne londes lungeteyns* (les lontains, *Wace*, i. 186, l. 3922).  
<sup>3</sup> *werldis end.*  
<sup>4</sup> *Fr. Mon Gius. Lat. Mons Jovis.*

<sup>5</sup> *þien.*  
<sup>6</sup> *held him.*  
<sup>7</sup> *egh.*  
<sup>8</sup> *folk/.*

## § Dicta Iulii Imperatoris.

Cæsar says  
that, as Brutus  
came from  
Æneas,

who held the  
Roman land,

he can of  
course claim  
Britain.

Besides, as

Britain and  
Rome were  
both Belin's,  
he Cæsar, who  
has Rome now,  
can claim  
Britain too.  
He'll summon  
the Britons to  
yield ;

and if they  
won't, will  
claim their  
land.  
So Cæsar  
writes a letter

Iulys answered & seide right þus :  
 " Wel han y herd of sire Brutus ; 4216  
 " He saide he com of Eneas kynde,  
 " Bot ryghtly born nought we fynde;  
 " He com of Eneas, þat held þo landes  
 " þer Rome our cite now yn standes ; 4220  
 " ȝyf he were born of Eneas kyn,  
 " þorow kynde y sette chalange þer-yn ;  
 " Chalange y wole þat lond þorow ryght,  
 " þat Eneas kynde gete þorow<sup>1</sup> myght. 4224  
 " Ys þat lond — loke<sup>2</sup> ȝe me kenne—  
 " þat bolde Belym was of, & Brenne;  
 " þat oure cite of Rome wan,  
 " Oure se[n]e, &<sup>3</sup> destroyed ilkaman ? 4228  
 " Wel schal þey wite, whyle<sup>4</sup> y am her,  
 " þat Rome ys now of more power !  
 " & right hit were, & reson hit welde,  
 " þat þey til vs truage schold ȝelde : 4232  
 " ȝone ilde was Belynes, & Rome was his ;  
 " Gret skil haue y þenne þorow þys,  
 " ffor to sette chalange þer-inne,  
 " þat his lond was, þorow right to wynne. 4236  
 " By letteres woly hem first somoun,  
 " To here þer wyl, what þey responce ;  
 " Nought ne woly passe þe se  
 " Til y wyte how þey answeere me. 4240  
 " ȝyf þey to my pes wille hem chese,  
 " & ȝeld hit me, þey schol nought lese ;  
 " ȝyf þey ne wol nought bot wyþ stour,  
 " y dereyne þe lond for our." 4244  
 þay dide Iulys write a bref,  
 & schewed hem how he was chef,

<sup>1</sup> had of. [leaf 26.]

<sup>2</sup> Es ȝon þat Ilde þat.

<sup>3</sup> our scene (senate).

<sup>4</sup> wille till.

- . & how his kynde fyrst hit wan:  
 . Of Eneas com Brutus, þat man, 4248  
 . & syþen was Belynes heritage;  
 He wold hit wynnen, or take truage.  
 þe lettere com to Cassibolan,  
 . þat he schold bycome sire Iulyus<sup>1</sup> man. 4252  
 . Cassibolan brak þe seal o sunder;  
 Of truage askyng he had wonder;  
 Anoper lettere dede he wryte þare,  
 & sent hit ageyn vntil Cesar 4256  
 Al in ire & in tene,  
 & þe lettere<sup>2</sup> þus mykel wol mene:

asking for  
Britain or tri-  
bute for it.

Cassibolan

answers it

in wrath,

¶ *Rescripcio Cassibolany ad Inperatorem.*

- ¶ "Cesar," he saide, "we haue meruaille  
 " & gret desdeyn, wypouten faille, 4260 "We wonder at  
 " þat of 3ow Romainys rennes silk los,—  
 " & to longe hit lastes after hit<sup>3</sup> gos,—  
 " þat ar of so gret couetyse  
 " þat non bot 3e may haue fraunchise; 4264 the covetous-  
 " And al þe syluer & al þe gold, ness of you  
 " & alle lynage þat lyuen on mold, Romans, who  
 " Til 3oure dom wil 3e þem drawe; [leaf 19.] have endless  
 " Wy[p]oute reson, wypoute lawe, 4268 treasure,  
 " Al þe tresor 3e drawe 3ow to:  
 " What wil 3e þer-wyþ al do?  
 " & we þat are atte wor[l]des ende,  
 " & in an ylde lyue<sup>4</sup> & lende, 4272 and yet  
 " 3yt 3e ne wil<sup>5</sup> passe vs forby want tribute  
 " Wypoute truage askyng<sup>6</sup> greuously! from us at the  
 " & we<sup>7</sup> þat schal & ben<sup>8</sup> 3our peres, world's end,  
 " 3it wolde 3e make vs truagers! 4276 from us who are  
 your equals!

<sup>1</sup> *suld com Iulius þat man.*

<sup>2</sup> *writte.*

<sup>3</sup> *& fer it.*

<sup>4</sup> *lif.* [leaf 28, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> *wilt 3e nouht.*

<sup>6</sup> *bot 3orgh treuage.*

<sup>7</sup> *MS. were.*

<sup>8</sup> *we þat suld be.*

150 THE BRITONS WILL FIGHT FOR THEIR FREEDOM.

|                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| If you want<br>tribute,                                              | “ perfore, Iulius, ȝyf þou wilt assay,<br>“ & of þy comynge <sup>1</sup> sette vs a day,<br>“ Y trowe þou schalt fol euele <sup>2</sup> spede.                                    |      |
| come and fight<br>for it.                                            | “ Com on, & proue hit in <sup>3</sup> dede!                                                                                                                                       | 4280 |
| We have been,                                                        | “ ffor euere ȝit haue we lyued fre<br>“ Y þis lond, bot now for þe,                                                                                                               |      |
| we will be, free!                                                    | “ & schul we lyue als <sup>4</sup> frely<br>“ As ȝe Romayns; & reson whi :                                                                                                        | 4284 |
| Like you, we<br>are sprung<br>from Æneas.                            | “ Syn we ar comen alle of o <sup>5</sup> kynde,<br>“ & of o rote & of o rynde, <sup>6</sup><br>“ pat ys to seyn, <sup>7</sup> of Eneas,                                           | 4288 |
|                                                                      | “ As frely born as euere þou was.<br>“ perfore, ȝyf þou þe byþoughtest<br>“ In skil & reson as þou oughtest, <sup>8</sup><br>“ pou scholde nought put vs to <sup>9</sup> seruage, |      |
| You should not<br>want to enslave<br>us.                             | “ Syn we ben of þyn owen <sup>10</sup> lynage;<br>“ We schul be peres to ȝow of Rome,<br>“ In alle fredam haue euenly dome.                                                       | 4292 |
| We wonder at<br>a noble man<br>conceiving<br>such villainy!          | “ Vs wondrep at ȝowre nurture of <sup>11</sup> pris,<br>“ pat swylke vilenie in þe now lys,<br>“ In seruage to put vs to!                                                         | 4296 |
|                                                                      | “ & we wot nought how we scholde do,<br>“ We neuere lered, ne nought wil lere,<br>“ ȝyf þat we may, in none manere.                                                               | 4300 |
| Our kin have<br>never known<br>seruage;<br>neither do we<br>know it. | “ Of alle oure kynde, y ne wyste no man<br>“ pat coupe of seruage, <sup>12</sup> ne ȝut ne can;<br>“ Ne we knowe nought on what wyse<br>“ We scholde serue seruage seruisse.      | 4304 |
| God helping,<br>we'll keep free                                      | “ ffre we ar, so schol we be;<br>“ & ȝyf God wyl, we schul <sup>13</sup> for þe!                                                                                                  |      |

<sup>1</sup> to com titt vs &.

<sup>2</sup> suld litett.

<sup>3</sup> If þou wild proue it with.

<sup>4</sup> we suld life also.

<sup>5</sup> for ȝe & we ere att a.

<sup>6</sup> comen of a rute & a rynde. Fr.  
orine (origin), Wace, i. 190, l. 4010.

<sup>7</sup> for we ere comen.

<sup>8</sup> & after skil & reson wrouhtis.

<sup>9</sup> þou suld not sette vs in.

<sup>10</sup> þat ere of þin awen.

<sup>11</sup> Als þou ert lentitt & of grete.

<sup>12</sup> seruisse.

<sup>13</sup> Cesar.

- " Wite þou wel by oure answe[re],  
 " While<sup>1</sup> we may oure seluen were, 4308  
 " & fende oure lond & oure fraunchise,  
 " Of vs getestow neuere seruise!  
 " Ne neuere truage schol we þe gyue;<sup>2</sup>  
 " þat ys to seye, whiles þat we lyue, 4312 while we live."  
 " We wol be fre, & holde honurs,  
 " As dide byforn our auncessours."  
 . To Iulius swylk a lettere þey sent;  
 & when Iulius wiste þat entent, 4316  
 þat ȝif he wold haue any truage,  
 Nede byhoued<sup>3</sup> hym make passage,  
 penne dide he make schipes & barges, prepares a fleet;  
 ffoure score wyþ grete charges,— 4320  
 So grete byfore were neuere for were, [leaf 19, col. 2.]  
 Ne non þat so gret<sup>4</sup> charge myght bere,—  
 Wypouten oper schipes smale,  
 . þat we nought telde byforn in<sup>5</sup> tale. 4324

### ¶ De nauigio Cesaris.

- ¶ When Iulius Cesar was al redy,  
 To go to schipe þey made a cry;  
 His folk com in-to schipe right fast, his men go on board,  
 & drowe þer saylles vp heye on<sup>6</sup> mast; 4328  
 þen blew þe wynd, and gan hem dryue,  
 At an heuen þey gon vp aryue,<sup>7</sup> sail off,  
 þer Temese & þe se to-gydere comen. and land at  
 Bot er Cesar hadde vp lond ynomen,<sup>8</sup> 4332 Thames haven.  
 þer was sprad by þe se side  
 . ffair folk to fighte, Cesar tabyde:<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *till*. [leaf 26, back.]

<sup>2</sup> *ne treuage I gyf þe a gyue.*

<sup>3</sup> *nedeli borde.*

<sup>4</sup> *heuy.*

<sup>5</sup> *were not telde of in þat.*

<sup>6</sup> *did drawe þe saile on þe.*

<sup>7</sup> *ryue.*

<sup>8</sup> *þe land had nomen.*

<sup>9</sup> *to bide.*



|                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Cassibolan opposes Cæsar at Dover.                                      | Cassibola[n] <sup>1</sup> was redy at Douere,<br>& renged his men by þe ouere; <sup>2</sup>                                                                                      | 4336 |
| His steward,<br>Sir Belin, has<br>summoned the<br>British host:         | Hys styward highte sire Belyn,<br>Of conseil was he god & fyn;<br>He hadde do comen þorow <sup>3</sup> somons<br>On alle <sup>4</sup> half, erles & barons.                      | 4340 |
| Androcheus<br>with his Lon-<br>doners,                                  | þe kynges neuews com wyþ gret <sup>5</sup> partie,—<br>To hem he myghte hym well <sup>6</sup> affye,—<br><sup>7</sup> þe eldest highte Androcheus,<br>þat oþer broþer Temuacius; | 4344 |
| Tenuacius with<br>his Cornish-<br>men,<br>Nemnius, with<br>his Kentish, | Androcheus & his Loundreneys, <sup>7</sup><br>Tenuacius wiþ his Cornwaleys,<br>Sire Nemnius, sire of Kanterbire,<br>þe noblest of al þe empire:                                  | 4348 |
| and the kings<br>of Scotland,<br>North Wales,<br>and South<br>Wales.    | þe kynges broþer was Sire Nemny,<br>Androcheus was in his compaigny,<br>& oþer folk [ful] gret plente.<br>Wyþ ostes were þer kynges pre:                                         | 4352 |
|                                                                         | Erudyonus, þere <sup>8</sup> Scottes kyng,<br>Britalles wyþ al þe Walsche garderynge;<br>Of South Walys com kyng Ignarcet;                                                       |      |
|                                                                         | þyse pre were in [o] <sup>9</sup> bataille set,<br>Wyþ here frewille þyse pre cam<br>ffor to defende þe[r] <sup>10</sup> fredam.                                                 | 4356 |
| All advise an<br>attack on the<br>Romans,                               | Ilkon gaf conseil to go<br>Er þe Romayns were logged mo;                                                                                                                         | 4360 |

<sup>1</sup> *Cassibolan.*<sup>2</sup> *him bi þe ses ouere. (A.-Sax. ofer shore).*<sup>3</sup> *don com þorgh.*<sup>4</sup> *ilk.*<sup>5</sup> *neuoz þe to.*<sup>6</sup> *on þo tuo he myght.*<sup>7-7</sup> *Androcheus & his lordynges, londreis.*<sup>8</sup> *þe. [leaf 26, back, col. 2.]*<sup>9</sup> *a.*<sup>10</sup> *þar.*

¶ *Bellum inter Romanos & Cassibolanum.*

- ¶ Er þey hadde ony recet taken, before they are  
 þey þoughte þey wolde hem a-wake[n].<sup>1</sup> in fortifications.
- When alle were set in ylka bataille,  
 & schept ho scholde formest assaille,<sup>2</sup> 4364  
 Toward þe Romayns faste þey nomen.  
 Whan Cesar sey þat þey scholde comen,  
 He cried to hys men "armes ȝow!  
 "þe Bretons ar redy, & come right now." 4368  
 Sone were þer bataille<sup>3</sup> to-gedere met,  
 & to bataille renget & set: and a fierce  
 and a fierce battle follows.
- <sup>4</sup>[þe parties smert smyten togidre,  
 With scharp suerdes oñ helmes gan glidre. 4372  
 þer schaftes þorgh schoten body & schelde;  
 Many on fett, & many vphelde;  
 Many tome saditt & hors ostray,  
 Many douhti knyght down þer lay;] 4376  
 Many on wounded lay þer to blede,  
 & manyon stode, som fledde for drede;  
 Knyghte<sup>5</sup> iustede, archers drowe,  
 On boþe parties fol manie þey slowe, 4380  
 þei come so pikke & so smert, [leaf 19, back.]  
 & perced brunyes,<sup>6</sup> brest & hert;  
 Wyp wyfles<sup>7</sup> strike, wyp axes hewe,  
 Schuldres, schankes, & hedes, doun hewe;<sup>8</sup> 4384  
 Alle was strewed þe grene gras  
 Wyp blod & bowaille<sup>9</sup> & heuedes fresch.  
 fful hard was þer, & moste<sup>10</sup> nede;  
 þe quiyke vpon þe dede ȝede; 4388

The Britons  
advance.Cæsar calls his  
host to arms,The archers kill  
many.Axes hew off  
limbs and  
heads.The grass is  
strewed with  
bowels and  
heads.<sup>1</sup> or þei wild hald þam waken.<sup>2</sup> whilk of þam suld formast saile.<sup>3</sup> otes.<sup>4</sup> The next six lines are from P.<sup>5</sup> knyghtes.<sup>6</sup> hauberk.<sup>7</sup> (A.-S. *wifel*, arrow, dart, javelin.) *stanes*, P.<sup>8</sup> þe schuldres þe schankes doun  
threwe.<sup>9</sup> bowes.<sup>10</sup> no ferly was it behoued.

|                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                               | Vpon þe dede þey stode to fight,<br>& eueryche <sup>1</sup> slow þat he slo myght.                                                                                                                                                            |      |
| Cæsar fights<br>bravely against<br>his foes ; | Cesar hadde in his bataille<br>Knyghte þat coupe boþe fende & saille ;                                                                                                                                                                        | 4392 |
|                                               | He peyned hym to do þeym wo,<br>& faste he folewede hem for to slo ;<br>Was þer no man <sup>2</sup> þat he smot,<br>þat ful sore on hym ne <sup>3</sup> bot ;                                                                                 | 4396 |
| none can stand<br>against him.                | Mighte þer noman lyue no stounde,<br>þat of his swerd[e] laughte <sup>4</sup> wounde.                                                                                                                                                         |      |
| Nemnius works<br>with Andro-<br>cheus,        | Androcheus com wyþ þo of Kent,<br>& Nemnyus, to-gedere þey went,<br>þey set o þe Romainys a gret <sup>5</sup> partie,<br>& beot hem doun <sup>6</sup> as men hardie,<br>& seide "Turne we vpon Sezar !" <span style="float:right">4400</span> | 4400 |
|                                               | & als þey rod, þey were hym <sup>7</sup> war. <span style="float:right">4404</span>                                                                                                                                                           | 4404 |
| and attacks<br>Cæsar.                         | Nemmyus fyrst ferde in þe stour,<br>& bated hym opon <sup>8</sup> þe emperour,<br>And ful glad was þat he myght<br>Wiþ so noble <sup>9</sup> a lordyng fyght. <span style="float:right">4408</span>                                           | 4408 |
| Cæsar                                         | Cesar perseyued þat he cam,<br>A-geyn his scheld a strok <sup>10</sup> vp nam ;<br>Cesars swerd <sup>11</sup> was out ful sone ;                                                                                                              |      |
| hits Nemnius<br>on the head,                  | Nemny to smyte he was al bone,<br>& Nemny on þe heued he smot ; <span style="float:right">4412</span>                                                                                                                                         | 4412 |
|                                               | Hit was trenchaunt, ouer fer hit bot,<br>Bot Nemny bar vp his scheld,<br>His heued a party lowe hit held ; <sup>12</sup> <span style="float:right">4416</span>                                                                                | 4416 |
| and breaks his<br>crown,                      | ȝit þe strok sank so doun,<br>þorow þe helm he <sup>13</sup> brak his croun ;                                                                                                                                                                 |      |

<sup>1</sup> *alle.*<sup>2</sup> *was it non.* [leaf 27.]<sup>3</sup> *þat ne þe dede sone him bote.*<sup>4</sup> *toke any.*<sup>5</sup> *þei gadred þam a gode.*<sup>6</sup> *batailed þam.*<sup>7</sup> *of him.*<sup>8</sup> *abatid him on.*<sup>9</sup> *grete.*<sup>10</sup> *his stroke his scheld.*<sup>11</sup> *Cesar suerde.*<sup>12</sup> *lowe a parti helde.*<sup>13</sup> *schelde &.*

- Lite failed þat he ne had  
 Clouen þe hed, þe<sup>1</sup> dynt was sad; 4420  
 Bot Nemny bar þe scheld o sker,  
 & Iulius smot his swerd ouer fer,  
 þat he ne myghte drawe hyt ageyn;  
 Napeles he dide þerto his peyn, 4424  
 He drow þe swerd, Nempny þe scheld,  
 Ilkon wel his owen held;  
 Nemny wilde haue turnd & went,  
 Bot Iulius wip þe draught hym hent; 4428  
 I hope Iulyus had drawn hit out,  
 Bot Nemnyus fol[k]<sup>2</sup> were egre & stout.  
 Androcheus, Nemnyus neuew,<sup>3</sup>  
 Wyp hem of Kent dide gret prow; 4432  
 On ilka side þey slowe aboute,  
 & Cesar saw hym self in doute,  
 & fro þem fledde in to þe feld,  
 & lefte his swerd in Nemnyus scheld. 4436  
 Nemny saw of help ynow,  
 He turned þe scheld, þe swerd out drow,  
 & wip þat swerd forþ he faught;  
 Bot þo þat þer-wyp woundes laught, 4440  
 Myghte þey neuere haue medecyne, [lf. 19, bk., col. 2.]  
 Bot to þe dep by-houed hem<sup>4</sup> pyne.  
 Als he þus faught, þys Nemmyus,  
 He ouer-tok sire Labemnius,<sup>5</sup>— 4444  
 A lord he was of gret baillye,  
 In Rome he hadde a constablerye,<sup>6</sup>—  
 Nemnius swilk a strok hym lent,  
 þat by þe schuldres þe hed of went. 4448  
 How manye þer deide, y may nought ame;  
 Of alle þe fighters y knowe no name;

but catches his  
sword in Nem-  
nius's shield,

and, for fear of  
Androcheus, is

obliged to flee  
and leave it  
there.

Nemnius pulls  
out Cæsar's  
sword,

and kills whom-  
soever he hits  
with it,

including La-  
bemnius, a  
great lord of  
Rome.

Many are  
killed.

<sup>1</sup> *Clouen þe borde.*

<sup>2</sup> *folk.*

<sup>3</sup> *neuow.*

<sup>4</sup> *þe dede bod þam.* [leaf. 27, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> *labennius.* (Labienus, Geoff.  
and Wace.)

<sup>6</sup> *constablie.* (conestablie, Wace,  
i. 198, l. 4177.)

Night sunders  
the hosts.

Bot þer was manyon doun leyð,  
Wel mo þan any man wrot or seyð, 4452  
& wel mo scholde ȝit þat nyght,  
Had þey nought sondred for faute of lyght.<sup>1</sup>

§ De fuga Romanorum.

The Romans in  
dismay draw off,

þen com þe nyght, gon was þe day,  
& ilka party ȝede þer way. 4456  
þe Romayns syde was nought payð,  
Logges non hadde, þey were dismayed ;  
Wery þey were, & yuel lykande,<sup>2</sup>

and sail that  
night to Flan-  
ders,  
to the Britons'  
joy.

ffor wiþ þe Brutons þey myght<sup>3</sup> nout stande.  
þey toke conseil a-wey to wende, 4461  
No lenger in þys lond to lende ;  
ffor þe contre knew þey nought,  
Logge ne recet had þey non wrought ; 4464  
To schipe þey wente þat ilke nyght,  
Vntil flaundes þey fley þer flyght.

But Nemnius

þe Bretons made blisse, ilkon,  
þat þe Romayns were so gon ; 4468  
Bot þe kyng made sorewe ynow  
ffor Nemnyus, þat to deþe drow ;<sup>4</sup>  
Medicyne myghte non be founde  
þat myghte hele Nemnyus wounde. 4472

dies 15 days  
after, and is  
buried near  
Northgate in  
London,

Of sire Nemny nought elles to seye,  
Bot þe fiftenþe day Nemny gan deye.<sup>5</sup>  
þey buryed hym in a temple gate,  
In Londoñ, atte Northe gate, 4476  
Honurablocke<sup>6</sup> þan an oþer,  
ffor he was þe kynges broþer.

<sup>1</sup> had ne sondred þam & left þer  
fight.

<sup>2</sup> ill likand.

<sup>3</sup> One stroke too many in the m.

<sup>4</sup> Nennius to dede drouh.

<sup>5</sup> he died on þe fiftend day.

<sup>6</sup> Honorable more.

- pat swerd he wan of sire Cesar,  
 By hym in graue þey leide hit þar,  
 ffor he was of gret honur,  
 & he haddyt wonnen y þat stour.  
 þe swerd was of swylk metal,  
 pat who þat wounded were wyþ-al,  
 He ne scholde nought longe lyue  
 ffor medicine men myghte hym gyue.  
 Why of deþ hit hadde þe gylt,  
 Hit was writen on þe hilt  
 Wyþ lettres of gold, burnusched bryght,  
 pat "Crucia mors" þat swerd hight :  
<sup>1</sup> Hit myghte wel hote "Crucia mors ;"  
 Wham hit wounded, hit was ded cors ;  
 & zit hit ys seyð y þe Romaunce,  
 þe enperours swerd was al vengauce.  
 Til þeym of ffraunce cam tidyng tyt,  
 How þe Romayns were desconfit  
 þorow þe Bretons in pleyn bataille.  
 þanne mysliked þeym saunz faille,  
 And for cowardes þem selue ches,  
 ffor þey were at [þe]<sup>2</sup> Romayns pes.  
 þey conseilled þem a day certeyn,  
 Vpon Cesar to turne a-geyn ;  
 In þer conseil þei seide þus :  
 " Als þe Bretons chased Iulyus,  
 " ȝut schul<sup>3</sup> we fonde so to spede,  
 " To do sire Iulius fle for drede.  
 " þe Bretons be nought zit so bolde  
 " As we haue ben, [ne] men of tolde,<sup>4</sup>  
 " & so lyghtly dide þem lout !  
 " ȝit schul<sup>3</sup> we fonde to chace hem out.  
 " Hit are ynowe þat first han grace
- De gladio Cesaris.** with Cæsar's sword by his side.  
 4481  
 4484 The sword is the death of whomsoever it wounds,  
 4488 and is called "Crocea Mors."  
 4492  
 4496 When the Gauls hear that the Romans have been defeated,  
 [leaf 20.]  
 4500 they resolve to rebel against them.  
 4504 The Gauls say, that as the Britons  
 4508 are not very bold,  
 and yet can beat Cæsar, so will they,

<sup>1</sup> P. has, for the next three lines,  
 on leaf 27, back,  
 & ȝit men say as sais þe romance.

<sup>2</sup> þe.

<sup>3</sup> ȝit saȝt.

<sup>4</sup> als we ere ne men of tolde.

and put down  
the Roman  
rule.  
 " ffor to wynne, & robbe, & chace, 4512  
 " & sipen turnes *per* praye til pyne;  
 " Lyghtli þey wynne, lightly þey tyne:  
 " *per* lordschip ȝit schul we abate,  
 " ffor alle þe world þey wynne wyþ hate." 4516  
 þus þey seyde þat þey wold do;  
 & ȝit alday men telle þem so,<sup>1</sup>  
 þat þe Bretons<sup>2</sup> wolde fonde a flyght  
 ffor to felle þe Romayns myght.<sup>3</sup> 4520  
 þat sawe made<sup>4</sup> þeym wylde & wod,  
 & reysed þem more vp in þer mod:  
 Bot sone þer bost was al in griþ,  
 Whan sire Iulius had spoken hem wyþ. 4524  
 Sire Iulius Cesar was ful queynte,  
 Wisdam he coupe, & wordes feynte;  
 A folet coupe he wel adaunte,<sup>5</sup>  
 To proude men *per* wylle graunte. 4528  
 He is cunning,  
 can bully  
 or crouch,

### ¶ De blandiscione Cesarys.

bribe,  
 Wel coupe he paye þe couetous,  
 & wynne<sup>6</sup> þe wille of þe enuyous;  
 & ful wel coupe bere hym meke  
 or be meek. When his strength<sup>7</sup> was for to seke. 4532  
 He wiste þat þe frenche men<sup>8</sup> were fykel,  
 & how þey forcedem<sup>9</sup> agayn hym mykel;  
 His men are  
 badly off, and  
 wounded. & his men were yuel<sup>10</sup> dight,  
 Wery & wounded al<sup>11</sup> in fight; 4536

<sup>1</sup> *teld þam to.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *frensche. bretons*, P. Que  
li Breton mer passeroient, *Wace*,  
l. 4249 (after *Geoffrey*).

<sup>3</sup> *france to help þe romeyns to*  
*fight.*

<sup>4</sup> *mad.*

<sup>5</sup> *a felon [Wace, félon] coupþ he*  
*fuþt wele daunte.* [lf. 27, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *He wan.*

<sup>7</sup> *force.*

<sup>8</sup> *vist þe frankis men.*

<sup>9</sup> *forced þem.*

<sup>10</sup> *ille.*

<sup>11</sup> *& weri for-fouhten.*

Leuer hym were in loue þem loute,<sup>1</sup>  
 þan in bataille to ben<sup>2</sup> in doute ;  
 . þe Bretons hadden hasted hem<sup>3</sup> so,  
 . þat tyme in dede myghte þey nought do. 4540  
 . Wyþ faire wordes hem to hym drow ;  
 & gaf hem giftes & richesse<sup>4</sup> ynow,—  
 ffor of his giftes he was ful large,  
 . ffor schame þey moughte hym namore charge ;—  
 & more he byhet, þan gyue<sup>5</sup> he myght, 4545  
 þe Bretons to wýnne wiþ force & fight.  
 To pore men he gaf fraunchise,  
 & cleymed þeym quit<sup>6</sup> of þer seruise ; 4548  
 þo men he hadde flemed<sup>7</sup> þe contre,  
 . To comen ageyn he gaf hem fre,  
 & to haue þer heritage,  
 & restored þeym of here<sup>8</sup> damage. 4552  
 þerfore when þis grete lordynges  
 Seyen Cesar ofre<sup>9</sup> þem swylke þynges—  
 . Gold & syluer atter<sup>10</sup> wille— [leaf 20, col. 2.]  
 In pes þey held hem alle stille. 4556  
 Mikel ys richesse of power !  
 ffor sone had he bated wo & wer,<sup>11</sup>  
 . Sone had he turned wrong to right,  
 . Sone had he blent þe coueytous sight, 4560  
 . Sone made he frend þat er were wrope,  
 . Of Cesar & þe ffrankysche boþe ;  
 ffor þo þat hym byforen hated,  
 Wiþ<sup>12</sup> hys gyftes were alle abated ; 4564

So he speaks  
the Gauls fair,  
and gives them  
great gifts.

He sets free the  
poor,

recalls the  
exiles

to their inherit-  
ance ;

and thus quiets  
the Gauls.

Great is the  
power of  
money !

It turns Cæsar's  
foes to friends,

<sup>1</sup> *luf* to *loute*.

<sup>2</sup> *com* to *bataille* & *be*.

<sup>3</sup> *had þam* *hasted*.

<sup>4</sup> *giftes riche* ; and leaves out the  
next two lines.

<sup>5</sup> *hette þam if þat*.

<sup>6</sup> *clamé quite*, *Wace*. Eng. "quit-  
claim."

<sup>7</sup> *þat he had fled*. [*Wace*, *escil-  
lié*].

<sup>8</sup> *þam þer*.

<sup>9</sup> *sawe Cesar offer*.

<sup>10</sup> *at þer*.

<sup>11</sup> *where* ; and leaves out the next  
two lines, and transposes the two  
next to them.

<sup>12</sup> *for*.



|                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| and makes his<br>rebels loyal. | þat schopen hym yuel <sup>1</sup> & outrage,<br>þey diden <sup>2</sup> hym fewte & homage,<br>At his conseil for to lende,<br>Ageyn þe Bretons ȝyf he wold wende. 4568<br>Whan sire Cesar, <sup>3</sup> lord & sire,<br>Had pesed & swaged al þer ire,<br>He conseilled hym wyþ an engynour,<br>& dide hym make a merueyllous tour 4572<br>In Bologne: "Ordre" ys þe name.<br>So wrought ys non bot þat same;<br>By-neþen hit is in strange compas;<br>Brod & þykke þe gynnyng was, 4576<br>& euere hit nareweþ <sup>4</sup> rysande on heyght,<br>& semeþ griller <sup>5</sup> & more streight.<br>Selcoupe stages ar þer-ynne,<br>Wyndowes cast, coruen wiþ gynne. 4580<br>His tresor he leyde þer inne to lok,<br>Onlyke þer al þat he toke;<br>& hym self lay in þe tour,<br>When he dred hym of <sup>6</sup> his tresour. 4584<br>Two ȝer he dwelled þer in ffraunce,<br>& dight hit for werre in alle <sup>7</sup> chaunce;<br>He sente to baillifs to gadere hym <sup>8</sup> fees,<br>& reisede his truwege of his citees. 4588<br>Whan al was gadered on ylk party,<br>In Ordre þey leide hit in tresory.<br>Then he makes<br>ready<br>In two ȝer he dide hym dight,<br>& made hym to Brutayne right, <sup>9</sup> 4592<br>a fleet of 600<br>ships,<br>& dide hym dighte a fflute on flode,<br>Sex hundred gret schipes & gode, <sup>10</sup><br>and resolves to<br>invade Britain.<br>& seide, "ȝit wyly make <sup>11</sup> assay |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *compassid foly.*<sup>2</sup> *mad.*<sup>3</sup> *Iulius.* [leaf 28.]<sup>4</sup> *nerewees.*<sup>5</sup> *grelere* (rougher, sharper).<sup>6</sup> *for* [de traison, Wace].<sup>7</sup> *dighted it for were o.*<sup>8</sup> *his.*<sup>9</sup> *uþpon þe bretons eftsons to  
fight.*<sup>10</sup> *schipes grete & gode.*<sup>11</sup> *will mak.*

THE BRITONS STAKE THE THAMES AGAINST CÆSAR. 161

" Vpon þe Bretons, spede how<sup>1</sup> y may; 4596  
 " Bot ȝif y may conquere Cassibolan,  
 " Y preise nought elles al þat y er wan;  
 " Al my conqueste preise y nought,  
 " Bot þe Bretons to trewe be brought." 4600

§ De subuersione nauigii Cesaris in Tamysia.

|                                                     |                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Whan hit was dight, al his flet,                    | Cæsar's fleet,       |
| Wyþ god folk & vitailles set,                       | well equipt,         |
| þe schipes seyled day & nyght                       | sails for the        |
| Til þey come in to Temese right. <sup>2</sup>       | Thames,              |
| þus þey wend, þat atte firste tyde                  | 4604                 |
| per nauye to Londone holy schold <sup>3</sup> ryde; | to attack Lon-       |
| Alle at ones þe scholde <sup>3</sup> vp saille,     | don.                 |
| & to þe Bretons gyue bataille.                      | 4608                 |
| þe Bretons wist hit wel ynow,                       |                      |
| Bot of þer sleigþe lystneþ now; <sup>4</sup>        | But the artful       |
| Longe pyles <sup>5</sup> & grete dide þey make;     | Britons stake        |
| ffaste yn Temese dide þey hem stake,                | their river          |
| Euerylkon wyþ iren schod;                           | 4612 with pilcs shod |
| [leaf 20, back.]                                    | with iron,           |
| Ageyn þe schipes stod ilkon <sup>6</sup> od,        | set singly.          |
| fful wel set, & sykerly;                            |                      |
| per myght non wel ascape <sup>7</sup> forby.        | 4616                 |

§ De bello inter Cesarem & Brutones in Tamysia.

|                                            |               |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------|
| § Right atte fulle se <sup>8</sup> of fiod | Cæsar's ships |
| Com alle six hundred schipes god;          | come at full  |
| Sykerly þey wend haue nomen,               | tide,         |
| & into Londone at ones comen.              | and make sure |
| 4620                                       | of reaching   |
|                                            | London;       |

<sup>1</sup> if.

<sup>2</sup> þei sette vp saille þe schippes  
hemse

þe wynde þam drofe in to temse.

<sup>3</sup> suld.

<sup>4</sup> bot what þei did listen how.

<sup>5</sup> peeles. [peus ferrés, Wace, 4437.]

<sup>6</sup> ilk an. [leaf 28.]

<sup>7</sup> scape.

<sup>8</sup> at a folle flowe.

|                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| but they strike<br>on the piles,<br>and sink,                                                                                                            | þey ne were wyþynne bot a lite,<br>Or on þe pyles gon þey <sup>1</sup> smyte.<br>þer myght men se þat stod on brynke,<br>Schipes in-to þe water synke ;                                                       | 4624 |
|                                                                                                                                                          | pat on vn-to þe toþer hurte, <sup>2</sup><br>þe mastes faste <sup>3</sup> to-gidere burte,<br>& somme ouer-terned, & lay on syde ;                                                                            | 4628 |
|                                                                                                                                                          | Bordes ryuen out holes wyde,<br>Ropes ryuereled, & swerued <sup>4</sup> in lyne,<br>Ilkon dered oþer, & dide pyne ;<br>Lond ne hauene myght þey non taken,<br>So faste on pyles gan þey staken : <sup>5</sup> | 4632 |
| great holes<br>being driven in<br>them.                                                                                                                  | In yuel <sup>6</sup> tyme out þey nomen,<br>Yuel þey ryued þat þider comen ! <sup>7</sup>                                                                                                                     |      |
| A bad time for<br>them !                                                                                                                                 | Cesar saw þat grete vnhap,<br>pat in þe water was swylk a trap ;                                                                                                                                              | 4636 |
| Cæsar                                                                                                                                                    | Iren-schod was ilka peel,<br>& <sup>8</sup> þoughte þat so was ilka del ;<br>Many of þem turned a-geyn,                                                                                                       | 4640 |
|                                                                                                                                                          | & seyde þat wending was in veyn.<br>He dide þem alle gon vp to londe,<br>Man & hors, þer þey best fonde ;<br>By bankes vp aboute þey wente,<br>& pyght <sup>9</sup> þeym pauylons & tente.                    | 4644 |
|                                                                                                                                                          | Right als þey picched <sup>9</sup> þer pauylons,<br>Cam Cassibolan wyþ þe Bretons,<br>Erles, barons, knyghte, squiers, <sup>10</sup><br>Asperly folle on þe Romainers : <sup>11</sup> —                       | 4648 |
| orders them to<br>land where and<br>how they can.<br>They do ; and<br>as they are<br>pitching their<br>tents,<br>the Britons<br>attack them<br>fiercely. | His neuwe & opere of his <sup>12</sup> kynde,<br>Wyþ alle þe opere þat he myghte <sup>13</sup> fynde,                                                                                                         |      |

<sup>1</sup> are on þe peles þai gan.<sup>2</sup> hurtle. (hurter, Wace, l. 4347.)<sup>3</sup> falle.<sup>4</sup> reueld suarled.<sup>5</sup> pelis gon þei stake.<sup>6</sup> ille . . nome.<sup>7</sup> Ille þei sailed & þidire come.<sup>8</sup> he.<sup>9</sup> piket.<sup>10</sup> suaynes.<sup>11</sup> fellid on þe romayns.<sup>12</sup> neuoz & his opere.<sup>13</sup> help þat he mot.

- þe kyng asemblede in noble<sup>1</sup> wyse,  
ffor wiþ þe Bretons was no feyntise :— 4652  
& at þer logges þer<sup>2</sup> þey hem set,  
þe Bretons wyþ hem þer þey met.<sup>3</sup>  
þeyr egre comyng þe Romayns a-boden,  
A-geyn þe Brutons stifly þey stoden ; 4656  
Als a wal þe scheltrom held,<sup>4</sup>  
& ruysed þe Brutons abak<sup>5</sup> in feld.  
ffirst þe Romayns ful wel stoden,  
Agayn þe Bretons in bataille ȝoden,<sup>6</sup> 4660  
& fer bakward dide hem go,  
& manyon slowe, & wroughte wo.  
þenne was wroþ Cassibolan ;  
ffor tene byfore þem alle he nam,<sup>7</sup> 4664  
& bar þe breste on þem by-fore,  
& after hym þe Bretons gaf<sup>8</sup> bore,  
& euere was fresche folk comande,  
And dide þe Romayns ageyn stande. 4668  
So wyþynne a litel þrowe [leaf 20, back, col. 2.]  
Men amed þem, & wel hit sowe, brings up fresh ones,  
Two so many Bretons þare  
As hadde þer Iulius Cesare,<sup>9</sup> 4672  
& dide þe Romayns a-geyn to fle,  
& slowe þem, schame was hit to se ! and puts the Romans to flight.

<sup>1</sup> ascried þam on his.

<sup>2</sup> as. [leaf 28, back.]

<sup>3</sup> For the next two lines the Petyt MS. has, on leaf 28, back,—

*ferweis at þer first comyng.  
þer armour herd ye crusse & ryng.  
At þer loges þe romeys biden.  
agayn þe bretons stifly riden.*

of which the first two represent the  
"Dont véissies armes croissir" of  
*Wace*, l. 4866, vol. i. p. 206.

<sup>4</sup> þer hardynes helde. (Lor hardi-  
ment orent por mur, *Wace*, l. 4369.)

<sup>5</sup> did þe bretons go bak.

<sup>6</sup> felde ȝod.

<sup>7</sup> wan.

<sup>8</sup> gan.

<sup>9</sup> Bien se sunt esmé as trois rans  
De chevalier, tos combatans,  
Que César n'i ot amené.

*Wace*, i. 206, l. 4377–9.

Britones vero, omni hora affluen-  
tia suorum augmentati, triplo major-  
em numerum habebant. *Galf. Mon.*  
iv. 7 (p. 62, ed. Giles).

## § De probitate Brutonum.

Cæsar was  
never so cast  
down.

The Britons  
fight like mad.

Cæsar with-  
draws his men  
to their ships,

and is himself  
the last to leave  
the land.

The Romans  
land at Bou-  
logne,  
and stay there  
to recover.

§ Hardy Cæsar, noble kyng,  
pat neuere so bayscht was<sup>1</sup> for no þyng, 4676  
He sey þe force of þe Brutons,  
& hyse to þem hadde no fuysona.<sup>2</sup>  
þe Bretons, as wode, rengede route ;  
Of dynt ne dep<sup>3</sup> had þey no doute ; 4680  
þey slowe, & felde, & made þem weye ;  
þey made no force to lyue ne deye.<sup>4</sup>  
Cesar perceyued þat ful wel,  
He dide turne hys folk ylk del 4684  
A-geyn, & to þer schipes wende ;  
Bot hym self lefte til<sup>5</sup> þe last ende,  
A-gayn þe Bretons for<sup>6</sup> to fyght,  
þe whyles<sup>7</sup> his folk to schipe þem dight. 4688  
By þe lond þe schypes did ryde,  
To kepe his folk at ilka tyde ;  
When alle were ynne, & sayl on mast,  
Cesar com yn alder last ; 4692  
& alle þat were of his conrey,  
Hyed þem faste, & wente<sup>8</sup> þer wey.  
Euene as lyne<sup>9</sup> þe wynd gan dryue ;  
At Ordre, his tour, gon þey aryue.<sup>10</sup> 4696  
Cesar sojoumed þer ful longe,  
To hele þem þat<sup>11</sup> were wounded stronge,  
& man & hors for to rest,  
And ordeyned for hym what was best. 4700

<sup>1</sup> neuer abaist.

<sup>2</sup> fousons (defence, p. 56, l. 1591,  
note 17, above.

<sup>3</sup> dede ne dynt.

<sup>4</sup> or deie.

<sup>5</sup> was in.

<sup>6</sup> to þe bretors.

<sup>7</sup> to while.

<sup>8</sup> up with saile & forth. [lf.28,bk.,cl.2.]

<sup>9</sup> als lyn.

<sup>10</sup> did up ryue. The three lines  
following are in the MS. du Roi 73,  
and the Arsenal 71 (Wace, i. 207),  
though not in the MS. du Roi 27  
that De Linsey printed.

<sup>11</sup> hele þat.

|                                                |      |
|------------------------------------------------|------|
| pe kyng of þys lond, <sup>1</sup> Cassibalan,  |      |
| . & þe Bretons ilka man,                       |      |
| Made ioie for þe mykel pris                    |      |
| pat þey had wonnen <sup>2</sup> of Cesar twys. | 4704 |
| . þe Romayns, mykel sorewe þey made            |      |
| . pat þe Bretons were so <sup>3</sup> glade;   |      |
| . Cesar & hyse were dismayed,                  |      |
| . Bot þe Bretons were wol payed.               | 4708 |

The Britons re-  
joice at beating  
Cesar twice,

¶ *Pro Victoria eorum optulerunt solennem  
sacrificium Diane diis suis.*

|                                                   |                      |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| ffor ioie þey hadden þo batalle wonnen,           |                      |
| & Cesar twyes had ouer-ronnen,                    |                      |
| To God þey highte to make a feste                 |                      |
| Wyp alle þe comme[n]s lest & meste. <sup>4</sup>  | 4712                 |
| þe day he set of þe sacrifice,                    |                      |
| Hys vow to holde wyp fair seruisse.               |                      |
| Cassibalon sende his messegers                    |                      |
| ffor þe barons, <sup>5</sup> knyghtes, & squiers, | 4716                 |
| Of his demeynes alle þe pytaille <sup>6</sup>     |                      |
| . pat hadde hym serued in bataille,               |                      |
| pat þey scholde <sup>7</sup> alle to London come, |                      |
| . Vp peyne of forfeiture of <sup>8</sup> dome,    | 4720                 |
| . Wyf & child wip hem schold <sup>7</sup> lede,   |                      |
| þo pat halp hym in his nede,                      |                      |
| & alle <sup>9</sup> come wip herte glad,          |                      |
| In riche atyr, ryght as he bad.                   | 4724                 |
| Man & wyf, & children zonge                       |                      |
| . pat coupe go, & speke wyp tonge,                | [leaf 21.] All come, |

and resolve to  
hold a great  
feast to God.

Cassibolon  
summons

to London all  
who helped in  
the war,  
as well as their  
wives and  
children.

<sup>1</sup> *kyng doukti kyng.*  
<sup>2</sup> *won.*  
<sup>3</sup> *att* : and leaves out the next four  
lines of verse.  
<sup>4</sup> *comune of þer geste.*

<sup>5</sup> *for barons.*  
<sup>6</sup> *pedaile* (foot-soldiers).  
<sup>7</sup> *suld.*  
<sup>8</sup> *g.*  
<sup>9</sup> *att þei.*

and fair folk  
they are.

Alle þey comen to þe cyte:  
ffairer folk myght no man se;  
& ilkaman after his auenaunt  
Made offrynge, as was his<sup>1</sup> haunt.

4728

§ Exe Sacrificium.

|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| The Britons<br>offer up 50,000<br>cows,<br>3,000 hinds,           | § pys feste day þat was so hey,<br>Were offred fifty <sup>2</sup> þousand ky,<br>& per-to, þre <sup>3</sup> þousand hyndes,<br>. Wylde walkande by wode lyndes;<br>& an hundred þousand schep;<br>þe noumbre of <sup>4</sup> foules gaf noman kep,<br>. So fele per were, myght non þem <sup>5</sup> ame,<br>. What of wilde, what of tame.<br>When don was þat sacrefyse,<br>& feste holde in per beste wyse, <sup>6</sup> | 4732                         |
| 100,000 sheep,<br>and birds no<br>end.                            | . Mynstrals bygon to blowe <sup>7</sup> & ryme,<br>. Als per custume was þat tyme;<br>Knyghtes, squiers, made bourdys,<br>. & hem desgysede in pourpre <sup>8</sup> & bys;<br>& oper bachelers skirmede faste,<br>Wrastlede, lepen, <sup>9</sup> stones caste;<br>. In feld, in toun, in <sup>10</sup> ilka weye,<br>. Ilkon pleide þat he coupe pleye.                                                                     | 4736<br><br>4740<br><br>4744 |
| Then min-<br>strels play and<br>rhyme;<br>knights                 | When þey hadde alle pleyd at wille,<br>& schold haue ended, & <sup>11</sup> ben al stille,<br>Two wolde skyrmen, as fel þe <sup>12</sup> cas,<br>Sire Huwelyn & Irelgas. <sup>13</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 4748<br><br>4752             |
| and others<br>fence, wrestle,<br>and leap;<br><br>everyone plays; |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                              |
| Huwelyn and<br>Irelgas fence.                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                              |

<sup>1</sup> per.

<sup>2</sup> was of fourti. (quarante mil,  
Wace, i. 209, l. 4431.)

<sup>3</sup> þer þritti (trente-millers, Wace.)

<sup>4</sup> tale af.

<sup>5</sup> no man.

<sup>6</sup> P. leaves out this line.

<sup>7</sup> glewe. [leaf 29.]

<sup>8</sup> in þer quantise of purpure.

<sup>9</sup> wristled skipped.

<sup>10</sup> at.

<sup>11</sup> & suld haf.

<sup>12</sup> skirme þat com of.

<sup>13</sup> hereglas (Ireglas in rubric and  
next line).

## ¶ De Infortunio inter Huwelynū &amp; Irelgas.

- Irelgas was þe kynges cosyn ;  
 Androcheus neuwe was Huwelyn.<sup>1</sup>  
 . þyse to-gedere wolde skyrme al gate ;  
 þorow pride of herte son com þer hate,  
 þorow hate þen gan þer<sup>2</sup> wordes ryse  
 Of boþe parties of yuel<sup>3</sup> assise.  
 When ilk had seyð til oþer wough,  
 Wyþ wraþe to smyte, þe egge<sup>4</sup> drough :  
 þorow a meschaunce, y wot hit was,  
 Huwelyn slow þer Irelgas.  
 When þe kyng þys chaunce herd seye,  
 þe feste was sturbled &<sup>5</sup> aweye.  
 ffor þe kyng was ful feloun,  
 & hastyf, vntil vengaunce boun,  
 þe kyng seid vntil Androche,  
 & bad hym vp peyne of alle his fe,  
 Huwelyn, his cosyn, hym<sup>6</sup> for to sende,  
 þat felonie for to amende,  
 & in his court haue iugement  
 . þorow þe comunes, er þat þey<sup>7</sup> went.  
 Androcheus þoughte<sup>8</sup> wyþ herte ful wo :  
 " ȝif y hym sende, he schal hym slo."  
 Androcheus sende ageyn ful tyt,  
 & of his court asked respit :  
 " A lord y am, &<sup>9</sup> court y haue ;  
 . " þorow þat wyl y<sup>10</sup> hym dampne or saue.  
 " ȝyf þer be eyþer<sup>11</sup> baron or knyght, [leaf 21, col. 2.] and says he'll  
 " Pleyneþ hym þer, he schal haue right ;  
 4756 They get angry,  
 bad words are  
 spoken ;  
 4760 and by ill hap  
 Huwelyn kills  
 Irelgas.  
 Cassibolan  
 4764  
 4768 demands Irel-  
 gas of his uncle  
 Androcheus,  
 4772 that he may be  
 tried.  
 4776 But Andro-  
 cheus refuses to  
 give up Irelgas,  
 4780 try him in his  
 own court.

<sup>1</sup> nouwe was Heulyn.<sup>2</sup> þorgh þan gan.<sup>3</sup> ill.<sup>4</sup> edge.<sup>5</sup> turbled & mirth.<sup>6</sup> heulyn him.<sup>7</sup> þorgh comon or þei.<sup>8</sup> þouh.<sup>9</sup> a.<sup>10</sup> whilk .I. may.<sup>11</sup> it be ouþer.



. " & þe souereynte þou takest þe<sup>1</sup> to,  
 . " Hit schold be myn, & schal<sup>2</sup> be so;  
 . " þou wost hit<sup>3</sup> ys myn heritage;  
 . " þou bedes me mys & outrage!" 4784

¶ *Rex irascatur versus Androcheum nepotem suum.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cassibolan<br>waxes wrath,<br>and swears<br>he'll pillage<br>Androcheus<br><br>and slay<br>Huweyn.<br><br>So the feast<br>ends in strife.<br><br>Cassibolan is<br>Androcheus's<br>uncle,<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>and yet strives<br>daily to ravage<br>his land. | When þe kyng herde his answe,                 He swor he scholde <sup>4</sup> on hym were;<br>& þat he had, he scholde <sup>4</sup> hym reue,<br>Heritage ne nought, hym byleue; 4788<br>& Huwelyn schold <sup>4</sup> he slo,<br>ffor þat outrage þat [he] had do. <sup>5</sup><br>On þis manere parted <sup>6</sup> þer feste;<br>Wip loue bygan, endede wip cheste. 4792<br>. Cassibolan was Androcheus eem,<br>. Luddes broþer of þat teem.<br>. <sup>7</sup> Androcheus was Luddesone, & Temnace,<br>. As y forn telde in oþer place. <sup>7</sup> 4796<br>. Whan Lud deyde, þey ne couþe<br>. Kepe þe lond for þer <sup>8</sup> zouþe;<br>. Cassibolan þerfore vndertok<br>. þe lond, & hem to kepe & lok; 4800<br>. & þorow þe wroþe of þis þynge<br>. Made <sup>9</sup> Androche a chalangyng.<br>Now ilka day Cassibolan fandis <sup>10</sup><br>To brenne & struye <sup>11</sup> Androcheus landes. 4804 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> þe courte þat þou bides me.

<sup>2</sup> suld . . & satt.

<sup>3</sup> wote it. [leaf 29, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> suld.

<sup>5</sup> for Ireglas suld he go.

<sup>6</sup> departed.

<sup>7-7</sup> Androche & Tenuace

lud sons boþe .I. told or spacc.

<sup>8</sup> for ouer.

<sup>9</sup> Makis.

<sup>10</sup> fondes . . . londes.

<sup>11</sup> brenne.

## § Hic peciit concordiam.

- § Androcheus saw his felon wille,  
 þat þe kyng þoughte hym to<sup>1</sup> spille ;  
 He sente til hym his messeger,  
 & preyed þe kyng in fair maner,  
 Namore destruye his landes so,  
 Bot make acord bytwyxt hem to ;  
 & preied hym "þat he wolde<sup>2</sup> mone  
 . " þat he<sup>3</sup> was his broþer sone,  
 . " & heir of al þat heritage  
 . " þat þou me reuest wyþ outrage."<sup>4</sup>  
 þe kyng was of so felon rees,  
 He ne wolde here of preyere ne<sup>5</sup> pes,  
 . Bot vengauunce take for any þyng ;  
 . þat falles ful yuel<sup>6</sup> for a kyng.  
 Androcheus saw no bettere bot :  
 " Suffren," he saide, " nede y mot."  
 Hys pleyn londes he let hym haue,  
 Bot his forteletes he dide<sup>7</sup> saue :  
 Wiþ hym to holde he fond noman,  
 So cruel was Cassybalan.  
 ffe ne wold he neuer a del,  
 Ne lese þat he myghte holde wel.  
 Androcheus asked : " What ys to rede?<sup>8</sup>  
 . " Syn no man dar me helpe for drede,  
 . " & help me byhoues haue algate,<sup>9</sup>  
 . " Nede me dryueþ vntil<sup>10</sup> þe ȝate ;  
 . " ffor þe kyng assent wil nought  
 . " þat y haue þes, als y haue sought.
- Androcheus  
 sends and asks  
 Cassibolan  
 to be at one  
 with him ;  
 but Cassibolan  
 will not.  
 Androcheus  
 retires to his  
 fortresses,  
 but can get no  
 allies.  
 So he argues,  
 " What can I  
 do ?  
 I must have  
 help,  
 as Cassibolan  
 won't make  
 peace.

<sup>1</sup> wild him.<sup>2</sup> if he wild it.<sup>3</sup> ha.<sup>4</sup> reues als outrage.<sup>5</sup> he not here his praiere no.<sup>6</sup> vntwile itt.<sup>7</sup> & his forceletes did.<sup>8</sup> said what is to spede. [lf. 29, bk.]<sup>9</sup> þes haf alle gate.<sup>10</sup> chaces vnto : and then leaves out  
the next four lines.

- Fell his pride, I  
will,
- though I suffer  
for it as well as  
he."
- So Androcheus  
writes to  
Cæsar,
- and says :
- " Sipeu y ne may haue no rest,  
" On oper halue y schal do my best ;  
" fful mykel anguisse woldy byde, [leaf 21, back, col. 2.]  
" ffor to felle þe kynges pryde. 4836  
" A folye to do, & fle a wel<sup>1</sup> more,  
" Men haldes þat wysdam<sup>2</sup> & lore ;  
" To do a folye, ȝut were hit skyl,  
" ffort[o] lyuere<sup>3</sup> a man fro more peryl ; 4840  
" & god hit<sup>4</sup> were to suffre a wo,  
" ffor to venge hym of hys fo.  
" Wel y wot, & haue in hert,  
" þat hit schal vs bope smert ; 4844  
" Bot ȝit me lykes þat greuaunce,  
" ȝif y may take on hym vengauce.  
" What so schal me bytide algate,  
" þe kynges pride y wyl abate ; 4848  
" Y may nought elles wyþ hym dele."  
A lettere he wrot, & dide hit sele,  
& sent hit priuely to Cesar,  
Tyl Ordre his tour, for he was þar. 4852  
What he wrot, & þyder sent,  
Y vnderstonde þus þentent :

### ¶ Epistola Androchii ad Cæsarem.

- " O wise Cæsar,
- I Androcheus,  
lord of Kent  
and London,  
greet you.
- ¶ " To Cesar, hardy, war, & wys,  
" Whas pruwesse men preise<sup>5</sup> in pris ! 4856  
" Of Bretaigne, Androche þe Bretoun,  
" Sire of Kent, lord of London,  
" Sendep þe gretynge, wyþ his god red,  
" þat whilom wyned to þe ded.<sup>6</sup> 4860  
" Cesar ! often haue men seen,

<sup>1</sup> & slek a.<sup>2</sup> hold it wisdom.<sup>3</sup> to delyuer.<sup>4</sup> wele it.<sup>5</sup> whos pruwesse men praises.<sup>6</sup> to send þe gretynge is my rede,  
whilom to whom .I. desired dede.

|                                                               |      |                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| " per to han <sup>1</sup> hated, & fomen ben,                 |      | Foes often turn<br>fast friends.                                      |
| " pat syben han loued to-gedre wel,                           |      |                                                                       |
| " Tristiloker pan ony stel; <sup>2</sup>                      | 4864 |                                                                       |
| " After hate, loue wyl be,                                    |      |                                                                       |
| " & after schame, worschip <sup>3</sup> men se:               |      |                                                                       |
| " þus hit bytides many gate,                                  |      |                                                                       |
| " Of somme per longe has ben <sup>4</sup> hate.               | 4868 |                                                                       |
| " Ilk soughte oper dep, <sup>5</sup> al þat we myght,         |      | You and I have<br>sought each<br>other's death;                       |
| " When we met vs <sup>6</sup> in feld to fight;               |      |                                                                       |
| " Bot so hit fel, to boþe oure prow,                          |      |                                                                       |
| " pat neyþer am y slayn, ne þow.                              | 4872 | but you're still<br>alive,                                            |
| " A-geynes vs bataille hastow nomen,                          |      |                                                                       |
| " & twyes we haue þe oueroomen;                               |      | though we've<br>beaten you<br>twice.                                  |
| " Bot lef þou wel þis <sup>8</sup> for certeyn,               | 4876 | Now, however,<br>if you'll invade<br>England again,<br>I'll help you. |
| " pat zif þou wilt come <sup>9</sup> eft ageyn,               |      |                                                                       |
| " Of Kent ne pertestow <sup>10</sup> fle þat cost,            |      |                                                                       |
| " paw <sup>11</sup> y were þere wyþ al myn host;              |      |                                                                       |
| " & þey <sup>11</sup> þe kyng þat tyme com þare,              |      |                                                                       |
| " Ne þart þe <sup>10</sup> fle for al his fare; <sup>12</sup> | 4880 |                                                                       |
| " ffor þorow myn help, & þorow me,                            |      | Through me<br>the king beat<br>you before,                            |
| " Has þe kyng do þe twyes fle; <sup>13</sup>                  |      |                                                                       |
| " ffor by me þe land þou lees,                                |      |                                                                       |
| " & for me fledde þy mykel pres.                              | 4884 |                                                                       |
| " perof now y repente me sore,                                |      | and now I'm<br>sorry for it,                                          |
| " pat y so dide ageyn þe þore;                                |      |                                                                       |
| " perfore by me þou schalt be brought                         |      | and I'll make<br>you win the<br>land.                                 |
| " To wynne þe lond, als þou had þought;                       | 4888 |                                                                       |
| " Now me forþynkes þat y þe noyed,                            |      |                                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> *two haf.*

<sup>2</sup> tristeliere þen any.

<sup>8</sup> & after wirschip.

<sup>4</sup> *bat long haf bene in.*

• we souht our dede.

<sup>6</sup> *we fondid.*

<sup>7</sup> The lines following, down to l. 4915, are not in De Lincy's MS. du

Roi 27, but are in MS. 73, Cangé.  
Wace, i. 214-15.

<sup>8</sup> *bot wille þou now.*

<sup>9</sup> *If þou wilt com.*

<sup>10</sup> *thurte* þe.

<sup>11</sup> *pos.* <sup>12</sup> *here.*

<sup>13</sup> The Petyt MS. adds,—

& Borgh þe dyntes of my honde,  
defended þe kyng his londe:

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>For lately<br/>Cassibolan has<br/>got proud,<br/>and will never<br/>let me be quiet<br/>for a day.<br/>He kills my<br/>friends,</p> <p>and wants to<br/>banish and kill<br/>me</p> <p>because I won't<br/>let him kill my<br/>nephew.</p> <p>I'll tell you<br/>how the strife<br/>arose :</p> <p>' At our feast<br/>in honour of<br/>beating you,</p> | <p>" &amp; þat þe kyng þe so destroyed ;<sup>1</sup></p> <p>" ffor syn he hæp boren hym in to proud wyse<sup>2</sup></p> <p>" Til his barons, &amp; to alle hyse,<sup>3</sup> 4892</p> <p>" And syþen hadde he neuere<sup>4</sup> wille [lf. 21, bk., col. 2.]</p> <p>" In pes me suffre a day be stille ;</p> <p>" My lond to waste he gop<sup>5</sup> aboute,</p> <p>" My frendes to slo, &amp; dryue þem oute ; 4896</p> <p>" My self he wolde<sup>6</sup> exile &amp; chace,</p> <p>" &amp; slo, als hit ys his manace ;</p> <p>" My God y take wisse vnto,</p> <p>" Y serued neuere he scholde so do ! 4900</p> <p>" My neuere to deþ he wolde haue<sup>7</sup> demed ;</p> <p>" ffor y wyþstodit, he hæp<sup>8</sup> me flemed,</p> <p>" &amp; for y wolde<sup>6</sup> nought do his wyll,</p> <p>" To suffre, hym myn neuere spille. 4904</p> <p>" Y schal þe telle how hit bygan</p> <p>" Bytwixt me &amp; Cassibolan :</p> <p>" ffor [þe]<sup>9</sup> honour &amp; for þe pris</p> <p>" þat we hadde ouer-come þe twys, 4908</p> <p>" þe kyng dide þe folk somoun</p> <p>" þorow-out þe lond of ilka toun.</p> <p><sup>10</sup> [" þat alle of valow, moste &amp; leste,</p> <p>" Suld com to London to his feste, 4912</p> <p>" Grace till our God [to] zelde</p> <p>" With sacrificise, as lawe wilde.</p> <p>" Graces zolden with sacrificise,</p> <p>" Whan we had don our seruise, 4916</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> of þe destroyed.<sup>2</sup> for he has born proude þerfore.<sup>3</sup> to his barons out of score.<sup>4</sup> siþen with me ne had he.<sup>5</sup> wendes.<sup>6</sup> wald.<sup>7</sup> wild haf.<sup>8</sup> for þat encheson am I now.<sup>9</sup> þe.<sup>10</sup> From the Petyt MS., lf. 30,

which gives a different version of the first part of Androcheus's letter, up to line 4942 here. It follows the Wace MS. du Roi 73, Cangé, to l. 4915, and then the MS. du Roi 27, that De Lincy printed; while Robert of Brunne repeats the account given on page 167, from l. 4753 to l. 4776 above.

" Diuerse folk in stedes did samen,  
 " & diuersly plaied þei gamen.]"<sup>1</sup>

¶ De infortunio inter Huwelinum & Irelgas.

- |                                         |                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| " Irelgas was þe kynges cosyn ;         |                                                     |
| " Huwelyn, he was neuew myn :           | 4920                                                |
| " pyse to-gydere wolde skirme algate ;  | my nephew<br>fenced with<br>Cassibolan's<br>cousin, |
| " porow proude hertes þer wax hate ;    |                                                     |
| " porow hate þer gon wordes ryse        |                                                     |
| " On boþe partys, on yuel assise.       | 4924                                                |
| " Whan ilk had seid oþer wow,           |                                                     |
| " Wip wraþe to smyte, þe egge drow ;    |                                                     |
| " porow a meschaunce, y wot hit was,    | and by ill luck                                     |
| " Huwelyn slow þer Irelgas.             | 4928 killed him.                                    |
| " When þe kyng herde þys seye,          |                                                     |
| " þe feste was trobled, & myrþe a-weye. |                                                     |
| " ffor þe kyng was ful felon,           |                                                     |
| " & hastif, vntil vengauce boun,        | 4932                                                |
| " þen seid þe kyng vntil me,            | Cassibolan<br>vowed ven-<br>geance,                 |
| " Comaundyng, vp peyne of al my fe,     |                                                     |
| " Huwelyn hym for to sende,             | and ordered me<br>to give up my<br>nephew to be     |
| " þat ffelonye for to amende,           | 4936 tried in his<br>court.                         |

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. continues,—  
*My neuow was þer Heulyn,*  
*& þe kyng had þer a cosyn :*  
*with skirmyng þei bigan to play,*  
*& ilk oþer with word missay.*  
*þe kynges cosyn manaced fast,*  
*& drouh his suerde at him in hast.*  
*My neuow saw þat, & on him*  
*stirte,*  
*held his suerde for doute of herte :*  
*of trewe men þus .I. it herd,*  
*bitwex þann tuo þus it misferd,*  
*þat þorgh a wond þat he lauhþ þore,*  
*vp ne ras he neuer more ;*

*. oþer wais no man ne wote*  
*. whedire he felle, or he him smote.*  
*þe kyng of þis aþeheid me,*  
*& comandid oñ att my fe,*  
*' þat .I. his body to him sent,*  
*' & at his courte take Iugement.'*  
*.I. hoped wele he wild him slo ;*  
*þe ton suld for þat oþer go ;*  
*. þerfore .I. doutet him to sende,*  
*.I. said .I. had a courte, .I. wende,*  
*& lordeschip, as a man of myght ;*  
*com pleyne him þer, & tak his*  
*right.*

|                                                                                |                                                                |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                | " And in his court have iugement                               |      |
|                                                                                | " porow þe comunes, ar þat þey went.                           |      |
| I knew he'd be<br>killed if I did,                                             | " þan þought y wyþ herte ful wo,                               |      |
|                                                                                | " ȝif y hym sende, he scholde hym slo.                         | 4940 |
|                                                                                | " y sende hym ageyn ful tyt,                                   |      |
|                                                                                | " & of his court asked respit :                                |      |
| and therefore<br>said that my<br>nephew should<br>be tried in my<br>own court, | " ' A lord y am, a court y haue,                               |      |
|                                                                                | " ' porow þat wold y hym dampne or saue ;                      |      |
|                                                                                | " ' ȝif hit be eyþer baron or knyght                           | 4945 |
|                                                                                | " ' þat pleyneþ hym þere, he shal haue right.                  |      |
|                                                                                | " ' þe court þat þou bedes me to,                              |      |
| which was only<br>my right.                                                    | " ' Hit schold be myn, & schal be so ;                         | 4948 |
|                                                                                | " ' þou wost hit is myn heritage ;                             |      |
|                                                                                | " ' þou beodes me mys & outrage.'                              |      |
| For this,                                                                      | " & for y þus agayn-seide hym,                                 |      |
| Cassibolan                                                                     | " He ys to me þus wroþ <sup>1</sup> & brym,                    | 4952 |
| threatens                                                                      | " & me manaceþ day by day                                      |      |
| to slay me.'                                                                   | " To brenne & slo, ȝyf þat he may.                             |      |
| Wherefore, do<br>you, Cæsar,<br>come and help<br>me,                           | " Wher-fore, Cesar, y schewe hit þe,                           |      |
|                                                                                | " þat þou my socour ageyn hym be,                              | 4956 |
|                                                                                | " & help me in my wo so harde,                                 |      |
|                                                                                | " And com hyder in god forewarde,                              |      |
| and I'll guaran-<br>tee you Britain.                                           | " And porow me schaltow haue <sup>2</sup> Brutayne, [leaf 22.] |      |
|                                                                                | " & y þorow þe brought out of <sup>3</sup> payne.              | 4960 |
| Don't mistrust<br>me,                                                          | " Ne haue þou non suspeciou                                    |      |
|                                                                                | " þat y hit seye for any tresoun :                             |      |
|                                                                                | " Y wolde nought swylk a þyng bygynne,                         |      |
|                                                                                | " Al <sup>4</sup> þys reame for to wynne ;                     | 4964 |
| but come at<br>once.                                                           | " Bot com, & make no dwellynge,                                |      |
|                                                                                | " & rescowe me a-geyn þe kyng.                                 |      |
|                                                                                | " ffor þou myshappedest y <sup>5</sup> þe first ende,          |      |
| You shall suc-<br>ceed."                                                       | " Now schaltow spede er þat þou wende."                        | 4968 |

<sup>1</sup> broþe.<sup>2</sup> þorh me saẏþ þou haf.<sup>3</sup> & .I. for þe be brouht of.<sup>4</sup> for. [leaf 30, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> If þou spede not in.

- ¶ Cesar herde what he bysought,  
 & streitly turnde hit in his pought,  
 & schewed hit his barons aboute,  
 Wheþer þey heldit certeyn or doute. 4972  
 þer-on þey conseild, þat þer war,  
 þat atte laste seyde Cesar,  
 " þat he ne wolde, for sonde ne sawe,  
 " Put hym in peril ne in awe ; 4976  
 " Ne for no<sup>1</sup> byheste of bost  
 " Wold he so sone sampne<sup>2</sup> his host ;  
 " ffor y haue herd seye fele syþe,  
 " þat faire byhestes makeþ<sup>3</sup> foles blithe." 4980  
 Cesar sent hym bode ageyn,  
 ȝyf he wold hald<sup>4</sup> his word certayn,  
 Sende he scholde hym hostagers,  
 Men of gode, barons, pers, 4984  
 Oper elles wolde he nought com þere  
 Vntil his tyme bettere were.  
 ¶ Androcheus dred hym of treson,  
 þat þe kyng<sup>5</sup> wolde bysege þe toun. 4988  
 His sone Senna til Cesar sent,  
 & pritty oper wyþ hym þey went,  
 Of þe beste þat he might fynde,  
 Next born of his owen kynde. 4992  
 Cesar receiued þem wyþ honur,  
 & dide þem alle in Ordre,<sup>6</sup> his tour.  
 Syn, als sone as he myghte hye,  
 He dighte his host, & god nauye, 4996  
 & priuely aryued vp at Douer,  
 & logged hem by þe cost al ouer.<sup>7</sup>  
 Androcheus com til Cesar þyder,  
 & conseiled þem boþe to-gyder, 5000
- Cæsar turns the  
 matter over in  
 his mind,  
 and resolves  
 not to chance  
 it :  
 " Fair words  
 make fools  
 fain."  
 So he asks  
 Androcheus for  
 hostages.  
 Androcheus  
 sends his own  
 son, and 30  
 other relations.  
 Cæsar there-  
 upon sails with  
 his army, and  
 lands at Dover.  
 There Andro-  
 cheus meets  
 him.

<sup>1</sup> a.<sup>2</sup> sone eft samen.<sup>3</sup> hotes makes.<sup>4</sup> wild holde.<sup>5</sup> Cassibolan.<sup>6</sup> did þam Odre.<sup>7</sup> bi banke & ouere (shore).



|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
|                                                                                   | How þey schuld wyrke, & on what wyse,<br>Ageyn þe kyng in bataille to rise.<br>Tydynges ronne, þat ouer al <sup>1</sup> reches ;                                                                                                                              |                            |
|                                                                                   | Ilk man til oþer made þer <sup>2</sup> speches,                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 5004                       |
| Cassibolan<br>hears of Cæsar's<br>landing,                                        | Til <sup>3</sup> men tolde þe kyng tydant,<br>þat Romyngs were aryue on land.<br>þe kyng þeron conseilled sone ;<br>On hem to renne, mad hym bone ;                                                                                                           | 5008                       |
|                                                                                   | & in herte had gret mervaille<br>þat þey so sone broughte hym <sup>4</sup> bataille.—<br>He wende of þeym haue hed no warde,<br>Bot hym fel þer a chek ful harde ; <sup>5</sup> —                                                                             | 5012                       |
| and marches<br>towards Dover.                                                     | & al so sone as he myght,<br>Toward Douere his host he dight.<br>To Cesar was hit told in hast<br>þat þe kyng was comande fast :                                                                                                                              | 5016                       |
| Cæsar puts<br>Androcheus<br>and his men in<br>a side valley,                      | Cesar conseilled <sup>6</sup> wiþ Androche,<br>þat he wolde come out <sup>7</sup> of þe cite,<br>And turne a sidenhand o <sup>8</sup> valeye,                                                                                                                 | [leaf 22, col. 2.]<br>5020 |
|                                                                                   | & <sup>9</sup> armed, biden hem in þe weye ;<br>& arraied þem in renges <sup>10</sup> ryght,<br>& assigned whiche bataille first schold <sup>11</sup> fight.<br>Whan Cesar had arrayed al <sup>12</sup> his host,<br>O <sup>13</sup> þyng he comaunded most : | 5024                       |
| and gives his<br>host special<br>orders that<br>none shall<br>break the<br>ranks, | “ þat non scholde, for wele ne wo,<br>“ On fro oþer, of renge go ;<br>“ Ne non prese to styrt <sup>14</sup> byfore,<br>“ Ne holde byhynde in coward score ;                                                                                                   | 5028                       |
| but all shall ad-<br>vance steadily<br>side by side                               | “ Bot passe forþ sadlyk, <sup>15</sup> syde by syde,                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                            |

<sup>1</sup> Renoun ran þat ouer. [lf. 30, bk.]<sup>2</sup> to ilk a man mad þei.<sup>3</sup> speche.<sup>4</sup> þei rose so sone eft in.<sup>5</sup> chek hasarde (far better).<sup>6</sup> conseild.<sup>7</sup> he wald out.<sup>8</sup> turne sidenen in a.<sup>9</sup> aȝ.<sup>10</sup> & renge þam redy in ordire.<sup>11</sup> whilk aschelle suld formast.<sup>12</sup> set aȝ.<sup>13</sup> A.<sup>14</sup> ne stirte.<sup>15</sup> renge þam sadly

' Til þey com þer þey schold<sup>1</sup> abide,  
 ' & stoutly hem þanne o þe bretons auauunce;<sup>2</sup> to the attack.  
 ' & felle þem doun<sup>3</sup> wiþ swerd & launce.' 5032  
 Androcheus enbusched<sup>4</sup> hym pryuely  
 Wyþ fif hundred<sup>5</sup> men armed, redy  
 On þe kyng assaut to make,  
 By-twyxt hem ȝyf he myghte<sup>6</sup> hym take. 5036 Cassibolan's  
army comes on,  
 Cassibolan on his wey gan spede;  
 Of non enbuschement<sup>7</sup> tok he hede;  
 . þeyr hostes boþe neighed<sup>8</sup> ȝerne;  
 . & whan þey were<sup>9</sup> nought fro þem ferne, 5040 and as it enters  
the valley, sees  
the Romans,  
 Ouer an hil þen lay his weye;  
 & als he com in to þe valeye,  
 He saw þe Romayns fresche y<sup>10</sup> þe feld,  
 Redy enbatailled wiþ spere<sup>11</sup> & scheld. 5044  
 Als sone mad he hym redy,  
 & loude ascried þem on har<sup>12</sup> cry,  
 & sone þey schoten<sup>13</sup> arewes & dartz  
 fful felonlyk on boþe partz. 5048 and the battle  
begins.  
  
Androcheus  
springs from  
his ambush,  
 Androcheus, atte firste comynge,  
 Of his enbuschement gan he springe;  
 . Al freschely he com on hem<sup>14</sup> ful hot,  
 . & backward vpon þe Bretons smot: 5052  
 . " Ey!" seid þe kyng, "here ys deseit!  
 . " Bytwixt þem to þey holde vs streit!"<sup>15</sup>  
 He ne myghte nought perce þe host Romeyn,  
 Ne he ne myghte turne ageyn; 5056  
 . Byhynde, biforn, he saw peryl.

<sup>1</sup> untill þei com þei suld.  
<sup>2</sup> & þan baldely auentour his  
chance.  
<sup>3</sup> resceyue him.  
<sup>4</sup> busched.  
<sup>5</sup> cinq mil, Wace, i. 220, l. 4699.  
<sup>6</sup> bituex þam if þei mot.  
<sup>7</sup> bussement.

<sup>8</sup> boþe he neihed.  
<sup>9</sup> he was.  
<sup>10</sup> spred in.  
<sup>11</sup> renged with helme.  
<sup>12</sup> & discried þam with a. [1f.30, bk.,  
col. 2.]  
<sup>13</sup> & to schot.  
<sup>14</sup> fresly on him he com.  
<sup>15</sup> .I. am holden streite.

and forces Cassibolan to draw off to a hill on his flank.

O side he trauersed vnto a hil,  
 . So nede hym byhousd, or be in clos.  
 . On bope sides he saw his foos, 5060  
 He seide hym self þo, he was bitraisch; <sup>1</sup>  
 þen were þe Bretons alle abaischt.

¶ *Hic Cassibolanus se retrahit.*

The Britons fly in disorder

Ilk þat þer myght <sup>2</sup> fle, þey fledde;  
 þat best myght renne, best he <sup>3</sup> spedde; 5064  
 Bettere was fle, þan worse abide, <sup>4</sup>  
 ffor socour þer cam on none <sup>5</sup> syde.  
 Vntil a hey hil þey drowe hem to, <sup>6</sup>  
 Bettere wistey nought what for to do; <sup>7</sup> 5068  
 & er þey myghte þat heye hil take,  
 Many a croune men myght se crake.

till they reach the hill.  
 Once there, they feel safe,

Whan þey hadde þe hil al nomen,  
 þeym þoughte þey were til castel comen; 5072  
 Non of þe <sup>8</sup> Romayns durst com hem ney,

as each man makes a tree his castle.  
 Cæsar sees that he can't carry the hill by assault, and therefore besieges it closely.

. Bot held þem fro þe hil a drey. <sup>9</sup>  
 þe hil was strong <sup>10</sup> busked aboute, [leaf 22, bk., col. 1.]  
 þat þe Bretons of Cesar hadde no <sup>11</sup> doute; 5076  
 . ffor eche man tok a tre to stal,  
 As tristi as <sup>12</sup> a castel wal.  
 Cesa[r] byheld to þe hilles <sup>13</sup> heyght,  
 þat wyþ non assaut ne wyþ no sleight 5080  
 Mighte he wynne þat forcelet;  
 þerfore a sege abute hit set,

<sup>1</sup> *betraist . . . obaist.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ilkon þer mot.* (The next line, after l. 4723, is left out in De Lincy's *Wace*, i. 224, without notice by the editor.)

<sup>3</sup> *þam.*

<sup>4</sup> *es fle þan foly bide.*

<sup>5</sup> *whan socour comes on no.*

<sup>6</sup> *þei fleih.*

<sup>7</sup> *he wist no bettere þat þan deiþ.*

<sup>8</sup> *nomore.*

<sup>9</sup> *nehi . . . drehi.*

<sup>10</sup> *round.*

<sup>11</sup> *had of no man.*

<sup>12</sup> *trostere þan.*

<sup>13</sup> *of þe hill þe.*

CÆSAR BESIEGES THE BRITONS ON THEIR HILL 179

|                                                                                                                                                                |      |                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------------------|
| pat þey ne myghte no-wer <sup>1</sup> aboute,<br>Bot þorow hym, haue issue <sup>2</sup> oute.                                                                  | 5084 |                                                  |
| He dide sette in wardes <sup>3</sup> seers,<br>Knyghte to wachem, <sup>4</sup> & squiers;<br>& also he dide hewe trees,<br>þe styas to stoppe, & þe entres,    | 5088 | Cæsar doesn't forget                             |
| & furgat nought ful lyghtly<br>How þey had chased hym wyþ maistri;<br>& ofte þey telde in þer auys <sup>5</sup><br>How þey bifore had chased hem twys:         | 5092 | his double beating, and resolves to pay it back. |
| " Now schal y zelde hit, zif þat y may,<br>" Er ze departe fro me away!"<br>Alas, hit schold euer so <sup>6</sup> bytyde,<br>So bolde Bretons myght non abide! | 5096 | Sad that the bold Britons must be defeated!      |
| ffor þey had chased twyes þat man<br>pat al þe werld þorow bataille wan;<br>& zit þey stode stifly, ilkon,<br>Whan þey wiste socur of <sup>7</sup> non,        | 5100 |                                                  |
| zit suffrede þei nought for to be nome<br>Of hym þat þey had er ouercome;<br>But Dame ffortune had turned her whel<br>Donward til wo, þat er was wel;          | 5104 | But Fortune had turned her wheel.                |
| ffor þo þat abouen werð wond <sup>8</sup> to be,<br>Donward þeym now turneþ sche.                                                                              |      |                                                  |

¶ Qualiter Brutones iam deuicti sunt per famem.

|                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| pyse Bretons pat were in-clos<br>& byseged wiþ her fos,<br>Had þey neyþer drynke ne mete,<br>Ne non myght hem purchace ne gete.<br>þey dredde no saut <sup>9</sup> of bataille; | 5108 | The besieged Britons have neither meat nor drink. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                 |      | They fear no fight. But                           |

<sup>1</sup> noure.

<sup>2</sup> þorh þam aſt passe.

<sup>3</sup> stedes.

<sup>4</sup> waite.

<sup>5</sup> vyz. [leaf 31.]

<sup>6</sup> suld so gate.

<sup>7</sup> of socour.

<sup>8</sup> vp were wont.

<sup>9</sup> sauhſt.

|                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                          |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| what can stand<br>against<br>Hunger ?    | Bot what may þat help or a-vaille,<br>When of mete ys defaut?<br>Honger wynnes hit atte firste saut.<br>per ys no castel so strong idight, <sup>1</sup><br>þat hunger ne wyneþ wyþouten fight;                                                                     | 5112<br><br><br><br>5116 |
| Hunger wins<br>castles, weapon-<br>less, | Wyþouten wepen or armour,<br>Honger zeldeþ castel & tour.<br>. God castel dredes no power,<br>. Emperour, kyng, ne kayser,                                                                                                                                         | <br><br><br>5120         |
| better than any<br>assault.              | . Ne oþer help me haue <sup>2</sup> at nede;<br>. Bot of hunger ys al þe drede.<br>per force hap mad manye assayes, <sup>3</sup><br>Honger hit wynnes byn fewe <sup>4</sup> dayes.<br>. þre dayes þey were in þat turment,<br>. þat hunger had þeym ner al schent. | <br><br><br>5124         |

¶ *Rex misit Androchio pro Misericordia & Auxilio.*

|                                             |                                                                                                                                                       |                         |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Cassibolan                                  | Cassibolan had sorewe in wold,<br>How he mighte ascape þat hold :                                                                                     | 5128                    |
| sees that he                                | On alle halue he saw Romayns<br>Redy for to do þeym payns;<br>He hadde no force wyþ hem to fyght,<br>& hunger hadde ouer <sup>5</sup> reft þer myght; | <br><br><br>5132        |
|                                             | Mykel he dredde Iulius Cesar,                                                                                                                         | [leaf 22, bk., col. 2.] |
| must either<br>yield or die.                | & more þe hunger þat þey had þar.<br>He moste chese on of tweye: <sup>6</sup><br>zelde hym to Cesar, or for hunger deye.                              | <br><br>5136            |
| He waits two<br>days,                       | Two dayes & two nyghtes til ende<br>Wold he noman biseke ne sende ;                                                                                   |                         |
| and on the<br>third sends to<br>Androcheus, | ¶ þe þrydde, he þoughte how best myght be,<br>& sende his sonde til Androche:--                                                                       | <br>5140                |

<sup>1</sup> *It is . . . stalworth dight.*

<sup>2</sup> *men haf.*

<sup>3</sup> *has mad of assais.*

<sup>4</sup> *in fo.*

<sup>5</sup> *nere* [leaf 31, col. 2.] (*ses homes mate, Wace, i. 224, l. 4789*).

<sup>6</sup> *of þe tuo þan had he weie.*

I ne wot ho dide þe message,  
 Wheþer knyght, squier, or page:—  
 “ Androcheus, y sende þe<sup>1</sup> to seye,  
 “ Suffre me nought<sup>2</sup> schamely to deye. 5144  
 “ þaw y mystok me<sup>3</sup> greuously,  
 “ I prey þe of me haue þou<sup>4</sup> mercy.  
 “ þaw i dide an hastynesse,<sup>5</sup>  
 “ Y schal hit amende, as<sup>6</sup> his wyll eesse. 5148  
 “ A man schold nought his owen kynde  
 “ Dampne for o defaute, we fynde;  
 “ ffor hit haþ ofte be wyst & sen,  
 “ þat wraþe bytwyhte kynde haþ ben; 5152  
 “ Bot whan þer [wraþe]<sup>7</sup> was brought til ende,  
 “ Syn han þey ben ful feyþful frende.<sup>8</sup>  
 “ I preie þe now, ȝif þy<sup>9</sup> wille be,  
 “ þat þou<sup>10</sup> be now curteys to me; 5156  
 “ Y biseke þe,<sup>11</sup> þenk on no mysdede,  
 “ Bot schew me þy<sup>12</sup> kyndenesse in þys nede,  
 “ & saue me now byfore Cesar,  
 “ & euere more eft wol y be war. 5160  
 “ To þe may neuere falle honur  
 “ ȝyf me bytide a misauentur.”

says he is sorry  
 for his hasty-  
 ness, prays  
 forgiveness.

asks Andro-  
 cheus to shew  
 him kindness,  
 and save him  
 from Cesar.

¶ Responcio e contrario.

Androcheus herde þe kynges pleint,  
 A þat ner was recreaunt & teynt;  
 & answered hym al at reburs:<sup>13</sup> 5164  
 “ Haþ now þe kyng nede of my socurs?  
 “ What, haþ my lord herd ought or seen?  
 Androcheus at  
 first rebuffs  
 Cassibolan;  
 says,  
 “ What has he  
 seen to change  
 his mood?

<sup>1</sup> him.

<sup>2</sup> he suffre me not.

<sup>3</sup> .I. haf not serued it.

<sup>4</sup> bot .I. pray him of.

<sup>5</sup> þof .I. did him a hastifesse.

<sup>6</sup> if. <sup>7</sup> wraþ.

<sup>8</sup> has bene fult hende.

<sup>9</sup> say him if his.

<sup>10</sup> he.

<sup>11</sup> bid him.

<sup>12</sup> schew now.

<sup>13</sup> rebours.

|                                                                                                              |                                                        |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Only 7 days ago<br>he was going to<br>plunder and<br>kill me !                                               | " Seue nyght ȝit ne hap hit ben,                       | 5168       |
|                                                                                                              | " þat he wolde me exile, & reue                        |            |
|                                                                                                              | " Al my lond, & no þyng leue,                          |            |
|                                                                                                              | " & þerto þrette me to slo,                            |            |
| We shall both<br>repent it, but<br>he'll get the<br>worst of it.<br>No king should<br>sham lion in<br>peace, | " Whare he haue now laten þat mod ouer go.             |            |
|                                                                                                              | " My lord þat bar hym so ouer <sup>1</sup> stout,      | 5173       |
|                                                                                                              | " ffor no preiere to loue wolde lout,                  |            |
|                                                                                                              | " I wiste hit wolde nought <sup>2</sup> falle hym wel, |            |
| and prove hare<br>in war.                                                                                    | " þat was so fers, & <sup>3</sup> ouer cruel.          | 5176       |
|                                                                                                              | " Wypouten skil were we wrope,                         |            |
|                                                                                                              | " & þat schal now repente vs boþe ;                    |            |
|                                                                                                              | " Bot alder meste skape wil falle                      |            |
| Cassibolan<br>bragged that he<br>beat Cæsar<br>alone !<br>No such thing !                                    | " On hym seluen <sup>4</sup> for vs alle ;             | 5180       |
|                                                                                                              | " Hit falleþ no kyng to <sup>5</sup> felon res,        |            |
|                                                                                                              | " As lyon in þe tyme of pees,                          |            |
|                                                                                                              | " Ne in tyme of werre for to dare,                     |            |
| I and my<br>knights,                                                                                         | " Ne <sup>6</sup> to fle for drede, as doþ þe hare.    | 5184       |
|                                                                                                              | " þat he fled, sire, nought so, <sup>7</sup>           |            |
|                                                                                                              | " Bot his cruelte wil hym fordo ;                      |            |
|                                                                                                              | " He auaunted hym til vs <sup>8</sup> ilkone,          |            |
| and others<br>better than he<br>or I,                                                                        | " He venquised þe enperour alone ;                     | 5188       |
|                                                                                                              | " Bot he alone neuere hym ne wan,                      |            |
|                                                                                                              | " Namore þan dide an oþer man ;                        |            |
|                                                                                                              | " Bot þorow me & þorow my knyghtes                     |            |
| won the battles<br>for him ;                                                                                 | " þat wounded were in many fightes,                    | 5192       |
|                                                                                                              | " And oþer þat were al so doughty,                     | [leaf 23.] |
|                                                                                                              | " & wel bettere þan he oþer y,                         |            |
|                                                                                                              | " þorow þeir dede & oure trauaille                     |            |
| and yet he said<br>it was his own<br>conquest !                                                              | " Wan Cassibolan þe bataille.                          | 5196       |
|                                                                                                              | " ffor swylk he made his noble fest,                   |            |
|                                                                                                              | " & seid hit was his owen conquest.                    |            |
|                                                                                                              | " His barons þat were his peres,                       |            |
|                                                                                                              | " Of his conqueste were parceners ;                    | 5200       |

<sup>1</sup> are so. [leaf 31, back.]<sup>2</sup> it suld not.<sup>3</sup> þat he bare him.<sup>4</sup> self.<sup>5</sup> it fals no kyng do.<sup>6</sup> ne omitted.<sup>7</sup> fled .I. say not so.<sup>8</sup> auanced him tiff his.

|                                                      |      |
|------------------------------------------------------|------|
| " ffor he þat stande wel in stour,                   |      |
| " He aughte haue part <sup>1</sup> of þe honour.     |      |
| " þe kyng may wel hym seluen wyte,                   |      |
| " By hym alone schal hit nought byte; <sup>2</sup>   | 5204 |
| " þo þat halpe hym hit for to wyne,                  |      |
| " Wel oughte þey be parceners <sup>3</sup> þer-ynne. |      |

Let him blame  
himself for  
what has  
happened.

¶ *De gratitudine Androchii.*

|                                                  |      |
|--------------------------------------------------|------|
| " Bot wel am y now venged on hym ;               |      |
| " þat now ys meke, þat er was grym.              | 5208 |
| " Now, sipen þat he bisekep <sup>4</sup> me      |      |
| " On hym to haue mercy & pite ;                  |      |
| " & y schal certes, zif y may spede,             |      |
| " Help hym now in his gret nede.                 | 5212 |
| " I may nought elles for no þyng ;               |      |
| " He ys myn eem, my lord, my kyng/ ;             |      |
| " I ne may nought faille hym, ne y ne wil !      |      |
| " Syn he hym mekep, y wol <sup>5</sup> do skil : | 5216 |
| " I am venged on hym y-now ;                     |      |
| " Now wol y fonde to don his prow."              |      |

Still, now I'm  
revenged on  
him.  
The grim man  
is meek,  
prays me to  
have pity on  
him.  
And I will.

He's my uncle  
and king.

Now he's meek,

I'll help him."

¶ *Dixit Androcheus Cesary pro pace Cassibolani.*

|                                            |      |
|--------------------------------------------|------|
| <b>A</b> ndrocheus, wys knyght & war,      |      |
| Anon <sup>6</sup> he zede vntil Cesar,     | 5220 |
| And on knes byfore hym <sup>7</sup> sette. |      |
| Iulys Cesar ful faire he grette :          |      |
| " Sire Iulius, þou art a myghti man,       |      |
| " Conquered þou hast Cassibolan !          | 5224 |
| " Vnto þy mercy wol he now come,           |      |
| " & zelde his truage vntil Rome ;          |      |

So Androcheus  
goes to Cesar,

tells him that  
Cassibolan

offers to pay  
tribute to  
Rome ;

<sup>1</sup> *awe haf partie.*

<sup>2</sup> *wite.*

<sup>3</sup> *partinere.*

<sup>4</sup> *sekes.*

<sup>5</sup> *He mekes him .I. witt. [M. 81, bk., col. 2.]*

<sup>6</sup> *on one.*

<sup>7</sup> *MS. injured. P., him sette.*



|                    |                                                  |      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------|
|                    | " Tak of hym now þat truage,                     |      |
|                    | " Of þe to holde his heritage;                   | 5228 |
|                    | " Wiþ loue let hym now come to þe.               |      |
| and as that was    | " þou askes nought elles of al his fe,           |      |
| all Cæsar          | " Bot onlike of þe to holde;                     |      |
| asked,             | " He hit graunteþ, & y hit wolde.                | 5232 |
|                    | " Iulius, haue of hym mercy!                     |      |
| he should have     | " þy wille to do we ar redy."                    |      |
| mercy, and         | Bot Iulius Cesar wold hym nought here;           |      |
| accept it.         | fful deflike herde he <sup>1</sup> his preyere,  | 5236 |
| Cæsar won't        | & passed forþ as he nought herde;                |      |
| hear Andro-        | Til Androche nought he answerde.                 |      |
| cheus,             | Androcheus had þer-of disdeyn,                   |      |
| or answer him.     | þat Cesar tok his preyer in veyn;                | 5240 |
|                    | He stirt vp wiþ yuel wyll,                       |      |
| But Andro-         | & bad Cesar stonde a whyle <sup>2</sup> stille:  |      |
| cheus makes        | " pis londe ys ʒolden to þy baillye;             |      |
| him; says          | " þorow me hastow þe seignurie;                  | 5244 |
| " I only pro-      | " þat y þe hight, y holde couenaunt,             |      |
| misued you the     | " & more getes þou nought of graunt.             |      |
| seignory of this   | " þe seignurye of al þenpyre,                    |      |
| land.              | " þat may þou haue, as lorde & sire;             | 5248 |
| That you have;     | " þat þow hast; what wiltow more?                |      |
| but more you       | " Nolde God <sup>3</sup> þat oþer weys wore,     |      |
| sha'n't have.      | " þat þou myn eem schost prisone or slo!         |      |
|                    | " Nay, Cesar, so schal hit nought go,            | 5252 |
| God forbid that    | " þat he schol <sup>4</sup> be so lyghtly slayn, |      |
| you should         | " While þat y haue <sup>5</sup> þat myght & mayn |      |
| [leaf 23, col. 2.] | " þat hym for deþ <sup>6</sup> y may rescuwe!    |      |
| prison or slay     | " He is myn eem, & y his neuewe;                 | 5256 |
| my Uncle,          | " He noriced me, he ys me dere!                  |      |
|                    | " ʒif þou ne wilt my biddyn <sup>7</sup> here,   |      |
| while I have       | " Y parte fro þe, & haue god day:                |      |
| strength to        |                                                  |      |
| fight for him!     |                                                  |      |
|                    |                                                  |      |
| If you won't       |                                                  |      |
| hear me,           |                                                  |      |
| good bye!"         |                                                  |      |

<sup>1</sup> defly he herde.<sup>2</sup> abide Cesar & stand right.<sup>3</sup> god wilt not.<sup>4</sup> He salt not.<sup>5</sup> titt .i. haf. [leaf 32.]<sup>6</sup> fro dede.<sup>7</sup> If þou ne wilt my praiere.

- " Do now til<sup>1</sup> hym al þat þou may!" 5260  
 þen cam Cesar forþ, & stod, Caesar con-  
 . poughte he was of kynde blod, siders  
 & þat he seide, hit was skyl, that this is but  
 . & he dide his wit þer-til. 5264 reason,  
 . Whan he hadde al cast & þought, and he agrees  
 He graunted al þat he had sought;<sup>2</sup> to it.  
 Hostages asked þe partys, 5268 Hostages are  
 & þey wer graunted at here auis, given,  
 And truage þey graunted so, the tribute  
 As þe lond was taxed to: fixed at £3,000  
 þre þousand pound ylka ȝer, a year,  
 . At termes so<sup>3</sup> to paye plener; 5272  
 . Of alle þe lond gadered & tan. and Cassibolan  
 þen brought þey forþ Cassibolan, and Cesar kiss  
 & diden Cesar & hym kysse: one another.  
 . ffor þat acord was mykel blisse. 5276  
 Byfore þis tyme, neuere y ne fond But never be-  
 þat any man conquered þis lond. fore was Bri-  
 ff þenne returned Cesar wiþ hye tain conquered.  
 To Romeward after his victorie. Cesar returns  
 . Bot ȝe schul here a wonder þyng<sup>4</sup> 5280 to Rome, and

<sup>1</sup> do þan to.

<sup>2</sup> bisouht.

<sup>3</sup> sette.

<sup>4</sup> This 'wonder þyng' in Roman history—an expansion at will of two lines in Geoffrey of Monmouth, lib. iv. § 10, p. 67, ed. Giles—is neither in Wace (i. 230, ed. De Lincy) nor our Petyt MS., though this last (almost like Wace) substitutes for it and lines 5279–80 above, the following lines,—

till Cesar com & mad conqueste  
 . us ȝe haf herd in þis geste.  
 . euen sixty ȝere þis was befor  
 . þat Ihesu Criste was born:  
 . here with all acordes saynt bede;  
 . þe gestes of Ingland first ȝe rede.

Whan att þis was brouht till  
 ende,

& fele went to se þer frende,  
<sup>1</sup> þus say þei þat know þe estre,  
 þat Iulius funded first Excestre.  
 Excestre it hate, þis skiit is whi,  
 þe water hate ex þat rennes perbi.  
 till wynter were gon, Cesar gan  
 bide,  
 & went home in þe somers tide.  
 for grete luf & specialte  
 he toke with him sir Androche,

<sup>1</sup> The next four lines are not in De Lincy's MS. du Roi 27, but are in the Arsenal MS. 171, B.-L.; and the Ste. Genev. MS. Y., leaf 10. Wace, i. 230.



- . & of alle þe reomes by-ȝonde Moun Gow. 5316  
 . And al þe Oryent, þat oþer sased,  
 . & tok tys part þat þe oþer leued ;  
 . Of þritty reomes euery kyng  
 . Were enclinaunt til his coronyng. 5320  
 . Such wraþe bytwixte þe neuews ros sone,  
 . þat wiþ batailles to feld þey come.  
 . Octouion þat oþer slow anon,  
 . & his men desconfyted echon. 5324  
 . þen haddo Rome suchȝ renoun  
 . þat al þyng was in here baundon ;  
 . þen gaf þey til þe enperroure  
 . A newe name for gret honour, 5328  
 . ' Augustus Cesar ' þe calde hym þere,  
 . ffor þei ouer alle oþere were ;  
 . & after þat he þat name had,  
 . þe Romayns were þe more y-drad, 5332  
 . ffor þemperour had þen vnder hand  
 . Al þe werld, boþe se & land.<sup>1</sup>
- while the  
younger  
nephew takes  
the East,  
  
but Octavian  
soon kills him.  
  
Then has Rome  
such renoun  
  
that they call  
their Emperor  
' Augustus Cæ-  
sar,'  
because,  
  
he rules the  
whole world.

<sup>1</sup> For the next 20 lines (5335-5354) the Petyt MS. [leaf 82, col. 2.] follows Wace, and has this passage :

[Seuen ȝere lyued Cassibalan  
 siþen Cesar þis lond wan.  
 to ȝelde þe treuage he was fult  
 mylde,  
 ne he had noþer wife no childe.  
 In ȝorhe, fur soth, he did his end-  
 yng,  
 & biried [was] þer as a kyng.

**Comes Cornubie factus est rex.**

*Tenuacius was erle of Cornwaile,  
 had þe regne att in his waile :*  
*he was Androcheus broþer ;*  
*. Androche was went, þer was non*  
*oþer ;*

. bot he regned fult litell space ;  
 he died sone, king Tenuace.

**Kimbelinus cepit regnare.**

*After sir Tenuace fyne,  
 þei crouned his sone Kymbelyn.  
 . he was norissed at þe courte of  
 Rome,  
 he was gode knyght, wiseman in  
 dome.  
 At Rome, with Kymbelyn was þare,  
 he mad him knygh[t], Augustus  
 Cesar.  
 ten ȝere he reyned kyng,  
 & in þat ȝere he mad endyng.]*

**Ihesus Christus natus est.**

*Ihesus Criste þat ȝere was born,  
 . so had a prophete tald befor.*

Cassibolan

reigns 15 years,  
and dies child-  
less.Tenmace is  
made king ;and after him,  
his son Kym-  
bely,  
whom the Ro-  
mans release  
from paying  
tribute.

- Bot Cassibolan was ful ioyous  
 . pat þis werre was ended þus. 5336  
 . ffyftene [3er] after he regned in pes,  
 . Bot no child ne lefte at his deses ;  
 . perfore þe corounede sire Tenmace ;  
 . To gouerne þe reome he hadde grace. 5340  
 Cassibolan was ded, as was pite,  
 & buryed at 3ork, þe gode cite.  
 . Wip Iulyus went forþ sire Androche,  
 . & his broþer reioisede þe regalte. 5344  
 After cam Kymbely, Tenmace sone,  
 . pat had ful gret grace of Rome ;  
 . Of alle his truage þey releseð hym þer,  
 . While he scholde regne & lyuen her, 5348  
 . So pat he neuere ne payed non <sup>1</sup>  
 . To Rome ne to Octouyon.  
 . He meyntend euere his lond in pes,  
 . & leftyð his sones after his deces. 5352

*De natiuitate Christi.*In his time  
lives Taliessin,  
  
who tells the  
Britonsof the birth of  
Christ

from a maid.

- In his tyme was here <sup>2</sup> a deuin,  
 . His name was called Telesyn ;  
 . He telde þe Bretons many selcoup,  
 . (Al fond þey trewe he seide wyþ mouþ;) 5356  
 . He bad þem "lyue <sup>3</sup> wyþouten errour,  
 " ffor now ys born our saueour !  
 " Now ys vs toward ioie & blys,  
 . " pat of a mayde þis <sup>4</sup> child born ys ! 5360

<sup>1</sup> Wace and Geoffrey say that Kimbalius did pay it.<sup>2</sup> þis lond þan was. (This Taliessin invention is not Geoffrey of Monmouth's. It is not in De Lincey's MS. du Roi 27, but is in the<sup>3</sup> MSS. du Roi, 73, Cangé ; de l'Ars.<sup>4</sup> 171, B.-L. ; de Ste. Genev. Y., fol.<sup>5</sup> 10.' Wace, i. 232).<sup>6</sup> leue.<sup>7</sup> Of a maiden a.

- " Al mankynde schal he saue !  
 " Ihesus, þat name schal he haue."  
 þis word þat þilk prophete seyde,  
 þe Bretons in herte ful wel hit leyde ; 5364  
 Many a day þat word þey held ;  
 þey fondyt soþ al þat he teld.  
 þer was no folk in al þe werd  
 þat trowed so sone, when þey ought herd 5368  
 Prechen ought of Iesu lawe,  
 . Ne to þe feyþ so sone gon<sup>1</sup> drawe.  
 . þen was þer a þowsand zer gon [leaf 23, back, col. 2.] This is 1200  
 . þat Brutus aryued in Albyon, 5372  
 . & þerto two hundred zer<sup>2</sup> mo years after  
 . Er Kymbelyn to deþ gan go. Brutus landed  
 . As longe as he regned her, in Albion.  
 Wyþ þe Romayns was he dere ; 5376  
 þey asked hym neuere no<sup>3</sup> truage,  
 . Neyþer in his 3ougþe ne in age.<sup>4</sup>  
 ¶ *Christus natus est in tempore Kymbelyny.*

- Of Kymbelyn to<sup>5</sup> childre left,  
 pat þe Romayns þer truage reft. 5380  
 Wyder, hight þe eldeste broþer ;  
 Arwygar, men calde þat oþer.  
 Sire Wyder hadde þe heritage.  
 A man he was of gret corage,<sup>6</sup> 5384  
 Proud he was, & ouer stout ;  
 þe Romayns nolde he loue<sup>7</sup> ne lout,  
 . Bot whare so euere he hem fond, and turns out  
 the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> wild.

<sup>2</sup> & tuo hundreth sais it. [lf. 32, bk.]

<sup>3</sup> þer.

<sup>4</sup> neuerþeles at terme & stage.

*He 3alde it curtasy & hende.  
 in þes tiþ his lyues ende.*

<sup>5</sup> tuo.

<sup>6</sup> a donkty knyght in vassalage.

<sup>7</sup> romeyns ne wild he luf.

|                                                       |                                                                                                                        |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                       | . He dide hem sone <sup>1</sup> voyde þe lond.                                                                         | 5388 |
| The Emperor<br>Claudius                               | Claudeus was þan emperour,<br>. Of Rome maister gouernour :                                                            |      |
| swears by his<br>head that he'll<br>have his tribute. | Scorn hym þought, & swor his heued <sup>2</sup><br>per truage schold <sup>3</sup> nought so be leued ;                 | 5392 |
|                                                       | He scholde <sup>3</sup> haue hit a-geyn ful wel,<br>Deserite Wyder of ylka del.                                        |      |
| He invades<br>Britain,<br>and lands at<br>Porchester, | Of Romainys he gadered an host,<br>& hyed fast til Bretaigne <sup>4</sup> cost.                                        | 5396 |
| which he tries<br>to take,                            | Hauene he tok at Porcestre—<br>'Kaer Perys' <sup>5</sup> hight þan þat estre,—<br>He wende haue taken þe toun in hast, |      |
|                                                       | . Bot he failled of his [t]ast. <sup>6</sup>                                                                           | 5400 |
|                                                       | . þan tened Claudius [w]ipal, <sup>7</sup>                                                                             |      |
| and builds a<br>wall to                               | Byfore þe ȝate dide make a wal,<br>. þat no vitaille schuld come til toun :                                            |      |
| starvethem out:                                       | To enfamyn hem <sup>8</sup> was þencheson.                                                                             | 5404 |
| But the Britons                                       | Bot Wyder & Arwygarus<br>Wyp twenty <sup>9</sup> þousand mad hem reacus.                                               |      |
| drive the Ro-<br>mans back to<br>their ships.         | Sire Claudius & his partie<br>fledde faste to per nauye ;                                                              | 5408 |
|                                                       | þe beste Romainys in batailles seer<br>Stoden somme ageyn Wyder,                                                       |      |
| Many battles<br>take place.                           | & foughte wyp hym longe stounde ;<br>. Of boþe side ley ded on grounde.                                                | 5412 |
| A noble Ro-<br>man,<br>Hamon,                         | ¶ A Romain þer was, a noble baroun,<br>His name þey calde sire Hamoun,<br>He was þemperores conseilour,                |      |
|                                                       | A noble knyght he was in stour ;                                                                                       | 5416 |
| halts, and sees<br>Wyder's valour,                    | . He houed, & byheld sire Wyders,<br>. How he bar hym stout & fers,                                                    |      |

<sup>1</sup> alle.<sup>2</sup> son chief jura, *Wace*, l. 5013.<sup>3</sup> suld.<sup>4</sup> swyð vnto þis.<sup>5</sup> karepers.<sup>6</sup> tast (attempt).<sup>7</sup> Lamb. MS. perished. P. has  
with att.<sup>8</sup> famen þam.<sup>9</sup> ten.

- Romayns to felle, Romayns to slo,—  
 . Vnneþe ascaped hym any<sup>1</sup> fro, — 5420  
 How wysly his folk he ledde,  
 & how in batailles<sup>2</sup> he þem spredde,  
 . Wyþouten los slow þe<sup>3</sup> Romayns,  
 . & syn relied his men<sup>4</sup> agayns. 5424  
 He saw wel—weel he mought<sup>5</sup> hit leue,— Hamon sees  
 . þat oþer truage wold he no geue, that  
<sup>6</sup>Ne þe Romayns schuldit neuere wynne the Romans  
 Whyle Wyder rengned kyng þer-ynne;<sup>6</sup> 5428 cannot win  
 He þoughte þorow<sup>7</sup> what manere þyng [leaf 24.] while Wyder  
 He myght best slo Wyder þe kyng/. lives.  
 . þat ylke noble Hamon Romayn, He schemes to  
 Dispoilled a Breton þat he fond<sup>8</sup> slayn; 5432 kill him;  
 Wyþ þe armes of þat Brutoun puts on a dead  
 He armed hym seluen Hamoun, Briton's  
 & went þen o þe Bretons syde: armour,  
 Als þey rod, so gan he ryde.<sup>9</sup> 5436 rides with the  
 [þe]<sup>10</sup> armes deseyued hem ylkadel, Britons,  
 & of þer langage he spak ful wel,— talks to them  
 He had lered at our<sup>11</sup> hostages in their own  
 . þat were at Rome truagers.— tongue,  
 He calde þe Breton by þer name, 5440  
 . & þey answered agayn þe same,<sup>12</sup>  
 Til he cam to þe kyng Wyder,<sup>12</sup>  
 Alwey he neyghed hym ner & ner; 5444 works him-  
 pys Hamon rod ay side by side,<sup>13</sup> self close to  
 . To sle þe kyng his tyme tabide. king Wyder,  
 . þe kyng til hym gaf no tent;

<sup>1</sup> *not any ascape him.* [leaf 82, back, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *to bataile.*

<sup>3</sup> *tinsett [loss] slouh.*

<sup>4</sup> *eft allied þam wele.*

<sup>5</sup> *titt he mot lyue.*

<sup>6-8</sup> Lines 5449-50 omitted in P.

<sup>7</sup> *He þouh.*

<sup>8</sup> *spoiled a Breton þat was.*

<sup>9</sup> P. adds here,—

*& þer langage to þam he spak.  
 toward þe kyng þe bataile brak.*

<sup>10</sup> MS. perished. P., þe.

<sup>11</sup> *He lered it at þer.*

<sup>12</sup> P. transposes these lines.

<sup>13</sup> *& þidere he sawe þe kyng ride.  
 þus Hamon rode ay side bi side.*



stabs him, and  
then steals  
away.

pat saw Hamoun, a knyf out hent, 5448  
Vnder þarmure þe kyng he styked,  
Priuely fro þem alle he pryked.

¶ De sapientia & prudencia Arwygary.

Arviragus

puts on his  
dead brother's  
cognizance,  
and bids his  
friends take no  
notice of  
Wider's death,

but fight harder  
than ever.

Arviragus joins  
in the battle,

his knights  
break the Ro-  
man line,

and put their  
host to flight.

¶ Arwygarus, his owen broþer,  
Parseyued þat er any oþer, 5452  
& þoughte hit were gret folye  
þere to grede or for to crie.  
He tok þe kynges conisaunce,  
. ffor non scholde perseyue<sup>1</sup> þat chaunce, 5456  
. An bad his priues<sup>2</sup> euer-ylkon,  
. "Nought so hardy make no mon;<sup>3</sup>  
. "ffor wyst our folk we were þus trayscht,  
. "Hit scholde make þem alle abayscht;<sup>4</sup> 5460  
. "Wyste þe Romayns þys chaunce wore,  
. "Hit scholde enforce hem wel þe<sup>5</sup> more.  
. "ȝyf we were bold, now be we baldere,<sup>6</sup>  
. "& y schal vndertake<sup>7</sup> þys were." 5464  
He was wel armed, & on his stede  
. Toward þe<sup>8</sup> bataille he gan hym spede.  
Waster<sup>9</sup> non þat wolde hym feyne  
Whan þey sey þe kynges seigne.<sup>10</sup> 5468  
. So wel he bar hym, & so auster,  
þey wende hit were kyng Wyder.  
. þan myghte men se knyghtes stoute,  
pat perced þorow þe Romayns Route; 5472  
þe Romayns ne moughte to-gedere holde,  
So were þe bretons egre & bolde;  
Syre Claudius wyþ his partie

<sup>1</sup> MS. perseyue.

<sup>2</sup> priues. [leaf 33.]

<sup>3</sup> to mak mone.

<sup>4</sup> traist . . . obaist.

<sup>5</sup> suld aforce þam wele.

<sup>6</sup> ȝe were bolde bes now baldere.

<sup>7</sup> saff maynten forþe.

<sup>8</sup> to gyf.

<sup>9</sup> was þer.

<sup>10</sup> sawe þe kynges seyne.

- To þe water fledde wyþ his meynye;<sup>1</sup> 5476  
 þat myghte nought to þe water fle,  
 Vntil a wode þen fledde he.<sup>2</sup>  
 Hamoun, þat þe host al ledde,  
 To þer schypes faste he fledde; 5480 Hamon flees to  
 He spirde after þer enperour, the ships,  
 Whider-ward he made his retour;  
 Men ynowe til hym gon seye,  
 þat to þe water he tok hys weye. 5484  
 þe kynges broþer Arwygar,  
 Whider<sup>3</sup> Hamon fledde, he was wel war.  
 Atte water Hamon doun lyght, [leaf 24, col. 2.]  
 Intil a bot Hamon had<sup>4</sup> tyght; 5488  
 Byforn cam Arwygar atte bot;  
 Sire Hamones hed þer of he smot.  
 ffor Hamon lefte þere his heued,  
 þe name of hym þer ys bileued;<sup>5</sup> 5492 off.  
 & for þencheson of þulke<sup>6</sup> Hamoun,  
 ffor hym þe calde þe toun HAMPTOUN:  
 ffor swylke chaunces þat han bytid,<sup>7</sup>  
 Ar names of tounes cald & kyd. 5496  
 From this the  
 town is called  
 Hampton.
- Whan he was fled, þenperour,  
 & Hamon slayn atte retour,  
 . & alle wer dryuen to þat cost,  
 . þe kyng to Wynchestre lad his host. 5500 Arviragus leads  
 . When Arwygar<sup>8</sup> piderward nam, his men to  
 Claudius ef[t]<sup>9</sup> to londe cam, Winchester,  
 & com a-geyn to Porchestre,  
 & brak þe walles, & brente þe estre: 5504 where Claudius,  
 Al he brente, vp & doun, after landing  
 & chaced men<sup>10</sup> out of þe toun. again, and  
 burning Por-  
 chester,

<sup>1</sup> to þer nauie.<sup>2</sup> wode fledden he.<sup>3</sup> how.<sup>4</sup> him.<sup>5</sup> is leued.<sup>6</sup> þat.<sup>7</sup> for chances þat haf ben tid.<sup>8</sup> tiþ Arwigarus. [leaf 33, col. 2.]<sup>9</sup> eft.<sup>10</sup> exile þe men.

|                                          |                                                       |      |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                          | Byforen hit was a god <sup>1</sup> cite;              |      |
|                                          | Syn cam hit neuere to þat bounte.                     | 5508 |
|                                          | When he had destruyed þus Porchestre,                 |      |
|                                          | Syþen <sup>2</sup> he wente to Wynchestre;            |      |
| besieges him.                            | þer-inne he seged Arwygare,                           |      |
|                                          | & alle þat euere wyþ hym ware.                        | 5512 |
|                                          | Gode engyns dide he make,                             |      |
|                                          | þe walles to breke, houses to schake.                 |      |
| Arviragus                                | Arwygar heldyt a vylte,                               |      |
|                                          | So seged in a toun to be,                             | 5516 |
|                                          | . & seide 'he wolde nought þrynnne lye,               |      |
|                                          | . ' To wham-euere happede <sup>3</sup> þe maistrie;   |      |
|                                          | . ' Eyþer wold <sup>4</sup> he wynne or lese los,     |      |
|                                          | . ' Er he scholde more be halde inclos.' <sup>5</sup> | 5520 |
| comes out into<br>the open,              | He went out in-to þe feld,                            |      |
|                                          | & alle his knyghtes wyþ spere <sup>6</sup> & scheld;  |      |
| and puts his<br>men in battle-<br>array. | He batailled hem vnto þe fight,                       |      |
|                                          | Wyþ archers gode, wel adight;                         | 5524 |
|                                          | þe mene folk alle y fere                              |      |
|                                          | Were wysly set in god <sup>7</sup> manere.            |      |
|                                          | Bytwyxtre þe partys was þer bot lyte                  |      |
|                                          | þat þey ne scholde to-gedere smyte.                   | 5528 |

### ¶ De consilio Sapientum Ciuitatis.

|                                     |                                                |      |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------|
| The men of<br>Winchester            | þe wyseste men of þat cite                     |      |
|                                     | Conseilled hem how best <sup>8</sup> myght be. |      |
| fear losing their<br>goods and men. | Mykel þey dredde þer god to tyne,              |      |
|                                     | & slaughtre of þe folk, þe <sup>9</sup> pyne;  | 5532 |
|                                     | . þey saide, "þe pes were better to haue,      |      |
|                                     | . " Our toun & oure godes to saue,             |      |

<sup>1</sup> noble.<sup>2</sup> þan.<sup>3</sup> who so felt to wyn.<sup>4</sup> ouþer wild.<sup>5</sup> suld more be holden clos.<sup>6</sup> helm.<sup>7</sup> wele sette on gode.<sup>8</sup> if better.<sup>9</sup> &.

- " þen for to lyue in werre & stryf,  
 " & lese oure godes, & tyne our lyf." 5536 They ask Claudius  
 þey toke a man of honour,  
 & sent hym to þe Emperour,  
 To wite at hym wheþer þat he ches  
 To haue þe werre oþer þe pees. 5540 whether he wants peace or war.  
 þemperour seide, als he þought,  
 " Werre to haue wynny<sup>1</sup> nought,  
 " Ne y ne ȝerne nought of ȝoure,  
 " Bot þat Rome haue his honour; 5544 He answers "Not war,  
 " <sup>2</sup>Ne y ne wilne wyþ no man fight,  
 " So þat Rome mot haue his right."<sup>3</sup> but my tribute."  
 . þey graunted alle at his auis, [leaf 24, back, col. 1.] The Britons agree to pay this,  
 . And sworn þe pees in boþe partys. 5548

§ Concordati sunt Inperator & Rex.

- þe Emperour honoured mykel þe kyng,  
 . & profred hym a ful fair þynge:  
 " Sire kyng," he seide, "a doughter y haue, and Claudius offers his daughter to  
 " & on þe y vouche hure saue 5552 Arviragus.  
 " ȝyf þou wilt myn owen<sup>3</sup> bycome,  
 " & ȝeld þy<sup>4</sup> truage vntil Rome."  
 Arwygar graunted þer-to,  
 & to þe true<sup>5</sup> ȝeldyng al-so. 5556  
 In Wynchestre were þey hosteld<sup>6</sup> boþe,  
 & frendes, þat er weren wroþe.  
 þemperour to Rome sent  
 ffor Genwys, þat maiden gent. 5560 Both are hosteld in Winchester,  
 In dwellyng of þis messagers, and while Claudius's daughter, Genwys, is coming,  
 . þey sampned knyghtes & squyers;  
 Wyþ gret host þey wente þer weye, he and Arviragus conquer

<sup>1</sup> wild .I. [leaf 33, back.]

<sup>2-3</sup> P. omits these lines.

<sup>3</sup> will myn ow.

<sup>4</sup> & ȝelds.

<sup>5</sup> to treuage.

<sup>6</sup> were ostiled.

|                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| the Orkneys,<br>&c.                                                                                                                                   | & wonne þe ilde of <sup>1</sup> Orkeneye,<br>& oþer ildes þat þer ware,<br>. Wyþ help of <sup>2</sup> sire Arwygare.                                                                                                                                                                                               | 5564         |
| Bede says<br>Claudius<br>reigned A.D.<br>64.                                                                                                          | . þis Claudius regned y þat tyme—<br>. As seint Bede seys in his ryme—<br>. Syn Ihesu was born of oure leuedy,<br>. þer fel 3eres <sup>3</sup> sixe & fourty.                                                                                                                                                      | 5568         |
| Genwys ar-<br>rives.                                                                                                                                  | þis messengers þat went to Rome,<br>Y þe somer a-geyn <sup>4</sup> þey come,<br>& broughte þat maiden Genwys,<br>Gentyl of body & fair of vis.<br>. þen cam hom þemperour; <sup>5</sup><br>. þan mad þey myrthe in halle & bour. <sup>6</sup>                                                                      | 5572<br>5576 |
| Arviragus weds<br>her<br>in a vale on the<br>Severn,                                                                                                  | To wedde þat may in place auenaunt,<br>þe couenaunt to holde, siker þey <sup>7</sup> graunt,<br>Vpon Seuerne, in o vale<br>þat riche was & ful ese, <sup>8</sup><br>Bytwyxten Ingelond & Wales,—<br>. To telle 3ow þe soþe <sup>9</sup> tales—<br>þat for þe worschip of þat may,<br>A toun þey sette þer þat day. | 5580<br>5584 |
| where a town<br>is built in<br>honour of her.<br>And as Clau-<br>dius begets<br>there a son<br>called Gloy,<br>the town is<br>called Glou-<br>cester. | <sup>10</sup> þys Emperour gat þer a sone;<br>Of þat child þe name we mone;<br>Gloy he hight y <sup>11</sup> þat estre;<br>¶ And for þat Gloy, hat hit GLOUCESTRE<br>Arwygar wedded þer Genwys,<br>In Gloucestre, wyþ mykel pris;<br>þer was he corouned, & sche,                                                  | 5588         |

<sup>1</sup> *wan to Rome añ.*<sup>2</sup> *him was.*<sup>3</sup> *þer fele 3ers.*<sup>4</sup> *in þe somores tide.*<sup>5</sup> *þat tyme com þe emperour home.*<sup>6</sup> *mirth þei mad at þer tocome.*<sup>7</sup> *& sikere.*<sup>8</sup> *asasée (ensemencé, fertilisé),**Wace, l. 5191.*<sup>9</sup> *for to mene of þo.*<sup>10</sup> *P. inserts here [leaf 33, back, col. 2].—**Gloucestre first hight it þus.**for þe emperour sir Claudius.*<sup>11</sup> *hight born in.* (Wace gives a prior alternative: because Claudius built Gloucester.)

. Noblely wiþ solempnete ;  
 & when þe feste was brought til ende,  
 Claudius to Rome ageyn gan wende.

5592

Claudius goes  
 back to Rome.

¶ De aduentu Sancti Petry Apostoly.

I fynde writen, 3ow to teche,  
 pat in Nero tyme seint Peter gan<sup>1</sup> preche. 5596

(In Nero's time  
 St. Peter, after  
 converting An-  
 tioch,

firo Antyoche pat tyme he cam,  
 porow prechyng brought hit to Cristendam,

And was comen right in to<sup>2</sup> Rome,

And preched þere of Cristes dome.

5600 preaches in  
 Rome.)

¶ Whan gon was sire Claudys, [leaf 24, back, col. 2.]

In Bretayne regned Arwygarus ;

Arviragus  
 reigns in  
 Britain,

Of hym self he let right mykel,

Bot proud he was, & a party<sup>3</sup> fykel ;

5604

and refuses to  
 pay tribute to  
 Rome.

þe true<sup>4</sup> to Rome gyue he nolde,

ffor he dedeyned<sup>5</sup> of hem to holde ;

þe Romayns poughte an outrage

So for to lese þer truage ;

5608

Vespasian is  
 sent to subdue  
 Arviragus,

¶ þey senten hyder<sup>6</sup> VASPASYAN, .

. Maister of Rome was he þan.

At Douere wolde he vp a-ryue ;

þe kyng hit herde, & þyder gan dryue,— 5612

. As hit ys founden in<sup>7</sup> Ebru,

. Douere þen highte Reptupu,<sup>8</sup>—

who opposes  
 his landing at  
 Dover ;

þer fended he<sup>9</sup> Vaspasian þe lond.

þer sailles ageyn on mast þey wond,

5616

& seyled by þe landes syde

Tyl Toteneys, þer gon þey ride.

and so he sails  
 to Totness,

<sup>1</sup> þat tyme 3ede saynt Petir to. (A  
 cel terme, Wace, l. 5214.)

<sup>2</sup> late to.

<sup>3</sup> a partie.

<sup>4</sup> treuage.

<sup>5</sup> he deynd not.

<sup>6</sup> after.

<sup>7</sup> þe Latyn sais .I. wene.

<sup>8</sup> Ritipu.

<sup>9</sup> defended.

|                                               |                                                                                                                        |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| goes to Oxford,                               | .ffor þy now hit dide hem <sup>1</sup> qued<br>.pat þey hem so þat <sup>2</sup> lond furbed.                           | 5620 |
|                                               | Til Oxenford <sup>3</sup> þey gon alle ride,<br>To take þe toun y þe euentyde :                                        |      |
|                                               | .‘Karphuelgoit’ vpon <sup>4</sup> Bretoun,<br>.On Englische, ‘Oxenford’ þe toun.                                       | 5624 |
| and besieges it<br>for a week,                | .þe toun of þeym hadde no doute,<br>Seuenyght þe seged hit wyþoute.<br>þe kyng, als sone as he myght,                  |      |
|                                               | Oste gadred, & þider hym dight ;                                                                                       | 5628 |
|                                               | Raþer ne myghte <sup>5</sup> þider wende ;                                                                             |      |
| Arviragus then<br>comes,                      | .Bote atte seue nyghtes <sup>6</sup> ende,<br>He com in a morwe tyde.<br>Sone þey assembled on boþe <sup>7</sup> syde, | 5632 |
|                                               | ffro morn til euen bataille þey nomen,<br>pat neyþer side was ouercomen ;                                              |      |
|                                               | At euen þey zeden alle asonder ;                                                                                       |      |
| and a battle<br>follows for the<br>whole day. | Al were þey wery, hit was no wonder.                                                                                   | 5636 |
|                                               | On þe morn, þo þat were lefte,<br>þey armed hem to bataille eft.                                                       |      |
|                                               |                                                                                                                        |      |
| Next day                                      |                                                                                                                        |      |

### ¶ Concordati sunt per Reginam.

|                                                           |                                                                                          |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Queen Genwys<br>reconciles the<br>Romans and<br>Britons ; | Bot þe quene, dame Genwys,<br>Sche <sup>8</sup> acorded boþe partys ;                    | 5640 |
|                                                           | Scheo <sup>8</sup> peyned hure acord to make,<br>ffor loue of þe Romayns sake ;          |      |
|                                                           | Algate scheo peyned hure so,<br>Til <sup>9</sup> acord sche <sup>8</sup> brought þem to. | 5644 |
|                                                           | Al þe wynter scheo <sup>8</sup> dide þem byde,                                           |      |
|                                                           |                                                                                          |      |

<sup>1</sup> *fond þei non þat did þam.* (Ne trova qui li desfandist, *Wace*, i. 243, l. 5239.

<sup>2</sup> *þam þe.*

<sup>3</sup> *Essecestre, Wace*, l. 5240; *Exeter, Geoffrey*, iv. 16.

<sup>4</sup> *Karpenhuelgoit opon.* [leaf 34.]  
(In *Geoffrey*, not *Wace*).

<sup>5</sup> *sonere na mot he.*

<sup>6</sup> *at þe seuen daies.*

<sup>7</sup> *& smyte togidere on ilk.*

<sup>8</sup> *scho.*

<sup>9</sup> *þat.*

- Til hit was toward<sup>1</sup> somertyde;  
 . þe pes was take,<sup>2</sup> þe partys swore,  
 . Bot Vaspasian swor first byfore.<sup>3</sup> 5648  
 þe kyng, fro þat ylke day,  
 Al his lyue ȝald Rome þer pay;<sup>4</sup>  
 Hys oþ ne let he neuere falle,  
 Bot ay worschiped Romainys alle, 5652  
 . And wyþ help of Vaspasian  
 . Al Irlonde he wan;<sup>5</sup> and conquers  
 . þe folk, þe lond, he coupe wel loken; Ireland.  
 . At Colchestre he lis,<sup>6</sup> we fynde in boke. 5656  
 . A bok, men calleþ hit Iuuenal,<sup>7</sup> A book, Juvenal, lies  
 . Of stories hit spekeþ al,  
 . At Gloucestre, þer hit lys,<sup>8</sup> at Gloucester,  
 . And þe quene, dam Genwys. 5660 and so does  
 Queen Genwys.
- Marius his sone, of Genewys born, [leaf 25.] Her son Marius  
 Was kyng as his fader byforn. reigns over  
 . A myghtful<sup>9</sup> man was Maryus, Britain,  
 Of fair speche merueillous; **Marius Rex.**  
 His ffader tyme he was atte Rome 5665  
 Wiþ þe kynde his moder of come.  
 Wel he contened hym in his londe,  
 . þer blessed hym boþ fre & bonde.<sup>10</sup> 5668 and is blest by  
 In Maryus tyme fel þis ferlyk: bond and free.  
 In Scotlond aryued<sup>11</sup> a Peyt, Rodryk. The Pict  
 King Peyt cam out of þe se,<sup>12</sup> Rodryk  
 þat neuere had mercy ne pite;<sup>13</sup> 5672

<sup>1</sup> þe.

<sup>2</sup> þe pes þe granted.

<sup>3</sup> & Vespasian to Rome fore. (Puis  
 est à Rome repairiés, Wace, l. 5266.)

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out the next four  
 lines. Their subject is in Wace and  
 Geoffrey.

<sup>5</sup> Geoffrey implies this: iv. 16.

<sup>6</sup> gode kyng he was.

<sup>7</sup> Geoffrey of Monmouth (iv.

xvi.) notices Juvenal's mention of  
 the famed Arviragus, Sat. iv. 26.

<sup>8</sup> it sais he lies.

<sup>9</sup> wilfull.

<sup>10</sup> þe folk serued him at hand.

<sup>11</sup> vpryued. [leaf 24, col. 2.]

<sup>12</sup> fre Cice. (Sice, Wace, l. 5286;  
 Scythia, Geoffrey.)

<sup>13</sup> a man he was full of malice.



|                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| invades and<br>ravages Scot-<br>land.                          | Mykel he loued to robbe & reue,<br>Scotland to waste wold he nought leue.                                                                                                     |      |
| Marius fights                                                  | Als he wente <sup>1</sup> & robbede faste,<br>Maryus mette hym atte laste;                                                                                                    | 5676 |
| and kills him,<br>and in honour<br>of it sets up a<br>stone    | Marius had god folk ynow,<br>& Peyt Rodryk smertly he slow.<br>ffor þat Maryus slow þe Peyht,<br>He dide þer set a ston þorow sleight,                                        | 5680 |
|                                                                | ffor to schewe his prowesse,<br>& forto make þe menyng fresse;<br>ffor in þe ston he dide be wryte,<br>Whar-þorow euery <sup>2</sup> man may wyte;                            | 5684 |
|                                                                | Hit wytnesseþ þe <sup>3</sup> auenture,<br>& telles þe disconfiture,<br>How Marius slow þe Peyt Rodrik;<br>þe ston was set for þat ferlyk:                                    | 5688 |
| which is called<br>Westmare,                                   | þo men þat weren, & zit <sup>4</sup> are,<br>þey calle þat ston zit 'Westmare;'<br>þat contre folk seyen <sup>5</sup> ilkon                                                   |      |
| and gives its<br>name to West-<br>moreland.                    | þat te countre <sup>6</sup> is cald after þe ston;<br>ffor þe ston Westmare, WESTMORLAND;<br>þus in þe Latyn <sup>7</sup> writen y fand.<br>When þat Rodrik þe Peiht was ded, | 5692 |
| Marius is ad-<br>vised to settle<br>the Picts in<br>Caithness, | Men gaf þe kyng Marius to red,<br>'To take þe Peihtes more & lesse,<br>'Deliuere hem a party of Catenesse<br>'To tyle & haue in heritage,                                     | 5696 |
| which is waste,<br>and he does so.                             | 'ffor hit was bot wast & sauage.'<br>þey herborwed <sup>8</sup> þem þer euery where,<br>In stedes ese, þat best were.                                                         | 5700 |
| But as they<br>want British<br>wives, and are                  | Wymen of Bretayne wolde þey haue,<br>Bot þe Bretons vouched nought <sup>9</sup> saue;                                                                                         | 5704 |

<sup>1</sup> 3ed.<sup>2</sup> & for þat writyng.<sup>3</sup> & testemons þat.<sup>4</sup> þat þer woned &.<sup>5</sup> þe men of þat cuntre say.<sup>6</sup> þat it.<sup>7</sup> Geoffrey of Monmouth, book iv.  
chap. xvii.<sup>8</sup> þe herberd.<sup>9</sup> non.

COYL, AND THEN LUCIUS, ARE KINGS OF BRITAIN. 201

- pey dide hem in til Irland,  
 & tok *per* wyues at her<sup>1</sup> hand;  
 . Of two<sup>2</sup> kyndes, Iris & Peiht,  
 . Sorewe & tene hit broughte<sup>3</sup> on height. 5708  
 Marius þe kyng, in his lyf her,  
 Lyuede nyne & fourty ȝer;<sup>4</sup>  
 . Buried he was in Salesbury,  
 . þat standes on a playne ful mury. 5712  
 After Marius þan lyuede longe, **Coyl Rex.**  
 Coyl his sone þat land gan fonge;  
 He was norysed y þe toun<sup>5</sup> of Rome;  
 In<sup>6</sup> alle lawes he gaf right dome; 5716  
 pey of Rome louede hym wel,  
 ffor þey hym founde as trewe as stel.  
 Coyl coupe of many queintise,  
 And manie artes of seer<sup>7</sup> wyse; 5720  
 . He was neuere nygon ne nyce,  
 Ne neuere vsed yuel vice;<sup>8</sup>  
 . Ten ȝer he regned her al fully;<sup>9</sup>  
 . At Norwiche byried ful worþyly.<sup>10</sup> 2724  
 [leaf 28, col. 2.]
- refused,  
 they go to Ire-  
 land, and take  
 Irish wives.  
 Marius  
 is buried at  
 Salisbury,  
 which stands  
 on a merry  
 plain.  
 His son Coyl  
 then reigns,  
 who was  
 brought up in  
 Rome;  
 he is as true  
 as steel,  
 knows many  
 arts,  
 and is not a  
 fool, or vicious.

*Lucius primus Rex Christianus.*

- After þis gode kyng Coylus,  
 Regned his sone sire Lucius;  
 He was large & curteys,  
 . And firste Cristen kyng, men seis. 5728  
 Al þis land so fair and fre,<sup>11</sup>  
 þorow hym was brought to Cristiente.
- Lucius suc-  
 ceeds him :  
 and is the first  
 Christian king.

<sup>1</sup> at þer.  
<sup>2</sup> of þo tu.  
<sup>3</sup> ire & tene es wele.  
<sup>4</sup> régna longement, *Wace*, i. 247,  
 l. 5322.  
<sup>5</sup> courte. [leaf 34, back.]

<sup>6</sup> of.  
<sup>7</sup> on sere.  
<sup>8</sup> non itt vyce.  
<sup>9</sup> wele & riche.  
<sup>10</sup> he ligges biried at Norwiche.  
<sup>11</sup> re *Lucius Britannie*.

When Lucius  
 hears  
 of Christ's  
 miracles,  
 and how God  
 works for  
 Christians,  
 he sends to  
 pope Eleuther-  
 rius  
 for a man to  
 baptize and  
 teach him.  
 The pope  
 thanks God,  
 Whan he herde þe lawe of Crist,  
 . How in his name [men]<sup>1</sup> were baptist,      5732  
 Of his miracles men spake ryf,  
 . & of þapostles holy lyf,  
 & als how God for þeym wrought  
 pat to Cristendam wer brought,      5736  
 He sent þe Pope Eluthere, *Papa Eulutherius.*  
 Bysoughte hym as his fader dere      (*In a later hand.*)  
 To sende hym a man myght hym baptyze,  
 Of Cristes lawe lere hym þe wyse.      5740  
 When þe Pope herde þat tydyng,  
 He þanked Iesu, heuene kyng,  
 . pat in his tyme he wolde so wyrche,  
 . Brytaine to bryng to holy chirche.      5744  
 Two clerkes he sente hider to preche—  
 Bisschopes þe were, þe lawe to teche,—  
 pat o<sup>2</sup> clerk highte sire Duman,  
 pat oper men calde Bisschop fagan,<sup>3</sup>      5748  
 pyse to bisschopes baptized þe kyng  
 & alle his men<sup>4</sup> at her comyng.  
 porow þe kyng & his<sup>5</sup> gr<sup>u</sup>untise  
 pey ordeyned þe lawe in<sup>6</sup> right assise;      5752  
 þei ordeigned ilka<sup>7</sup> bischop per se,<sup>8</sup>  
 & Erchebischopes abouen hem to be.<sup>9</sup>  
 In hys tyme<sup>10</sup> were temples olde,  
 .<sup>11</sup> Eyght & twenty flamins<sup>12</sup> men tolde,—      5756  
 . þe Latyn calleþ<sup>13</sup> temple 'flamins,'—  
 . Somme of Mahoun, & somme of Appoll[i]ns,

<sup>1</sup> in his men.<sup>2</sup> þe to.

<sup>3</sup> Matan, MS. du Roi 27; Fagan, MS. du Roi 7515<sup>3-3</sup>. Colb.; Wace, i. 248. l. 5349. Faganus, Geoffrey.

<sup>4</sup> meigne.<sup>5</sup> kyng had.<sup>6</sup> as þe lawe is &.<sup>7</sup> MS. illa.

<sup>8</sup> Ordeyned þei Archbisshop see.  
 [leaf 34, back, col. 2.]

(Lamb. MS. follows Wace.)

<sup>9</sup> & bisshopes vndere þam to be.<sup>10</sup> þis lond.

<sup>11</sup> The eight and twenty flamens  
 are in Geoffrey (chap. xix.) but  
 not the next line.

<sup>12</sup> grete.<sup>13</sup> sais þe.

- . Somme of Dyane, somme & of Berit.—  
 . Two<sup>1</sup> arche flaminus were þey<sup>2</sup> 3it; 5760 devoted to Ma-  
 . At Londone was þer chef flamee,<sup>3</sup> &c.,  
 . & at 3ork þat oper se; and two arch-  
 . þe opere flamins in londe ware flamens at Lon-  
 . Als þe bischopes sees now are. 5764 don and York.  
 þyse temples of Maumetries  
 þey turned alle fro þer eresyes,  
 & halewode þem,<sup>4</sup> to Cristes werk,  
 . & ordeyned kirkes, prest,<sup>5</sup> & clerk, 5768 All these tem-  
 Landes, rentes, lyght & catel, ples the Pope's  
 þat to þo temples langed or<sup>6</sup> fel, bishops  
 & al oper aporynaunce, hallow to  
 He gaf hit to þer sustenaunce: 5772 Christ's work,  
 . To a dyocise langed a cite, ordain priests  
 & ordened paroschens<sup>7</sup> for to be. to them,  
 . To parsones & to vicaries  
 . Was graunted grete seignuryes. 5776  
 . When Bretayne was Cristen al, [leaf 25, back, col. 1.]  
 & þe newe lawe was brought to stal,  
 Ioyful was sire Lucyus,  
 þat sey þe folk al turne<sup>8</sup> þus. 5780 Lucius rejoices  
 In Cristene lawe, als he hym ches, at the conver-  
 þer-inne he ended in god<sup>9</sup> pes; sion of his land,  
 At Gloucestre he deide, & þer [he] lys,<sup>10</sup>  
 . & his soule wente to Paradis. 5784 dies at Glou-  
 . þe date of Crist, men seid þo<sup>11</sup> her, cester, and goes  
 . Was an hundred & fyue<sup>12</sup> & fifty 3er. to Paradise,  
 Wypouten heyr Lucyus ys ded. A.D. 155.  
 . þen coupe þe Bretons þer-of no red: 5788

<sup>1</sup> Geoffrey makes three: the third at the City of Legions, chap. xix.

<sup>2</sup> þer.

<sup>3</sup> þe archeflame.

<sup>4</sup> halowed þam.

<sup>5</sup> with preste.

<sup>6</sup> langed &.

<sup>7</sup> parishes. (parosces, Wace, l. 5365.)

<sup>8</sup> sawe þe folk turned.

<sup>9</sup> godes.

<sup>10</sup> London he died & þer he lies.

<sup>11</sup> told so.

<sup>12</sup> sex. (sis, Wace, l. 5387.)

Lucius dies  
heirless; and  
the Britons  
fight as to who  
shall be king.

The Romans  
hear of this,  
and send Seve-  
rus, with two  
legions,

who conquers  
many Britons;

but others re-  
sist him,

and he drives  
them to Scot-  
land.  
They choose  
Fulgence king.  
He fellows him-  
self with the  
Picts and out-  
laws,

and marches  
south,

. Wo was hem he hadde non heyr!  
. To haue a lord þey were in speyr;<sup>1</sup>  
. [þe were bigan omang þam alle,  
. to whom þe seignorie suld falle.]<sup>2</sup> 5792  
. ffro lond to la[n]d, fro man to man,  
¶ Of þat to Rome tydyng ran,  
pat ded was sire Lucius,  
. & þat we werreyed amonge vs.<sup>3</sup> 5796  
þey chose Sauer, a senatour, :emperour:  
& made hym maister & gouernour; **Sauerus**  
He broughte hider two Legions. **Inperator.**  
þe Bretons to þeym were felons; 5800  
Sauer werreyed on þem faste,  
Manye he conquered & caste,  
& ffele opere hadde disdeyn  
ffor to halde of any Romayn; 5804  
Vmwhile þey faught, vmwhile fleand;  
Sauer þey[m]<sup>4</sup> chaced to Scotland.  
þen chose þe Bretons þeym a kyng: **ffulgencius**  
¶ ffulgence he highte, a gret lordyng; **Rex.**  
He felawed hym<sup>5</sup> wyþ þe Peytes,<sup>6</sup> 5809  
. pat euere were ful of deseites;<sup>7</sup>  
. Outlandeis þat were ffledde,  
. Alle swilk wyþ þeym þey ledde; 5812  
In a contre þey dide<sup>8</sup> gret schame;  
Dene<sup>9</sup> was þenne þer-of þe name.  
. ffro Scotland in to purlewal,<sup>10</sup>  
. Peytes landes þey telde hit al.<sup>11</sup> 5816  
. ffulgence southewarde hym hasted,  
. þe lond al aboute was wasted;

<sup>1</sup> to be þer lord had þei no speire.

<sup>2</sup> From the Petyt MS.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *he werreyed ageyns*. P. reads, *we wered amang*. [leaf 35.]

<sup>4</sup> *Seuere þam*.

<sup>5</sup> & folowed þam.

<sup>6</sup> As Pis se sont acompagné,  
Si se sunt ensamble aloié.

Wace, i. 251, l. 5412-13.

<sup>7</sup> *lefe to fehtes*.

<sup>8</sup> *cuntre men did*.

<sup>9</sup> *Deire*.

<sup>10</sup> *vnt Thriulwall*.

<sup>11</sup> *Peihulond þei told it aȝ*.

|                                                    |                          |                   |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| Sauer fledde southeward ageyn ;                    |                          | pursuing Seve-    |
| þe Peites robbed & made al pleyn.                  | 5820                     | rus,              |
| ffulgence wyþ Peytes on hem þey <sup>1</sup> ran,  |                          | whom he at-       |
| Bot þe Peyte fledde ilk a man ;—                   |                          | tacks ; but the   |
| Som tyme wolde þey bataille abide,                 |                          | Picts flee,       |
| & som tyme fledde on ilka syde ;                   | 5824                     |                   |
| Bot ofte dide þey Sauer tene,                      |                          | though they       |
| ffulgence wiþ þe Peytes kene.                      |                          | afterwards        |
| Longe dured þat reuery, <sup>2</sup>               |                          | harass Seve-      |
| pat Sauer mought neuere come þem by,               | 5828                     | rus.              |
| Til he dide make an ouerthwert dik,                |                          | At last Severus   |
| Bitwyxte to sees a ful gret strik ;                |                          | has a dyke dug    |
| & þer-on a pale wel y-poynt, <sup>3</sup>          |                          | between the       |
| pykke & hey, ful wel y-ioynt,                      | 5832                     | two seas, with    |
| & closed þat side of þe lond ;                     |                          | a well-made       |
| Ouerthwert, Est & West hit bond.                   |                          | paling on the     |
| Syn þat tyme hit was in-clos,                      |                          | top,              |
| Neuere non of alle his foos                        | 5836                     | and that keeps    |
| Durste non of þeym ferþer fele,                    | [leaf 25, back, col. 2.] | out all his foes. |
| Ne by þat side robbe ne stele.                     |                          |                   |
| ffulgence tok conseil at wyse,                     |                          | But Fulgence      |
| & of Peytes <sup>4</sup> & opere of hyse,          | 5840                     |                   |
| . To werre ȝit more vpon Sauer,                    |                          |                   |
| & hym to chace fer & ner. <sup>5</sup>             |                          | bribes the Picts  |
| Til Peytes he gaf gyftes grete,                    |                          |                   |
| & preied hem þey scholde nought <sup>6</sup> lete  | 5844                     |                   |
| To gadere <sup>7</sup> a god compaygnie            |                          |                   |
| Toward <sup>8</sup> þe se in his nauie.            |                          | to ship in his    |
| . When þey hadde gadered þer host,                 |                          | fleet,            |
| . & schipes by þe se <sup>9</sup> cost,            | 5848                     |                   |
| . þe host was schiped, & went to se, <sup>10</sup> |                          | sails,            |
| & aryued vp y þe beste contre,                     |                          | lands,            |

<sup>1</sup> *whan Seuere had folk on þam eft.*<sup>2</sup> *robberie.*<sup>3</sup> *palis with poynt (palis, Wace).*<sup>4</sup> *at þe Peiktes. [leaf 25, col. 2.]*<sup>5</sup> *& robbe & reue hym full nere.*<sup>6</sup> *þam þei wild not.*<sup>7</sup> *bot gadred.*<sup>8</sup> *on.*<sup>9</sup> *in his schippes bi þe sees*<sup>10</sup> *in stedes þer þei sawe esc.*

|                   |                                             |      |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|------|
| besieges York,    | & byseged ȝork al aboute.                   |      |
|                   | Al þe contre til hym gan loute;             | 5852 |
|                   | He sente to grete lordynges,                |      |
| and by gifts in-  | & het & gaf hem riche þynges.               |      |
| duces many        | ffor fair hot, & giftes þat þey tok,        |      |
| British lords to  | pemperour Sauer þey forsok.                 | 5856 |
| forsake Seve-     | Sauer tok hise oper Bretons,                |      |
| rus.              | & asembled <sup>1</sup> his legions;        |      |
| Severus ad-       | Toward ȝork faste þem dight,                |      |
| vances            | To remue <sup>2</sup> hem he hadde tyght.   | 5860 |
| to York ;         | . When þey were comen wyþynne a lyte,       |      |
|                   | þe batailles gonne to-gedere smyte ;        |      |
| the armies        | ffellyk þey foughte, for þer was slayn      |      |
| meet;             | . On eyþer syde þeir cheftayn ;             | 5864 |
|                   | fulgence was first feld to grounde,         |      |
| both Fulgence     | & Sauer was slayn on a stounde.             |      |
| and Severus are   | þe Romayns for Sauer bysought,              |      |
| slain.            | So þat his body to ȝork was brought,        | 5868 |
|                   | & biried þer solempnely,                    |      |
| Severus is        | & his oper frendes hym by.                  |      |
| buried at York,   | . <sup>3</sup> þis ilke enperour Sauer      |      |
|                   | . Regned her seuentene ȝer :                | 5872 |
| (having           | . Syn Crist cam <sup>4</sup> of þe vyrgyne, |      |
| reigned here 17   | . Nyne score ȝer euene, & nyne,             |      |
| years,)           |                                             |      |
| A.D. 189.         |                                             |      |
| He leaves two     | Of þys Sauer þat deide þere,                |      |
| sons, 1. Bassian, | Tweye knaue childre were ;                  | 5876 |
| by a British      | pat on men calde Bassian,                   |      |
| wife,             | pat oper had to name Cetan. <sup>5</sup>    |      |
| and 2. Cetan      | Cetan <sup>5</sup> moder was a Romayn,      |      |
| (Getan,) by a     | Comen <sup>6</sup> of gode knyght & swayn.  | 5880 |
| Roman wife.       | Bassan was born of a Brette ;               |      |
|                   | þe Bretons of hym þe bettere lette.         |      |

<sup>1</sup> gadred togidere.<sup>2</sup> remoue ; and omits the next two lines.<sup>3</sup> Not in Geoffrey either.<sup>4</sup> was born.<sup>5</sup> Gelan.<sup>6</sup> of men ; and after l. 5881 repeats lines 5878-9 on leaf 85, back

|                                                       |                    |                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| þe Romayns toke þis ilke Cetan, <sup>1</sup>          |                    | The Romans        |
| & corouned hym, & bycome <sup>2</sup> hys man.        | 5884               | crown Cetan ;     |
| þe Bretons wiþ Bassan helde,                          |                    | the Britons       |
| & of þe roeme highte hym þe schelde.                  |                    | adopt Bassian.    |
| þen ilkon in þer party                                |                    |                   |
| Held wyþ his kynde doughtyly :                        | 5888               |                   |
| Al þus wyþ megge <sup>3</sup> & wiþ monge             |                    | Fights between    |
| Bytwixt hem wax þer werre stronge ;                   |                    | each party take   |
| Ilkon ouer oþer so lange þey <sup>4</sup> ran,        |                    | place,            |
| pat atte laste slayn was Cetan. <sup>5</sup>          | 5892               | till Cetan is     |
| ¶ þe Bretons, eft sonen þey ches                      |                    | slain,            |
| Bassan kyng, & hadde þer pes.                         | <b>Bassan Rex.</b> | and Bassian is    |
| ¶ A ladde was y þys londe, of fame,                   | [leaf 28.]         | made king of      |
| Karaucyus <sup>6</sup> þen was his name ;             | <b>Karancius</b>   | Britain.          |
| Hardy he was, & ful connyng, <sup>7</sup>             | <b>Maledictus.</b> | A noted lad,      |
| Stalworthe of body, & wel fightyng; <sup>8</sup>      | 5898               | Karausius, is     |
| In many nedes assayed he was ;                        |                    | then in Britain ; |
| Of prowess men preised þys Karas ;                    | 5900               | bold and clever,  |
| Born he was of pouere <sup>9</sup> lynage,            |                    |                   |
| & litel he hadde of heritage.                         |                    | though low-       |
| Gretter & fairer <sup>10</sup> stat he held,          |                    | born and poor ;   |
| þan wolde his rentes, <sup>11</sup> or land in feld ; | 5904               |                   |
| Grete emprises he durst vndertake ;                   |                    | willing to        |
| More louede he þe werre þan þes to make.              |                    | undertake great   |
| I þe se to wende, þenne was doute,                    |                    | enterprises.      |
| Maryners robbed þe ildes aboute ;                     | 5908               | At this time,     |
| Mighte atte hauenes reste ne <sup>12</sup> be,        |                    | pirates           |
| ffor outlandesmen þat come by se.                     |                    | plunder on        |
| Karancius þenne hym by-bought,                        |                    | sea and land.     |
|                                                       |                    | Karausius pro-    |
|                                                       |                    | poses to the      |
|                                                       |                    | Romans            |

<sup>1</sup> *Gettan.*

<sup>2</sup> *com.*

<sup>3</sup> þus gate with mengyng. (ensi ot  
por l'eslection, Wace, l. 255, l.  
5486.)

<sup>4</sup> *algate ilk oþer so long ouer.*

<sup>5</sup> *Getan.*

<sup>6</sup> Charais, Wace. Cp. 'Karas,'  
below.

<sup>7</sup> & conand.

<sup>8</sup> *fightand.*

<sup>9</sup> *pure.*

<sup>10</sup> *fairer & better.*

<sup>11</sup> *þan he rent had.*

<sup>12</sup> *duelle no.*



|                                                                                            |                                                                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                            | þe senaturs of Rome he <sup>1</sup> sought,                                          | 5912 |
|                                                                                            | . & tolde hem þat outlandes flet                                                     |      |
|                                                                                            | . Bretaygne alle aboute biset,                                                       |      |
| to clear the sea<br>of these pirates<br>if they'll give<br>him a commis-<br>sion to do it. | & seide "ʒif ʒe wil gyue me leue<br>" þe robbours o þe se to greue,                  | 5916 |
|                                                                                            | " & gyue chartre of a-vowerye, <sup>2</sup>                                          |      |
|                                                                                            | " þe se to loke wyþ myn nauie,                                                       |      |
|                                                                                            | " I scholde ʒow warante ʒoure <sup>3</sup> truage,                                   |      |
|                                                                                            | " þat non outlandeys scholde make passage."                                          |      |
| This the Ro-<br>mans give him,<br>under their seal.                                        | þey graunted hym þen leue to haue,                                                   | 5921 |
|                                                                                            | So þat he schulde þer truage saue;                                                   |      |
|                                                                                            | Chartre þey gaf hym wiþ her sel,                                                     |      |
|                                                                                            | . So þat he scholde to þeym beo leel. <sup>4</sup>                                   | 5924 |
| and he departs,                                                                            | Karres his leue atte Romayns <sup>5</sup> nam,                                       |      |
|                                                                                            | & schewed [þe] <sup>6</sup> chartre þer he cam;                                      |      |
| but raises a<br>fleet,                                                                     | Sone <sup>7</sup> gat he hym mariniers,                                              |      |
|                                                                                            | Wiþ schipes, barges, & balyngers. <sup>8</sup>                                       | 5928 |
| which he mans<br>with thieves<br>and other evil-<br>deedy men                              | He desired <sup>9</sup> men þat were fledde,<br>þeues & robbours, swylk he ledde,    |      |
|                                                                                            | . Yuel dedy <sup>10</sup> men þat were wight,                                        |      |
|                                                                                            | Of Outlandes al <sup>11</sup> þat he myght;                                          | 5932 |
|                                                                                            | Of swylk he gadered compaignies,                                                     |      |
| born and<br>nourished in<br>felonies,<br>and then<br>invades islands,                      | Born & norysched in felonyes.<br>Whan þis Karraus had gadered him <sup>12</sup> ost, |      |
|                                                                                            | Of manye a land he serched þe cost;                                                  | 5936 |
|                                                                                            | ffro on ilde til oþer he ʒede,                                                       |      |
|                                                                                            | . Of no þynge ne hadde þey <sup>13</sup> drede;                                      |      |
| robs men,<br>wastes lands,                                                                 | Men he robbed, & landes wasted,<br>ffrom o stede til oþer <sup>14</sup> he hasted;   | 5940 |
|                                                                                            | To ney neygheburs, & ferþer <sup>15</sup> fro,                                       |      |
|                                                                                            | . Til alle he dide skape & w[o];                                                     |      |

<sup>1</sup> MS. þey, but þ altered to h.  
he, P.

<sup>2</sup> chartire & auourie.

<sup>3</sup> I saff þam warant þorgh.

<sup>4</sup> þat he suld to þam be leale.  
[leaf 85, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> MS. Romayns.

<sup>6</sup> þe. <sup>7</sup> quicly.

<sup>8</sup> schippes gode busses coggers.

<sup>9</sup> disherited. <sup>10</sup> ill dedy.

<sup>11</sup> þo. <sup>12</sup> geten him.

<sup>13</sup> was it non þat þei ne had.

<sup>14</sup> fro a stede till anoþer.

<sup>15</sup> neihburs nere & fer.

- Al he tok þat he myght take,  
 He nolde mesure to<sup>1</sup> no man make; 5944 plundering all he can.  
 þat Outlandeys byforn had left, De fide  
 He spared non, bot alle he reft. fracta.  
 To saue þe folk, Carrays was sworn,  
 Bot he was worse þan oper byforn; 5948 Sworn to protect folk, he robs them more than any one.  
 fful mykel he wan, ȝit ȝernde he more,  
 ffor his folk woxe & spredde ay whore;  
 Casteles & tounes down he þrew;  
 ffor lord, he wolde þat alle hym knew. 5952  
 . So fer he sayled<sup>2</sup> to wynne hym wayne, [leaf 26, col. 2.] At last he reaches Britain,  
 Atte laste he aryued in<sup>3</sup> Bretaigne;  
 Pryuely wiþ þe Bretons he spak,  
 & seide, "ȝe se nought ȝoure lak! 5956 asks the Britons to change Bassian for him;  
 . " ȝour kyng can nought hym seluen were!  
 " Bot ȝyf ȝe wyl me god feiþ bere,  
 " Y scholde deliuere ȝow out of peynes,<sup>4</sup>  
 " And al ȝour land of ȝour Romaynes.<sup>5</sup>" 5960  
 He ȝede to þe Peytes, & seide hem þe same; and the Picts  
 . ȝif þey wolde alle wyþ o name  
 . Make hym kyng of þempyres,  
 . He wolde þem make lordes & syres. 5964 to make him king.  
 þo were þe Peytes wyþ þe kyng pryue,  
 & in þys lond gret plente;  
 . And Karays wyste þat þey were fykel,  
 . perfore he glosed hem, & gaf hem mykel, 5968  
 & þey hight<sup>6</sup> hym wyþouten faille,  
 ȝyf he wyþ þe kyng tok bataille,  
 Tyl Kareys party schold þey go,  
 And þe kyng desconfite & slo. 5972 The Picts agree to betray Basian when Karausius fights him.

<sup>1</sup> *mesure wild he.*<sup>2</sup> *farde.*<sup>3</sup> *in þis.*<sup>4</sup> *I. suld delyuere ȝow of þe Romeyns.*<sup>5</sup> *all þis lond of þar dimeyns.*<sup>6</sup> *hette. [leaf 26.]*

## § Decepzio Pictorum.

|                                             |                                                       |      |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Karausius                                   | . Whan þey had alle Karays y-highte,                  |      |
|                                             | . Bretons & Peytes help at her myghte.                |      |
| defies Bassian,                             | Bassian he gan defye,                                 |      |
|                                             | & wip foule wordes hym descrie. <sup>1</sup>          | 5976 |
|                                             | So longe lasted þer manace,                           |      |
| and the armies meet.                        | To bataille þey comen in to <sup>2</sup> place :      |      |
| Bassian trusts                              | <sup>3</sup> Bassan affied hym o þe Peytes,           |      |
|                                             | . In bataille þey knewe many <sup>4</sup> sleighthes, | 5980 |
| the Picts more than all his men ;           | þer-fore his trist was on þeym more                   |      |
|                                             | þan on alle þo þat þer wore.                          |      |
|                                             | ffor he god trist to þem hadde,                       |      |
|                                             | Richely often þeym he cladde ;                        | 5984 |
|                                             | & als þe partys gaf bataille,                         |      |
|                                             | Iusted & chased, & gon assaille,                      |      |
| but they prove traitors, turn against him ; | þys ilke Peytes were traytours,                       |      |
|                                             | Ageyn þe kyng turned y þe stours,                     | 5988 |
|                                             | . & wyþ Karays partye held,                           |      |
|                                             | & traysched þe kyng right in þe feld,                 |      |
| and kill him.                               | And slowe þe kyng, sire Bassian,                      |      |
|                                             | . & alle his folk, ylk a man.                         | 5992 |
|                                             | . þus þey traisched hym in nede,                      |      |
|                                             | . Sire Bassian þat dide þem fede ;                    |      |
| Karausius wins Britain,                     | & Karays lyghtli wan þe lond ;                        |      |
|                                             | . Agayns hym no party he ne fond.                     | 5996 |
| and gives the Picts land in Scotland.       | Karays gaf hem, for þer seruise,                      |      |
|                                             | Among þe Scottes gret ffraunchise ;                   |      |
|                                             | So þat Pictes & þe Scottes kynde                      |      |
|                                             | Ar now al on, as men fynde.                           | 6000 |

<sup>1</sup> wordes ascrie.<sup>2</sup> were þei brouht in.<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. inserts—

Karais partie dred not þe kyng.

ne Bassian Karais no þing.

<sup>4</sup> Inouh of bataile þei couth.

**Allectus & Walwus, Romany, venerunt.**

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Whan þey of Rome tydyng herde<br/>         þat Karays wip Bretaygne þus ferde,<sup>1</sup><br/>         þey sente hider þre<sup>2</sup> legions,<br/>         Wyþ to of þer bolde barons ;<br/>         Allectus &amp; Walwes þer name<sup>3</sup> hyght,<br/>         Wysemen of werre, &amp; hardy in fight.<sup>4</sup><br/>         þey come pryuely<sup>5</sup> out of þe se,<br/>         . Bot Karays wolde haue reft hem þeir entre ; 6008<br/>         Bot maugre Karreys, on hym þey wan, [lf. 26, bk., col. 1.]<br/>         And slowe Karreys þe false man,<sup>6</sup><br/>         &amp; alle þat weren of his kynde,<br/>         Destroyed hem<sup>7</sup> by rote &amp; rynde,<br/>         &amp; alle þo þat þe Romayns forsok,<br/>         And til Kareys party tok.</p> | <p>6004 The Romans<br/>         send three<br/>         legions against<br/>         Karausius,<br/>         led by Allectus<br/>         and Walwes.</p> <p>6012 They slay<br/>         Karausius,<br/>         all his kin,<br/>         and all his<br/>         party.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ **De electione Regis Asclypidot in parlamento.**

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>. þe Bretons seye þe Romayns aboue,<br/>         . And Romayns myghte þey neuere loue ; 6016<br/>         ffayn wold þey þer fredam fende,<sup>8</sup><br/>         Truage to Rome wold þey non sende ;<br/>         After þe barons þo þey sent,<br/>         To chesen at þat Parlement<br/>         A kyng þat myghte ageyn peym vaille,<br/>         Asclipedot, Erl of Cornewaille.<br/>         Whan he was chosen, he dide somoun<br/>         Alle þe Bretons fro toune to toune, 6024</p> | <p>6016 The Britons<br/>         still desire free-<br/>         dom from the<br/>         Roman yoke,</p> <p>6020 and call a<br/>         Parliament to<br/>         choose Ascly-<br/>         pidot king.</p> <p>6024 He summons<br/>         them all to</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> with þis lond misferd.

<sup>2</sup> tuo. [leaf 36, col. 2.] trois, Wace,  
 i. 260.

<sup>3</sup> Allet & Gallus þer names.

<sup>4</sup> hardy & wight.

<sup>5</sup> com vp ryuand.

<sup>6</sup> þat falsnes gan.

<sup>7</sup> stroyed þam.

<sup>8</sup> P. transposes this line and the  
 next.

fight the Ro-  
mans at Lon-  
don.

<sup>1</sup> pat alle pat myghte wepene welde,  
To bataille schold come, pat were of elde,<sup>1</sup>  
To Londone ageyn Allectus,  
& his felawe sire Walwus.<sup>2</sup> 6028

¶ De Bello inter Romanos & Regem apud Londonium.

While the Ro-  
mans are  
sacrificing,

the Britons  
besiege them.  
They rush to  
arms,

and fight the  
Britons,  
but are de-  
stroyed, and  
Alectus is slain.

Walwes (Gal-  
lus) flees into  
London,

mans the battle-  
ments,

and keeps the  
Britons off.  
Asclipedot

sends for more  
Britons.

A day þe Romayns made sacrificise  
I þe temple, as was [þer] gyse.<sup>3</sup>  
Right in þeire solempnete,  
Bysegged þe Bretons þeir cite; 6032  
þe Romayns herde noise & cry,  
& cried "as armes!" on hy, on hy,<sup>4</sup>  
And dide þem out in to þe felde,  
& baldely on þem self gon belde, 6036  
& foughten wyþ þe Bretons faste.  
Bot þe Romayns route to-braste;  
ffor Alectus dide<sup>5</sup>; & his mene  
zedede al doun, & moughte nought fle; 6040  
Alle pat were on pat party,  
Ascaped þer non by stret ne sty.  
Sire Walwes sey<sup>6</sup> þeir side zed doun;  
By tyme he fledde in to þe toun, 6044  
& þe gates after þem sperde.  
To karnels & to þe walle [t]hey ferde,  
& to þe toures cop<sup>7</sup> on hey,  
& dide þe Brutons holde þem a dreigh.<sup>8</sup> 6048  
Asclipedot pat was wypoute,  
Saw þe Romayns hadde no doute;  
His lettres<sup>9</sup> he dide write & sende  
After mo bretons fer & hende, 6052

<sup>1-1</sup> att suld com pat were of elde.  
to bataile go or wapen welde.

<sup>2</sup> Gallus.

<sup>3</sup> þer wise.

<sup>4</sup> has armes att on hy.

<sup>5</sup> side.

<sup>6</sup> Gallus sawe.

<sup>7</sup> toure vp. [leaf 38, back.]

<sup>8</sup> o drie.

<sup>9</sup> brefs.

- pat þey scholde come & sege make.  
 Aboute Londone, Romayns to take.  
 ffor þe sonde of sire Asclipidot,  
 Come Walschemen & many a Scot;  
 On ilka syde alle þey cam,  
 pat langed vnto þe kynedam.  
 Engyns dide<sup>1</sup> þe Bretons reyse,  
 & mangelns ful gode to preyse,  
 & ffruscht þe wal of þe cite;  
 Wyþ strengþe on þeym þey had entre.  
 þen myghte men se þe Romayns deye,  
 & on hepes leye by<sup>2</sup> ilka weye;  
 Neuere byfore swylk slaughter was  
 Of [þe]<sup>3</sup> Romayns at no pas.  
 þe Romayns þat were so schent/, [leaf 20, back, col. 2.] A few retreat  
 To priue fortelets<sup>4</sup> þey went, 6068 to hidden forts,  
 ffro þe Bretons for to hyde,  
 per lif to lengþe ay byside;<sup>5</sup>  
 Bot þe Bretons helden hem<sup>6</sup> streyt,  
 þey ascaped nought for no deseyt. 6072 but the Britons  
 Sory was Walwes, &<sup>7</sup> made his mone, pursue them,  
 & preyed vn-to<sup>8</sup> þe Bretons ilkone, and Walwes  
 " Lordynges, wol ȝe let me go is obliged to  
 " Vnto Rome per y cam fro, ask leave  
 " & my men for to saue? to go back to  
 " O legion, & namo, wold y craue.<sup>9</sup> Rome 6076  
 " þo þat mystaken haue, more or lesse,<sup>10</sup> with his one  
 " ffor þeym ask y forgyuenesse, legion left. 6080  
 " & let vs senglely a-wey<sup>11</sup> fare  
 " Out of þys lond for euere mare."

<sup>1</sup> barfreis did.

<sup>2</sup> ligge in.

<sup>3</sup> þe.

<sup>4</sup> forceletes.

<sup>5</sup> be tide.

<sup>6</sup> þam so.

<sup>7</sup> vnglad was Gallus he.

<sup>8</sup> said vnto.

<sup>9</sup> a legion no mo we haue.

<sup>10</sup> a legion no ne lesse.

<sup>11</sup> with lyfe & lymme away to.

|                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| The Britons<br>agree to this:                                          | pe Bretons graunted þem þer bone,<br>& þe Romayns 3olde þem sone.                                                                                                                                    | 6084 |
| but when the<br>Romans have<br>marched out,<br>the Welsh and<br>Scotch | Out of þe tours þey come al doun,<br>. To þe pes in-to þe toun;<br>& als þe Romayns 3olden were,<br>pe Wa[ <sup>1</sup> ]ssche & Scottes <sup>1</sup> wyþ al þer here                                | 6088 |
| fall on them,<br>and slay them<br>all.                                 | Comen wyþ gret noise & hew; <sup>2</sup><br>. Tok þey no tent to pes ne trew; <sup>3</sup><br>Of the Romayns þey smyten ilkan heued,<br>. Lord ne ladde was þer non leued. <sup>4</sup>              | 6092 |
| Walwes is<br>taken, and be-<br>headed at the<br>brook                  | Walwes <sup>5</sup> þey tok, al his vnthank,<br>& leddym to Atyngal, a <sup>6</sup> brokes bank;<br>þer left he his heued, <sup>7</sup> he was þe last;<br>His body in to Atyngal cast. <sup>8</sup> | 6096 |
| Atyngal,                                                               | & for he in þat water lay,<br>pe riueres name was turnd þat <sup>9</sup> day;<br>On Engliche tonge hit hat Walbrok, <sup>10</sup><br>ffor þat Walwes his dep þer tok.                                | 6100 |
| whose name is<br>then changed to<br>Walbrook.                          | ¶ penne regned Asclipedot;<br>Neyþer was he <sup>11</sup> schrewe ne sot.<br>Gret feste he held at hys coronynge,<br>& ten 3er he regned kyng.                                                       | 6104 |
| Asclypidot<br>reigns 10 years,<br>and is not a<br>shrew or a fool.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |

¶ De Dioclisiano Inperatore. *maximo  
persecutore*

|                                                    |                                                                                                                        |                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Diocletian<br>sends Maxi-<br>mianus to<br>Britain, | In his tyme was an Emperour<br>Dioclisian, a werreour,<br>He sente hider Maximian;<br>& struyde & slow ilk Cristenman. | <i>Christianorum.</i><br>(In a later hand.)<br>6108 |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> þe scote þe walsh. [lf, 38, bk., col. 2.]<sup>2</sup> hu.<sup>3</sup> toke þe no tent of pes ne tru.<sup>4</sup> bileued.<sup>5</sup> Gallus.<sup>6</sup> him titt a.<sup>7</sup> his hede gird of.<sup>8</sup> in to þe broke kast.<sup>9</sup> þe broke men call to þis.<sup>10</sup> on Inglis Gualebroke.<sup>11</sup> nouper he lufed.

|                                                              |      |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------|
| pat he on pys half Moun Gow <sup>1</sup> fond,               |      | and he destroys |
| Til he come vntil pys lond,                                  |      | all the Chris-  |
| Al he destroyed, & broughte to schame,                       |      | tians on his    |
| pat cristned were in Iesu name.                              | 6112 | road ;          |
| Dioclisien, on his partie,                                   |      |                 |
| To Cristenmen dyde felonye ;                                 |      |                 |
| Vnder hym & Maxymian                                         |      |                 |
| pey slowe at Verolame <sup>2</sup> seint <sup>3</sup> Alban, | 6116 | among others,   |
| & seint Iue & seint Aroon.                                   |      | Sts. Alban,     |
| po were in ware at <sup>4</sup> Kerlyon,                     |      | Julius, and     |
| pe byschop wyþ alle pe clergie                               |      | Aaron.          |
| . pat leued in Iesu or <sup>5</sup> Marie,                   | 6120 |                 |
| Alle pey slowe þat pey fond,                                 |      |                 |
| fful fewe ascaped fro þer hond ; <sup>6</sup>                |      |                 |
| . So fele were neuere slayn in stour                         |      |                 |
| . Of corseyntz <sup>7</sup> vnder emperour.                  | 6124 |                 |
| . þat 3er þe date of Iesu wex,                               |      | This was A.D.   |
| ¶ . Two hundred 3er, four score & sex.                       |      | 286.            |

¶ De Rege Coele, Patre Sancte Elene. [leaf 27.]

|                                                           |      |                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------|
| In Colchestre <sup>8</sup> waster <sup>9</sup> a lordyng, |      | Coel of Col-    |
| Of wham þe toun hadde gynnynge ;                          | 6128 | chester         |
| S[i]re Coel his name hight,                               |      |                 |
| Of noble lynage, a man of myght ;                         |      |                 |
| He werreyed <sup>10</sup> on Asclipedot,                  |      | rebels against  |
| . ffor he had born hym as a sot,                          | 6132 | Asclypedot, be- |
| . & suffred to mykel <sup>11</sup> Maximian,              |      | cause he's be-  |
| . þat he þorow þe lond so ran,                            |      | haved like a    |
|                                                           |      | sot, and let    |
|                                                           |      | Maximianus      |

<sup>1</sup> mon Giu, Wace; Mons Jovis.  
See p. 116, note <sup>5</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Written over an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> her was slayn sayn.

<sup>4</sup> in Wales in Kaerlion.

<sup>5</sup> or in.

<sup>6</sup> bot if any ascapid þe lond.

<sup>7</sup> corseyntes.

<sup>8</sup> Wace says 'Hoël . . . de Gloe-  
'cestre;' but R. Brunne is right  
by Geoffrey of Monmouth.

<sup>9</sup> was.

<sup>10</sup> wered. [leaf 37.]

<sup>11</sup> suffred mykelt.



|                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| slay the<br>Christians.                                               | . þe Cristene blod for to slo ;<br>. þer-fore were þe Bretons <sup>1</sup> wo.<br>ffor Asclipedot bar hym nought wel, <sup>2</sup><br>þer-fore corouned þei sire Coel. <sup>3</sup><br>. When Maximien was gon to Rome,                                                                                                          | 6136 |
| Coel kills<br>Asclypedot.                                             | . On Asclipedot toke þey dome ;<br>Sire Coel hym in bataille slow,<br>ffor he fro Maximien hym yuel wyþdrow. <sup>3</sup><br>þis Coel hadde a doughter fair,<br>Of clergie [sc]he coupe, <sup>4</sup> & was his ayr ;                                                                                                            | 6140 |
| Coel has a fair<br>daughter,<br>an only child.                        | Sone ne doughter had he namo<br>pat þe heritage myghte to go,<br>Scheo was to hure fader ferly dere ;<br>He dide maistres hure for to lere,<br>pat scheo moughte bettere <sup>5</sup> þe lond ȝeme,<br>& lord to take, as hure wolde byseme ; <sup>6</sup><br>pys ilke mayden highte ELEYNE,<br>. A ful god woman, & a certeyne. | 6144 |
| and has her<br>taught well.                                           | þe Romayns herde, & were fayn,<br>pat Asclipedot was so slayn ;<br>þey sente hider a man of pris,<br>Constancius, pat was noble <sup>7</sup> & wys ;<br>Al Spayne he had wonnen to Rome,<br>þorow truage al at her dome ;<br>Was noman þanne of his bounte,<br>pat men wiste, so mikel as he.                                    | 6148 |
| Her name is<br>Eleyne.                                                | pys Constant pat þus wan Spayne,<br>He aryued her in Brutaigne.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 6152 |
| The Romans                                                            | Choel, pat wiste his comyng,<br>He dredde Costant <sup>8</sup> ouer alle þyng ;<br>Coel sent til hym messegers,<br>& seide 'he wolde on faire maners                                                                                                                                                                             | 6156 |
| send a choice<br>man here,<br>Constantius,<br>who conquered<br>Spain. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 6160 |
| Coel fears him,                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 6164 |
| and offers to                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |

<sup>1</sup> þe Bretons were wroþe.<sup>2</sup> P. transposes these lines.<sup>3</sup> him drouh.<sup>4</sup> of clergie couth. (A.-Sax. heo, she.)<sup>5</sup> scho couth.<sup>6</sup> þat hir wild queme.<sup>7</sup> Constancius both ware. (Cos-  
tans, Wace, i. 266.)<sup>8</sup> Constant.

- ‘ Holde of hym, ȝif þat he wylde,  
 ‘ & redyly his truage ȝelde.’ 6168 pay tribute to Rome.  
 Costant<sup>1</sup> seide he wolde skyl,  
 & consented til<sup>2</sup> his wyl;  
 þe Romayns seyde<sup>3</sup> þey were aboue,  
 & fayn þey were of pees & loue. 6172 Constantius agrees to this.  
 Was hit nought a monþe long,  
 Sire Coel tok an yuel strong;  
 Eyghte<sup>4</sup> dayes lay he, & namo,  
 & deide, & wente þer we schal go.<sup>5</sup> 6176 Coel dies in a few weeks,  
 Constant saw þys ilke Eleyne,—  
 pis lond was al of hure demayne,—  
 Saw þat scheo was ferly wys,  
 And of beute bar þe prys; 6180  
 Hym þoughte he myghte wel be<sup>6</sup> byset  
 To wedde þat mayde, & bate baret.  
 þen was he kyng, & scheo quene. [leaf 37, col. 2.]  
 A knaue child com þer hem<sup>7</sup> bytwene; 6184 marries Coel’s daughter Eleyne,  
 CONSTANTYN was his name ytold;  
 & when he was enleuen ȝer old,  
 His fader fel in a seknesse,  
 þat to þe dep<sup>8</sup> hit made hym stresse. 6188  
 . When Constant<sup>9</sup> had y-mad<sup>10</sup> his fyn,  
 . In Euerwyk toun þey byried hym  
 . ful ryaliche wiþ gret honour,  
 . ffor he was a worþy emperour. 6192  
 . When þenterement was done,  
 Constantyn his sone þey coronede sone;<sup>11</sup>  
 & þe more he wax in<sup>12</sup> age,  
 þe bettere loued hym ys<sup>13</sup> baronage; 6196 Constantine is crowned king,  
 is much loved,

<sup>1</sup> Constant.

<sup>2</sup> consentid to.

<sup>3</sup> sawe. [leaf 37, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> aght.

<sup>5</sup> siben died as we saȝt do (not in Wace or Geoffrey).

<sup>6</sup> he þought him self wele.

<sup>7</sup> was þam.

<sup>8</sup> ded.

<sup>9</sup> MS. Constantyn.

<sup>10</sup> Constant had don : and leaves out the next four lines.

<sup>11</sup> þei crouned his sone Constantyn.

<sup>12</sup> whan he was wele of.

<sup>13</sup> wele lufed him his.

|             |                                              |      |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|------|
|             | God chiuallrie til hym he <sup>1</sup> drow, |      |
|             | ffor he was large, & gaf ynow;               |      |
| is liberal, | ʒif his fader were of bounte,                |      |
|             | ʒit was þe sone wel more þan he.             | 6200 |
| knowing,    | þis Constantyn was man of queyntise,         |      |
|             | per-wyþ he was a noble iustise; <sup>2</sup> |      |
| and wise.   | In his ʒouth he was als wys                  |      |
|             | As elder were y þer moste pris.              | 6204 |
|             | ffor his moder, he loued Bretons;            |      |
|             | ffor his ffader, of Rome al þe barons;       |      |
|             | Of þyse two kyndes he was born,              |      |
|             | And of þe noblest men byforn.                | 6208 |

¶ De Constantino, filio Constanty & sancte Elene.

|                                           |                                           |      |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|------|
| The Roman<br>emperor                      | At Rome was þenne an Emperour             |      |
|                                           | þat dide þe Romayns gret desonour;        |      |
| Maxentius<br>is a fierce bad<br>man,      | His name was Maxencius,                   |      |
|                                           | Proud, & fers, <sup>3</sup> & malicious;  | 6212 |
|                                           | He wasted þe honour of þe toun,           |      |
| who abases the<br>Senators.               | þe noble men he brought þem doun,         |      |
|                                           | þe ordre of þer sene abated he,           |      |
|                                           | & reft hem þeir dignite.                  | 6216 |
| Some of them                              | Somme þat hated hym of þo,                |      |
|                                           | Left þer fes, <sup>4</sup> dide hem to go |      |
| come to Con-<br>stantine,                 | Hider to Bretaygne, til Constantyn.       |      |
|                                           | ffor he was born of þeyr lyn,             | 6220 |
| and pray him<br>to put down<br>Maxentius. | þey preied hym he wolde make defens,      |      |
|                                           | & abate þe pruyde of Maxens,              |      |
|                                           | . Bysoughte as he was, worþy knyght,      |      |
|                                           | . Of þer sene to holde vp þe ryght.       | 6224 |
| The Britons<br>also pray him<br>to do it. | þe Bretons alle preied hym so,            |      |
|                                           | Wyþ hym þey wolde concente þer to.        |      |

<sup>1</sup> Gode knyghtes to him.

<sup>2</sup> P. puts this line two lower.

<sup>3</sup> proude, stoute.

<sup>4</sup> feez. [leaf 37, back.]

Longe þey preied, bot at þe<sup>1</sup> ende  
 He graunted þeym þider to wende;  
 He tok wyþ hym<sup>2</sup> knyghtes & squiers,  
 Men wiþ bowes & arblasters,<sup>3</sup>  
 & his moder ful wys<sup>4</sup> of dome;  
 Wyþ hym wente þey alle vntil Rome.  
 ffor þey were men of honurs,  
 He dide hem y þe ordre of senaturs;  
 pat on highte sire Huwelyn,<sup>5</sup>  
 pat oþer Iohern,<sup>6</sup> Eroert, &<sup>7</sup> Maryn;  
 Wardeyns he ordeined gode &<sup>8</sup> certeyn,  
 . pis lond to kepe til he com ageyn,

6228 Constantine  
 agrees,  
 6232 and takes his  
 host and his  
 mother to  
 Rome,  
 6236 leaving behind  
 guardians of  
 Britain.

When Constantyn to Rome cam, [leaf 27, back, col. 1.] He dethrones  
 þe maistrie fro Maxcence he nam,  
 And was hym selue emperour,  
 & Maxcence doun wiþ deshonor.<sup>9</sup>  
 Til sire Huelyn<sup>10</sup> he gaf a wyf,  
 Of noble kynde was sche ryf:  
 Of pat wyf, sire Huelyn<sup>10</sup> wan  
 A child men calde Ma[x]imian.<sup>11</sup>

6240 Maxentius,  
 and becomes  
 Emperor.  
 6244 Huelyn begets  
 a son Maxi-  
 mian.

¶ De Rege Octauo.<sup>12</sup>

I þe wardeyns tyme<sup>13</sup> þat Constantyn tok  
 þe Bretons for to lok,

While Constan-  
 tine is away,  
 6248

<sup>1</sup> *bisouht & he at.*

<sup>2</sup> *he dight his folk.*

<sup>3</sup> *with alblastes & oþer archers.*

<sup>4</sup> *his moder eames wys men.*

<sup>5</sup> *Leonyn. (Lohélius, Wace.)*

<sup>6</sup> 'pat oþer' is dotted under, as if for omission, in the Lambeth MS. The Petyt reads *þe toþer Trahern* (L'altre Trahens, Wace). (See *Traherne* here, lines 6259-64, &c., below.) Geoffrey (v. 8) gives only Leolin,

Trahern, and Marius, three uncles of Helena.

<sup>7</sup> *þe þrid.*

<sup>8</sup> *left gode.*

<sup>9</sup> R. Brunne leaves out Wace's seven lines (i. 270) on the finding of the Cross by Helena.

<sup>10</sup> *Leonyn.*

<sup>11</sup> *Maximian.*

<sup>12</sup> This heading is two lines lower in the MS.

<sup>13</sup> *this wardeyns.*

|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Octavus, an<br>earl of Wales,<br>seizes Britain,      | Com Octauus, an erl of Walys,<br>& sesed pys lond, boþe dounes & dales.<br>py[s] erl of Walys <sup>1</sup> was man of myght,<br>In Bretayne he cleymed ryght ;                                                                                    | 6252 |
| and kills the<br>wardens and<br>sheriffs.             | Wardeyns & schirreues he slow,<br>Baillifs, bedeles, dide schame ynow.<br>Bot Constantyn to Rome was went,<br>Til gretter nedes he gaf his tent ;                                                                                                 | 6256 |
| Constantine<br>sends Trahern<br>to subdue<br>Octavus. | . He ne myghte þenne on none wyse<br>. Hyder come to make iustise ;<br>He sende <sup>2</sup> hider sire Traherne,<br>þe lond to kepe & to gouerne.<br>Two legions wiþ hym he ladde, <sup>3</sup><br>Toward Bretayne þey hem spedde ; <sup>3</sup> | 6260 |
| Traherne forces<br>Winchester<br>to yield.            | . At an hauen þat þey fond,<br>. Sire Traherne tok pys <sup>4</sup> lond.<br>To Wynchestre <sup>5</sup> wente pis <sup>6</sup> Trahere,<br>Two dayes he soiourned þere,<br>& to hym he dide hem <sup>7</sup> zelde ;                              | 6264 |
|                                                       | . By þer willes þey ne wolde ;<br>Maugre þeires, þey zolde þe <sup>8</sup> estre.<br>Syþen he zede <sup>9</sup> to Wynchestre ;<br>Sire Octauus wiþ many a scheld                                                                                 | 6268 |
| Octavus                                               | Was byforn hym in þe feld,<br>& gaf til hym bataille stout.<br>þe Romainys ofte perced þe rout ; <sup>10</sup><br>Octauus grettere force hadde,                                                                                                   | 6272 |
| gives him<br>battle,                                  | So þat þe Romainys route to-schadde, <sup>11</sup><br>& dide hem to þe hauene fle,<br>Vntil þer schipes on þe se.                                                                                                                                 | 6276 |
| and drives the<br>Romans to<br>their ships.           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |

<sup>1</sup> pis Octauus.<sup>2</sup> sent. [leaf 37, back, col. 2.]<sup>3</sup> P. omits these lines.<sup>4</sup> þe.<sup>5</sup> Porcestre, Wace, l. 5866, who makes another march on Winchester, l. 5870. R. Brunne follows Geoffrey.<sup>6</sup> sir.<sup>7</sup> to him þe toun he did.<sup>8</sup> zald þat.<sup>9</sup> zode.<sup>10</sup> Romeyns perced þorghoute.<sup>11</sup> alto schad.

TRAHERN BEATS OCTAVUS, AND IS MADE KING. 221

|                                                             |      |                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------------|
| pey sette vp sail heye on mast,                             |      | They sail to the  |
| Toward þe northe þey seyled fast ;                          | 6280 | north,            |
| In Scotlond aryued, <sup>1</sup> & logged his ost,          |      |                   |
| & pylede & robbed <sup>2</sup> at ilka cost.                |      | and pillage       |
| Til Octauus sone com tydand                                 |      | Scotland.         |
| pat Trahern robbed in Scotland.                             | 6284 |                   |
| Octauus gadered host ay whare,                              |      | Octavus follows   |
| & hyed hym faste pat he were þare ;                         |      | them,             |
| Oft he seyde wyþ grete pryde                                |      |                   |
| pat Trahern schold nought dur abide ;                       | 6288 | but they put      |
| . Bot his ouerwenyng <sup>3</sup> gan faille ;              |      | him to flight.    |
| Trahern stod, & bod <sup>4</sup> bataille,                  |      |                   |
| & dide Octauus for to fle ;                                 |      | He goes to        |
| In to Norweye ouer þe se.                                   | 6292 | Norway,           |
| Octauus þenne fledde for ferd ;                             |      |                   |
| He spak vntil þe [kinge] Comperd, <sup>5</sup>              |      | and asks king     |
| ffor help & socour he preyde <sup>6</sup> ȝerne,            |      | Comperd(Gom-      |
| To wynne þe lond of sire Traherne.                          | 6296 | bert) for help.   |
| Pryuely he sent to þis lond ageyn, [leaf 37, back, col. 2.] |      | Octavus also      |
| To þo pat were til hym certeyn,                             |      | tells his friends |
| pat þey scholde fonde on alle wyse                          |      |                   |
| To sle Traherne wiþ som queyntise.                          | 6300 | to try and kill   |
| pat tyme spedde Traherne wel ynow ;                         |      | Traherne by       |
| ¶ Ageyn to þe southe Traherne drow,                         |      | some snare.       |
| & dide hym coroune kyng to be,                              |      |                   |
| . & regned wiþ solempnete.                                  | 6304 |                   |
| A day to <sup>7</sup> Londone he scholde out ryde ;         |      | but one day his   |
| His ffomen a-spied wel what tyde ;                          |      | foes lie in wait  |
| . Enbusched þeym by þat strete                              |      | for him,          |
| . per þey hoped þe kyng to mete.                            | 6308 |                   |
| Sire Traherne of non hym dredde,                            |      |                   |
| . per-fore no folk wyþ hym ne ledde ;                       |      | when he is out    |
|                                                             |      | alone,            |

<sup>1</sup> he ryued in Scotland.

<sup>2</sup> robbed & ref. .

<sup>3</sup> ouerhope.

<sup>4</sup> stode vnto.

<sup>5</sup> vnto hyng Comperde.

<sup>6</sup> socour for.

<sup>7</sup> of. [leaf 38.]

|                |                                                |      |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------|------|
|                | At a passage as he went,                       |      |
|                | pey breken of þeyr enbuschement ; <sup>1</sup> | 6312 |
|                | þo þat hym hated for Octauus                   |      |
| and kill him.  | Slowen <sup>2</sup> þer sire Trahernus.        |      |
| They send for  | ffor Octauus þey sende <sup>3</sup> þer sonde, |      |
| Octavus,       | & sesed hym eft in to þe londe,                | 6316 |
|                | & corouned hym als he was er ;                 |      |
| crown him,     | & alle þat comen wyþ Traher,                   |      |
|                | Euerilkon he <sup>4</sup> dide þem slo ;       |      |
|                | Ascaped non bot wyþ wo ;                       | 6320 |
|                | Syþen in pes þe lond gan welde,                |      |
| and he reigns  | & longe lyuede til gret <sup>5</sup> elde.     |      |
| long in peace. |                                                |      |

¶ De consilio Octaui per Karadukum.

|                 |                                                   |      |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------|------|
| When Octavus    | Whan he had regned <sup>6</sup> pis lond her,     |      |
| gets old,       | þe tyme of to & þritty <sup>7</sup> 3er,          | 6324 |
|                 | He sey þat of hym cam <sup>8</sup> non eyr        |      |
| and has no heir | Bot a maiden child right feir ;                   |      |
| but a girl,     | He asked who moughte his doughter haue,           |      |
| he asks who     | pis lond for to loke & saue.                      | 6328 |
| had better      | ffele of his frendes seid his <sup>9</sup> reson, |      |
| marry her,      | To sende to Rome for a baron,                     |      |
| and have the    | His doughter for to gyue to wyue ;                |      |
| land.           | So myghte þey pes haue in þer lyue.               | 6332 |
| Some propose a  | Oper þer were þat loued Conan,                    |      |
| Roman ;         | þe kynges cosyn, a noble man ;                    |      |
|                 | þey conseilled to make hym ys eyr,                |      |
| others, Conan,  | He myghte best, in þeir espeir. <sup>10</sup>     | 6336 |
| the king's      | þen spak þe Erl of Cornewaille,                   |      |
| relation.       |                                                   |      |
| Karaduk, the    |                                                   |      |
| earl of Corn-   |                                                   |      |

<sup>1</sup> put þam of þer bussement.<sup>2</sup> slouh.<sup>3</sup> sent.<sup>4</sup> þei.<sup>5</sup> to right gode.<sup>6</sup> regned in.<sup>7</sup> MS. 3ritty. P. þritty.<sup>8</sup> sawe of him was.<sup>9</sup> gaf.<sup>10</sup> þis was þer speire.

|                                                     |                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Sire Karaduk : he seide, 'saunz faille              | wall, is against           |
| ' He ne wolde nought conseille þer-to,              | Conan,                     |
| ' ffor <sup>1</sup> hit were nought wel to do,      | 6340                       |
| ' To make his eir sire <sup>2</sup> Conan ;         |                            |
| " Bot sende after Maxymian,                         | and recom-                 |
| " þe eldest sone of Huelyn, <sup>3</sup>            | mends Maxi-                |
| " Eleyne <sup>4</sup> cosyn, & Constantyn :         | 6344 mian,                 |
| " His fader ys Breton, þat <sup>5</sup> is certayn, | who is in blood            |
| " & on his moder side Romain ;                      | both Briton                |
| " Gif hym þy doughter in mariage ;                  | and Roman,                 |
| " Wys man he is, & wel of age.                      | 6348 and a wise man,       |
| " ȝif þou gaf hit vntil Conan,                      |                            |
| " & married þy doughter to anoþer man,              |                            |
| " He scholde fonde, when he myght <sup>6</sup> wel, |                            |
| " þe lond of hym to wynne ilk del ;                 | 6352                       |
| " He scholde þenke, & ful wel myght,                |                            |
| " þat hit scholde <sup>7</sup> be his þorow ryght ; |                            |
| " Bot ȝyf ȝe do as y ȝow seye,                      | [leaf 28.] which will also |
| " Of pes ys þer non oþer weye."                     | 6356 secure peace.         |
| þe kyng held hym to þat conseil ;                   | Octavus agrees             |
| þer-fore bygan þer a tyrpeyl <sup>8</sup>           | to this.                   |
| Bytwyxt Conan & Karaduk ;                           |                            |
| ffor Conan gan þat oþer <sup>9</sup> rebuk,         | 6360 Conan reviles         |
| & reuled <sup>10</sup> hym wyþ wordes þore ;        | Karaduk,                   |
| & ȝif he had durst, he wolde more.                  |                            |
| Sire Karaduk held ful litel <sup>11</sup> awe       |                            |
| Of his manace or of his sawe.                       | 6364 but he cares          |
| þe kyng bisoughte sire Karaduk                      | very little for            |
| To sende to Rome his sone Maurik/,                  | it.                        |
| & preye hym vpon alle þynge                         | Octavus asks               |
| Maxymian to Bretaigne brynge.                       | 6368 Karaduk to            |
|                                                     | send his son               |
|                                                     | Maurice to                 |
|                                                     | Rome, and                  |
|                                                     | fetch Maxi-                |
|                                                     | mian.                      |

<sup>1</sup> ne.

<sup>2</sup> heir to mak his cosyn.

<sup>3</sup> leonyn.

<sup>4</sup> Heleyn. [leaf 38, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> þis.

<sup>6</sup> suld fond whan he mot.

<sup>7</sup> þe lond suld.

<sup>8</sup> tirpeile. (Fr. trepel, Wace, l. 5967.)

<sup>9</sup> þe [on] to þe toþer.

<sup>10</sup> Conan stouted.

<sup>11</sup> had litell.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maurice<br>finds Maximian<br>disputing with<br>Valentine and<br>Gratian for the<br>Roman empire,<br><br>and advises him<br><br>to marry<br>Octavus's<br>daughter,<br>and so strength-<br>en his party. | Whan Mauryk was to Rome y-comen,<br>He saw þat gret party was nomen<br>Bytwixten þis Maximian<br>& Valentyn & Gracian :<br>þey stryue to haue þe empire ;<br>þe breþere hadde þer partie most seure. <sup>1</sup><br>Sire Maurik þer Maximian fond,<br>& teldym <sup>2</sup> he was of þys lond ;<br>Anon he bad him, "take leue <sup>3</sup> of Rome,<br>" & vntil Bretaygne smertly come,<br>" þe kynges doughter for to take ;<br>. " þou may þy party þe better make." | <br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6372<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6376<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6380 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### § De Maximiano Rege.

|                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximian<br>agrees,<br><br><br>comes to South-<br>ampton,<br><br>and gets Oc-<br>tavus's<br>daughter and<br>Britain.<br>Conan makes<br>war on<br><br>Octavus and<br>Maximian. | When Maximian þis tydynges herde,<br>Wip ioye to Bretayne wyþ Maurik [he] <sup>4</sup><br>ferde :<br>Was non abyd ne no dwellynge<br>Til Maximian com to þe kynges.<br>Maximian at Southaumptoun gan ryue,<br>& asked þe kynges doughter -to wyue.<br>þan was Octauus al at ese ;<br>Of his doughter he dide hym sese,<br>Wip al þe reome <sup>5</sup> ilkadel,<br>. & bad hym richely regne, & wel.<br>§ Conan was wroþ, & made gret bost,<br>He alyed hym to þe Scottes cost ;<br>Octauus, his em, he gan manace,<br>& Maximien wip <sup>6</sup> werre dide chace ; [leaf 38, back.]<br>Bot Maximian gaf nought of hym ;<br>He stod ageyn Conan ful grym. | <br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6384<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6388<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6392<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6396 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> þe breþer þe better partie.

<sup>2</sup> told him.

<sup>3</sup> bad him leue all þat.

<sup>4</sup> he.

<sup>5</sup> & alle rengne. [leaf 38, back.]

<sup>6</sup> to.

|                                                                                                                                                                         |                    |                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| fful often Conan of hym wan,<br>So dide of hym Maximian :—<br>Hit ys þer chaunce þat werre bygynne,<br>Vmwhile to lese, vmwhile <sup>1</sup> to wyne.—                  | 6400               | Some times one<br>side wins,<br>sometimes the<br>other, |
| Whan þei to-gedere had werreyed longe,<br>Men of gode zede þeym amonge,<br>Dide þem acorde in loue & pes,<br>So þat Maximian nought ne les ;                            | 6404               | till at last they<br>make peace.                        |
| He highte hym, for his emes <sup>2</sup> sake,<br>A riche man he scholde hym make.<br>pre <sup>3</sup> zer in pes, wypouten fight,<br>He drow to tresour þat he myght ; | 6408               | After three<br>years Maximian<br>resolves to            |
| He seide he wolde assaye þe <sup>4</sup> chaunce,<br>Ouer se to wende, & wyne ffraunce,<br>& fro þenne wende to <sup>5</sup> Rome,<br>Of his enemys to make dome,       | 6412               | conquer France<br>and Rome.                             |
| And of alle þat wyþ hem helde,<br>Ageins hym fyghtynge in [þe] <sup>6</sup> felde.                                                                                      | [leaf 28, col. 2.] |                                                         |

¶ De nauigacione Maximiani versus Armoricham.

|                                                                                                    |      |                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------|
| When he had folk, & was redy,<br>To schipe þey wente hastily.                                      | 6416 | He sails, with<br>his host,    |
| Toward south-west þey passed þe se,<br>Aryued vp in a contre ;<br>Armoriche was þenne þe name,     |      | to Armorica,                   |
| Bot now hit hap an oþer fame.<br>Humbald was þer-in lord & sire,<br>Of Armoriche he held þenpire ; | 6420 |                                |
| He dide somoun alle his barons,<br>A-vey to chace, & felle <sup>7</sup> þe Bretons.                | 6424 | is opposed by<br>king Humbald, |
| þe Bretons were of wel more myght ;                                                                |      |                                |

<sup>1</sup> som tyme to lose som tyme.

<sup>2</sup> he het him þan for his eam.

<sup>3</sup> 'five' says Geoffrey.

<sup>4</sup> wild stande to.

<sup>5</sup> fro þien vnto.

<sup>6</sup> agayn him fightand in þe.

<sup>7</sup> to chace away.

|                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                          |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| but puts the<br>Armoricans to<br>flight,                        | Humbaldes men þey slowe doun right,<br>þey nadde <sup>1</sup> no force to turne agein;<br>Alle þey fledde, knyght & swayn;                                                               | 6428         |
| and kills 15,000<br>of them.<br>Maximian<br>rejoices,           | Bot fiftene þousand wer þer slayn.<br>& Maximien gan turne <sup>2</sup> ageyn,<br>& ioyful was þat he so spedde:—<br>pat lond held women, þe men were fledde:— <sup>3</sup>              |              |
| and says to<br>Conan,                                           | He tok sire Conan by þe hond, <sup>4</sup><br>& on hym low wyþ god semblaunt/; <sup>5</sup><br>"Conan," he seide, "þou art doughti;<br>"To manne Armoriche <sup>6</sup> þou were worthi. | 6433<br>6436 |
| "You see this<br>fair country,                                  | "Sestow now þis faire contre,<br>"fful plentyuous & ful ayse; <sup>7</sup><br>"þe lond to tyle, god ys to wynne;                                                                         |              |
| well wooded,                                                    | "Wodes, watres, ynowe þer-ynne,                                                                                                                                                          | 6440         |
| and watered.                                                    | "fforestes fulle of ful fayr dere,<br>"ffresche ryuers ese & ner;<br>"Y ne sey nere in al <sup>8</sup> my lyue<br>"A fairer lond, ne more <sup>9</sup> plentyue.                         | 6444         |
| I give it you.                                                  | "On þe, Conan, y vouche hit saue,<br>"pat þou hit welde wyþ ioye, & haue.<br>"Bretaygne þe grete was þe het,<br>"& on þe hit were ful wel byset;                                         | 6448         |
| You were pro-<br>mised Great<br>Britain, and<br>lost it for me. | "Bot for me þou hast hit lorn,<br>"per-fore to me yuel hastow <sup>10</sup> born;<br>"ffor-gyue me now ilk a del,<br>"& haue þis lond, & brouk hit wel.                                  | 6452         |
| I give you this<br>land instead."                               | "pis ys þe heste <sup>11</sup> pat y þe hight;<br>"& bettere y wolde, zyf þat y <sup>12</sup> <sup>13</sup> myght;<br>"pys lond we scholle <sup>14</sup> clense of þyse,                 |              |

<sup>1</sup> had.<sup>2</sup> MS. turned.<sup>3</sup> had wonnen þe folk was fled.<sup>4</sup> hande.<sup>5</sup> lounh with faire semblande.<sup>6</sup> to haf a reume.<sup>7</sup> wele ese.<sup>8</sup> I. sawe neuer in.<sup>9</sup> so faire a lond ne so.<sup>10</sup> itt wilt to me þerfor has.<sup>11</sup> hete. (see 1.6405-6.)<sup>12</sup> & better satt whan .I. haf.<sup>13</sup> One stroke too many in the  
MS. m.<sup>14</sup> satt.

" pen schulle<sup>1</sup> þe Bretons þe lond iustise ; 6456  
 " Non oper folk schulle<sup>1</sup> dwelle þer-ynne ;  
 . " pen may þou weldit al<sup>2</sup> wyþ wynne."  
 Conan of hym receyued þe gyfte,  
 & Maximian to kyng hym lyfte ; 6460  
 And Conan made hym þer fewte,  
 Of hym to holde hit euere yn fe.<sup>3</sup>

Conan accepts  
 the gift,  
 and does fealty  
 to Maximian  
 for it.

¶ *Brytannia Mynor conquesta est per Maximianum.*

¶ Maximian spak to þe kyng :  
 " pis lond is Bretones wynnyng, 6464  
 " & for þat ilke encheson  
 " pat hit is conquered þorow<sup>4</sup> Bretoun,  
 " Hit schal hote þe Lesse<sup>5</sup> Bretayne,  
 . " And we Bretons to be cheuentayne ;<sup>6</sup> 6468  
 . " And y comaunde þow alle oliche,<sup>7</sup> [ll. 28, bk., col. 1.]  
 . " pat noman calle hit Armoriche."  
 ffo þat day vntil þis same,  
 Of Armoriche hit loste þe name ; 6472  
 & now ys hit cald Bretagne wyþ alle ;  
 I trowe þat name schal neuere falle.  
 Maximien, til his demeynes  
 He sesed þe faire cite of Reynes. 6476  
 þat were þer-ynne, þe toun þenne left,  
 Durste neuere non of þeym ryse eft.  
 Maximian þe<sup>8</sup> lond tok,  
 Tounes & casteles dide he lok ;<sup>9</sup> 6480  
 ffaire countres ouer al he fond,  
 Bot þer were none myghte tyle þe lond ;  
 He þoughte he wolde to Bretagne sende  
 . After men, boþe sibbe & fremde, 6484

As Britons  
 have conquered  
 Armorica,  
 Maximian  
 changes its  
 name to the  
 Less Britain ;  
  
 and it is now  
 called Britany.  
  
 Maximian  
 seizes Reynes.  
  
 But as he finds  
 few people in  
 Little Britain,  
 he imports  
 from Great  
 Britain

<sup>1</sup> *satt.*

<sup>2</sup> *weld þe lond.*

<sup>3</sup> *hold att his fe.*

<sup>4</sup> *conquest þorgh.*

<sup>5</sup> *it satt hate lesse.*

<sup>6</sup> *cheifstain.*

<sup>7</sup> *onlyche.*

<sup>8</sup> *þat þe.* [leaf 89.]

<sup>9</sup> *constables castels did loke.*

|                                                       |                                                                        |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                       | . þe lond to multeplie & to tyle, <sup>1</sup>                         |      |
|                                                       | . þat oper þer-to ne scholde haue skyle.                               |      |
|                                                       | He dide come of pore pedaille                                          |      |
| 100,000 la-<br>bourers,                               | An hundred þousand þat myghte trauaille, 6488                          |      |
|                                                       | <sup>2</sup> To laboure & to tyle þer fode;                            |      |
| and 30,000 men<br>of arms.                            | Wyþ þritty þousand men of armes gode,                                  |      |
|                                                       | þe londe fro enemis to fende & were,                                   |      |
|                                                       | . þat Vtlandeys scholde þem nought dere. <sup>2</sup>                  | 6492 |
| Then Conan<br>is crowned<br>king,                     | þenne was Conan corouned kyng,                                         |      |
|                                                       | & hadde þe regne al in kepynge,                                        |      |
|                                                       | . þer-ynne <sup>3</sup> to lyue & to deye,                             |      |
| and Maximian<br>goes his way,                         | And Maximian wente forþ his weye.                                      | 6496 |
| conquers<br>France and<br>Lorraine,                   | Als he wente, Maximian,<br>ffraunce & al Lorreyne <sup>4</sup> he wan. |      |
|                                                       | Hym þoughte hit was nought zit ynow;                                   |      |
|                                                       | To Rome he þoughte, & þider he drow;                                   | 6500 |
|                                                       | . He þoughte to venge hym þenne of þo                                  |      |
|                                                       | . þat greued hym at Rome, when he scholde go; <sup>5</sup>             |      |
|                                                       | . & þo breþere to brynge to yuel <sup>6</sup> fyn,                     |      |
|                                                       | Boþe Gracien & sire Valentyn.                                          | 6504 |
| takes Rome,                                           | He com to Rome ful hastely; <sup>7</sup>                               |      |
|                                                       | þat o broþer tok he par <sup>8</sup> maystry;                          |      |
|                                                       | þat oper he dide wyþ force fle,                                        |      |
|                                                       | & held þempire in dignite.                                             | 6508 |
| and becomes<br>the 14th<br>Emperor after<br>Augustus, | . þen was he þe fourtenþe <sup>9</sup> Emperour                        |      |
|                                                       | . Syþen Augustus, þat bar þe flour:                                    |      |
|                                                       | . þe date of Crist þen was þus euene,                                  |      |
| A.D. 377.                                             | . þre hundred zer, seuenty & seuene.                                   | 6512 |

<sup>1</sup> & forto puplise þe lond & tile.<sup>2-2</sup> & þritty þousand of knyghted gode.

to fende þam to tile þer fode.

<sup>3</sup> þer for.<sup>4</sup> lorenge.<sup>5</sup> when he Rome first zede fro.<sup>6</sup> ille.<sup>7</sup> austerly.<sup>8</sup> þe tuo breþer toke par.<sup>9</sup> fourtend.

¶ De Dynoto, Custode sine Rege, & de Vrsula, filia  
eiusdem, & .xj. Mī virginum, tam per tempesta-  
tem quam apud Coloniā, occisi<sup>3</sup> per Sarasenos.

When Maximian ferde fro Bretagne,  
Of Dynotis mad he cheftayne,<sup>1</sup>  
To kepe<sup>2</sup> þe lond til his bihoue;  
ffor trewe & feyþful he dide<sup>3</sup> hym proue. 6516

Maximian has  
left Dianot in  
charge of Great  
Britain.

Sire Karaduk, þat y spak of<sup>4</sup> byforn,  
Was Dynotis broþer, & zonge<sup>5</sup> born;  
Bot ded þat tyme was Karaduk;  
& his sone, þat highte sire Mauryk,— 6520  
þat zede to Rome in Octauus message—  
Wyþ Dyanot he kepte<sup>6</sup> his heritage.

A doughter had Dianot, & no ma; [lf. 23, bk., col. 2.] Dianot has one  
Hure name was cald dame<sup>7</sup> Vrsula. 6524 daughter,  
Ursula.

þo þat were dryuen fro Armoriche,  
þe Frensche & þey felawed o-liche,<sup>8</sup>  
& rysen<sup>9</sup> ageyn Conan to fight;  
Bot Conan meyntende wel his right; 6528  
ffor þeym·ne loste he<sup>10</sup> neuere nought

Conan puts  
down a rebel-  
lion in Bri-  
tany.

Whan þey on hym bataille sought.  
þen was Conan meued of skyle<sup>11</sup>  
Hys lond to edefie & to tyle;<sup>12</sup> 6532

Conan wants

& þat þey moughte þe sikerere lyue,  
Wyues he þoughte hem for to gyue.  
ffrensche wymen wolde<sup>13</sup> þey non take,  
þat per blod no monge scholde<sup>14</sup> make, 6536

wives for his  
men;

and, as they  
won't take  
French women,

<sup>1</sup> *ceifstayn*.

<sup>2</sup> & kept. [leaf 39, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> for a lele man did.

<sup>4</sup> Karaduk broþer .I. spak.

<sup>5</sup> was Dinotus & zongere.

<sup>6</sup> with Dianoth had.

<sup>7</sup> þat maiden hight.

<sup>8</sup> frankis & þei fleand olike.

<sup>9</sup> ros.

<sup>10</sup> þem he les.

<sup>11</sup> to do his folk be more þorgh skiff.

<sup>12</sup> & þe lond herberw & tiff.

<sup>13</sup> frankis women wild.

<sup>14</sup> monge suld.

|                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                                                                 | To haue cleyrn þorow heritage,<br>Ne dowarye þorow mariage.<br>Vntil no blod wolde þey hem bynde,<br>Bot only to þer owene kynde;                                                                 | 6540 |
| Conan sends to<br>Dianot                                                                                                        | perfore Conan sente his sonde<br>To Dianot, þat kepte þis londe,<br>"To sende hym his doughter Vrsele—<br>"Wip non oper wolde he dele,—                                                           | 6544 |
| for his daughter<br>Ursula for him-<br>self,<br>and plenty of<br>marriageable<br>girls<br>of different<br>ranks for his<br>men. | "And gentil damysels vngyuen, <sup>1</sup><br>"þat able to mennes companye were <sup>2</sup> þryuen,—<br>"Squyers <sup>3</sup> doughtres, & frankelayns,<br>"To gyue hem to knyghtes & to swayns, | 6548 |
|                                                                                                                                 | "Oper maidens comen of þralles,<br>"To be maried as þem falles;<br>"Alle þat he myghte, he schold <sup>4</sup> hym sende,<br>"Wip waryson he schold <sup>4</sup> þem mende."                      | 6552 |
| Dianot agrees<br>to send Ursula<br>to Conan,                                                                                    | Dynot graunted to sende hym hyre,<br>& richely þen dide hure atyre;<br>Alle þo þat he gete myght,<br>Lordynges <sup>5</sup> doughtres wel adight:                                                 | 6556 |
| with 11,000<br>virgins of gentle<br>blood,                                                                                      | ¶ Enleuen þousand <sup>6</sup> þey were by tale,<br>Of gentil blod, <sup>7</sup> grete & smale;<br>Oper þat were of lower kynde,                                                                  |      |
| and 60,000 of<br>the prettiest<br>girls of lower<br>rank.                                                                       | þe auenauntest þey myghte <sup>8</sup> fynde,<br>Sexty þousand, <sup>9</sup> so many þer ware,<br>Redy to schipen ouer <sup>10</sup> to fare,<br>Wel dight ilkon for þe nones.                    | 6560 |
| They take ship<br>at London, and<br>sail off.                                                                                   | At Londone þey schiped at ones, <sup>11</sup><br>& drowe þer sail heye vpon mast;<br>Bytaughte þem God, & seyled fast.                                                                            | 6564 |

<sup>1</sup> Ientitt doughtres vngyuen.<sup>2</sup> þat were of waxdam & wele.<sup>3</sup> sergeanz.<sup>4</sup> suld.<sup>5</sup> lordes.<sup>6</sup> elleuen. [leaf 39, back.]<sup>7</sup> women.<sup>8</sup> auenant þat þei mot.<sup>9</sup> quarante mil, Wace, i. 285, l. 6169.<sup>10</sup> schip ouer se.<sup>11</sup> P. inserts,—whan þei had aȝ þat þam sett nede.  
& were bitaght þo þam suld lede.

- ¶ When þey were<sup>1</sup> in deppest flod,  
 & wenden han had passage<sup>2</sup> god, 6568  
 Ros a tempest, rorande loude,<sup>3</sup>      A terrific  
 & reyned al doun wyþ a blak<sup>4</sup> cloude.      tempest rises,  
 Derk was þe skye, gret was þe reyn,  
 þe wynd was wod [&] þem<sup>5</sup> ageyn; 6572  
 þe sky ferd as hit scholde doun falle;  
 Wonder wawes agaste þem alle,  
 So þey arysen on<sup>6</sup> ouer anoþer,  
 pat þeym nauailde<sup>7</sup> mast ne roper; 6576  
 þe wynd, þe water, so faste þey faught,  
 þem to saue was non pat þought.<sup>8</sup>  
 pryttý schipes<sup>9</sup> þer were nomo,  
 þo sexti þousand to deþe zede þo, 6580  
 þe opere enleuene ful<sup>10</sup> fer were dryuen,  
 . In Barbarie þey vp aryuen :  
 Two Sarasyns were kynges of pris,  
 pat on highte Melga, pat oþer Gwanis. [leaf 29.] 6584  
 Gwanis<sup>11</sup> was kyng of Huneys;  
 Melga, of Peyghtes was kyng, hit seis.  
 þyse Sarasynes wolde han leyn hem by,  
 Bot þey nolde of no vileny, 6588  
 Leuere þem were deye wyþ drede,  
 . þan to lecherye þer bodies bede.  
 . Wiþ martirdom þey dide hem deye;  
 . At Coloyne now, men sais, þei lye. 6592
- þenne herde þise to Sarsyns seye  
 pat þe force of Bretainne was aweye,  
 How gret host wyþ Maximian went,  
 & to Conan pritty þousand sent; 6596
- sinks 30 ships,  
 and drowns the  
 60,000 low-  
 born virgins.  
 The other  
 11,000 are  
 carried to  
 Barbary,  
 the land of  
 kings Melga  
 and Gwanis.  
 Rather than do  
 lechery, the  
 11,000 virgins  
 suffer martyr-  
 dom,  
 and now lie at  
 Cologne, men  
 say.  
 Two Saracen  
 kings hear how  
 Britain is left  
 undefended.

<sup>1</sup> com.<sup>2</sup> wende haf sauf passage &.<sup>3</sup> One stroke too many for the *u* in the MS.<sup>4</sup> myrk was þe skie grete was þe.<sup>5</sup> & þam.<sup>6</sup> so grete risand one.<sup>7</sup> auailed nouht.<sup>8</sup> nouht to saue nouht ne douht.<sup>9</sup> scippes.<sup>10</sup> þe elleuen fer.<sup>11</sup> Ivains, *Wace*, i. 287, l. 6218.



|                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
|                                                                                                      | . What wyþ þat on, what wyþ þat oþer,<br>per lefte no force agayns non oþer.<br>What dide Melga & Guaneis,                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |              |
| They gather a<br>host, sail to                                                                       | . Bot gadred ost of Outlandeys.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 6600         |
| Scotland,<br>pour into the                                                                           | . Wiþ gret nauye o þe se þey <sup>1</sup> ryde,<br>& comen in alle by Scotlande syde;<br>Wyþ werre & wo þey dide gret noye,<br>. ffor Westmorland al gon þey struye;                                                                                                                                                       | 6604         |
| North country,<br>and waste it;<br>pass to the<br>South, and<br>meet no foes<br>but husband-<br>men, | Al þe northe contre þey wasted.<br>þey passed Humber, & southe hem hasted;<br>Non encountre <sup>2</sup> þey ne fond,<br>Bot husbonde-men þat tyled lond,<br>& werkmen, & oþer pedaille<br>þat coupe nought werre ne of bataille;<br>. ȝif any swyche stod ought <sup>3</sup> agayn,<br>Wyþ armed men sone were þey slayn. | 6608<br>6612 |
| who flee or are<br>killed.                                                                           | . Ilk man fro his owen gan fle,<br>& þo þat ne myghte, slayn was he:<br>How scholde þat londe kepe hym fro harmes, <sup>4</sup><br>þat naked ys of men of armes? <sup>5</sup>                                                                                                                                              | 6616         |
| How can a land<br>defend itself<br>without men of<br>arms?                                           | . A lond hedles <sup>6</sup> in tyme of nede,<br>. Ouer al þanne ys sorewe & drede;<br>& so was þenne bot cry & kare,<br>. Of socour & help þey were al bare;                                                                                                                                                              | 6620         |
|                                                                                                      | Bot <sup>7</sup> while þey hadde per bolde barons,<br>Saulike <sup>8</sup> held þey per castels & touns;<br>. Ouer alle landes þey schewed per <sup>9</sup> myghtes,<br>. þe whyles <sup>10</sup> þey hadde per noble knyghtes.                                                                                            | 6624         |
| The Britons<br>send messengers<br>to Maximian at<br>Rome,                                            | . þen chose þey of most bolde <sup>11</sup> & fers,<br>& sent hem to Rome as messengers<br>ffor help vnto Maximian;                                                                                                                                                                                                        |              |

<sup>1</sup> with a grete flete on flode to.  
[leaf 59, back, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> in no countrie.

<sup>3</sup> only of swik stode.

<sup>4</sup> How suld a lond be dredede.

<sup>5</sup> þat of knyghtes es al nahyd.

<sup>6</sup> heuedles.

<sup>7</sup> to.

<sup>8</sup> Saueley.

<sup>9</sup> þei mustird.

<sup>10</sup> to whyle.

<sup>11</sup> þei ches þat were baldest.

|                                                 |      |                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------------------------|
| And he þem sende sire Gracian ;                 | 6628 | and he sends<br>back Gratian<br>with two<br>legions, |
| Wyþ hym come two legyons                        |      |                                                      |
| pat wel socoured þe Bretouns ;                  |      |                                                      |
| þise Sarsynes <sup>1</sup> þeues þey drof away, |      | who drive the                                        |
| In til Irland ilkon fled þey.                   | 6632 | Saracen thieves<br>away to Ireland.                  |
| ¶ In þys tyme at Rome ros Valentyn              |      | But in Rome,                                         |
| Wyþ al hys kynde, em & cosyn ;                  |      | Valentine rebels                                     |
| Wyþ hym com kynges <sup>2</sup> of þe Est,      |      | against Maxi-                                        |
| Mo þan twenty, as seyh <sup>3</sup> þe Gest ;   | 6636 | mian,                                                |
| Bot þorow treson, y ne wot how,                 |      |                                                      |
| Algate Maximian þey slow.                       |      | kills him,                                           |
| þe Bretons þat Maximian ledde,                  |      |                                                      |
| Summe þey slowe, somme were fledde ;            | 6640 |                                                      |
| þan sesed Valentyn Rome <sup>4</sup> al eft,    |      | and seizes                                           |
| Al þat Maximian hym refte.                      |      | Rome.                                                |

¶ De Rege Graciano Romano.

|                                                     |                    |               |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| þys tydyng com to Gracian,                          | [leaf 29, col. 2.] |               |
| How Valentyn slow <sup>5</sup> Maxymian ;           | 6644               |               |
| & saw he was here cheuentayne, <sup>6</sup>         |                    | Gratian gets  |
| & dide hym coroune kyng of Bretayne,                |                    | crowned king  |
| And bar hym heye as a Tyraunt,                      |                    | of Britain,   |
| ffor þis was his custume & his haunt,               | 6648               | turns tyrant, |
| Pouere men to do þem wo ;                           |                    |               |
| Out of þer right he put þem fro,                    |                    | and does poor |
| & ful manye of þeym he slow ;                       |                    | men woe.      |
| þe riche he louede wel ynow.                        | 6652               |               |
| What dide þe mene folk & þe pedaille ? <sup>7</sup> |                    | For which the |
| Samned þem a gret bataille ;                        |                    | mean folk     |
| To pryue conseil le þey gon þem renge,              |                    |               |

<sup>1</sup> þis Saxins. (les hulagues, *Wace*, i. 289, l. 6253.)

<sup>2</sup> a kyng.

<sup>3</sup> Theodosius, so sais. (O Théodosien d'Orient, *Wace*, i. 289, l. 6258.)

<sup>4</sup> Valentyn seised utt est. [leaf 40.]

<sup>5</sup> þat he was dede.

<sup>6</sup> he saw him self' cheflan. P. transposes this line and l. 6666.

<sup>7</sup> poueraile.

take him pri-  
soner, and cut  
him in pieces.

On <sup>1</sup> Gracian þey wolde hem venge. 6656  
 . þey byseded hym sodeynly,<sup>2</sup>  
 . & token hym syþen *par* maistri,  
 & his body al to-hewe,  
 þe peces vntil houndes þrewa. 6660  
 þe Romayns þat were wyþ him comen,  
 Smerþly a-geyn to Rome þey nomen.

¶ De captiuitate Brytannie.

Melga and  
Guaneyns

come from Ire-  
land

with Norsemen,  
Danes, Scots,  
&c.,  
and pillage and  
burn the  
country.

The Britons  
cannot stop  
them,

Melga Guaneyns<sup>3</sup> herde wel how  
 pat þe poraille<sup>4</sup> Gracian slow ; 6664  
 . ffor Irlond þey come, ful<sup>5</sup> fayn  
 . pat sire Gracian was so slayn ;  
 þey gadered alle þe outlandeys  
 Of Norway men, wyþ þe Daneys, 6668  
 & <sup>6</sup> þe Scottes wyþ men of Irland,  
 & ouer-sette alle Northumberlande ;  
 þey passed Humber, pylede<sup>7</sup> & brent.  
 þen sawe þe Bretons þer lond al schent, 6672  
<sup>8</sup> . & þey hadde no myght to stoppe þer weye,<sup>9</sup>  
 . ffor nought þat þey coupe don or seye ;  
 . No prowre in pes ne myghte þey reste ;  
 . þer-on þey conseilled what was þe beste. 6676

¶ Hic miserunt Britones ad Romanos pro defensione  
eorum.

and send to the  
senators at  
Rome

¶ þey sente vnto þe senatours  
 Of Rome for help & socours,  
 As men þat þey most on affied,

<sup>1</sup> *of.*

<sup>2</sup> *þe biseged him priuely.*

<sup>3</sup> *Melga Guanys.* (Ganis et Ma-  
gan, Wace.)

<sup>4</sup> *poweraile.* (villain, Wace, l. 6281.)

<sup>5</sup> *& were.*

<sup>6</sup> *of.*

<sup>7</sup> *robbed.*

<sup>8</sup> P. puts here, for the next line,  
& þer folk so schamly deie.

<sup>9</sup> *myght stop weie.*

- . & in *seruage* to þem alyed, 6680  
 To helpe hem on haste now in þer nede, for help,  
 . ffor ay þey lyue wyþ pylours<sup>1</sup> in drede ;  
 & þey ne scholde neuere, for wele ne wo, promising  
 More out of þer conseil do,<sup>2</sup> 6684  
 Bot zelde hem þat þeym oughte to haue, to pay them  
 ȝyf þey<sup>3</sup> wolde helpe now þeym to saue. tribute.  
 Bot þe Romayns forgete nought The Romans  
 What schame byform<sup>4</sup> þey had hem<sup>5</sup> wrought remember the  
 So often & so fele syþe 6689 Britons' former  
 Whan þey moughte þer felonye kȝþe ; rebelliousness,  
 Natheles, twoo legions<sup>6</sup> þey sent, but they send  
 þat sone come, as hap þem lent, 6692 two legions,  
 & deliuered þem of þer enemys : who put Melga  
 To Scotland fledden Melga Gwanis. to flight,

¶ *Iam Romany venerunt, & fiery fecerunt Murum de  
 Thurlwal.*

- . pys Romayns dide þem conseyl take, and then resolve  
 . A wal vpon a dik to<sup>7</sup> make 6696 to build a wall  
 . ffro þe est se vnto<sup>8</sup> þe west, across the land.  
 . Agayns þer foos to saue þem best.  
 Ston þey dide gadere & graue, They get  
 . & masons alle þat þey myghte haue ; 6700 stones ;  
 . Ouer-þwert þe lond, þat ys, þe brede, and masons  
 þey made þe wal ar þat þey ȝede, build the wall  
 ¶ ffor by þe northe ende come alle þo  
 þat to þe lond broughte werre or wo. to keep out foes  
 þat contre hight þat tyme Deyre, 6704 from the  
 . Of þis half þe wal in ȝork-schire ; North,

<sup>1</sup> with robbours lyued all day.  
 [leaf 40, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> go. (n'istront, Wace, l. 6294.)

<sup>3</sup> if ȝei.

<sup>4</sup> MS. byform.

<sup>5</sup> what to þam befor þei.

<sup>6</sup> neuerþeles agayn. (Une légion  
 solement, Wace, i. 291, l. 6299.)

<sup>7</sup> did.

<sup>8</sup> est vnto.

|                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                           |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| the Picts' land.                                                                                                                      | . On <i>pat</i> <i>oper</i> half, y vnderstande,<br>. Men caldit þenne þe Peytes lande. <sup>1</sup>                                                                                      | 6708 |
| Men are set to<br>watch the wall.                                                                                                     | When þys land <sup>2</sup> was al dight,<br>& wardeyns set boþe <sup>3</sup> day & nyght<br>þat wal for to defende & lok,<br>. þat þey namore scape ne tok,                               | 6712 |
| The Romans go<br>south,<br>call the British<br>lords together<br>in London,                                                           | . Toward þe southe gan þey wende<br>. Whan þe wal was brought to þe ende.<br>At Londone þey sette a Parlement;<br>þe heye folk of alle, þyder þey went,                                   | 6716 |
| and warn them<br>that no Ro-<br>mans will come<br>there again;<br>the Britons<br>must learn<br>arms, and de-<br>fend them-<br>selves. | porwout þe lond ilka lordynge;<br>And þus þey seyde at þer sampninge:<br>" We wole wende fro þow to Rome,<br>" & neuere hider sende ne come.                                              | 6720 |
| The Britons<br>protest.                                                                                                               | " Be þe doughty, & lereþ <sup>4</sup> of armes,<br>" & quykly defende þow fro <sup>5</sup> harmes,<br>" ffor we ne mowe come so fer viage,<br>" Ne endure þe grete costage." <sup>6</sup> | 6724 |
| Then a wise<br>Roman                                                                                                                  | . þe Bretons seyde alle þer geynes.<br>. þenne stirte vp on of þe Romayns,<br>A wys man & a wel spekande,<br>& seyde, " Lordynges of þys land,                                            | 6728 |
| puts the Roman<br>view of the case:                                                                                                   | . " Lystneþ <sup>7</sup> now til y haue seyd;<br>. " þe Romayns reson on me ys leyd.                                                                                                      |      |

¶ *Hic Romany trugam renuerunt pro toto tempore,  
sic dixerunt.*

|                                                                               |                                                                                                                            |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <b>Nota.</b>                                                                  | " Lordes," he seide, " mani a <sup>8</sup> lore                                                                            |      |
| " Many a loss<br>have we and<br>our ancestors<br>suffered for you<br>Britons, | " Haue we suffred þis lond fore;<br>" & byfore [vs], <sup>9</sup> oure auncessours<br>" ffor þow han had ful harde stours. | 6732 |

<sup>1</sup> *cald it þan Peihthond.*<sup>2</sup> *wall.* (tot, Wace, l. 6314.)<sup>3</sup> *bi.*<sup>4</sup> *lere.*<sup>5</sup> *defend þow.*<sup>6</sup> *ffor we ne may suffre þe costage,  
so often com so fer viage.*

[leaf 40, back.]

<sup>7</sup> *listens.*<sup>8</sup> *many tyme.*<sup>9</sup> *befor vs.*

- " Truage 3e gaf, & vmwhile<sup>1</sup> nought ;  
 " When we hit hadde, dere was<sup>2</sup> hit bought ;  
 " Litel perof were we amended, 6737 and little have  
 " ffor ay for 3ow wel more we spende.<sup>3</sup> we got for it.  
 " 3yf o 3er til vs we 3e hit 3olde,  
 " Two 3er after 3e ne wolde ; 6740 If you paid  
 " 3yf o kynges tyme 3e were vs trwe, your tribute  
 " To so mykel after<sup>4</sup> 3our wrong was newe,— one year, you  
 " Til whan 3e mighte onst stonde<sup>5</sup> ageyn— stopt it the  
 " Ne louede 3e neuere man Romayn ; 6744 You never  
 " Ay when we come to þys lond, liked us Ro-  
 " To lese oure right som cheson 3e fond, mans.  
 " And oper wronges til vs y-nowe ; You were  
 " An[d] alderworst,<sup>6</sup> oure men 3e slowe. 6748 and killing our always rebelling  
 " Now 3e haue nede, 3e vs byseke, [lf. 22, bk., col. 2.] men.  
 " And het vs þanne to ben vs meke. Now you're in  
 " Whan we han holpen 3ow in cas, need, you pro-  
 " þen do 3e wors, & more trespas ; 6752 meek ; but  
 " Til vs 3e bere 3ow as lyouns, when we've  
 " & waytes<sup>7</sup> vs wyþ sum tresons before, you've  
 " ffor to wyþ-halden vs oure right, always been  
 " Oper yuel hit gyuen,<sup>8</sup> & þat wiþ fyght. 6756 worse to us  
 " Wel bettere were hit al for-sake, afterwards.  
 " þan suffre þe wo we þer-fore take ; We mean to  
 " Our costes ar grete, & [we] wone<sup>9</sup> fer heþen, give you up.  
 " & 3e haue ay nede, & ar byneþen ; 6760  
 " & we ne mowe nought<sup>10</sup> come al day. We can't come  
 " Dop now 3our self as 3e best may ! to you every  
 " May we ones take til Rome, Get on as you  
 " ffor no man eft schol we here come. 6764 best can.  
 " To saue 3our self, bygynneþ<sup>11</sup> now, We shall never  
 come from  
 Rome again

<sup>1</sup> som tyme.<sup>2</sup> we.<sup>3</sup> more for 3ow we haf dispendid.<sup>4</sup> tuis als mykell.<sup>5</sup> to while 3e myght ouht stand.<sup>6</sup> aldermast.<sup>7</sup> waite.<sup>8</sup> ouer wikly gif.<sup>9</sup> It is grete coste we.<sup>10</sup> we may not all way.<sup>11</sup> bigynnes. [leaf 40, back, col. 2.]

to protect you.  
Your ancestors  
were bold  
conquerors.

**Nota.**

They took care  
of themselves;  
but you can't.  
What it's along  
of, I don't  
know,  
that you can't  
defend your-  
selves.

Change, and  
grow bold!

For now a rout  
of barbarians  
frightens you.

We've put a  
wall across the  
worst place, for  
you.

Mind you  
guard it well.  
Stop invaders  
landing, too.

" ffor we namore wil mayntene 3ow.  
" Wyteþ wel,<sup>1</sup> 3our auncessours:  
" Were bolde & hardy conquerours, 6768  
" ꝥ Belyn/ Constantyn/ & Maxymian/, Brytonum  
" Alle londes to Rome þey wan; Inperatores.  
" þey mayntend hem self, & dide prowessse.  
" Bot now of 3ow, oþer weis hit esse!<sup>2</sup> 6772  
" Y ne wot wher-on hit ys long,<sup>3</sup>  
" On 3ow þer ne comeþ non oft<sup>4</sup> so strong  
" þat 3e ne myghte 3ow self defende,  
" 3yf any grace on 3ow myghte desende.<sup>5</sup> 6776  
" Bot 3e [are]<sup>6</sup> al gon out of kynde;  
" 3our wikkednesse now 3e fynde!  
" Turneþ ageyn, & wexeþ<sup>7</sup> bolde,  
" & þenkes<sup>8</sup> on 3our auncestres olde, 6780  
" þat riche regions conquered!  
" ffor fyght ne fondyng were þey ferd.  
" fful late schul 3e now conquere,  
" Syn<sup>9</sup> route of rascaille may 3ow ay fere. 6784  
" Now schal bi sene what hit schal<sup>10</sup> vaille  
" When Outlandeys comen 3ow to<sup>11</sup> assaille?  
" We haue 3ow closed þer most nede was;  
" & 3yf 3e defende wel þat pas 6788  
" Wyþ archers & wyþ mangeneles,  
" & wel kepe þe carneles,<sup>12</sup>  
" þer-on 3e may boþe scheote & kaste.  
" Wexeþ bolde, & fendeþ<sup>13</sup> 3ow faste! 6792  
" þer Outlandeys aryues & rydes,<sup>14</sup>  
" Makeþ þer hauenes to kepe þo sydes,

<sup>1</sup> wittes wele.

<sup>2</sup> ways is.

<sup>3</sup> where it is long.

<sup>4</sup> comes non ofte.

<sup>5</sup> of 3ow descend.

<sup>6</sup> ere.

<sup>7</sup> Turnes agayn & waxes.

<sup>8</sup> thynk.

<sup>9</sup> þat.

<sup>10</sup> be sene what it may.

<sup>11</sup> witt 3ow.

<sup>12</sup> kirkels.

<sup>13</sup> waxes bold & fende.

<sup>14</sup> P. omits the next four lines.

- " & at oper recettes fele,  
 . " pat non alien on 3ow stele. 6796  
 . " penk, 3our fadres wonne fraunchise!<sup>1</sup> Be no more  
 " Be 3e namore in operes seruise, tributaries, but  
 " Bot frely lyues<sup>2</sup> 3our lyues ende! free men!  
 . " We taken now leue, fro 3ow to<sup>3</sup> wende." Good bye!"  
 At þat word was mikel cry, 6801  
 ffor manion wep ful delfully.<sup>4</sup> The Britons  
 . Was per nought elles for to seye; weep,  
 þe Romayns þam keste,<sup>5</sup> & wente per weye, but the Ro-  
 And seyden hem þere for certeyn 6805 mans go, and  
 þey ne wolde her neuere come eft ageyn. say again that  
 they'll never  
 come back.
- Gwanyus Melga<sup>6</sup> hadde per spyas, [leaf 30.] Gwanis and  
 . Waytyng ay<sup>7</sup> by stretes & styas 6808 Melga,  
 . How longe þe Romayns scholde<sup>8</sup> soiourne,  
 & whan þey scholde<sup>8</sup> to Rome-ward tourne;  
 & al so sone as þey forþ nam, as soon as the  
 Melga Gwaneys<sup>9</sup> to þys lond cam, 6812 Romans go,  
 Robbed & brente Northumberland; plunder North-  
 . Ageyns hem non encountre þei<sup>10</sup> ne fand; umberland  
 Made þey neuere stynt ne stal  
 Tyl þey come to þe Romayns wal. 6816 up to the Ro-  
 þe Bretons were redy þeron aboute, man wall.  
 To gyue bataille to peym wypoute: This the Bri-  
 per myghte men se on boþe partys tons defend,  
 . A scharp schour by-twyxten enemys;<sup>11</sup> 6820 and  
 Arewes, quareles, þykkely fleye,<sup>12</sup> a sharp fight  
 Wip slynges casten stones heye. takes place,

<sup>1</sup> þinkes 3our fadres wan fran-  
 chise.

<sup>2</sup> lyf to.

<sup>3</sup> we wilt fro 3ow for euer.

<sup>4</sup> doelfulli.

<sup>5</sup> hissed & went away.

<sup>6</sup> Gwanus Melga. (Ganis et  
 Magan, Wace, i. 296, l. 6399.)

<sup>7</sup> waitand.

<sup>8</sup> suld.

<sup>9</sup> Melga Gwanis. [leaf 41.]

<sup>10</sup> no cuntre ne.

<sup>11</sup> schaftes schoten bitwex enmyes.

<sup>12</sup> þikli fleie.



|                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| but the Britons<br>know little of<br>war,                                                                                          | þo þat on þe wal faught,<br>fful mykel scape sone þey <sup>1</sup> laught ; 6824<br>þo þat were newe dobbed knyghtes,<br>þey coupe bot litel þo <sup>2</sup> of fightes ; <sup>3</sup><br>þe arewes come so þykke so <sup>4</sup> reyn,<br>þey coupe nought coeuere þer eye <sup>5</sup> þer ageyn ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| and cannot<br>stand against<br>the shower of<br>arrows and<br>stones.                                                              | & also þykkely come þe stones, 6829<br>Wip schot of dartes, <sup>6</sup> al at ones ;<br>Vneþes myghte non kepe his eye,<br>þat he nas y poynt bakward to flye ; 6832<br>Was þer non so hardy Bretoun,<br>þat hym ne þought long til he were down.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| The Picts<br>undermine the<br>wall, and<br>fill up parts of<br>the ditch,<br><br>so that they can<br>drive carts into<br>the city. | þey wyþoute were mynyng <sup>7</sup> alle ;<br>þe wal þey holede, & dide hit falle, 6836<br>& fulde <sup>8</sup> in fele stedes þe dyke,<br>þat wal & wey was euene y-like,<br>& made þer-þorow pleyn passage<br>Wyþ cart & wayn, wip <sup>9</sup> hors & page. 6840<br>þey robbed & slowen <sup>10</sup> al aboute,<br>ffor þey fond non þey hadde of doute ;<br>Byforn þat tyme <sup>11</sup> no man fonde<br>So manye at ones slayn in þys lond 6844<br>Wip so delful deþ & vyl,<br>Of zonge knyghte, & so gentil.<br>Whylom Bretons bere <sup>12</sup> þe pris,<br>Now al þer prowessse down hit lys, 6848<br>& þorow hem schal hit neuere a-ryse,<br>Bot þorow grace of oþer <sup>13</sup> queyntyse.<br>þen sent þey to Rome, to þe senatours,<br>& preyed hem ȝut of more socours. 6852 |

<sup>1</sup> so mykell shape non.<sup>2</sup> þei ne couth not ȝit.
<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. adds,  
 þei couth not þe querels scurne  
 ne no quantise in bataile turne.
<sup>4</sup> als þik as.<sup>5</sup> not cover þam.<sup>6</sup> with þe dartes &.<sup>7</sup> myand.<sup>8</sup> filled.<sup>9</sup> to.<sup>10</sup> slough.<sup>11</sup> befor or þat.<sup>12</sup> som tyme bretons bare,<sup>13</sup> þer.

þe Romayns saiden, 'þey ne wolde;  
 ' To Bretayne þey neuere come ne scholde;  
 ' On oþer halue þey hadde to do;  
 ' þey wolde namore be trauailed so, 6856  
 ' Bot gete þem help where þey myghte haue,  
 ' þey wolde þem neyþer slo ne saue.'  
 . Whan þe Romayns þus vs forsok,  
 . þe date<sup>1</sup> of Cryst was wryten in bok, 6860  
 . ff four hundred zer, & nyne, were gon A.D. 409.  
 . Syn Iesu of Marye tok flesche & bon.

ff *Hic miserunt Guncelinum Archiepiscopum ad  
 Regem Minoris Brytannie.*

ff Al þe clergie of þe contrees, [leaf 30, col 2.] The British  
 . & lordynges of londes & fees, 6864 clergy  
 At Londone þey toke þer conseil,<sup>2</sup> and lords  
 . What myght hem helpe in þer turpeyl:<sup>3</sup> consult as to  
 " pys<sup>4</sup> aliens al day vs noyes, what is to be  
 " & þe Cristen blod destruyes. 6868 done.  
 " Bot Iesu Crist visite vs sone,  
 " We Cristen men schul be fordone."  
 þen was at Londone þe bischopes se,  
 When Cristendam com<sup>5</sup> first to be. 6872  
 þe Erchebischoþ highte Guncelyns, Archbishop  
 A ful holy clerk was<sup>6</sup> in deuynes; Guncelyn  
 pys Erchebischoþ his conseil tok  
 At þo þat pis lond schulden lok, 6876  
 þat he wolde wende to þe Lasse Bretayne,  
 þer Conan vmwhile<sup>7</sup> was cheftayne. resolves to go  
 Aldroan highte<sup>8</sup> þe kyng was þan, and ask help of  
 þe ferþe kyng after Conan. 6880 king Aldroan.

<sup>1</sup> birth. [leaf 41, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> com att to a comon conseile.

<sup>3</sup> how þei mot turne þat tirpeile.

<sup>4</sup> þei said.

<sup>5</sup> gan.

<sup>6</sup> a holy man clerk.

<sup>7</sup> som tyme.

<sup>8</sup> Adroel hight.

Aldroan receives him well

pe bischop wente in to þe lond,  
Sire Aldroel þer kyng he fond;  
pe kyng receyued hym curteysly—  
His fame was god, his stat was hey,— 6884  
He asked what he so fer had sought,  
& what tydynge he hadde brought.

and Guncelyn tells him why he has come.

“ Lord,” he seyde, “ ȝow þar nought wene,  
“ Why y am comen ȝe may wel mene,  
“ & what encheson me hider led, 6889

“ Aliens destroy us.  
Since Maximian

took away all our doughty folk,  
we have always gone down.  
No friends have we found, but plenty of foes.

We cannot protect our own land.  
Our old helpers, the Romans, have forsaken us,

“ pat y to ȝow so hastily<sup>1</sup> sped;  
“ ffor ȝe nar nought<sup>2</sup> born so late,  
“ Ne bytwyxt vs so fer gate, 6892  
“ pat ȝe nauē<sup>3</sup> herd tydynge seye,  
“ How alyens don vs schamely deye.  
“ Syþen Maximien went vs fro,  
“ We han y-lyued in sorewe & wo. 6896  
“ pat þys lond þorow conqueste wan,  
“ & gaf hit þyn auncestre, sire Conan,  
“ Oure doughti folk al wyþ hym went,  
“ & sipen were we neuere bot schent. 6900  
“ Donward syþen haue we gon;  
“ ffrendes fond we fewe or non  
“ pat euere vs wolde socoure or were;  
“ Bot to fele we fynde þat wolde<sup>4</sup> vs dere. 6904  
“ Whylom,<sup>5</sup> Bretons landes wonnen,  
“ pe renoun of þeym þorow lande ronne;<sup>6</sup>  
“ Now ar þey nought so mykel of myght  
“ pat þer lond may halde<sup>7</sup> to ryght. 6908  
“ þey of Rome halp vs whylom;  
“ Now haue þey for-sake vs alle & sum,  
“ ffor fer<sup>8</sup> wonyng & gret costage,

<sup>1</sup> *hasty.*

<sup>2</sup> *ȝe ne ere nol.*

<sup>3</sup> *haf.* [leaf 41, back.]

<sup>4</sup> *Inouh we fynd þat will.*

<sup>5</sup> *som tyme.*

<sup>6</sup> *remes ronnen.*

<sup>7</sup> *londes may hold.*

<sup>8</sup> *þer.*

- "pat often mys-spedde<sup>1</sup> in per passage. 6912  
 "Of folk we are ynowe zyt leued,  
 "Bot kepere non, ne kyng, to heued,  
 "pat can oure folk to bataille lede, and we have no  
 "Ne oure enemis to haue of no drede. 6916 king to lead us  
 "Bot we haue help by tyme<sup>2</sup> now to battle.  
 "Of oper landes, oper of zow, If you wo'n't  
 "We kenne neuere<sup>3</sup> oure cursed kare, we don't know  
 "So fer doun bynepe we are. 6920 what we may  
 "I ne may nought telle, for sor of<sup>4</sup> herte, suffer.  
 "Al oure sorewe pat ys so<sup>5</sup> smerte,  
 "pat we han had, & zit haue;  
 "Bot God wyle, nought may vs saue. 6924  
 "Here-fore am y to zow comen, [leaf 30, back, col. 1.] For this I am  
 "As to kyþ of oure kynde<sup>6</sup> nomen, come to you,  
 "ffor ze ar Brutes,<sup>7</sup> & we Breton; our kinsman.  
 "& for pat skyle & pat reson, 6928  
 "Help vs now to venge our foo,  
 "As we wolde zow &<sup>8</sup> ze were wo. Help us to  
 "porow right lawe write men fynde,<sup>9</sup> avenge us on  
 "pat men oughte to helpen<sup>10</sup> per kynde; 6932 our foes!  
 "& hit ys also worldes honur, You ought to  
 "At nede per frendes for to socour. help your kin.  
 "pey no sybrede of kynde cam, You ought to  
 "Helpe ze scholde Crystendam." 6936 help your fellow  
 Christians."

Whan Aldroel herde so Gwyncelyn speke, Aldroan weeps  
 ffor sorewe hym þoughte his herte wolde for pity,  
 breke;  
 pe teres ronnen out of his eyne,  
 ffor pat pey were in so gret pyne, 6940

<sup>1</sup> misferd.

<sup>2</sup> One stroke too many in the MS.

m. P. at þis tyme.

<sup>3</sup> cone not.

<sup>4</sup> for sore.

<sup>5</sup> how it is.

<sup>6</sup> g. our kyn.

<sup>7</sup> ere brettis.

<sup>8</sup> for an, if. P. if.

<sup>9</sup> writen we fynd.

<sup>10</sup> auh to help; and leaves out the  
 next two lines.

|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| and says,<br>"I will do all I<br>can to help you.                             | Gretand ageyn he hym answered,<br>" ffor þe doel þat y haue herd,<br>" Y schal do al my trauaille<br>" þat y to ȝow may helpe or vaille.                                                                                                                                                        | 6944         |
| I can't go my-<br>self, as the<br>Frenchmen are<br>always warring<br>on me,   | <sup>1</sup> " ȝyf y myghte my self, y wolde <sup>2</sup> fayn,<br>" Bot Frensche men <sup>3</sup> me chace ageyn; <sup>1</sup><br>" þey werre on me al þat þey may,<br>" My self am þer a[t] ylka fray; <sup>4</sup>                                                                           | 6948         |
| but I'll send my<br>valiant brother<br>Constantine,<br>with 2,000<br>knights, | " I wol nought leue my litel þynge,<br>" Myn heritage, for more wynnyng <sup>5</sup> ;<br>" I haue a broþer, sire Constaunt, <sup>6</sup><br>" God werroure, & man valliaunt;                                                                                                                   | 6952         |
| to Britain."                                                                  | " Wyþ two þousand <sup>7</sup> y schal hym sende,<br>" Wyþ gode knyghtes, ȝour lond to fende;<br>" Hym to Bretaigne schaltow lede,<br>" þorow gode grace for <sup>8</sup> to spede."                                                                                                            | 6956         |
| Constantine is<br>sent for,<br>Archbishop<br>Guncelyn<br>blesses him,         | He sente þenne for Constantyn,<br>& bytaughte hym sire Gwyncelyn.<br>Whan Guncelyn byheld þe knyght/<br>þe hand he lyfte þat was þe ryght,<br>& gaf Constant þe benisoun:<br>þe knyght byfore hym kneled doun,<br>þe bisschop foure wordes seyde;<br>þe wordes arn, o <sup>9</sup> Latyn leyde, | 6960<br>6964 |
| and Aldroan<br>gives him 4,000<br>men-at-arms,<br>and 3,000 foot.             | " Christus vincit, Christus reingnat!<br>" Christus vincit, Christus inperat! <sup>10</sup><br>þe kyng þen bitaughtym four þousand <sup>11</sup><br>Of men of armes wel <sup>12</sup> seruand,<br>.& þre þousand men of fote.                                                                   | 6968         |

<sup>1-1</sup> Wace gives these two lines  
after the sailing of Constantine, l.  
6569-70 (*Wace*.)

<sup>2</sup> *my self wold.* [leaf 41, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> *frankis men.*      <sup>4</sup> *at ilk assay.*

<sup>5</sup> *MS. wynnyng.*

<sup>6</sup> *MS. Constantyn.* P. has *Con-  
stant.*

<sup>7</sup> *trois mil armées, Wace, l. 6553.*

<sup>8</sup> *godes grace wele.*

<sup>9</sup> *ere of.*

<sup>10</sup> *imperat.*

<sup>11</sup> *bitauht him knyghtes tuo þousand.*  
(*trois milliers, Wace, l. 6564.*)

<sup>12</sup> *tuo þousand squiers þam.*

- . þe kyng þan seyde, " þys<sup>1</sup> may do bote  
 . " To saue þour lond ilka del.  
 . " My kynde þer-inne, gret þem wel." 6972

**Syre Guncelyn aryued at Toteneys,**

- & sire Constant wyþ his harneys.  
 pat herde þe Bretons alle aboute,  
 po þat er skulked for drede & doute. 6976  
 Out of wodes & out of mountaynes  
 (pat durste nought er<sup>2</sup> come to þe playnes,) The Britons  
 To Constant come þen men ynowe, hiding places,  
 pat þer enemys ouer al slowe. 6980 and he slays  
 . He dide hym vntil Westmorland; their enemies,  
 þe countre al wasted he fand;  
 . Al þe lond, leye hit lay,  
 . þe folk for fere wer<sup>3</sup> fled away; 6984  
 . Hadde þey nought vn-to þe<sup>4</sup> fode, [leaf 30, back, col. 2.]  
 . Bot bestes wylde, & fische on<sup>5</sup> flode.  
 . þeyr enemys þer þey broughte of lyue,  
 . þe remenaunt out of lond gon dryue. 6988 and drives out  
 those he does  
 not slay.

¶ **Apud Cirencestriam coronatus est Rex  
 Constantinus.**

- To Circestre Constant wente,  
 & held þer a parlymente.  
 Sire Guncelyn þer gaf hym þe coroun;  
 per-of was fayn ilka Bretoun. 6992  
 penn tok he wyf auenaunt & god,  
 Sib þe bischop, of Romayns blod.  
 p[r]e childre on hure he gat auenaunt,  
 þe eldest, highte his name Constant; 6996  
 Constantine is  
 crowned king  
 of Britain,  
 marries a fair  
 wife,  
 and has three  
 children.  
 1. Constant,

<sup>1</sup> *kyng said þise.*

<sup>2</sup> *þat durst not are.*

<sup>3</sup> *for pouerte.* [leaf 42.]

<sup>4</sup> *þer.*

<sup>5</sup> *in.*

246 CONSTANTINE HAS THREE SONS, AND IS KILLED.

|                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                         |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| who turns<br>monk ;                                                                             | He dide hym norice <sup>1</sup> at Wynchestre,<br>And 3ald <sup>2</sup> hym monk in þat same estre;<br>þat oþer sone highte Aurelyus,<br>His to-name was Ambrosius ;                    | 7000 |
| 2. Aurelius<br>Ambrosius ;                                                                      | þe þridde child, Vter he hight,<br>þat lyuede lengest, & best was knyght.<br>þe bischop, þorow leue of þe kyng,<br>Hadde þe two in his kepyng.                                          | 7004 |
| 3. Uther.                                                                                       | 3yf Constant had lyued ani sel, <sup>3</sup><br>He schuld haue mended þe lond ful wel ;<br>Two <sup>4</sup> 3er he regned, & namo ;<br>. Lyst how a traitour dide hym slo :             | 7008 |
| Constantine<br>reigns two<br>years,<br>and is killed by<br>a traitor,<br>the Welsh<br>Vortiger. | . ƿ On ffortyger, of Walsche blod, <sup>5</sup><br>. þat neuere in truþe no stude stod, <sup>6</sup><br>. He 3erned mikel þe kyndam.<br>. Lyst how þe treson fro hym <sup>7</sup> cam : | 7012 |
| Hear now:                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                         |      |

ƿ De quodam Pycto traditore.

|                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                        |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Constantine has<br>a Pictish<br>servant in<br>league with<br>Vortiger, | Y þe kynges court serued a Peyght,<br>. þat was þorow ffortegers deseit ; <sup>8</sup> —<br>þis Peið, longe wiþ þe kyng had ben ;<br>Of treson he þoughte ay by-twen ; | 7016 |
| and one day,<br>while alone<br>with the king,                          | þys Peyt 3ede wyþ þe kyng a day<br>Vntil <sup>9</sup> an herber alone to play ;<br>. Bot hit was perceyued of non<br>. Whider þe kyng & þe Peyt was gon.               | 7020 |
|                                                                        | þe kyng of treson wende nought,<br>. Bot þe Peyt þeron he þought ;<br>As þey boþe to-gyder sat,<br>. & speken þer of many what,                                        | 7024 |
|                                                                        | þe kyng til hym gaf no tent.                                                                                                                                           |      |

<sup>1</sup> norish.

<sup>2</sup> mad.

<sup>3</sup> any seele.

<sup>4</sup> ten.

<sup>5</sup> One Vortiger of Wales blode.

<sup>6</sup> while stode.

<sup>7</sup> listes how þis treson for him.

<sup>8</sup> þorgh Vortigers sleiht.

<sup>9</sup> In to.

pat saw þe Peyt, & his knyf out hent,  
& smot þe kyng vntil<sup>1</sup> þe hert,  
& fledde away also smert.

the Pict stabs  
him, and flees.

7028

Pryuely þat fame zede  
pat fforteger had don<sup>2</sup> þat dede.  
.fforteger was of þe Walscherye,<sup>3</sup>  
.pat euere louede trycherye;

Vortiger had it  
done,—one of  
the treacherous

7032 Welshmen,—

<sup>4</sup>. Queynte he was, & fer coupe þenke  
.To compasse a wykked blenke;<sup>4</sup>  
.ffaire he spak þer he wolde gyle;  
. & þer he hated, þer wolde he smyle;  
. Wel coupe he preyse & lakke somdel,  
. & treson coupe he techen wel:—  
. & somme þat arn at þis tyme here,  
.pat craft of hym nought nedep<sup>5</sup> lere.—

a plotter,  
a hypocrite,

7036

and a conspi-  
rator.

7040 (We've got  
some like him  
now.)

# ¶ De electione Constanti Monachi in Regem.

¶ þe clergie for þis dide make asemble,  
Whilk of þe children best kyng myght<sup>6</sup> be;

[leaf 31.] The Britons  
consult on who  
shall be king.

Bot þey were so lytel & zonge,  
Reson coupe þey non wiþ tonge.

7044

Constant was eldest & mere,  
& was a monk, a man of lere.

They resolve  
that Constant  
the monk

þey seide atones, alle & som,<sup>7</sup>  
þem noughte nout<sup>8</sup> reue hym fro religion;<sup>9</sup>

Ne lawe nolde hit by no weye,<sup>10</sup>

7049

A monk to take fro his abbeye:

To take an oper, þe<sup>11</sup> Conseil ches.

shall not be.

þen stirte vp Forteger in al þe pres,

7052 But Vortiger  
says that

& seide, "Hit is to drede no þyng,

<sup>1</sup> to. [leaf 42.]

<sup>2</sup> Vortiger gart do.

<sup>3</sup> an erle þat lufed tricherie.

<sup>4</sup> Wace, lines 6638–40.

<sup>5</sup> þat of him þar no thyng.

<sup>6</sup> childre kyng mot.

<sup>7</sup> it myght not be don.

<sup>8</sup> (=ne oughte not.) P. ne oughte  
not.

<sup>9</sup> to take him fro religion.

<sup>10</sup> of no right we se no way.

<sup>11</sup> take on þe tuo þer.



|                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Constant's<br>being a monk<br>doesn't matter :                               | " Of þe monk to make a kyngē.<br>" He ys eldest ;—of þe habite no tale !—<br>" þe opere arn ȝonge, & ouer smale. 7056<br>" Y graunte non oper kyng to be.<br>" ffor al þe synne, y take on me."<br>Non oper assented to þat dome,<br>þat þe monk scholde a kyngē bycome; 7060<br>þey dredde <sup>1</sup> swylk a þyng bygynne ;<br>Bot fforteger dredde <sup>1</sup> nought þat synne :<br>What he wold do, non durste hym werne,<br>He goes to<br>Winchester, To Wynchestre he hyed hym ȝerne, 7064<br>He asked leue atte priour<br>To speke wyþ Constant y þe parlour :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| and tells Con-<br>stant                                                      | ¶ " Constant," he seide, " þy lord ys ded ;<br>" þy breþere ar ȝonge ; what ys þy red ? 7068<br>" Y wolde þou haddest <sup>2</sup> þe herytage,<br>" ffor þou art man most of age.<br>" Wiltow <sup>3</sup> auaunce my rente, my fe,<br>" & loue me wel, & triste on me. 7072<br>" þy blake cloþes schalt <sup>4</sup> þou loþe,<br>" & y þe richest y schal <sup>4</sup> þe cloþe ;<br>" þy monkhod þow schalt <sup>4</sup> al weyue,<br>" þe heritage of þe reome reseýue." 7076<br>pys monk was blent wyþ veyn glorie ; <sup>5</sup><br>Abyte & ordre he let al flye,<br>ffor he ȝerned more pryde þan prow,<br>& wel more vice þan vertu. 7080<br>þat fforteger asked, he hym hight,<br>& þer-to his troupe he dide hym plyght.<br>Out of his abite he hym schok,<br>Syþen out of þe abbeye hym tok ; 7084<br>In faire cloþes he hym cledde,<br>Wyp hym to Londone Constant he leddē. <sup>6</sup> |
| king he'll make<br>him.                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| He, Vortiger,<br>doesn't care for<br>the sin of it.                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| that if he'll<br>love and trust<br>him,                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| he'll get him<br>the kingdom.<br>Constant<br>throws off his<br>monk's habit, |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| plights his troth<br>to Vortiger,                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| leaves his<br>abbey,<br>goes to London,                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

<sup>1</sup> *dred.*<sup>2</sup> *I. wold þou had.* [leaf 42, back.]<sup>3</sup> *wilt.*<sup>4</sup> *satt.*<sup>5</sup> *monke ȝerned seignorie.*<sup>6</sup> *London he him led.*

Was noman wyþ-seyde hym o<sup>1</sup> nay ;  
 . pey seye hit was þe monkes<sup>2</sup> pay. 7088  
 . To somone þe folk anon pey bed ;<sup>3</sup> summons the  
 Bot perchebischop þat tyme was ded<sup>4</sup> people,  
 þat felle to make þe corounement ;  
 per-to non oper durste consent ; 7092  
 Bot fforteger þe coroune forþ fet, and is crowned  
 And on Constantes heued hit set ; by Vortiger.  
<sup>5</sup> [was þer non oper benyson,  
 bot Vortiger set on þe croun,]<sup>5</sup> 7096  
 & Constant þe coroune tok,  
 & ordre & habite al forsok ;  
 þus to worschiþe gan he lende,  
 Wip schame he parted<sup>6</sup> at his ende. 7100

¶ *Hic ffortygernus traditor factus est custos Regny  
 sub Monacho Rege.*

þenne ffortyger hadde alle þe maystrie, [1r. 31, col. 2.] Vortiger does  
 pe kyng at wille, & þe marchalsye ;<sup>7</sup> what he likes  
 . Al to-gedere þe kyng he ledde, with king  
 . & al he dide þat he hym redde ; Constant,  
 pe kyng dide al as fforteger wylde, 7104  
 & al his conseil he fulfylde.  
 He saw þe kyng coupe no god,  
 Ne kynde skile nought vnderstod ; 7108  
<sup>8</sup> [on clostire skill couth he maste,  
 & his breþer with þe leste.]<sup>8</sup>  
 He sey þe force of þe barons falle,

<sup>1</sup> no man þat said him.

<sup>2</sup> sawe it was þe mokes [so in MS.].

<sup>3</sup> non ne beed.

<sup>4</sup> P. adds (wrongly) line 7086  
 again:—

with him to London Constant he led.

<sup>5-8</sup> These two lines are from the

Petyt MS., representing lines 6677-8  
 of Wace, i. 308.

<sup>6</sup> schame departid.

<sup>7</sup> marchaucie. (senescaucie, Wace,  
 i. 308, l. 6695.)

<sup>8-8</sup> These two lines are from P.,  
 leaf 42, back, col. 2, and represent  
 Wace's lines 6701-2, vol. i. p. 309.

|                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                          | & saw his stat heyest of alle,                                                                                                                                                                               | 7112 |
| and schemes to<br>get the kingdom<br>for himself.        | <sup>1</sup> [þe folk discord nouht in a witt;<br>þan he þouht in hert full stift,] <sup>1</sup><br>& þoughte þe regne haue in <sup>2</sup> his syde;<br>Her whuche a deseyte <sup>3</sup> he spak þat tyde: | 7116 |
| He tells Con-<br>stant                                   | ¶ "Of o þyng, sires, <sup>4</sup> y wot right wel,<br>" þer-of ȝe owen to wyte <sup>5</sup> som del,                                                                                                         |      |
| that the Danes                                           | " þat þe Daneys, wyþ men of Northweye, <sup>6</sup><br>" On ȝow wyl þey lyue & deye;                                                                                                                         | 7120 |
|                                                          | " & for þou art no knyght <sup>7</sup> of armes,<br>" þe more þey wayte þis lond wyþ harmes;                                                                                                                 |      |
| will invade<br>Britain next<br>summer,                   | " On vs þey wyle þis somer <sup>8</sup> haste,<br>" þy casteles take, þy lond to-waste;                                                                                                                      | 7124 |
|                                                          | " Here-of y rede þou nyme <sup>9</sup> ȝeme,<br>" þy lond to fende, þy folk to queme."                                                                                                                       |      |
| and he must<br>garrison his<br>castles against<br>them.  | In casteles he sette garnysons <sup>10</sup><br>ffor þe drede of oþer traysons; <sup>11</sup>                                                                                                                | 7128 |
|                                                          | " To þo þat castels coupe loke,<br>" To swylke y wolde þat þou hem toke."                                                                                                                                    |      |
| Constant puts<br>everything into<br>Vortiger's<br>hands, | þan seyde þe kyng to ffortyger,<br>" Tak þou þe lokyng <sup>12</sup> in þy power;                                                                                                                            | 7132 |
|                                                          | " As þou wilt, hit schal be so;<br>" Ouer þe wol y þat noman do;                                                                                                                                             |      |
|                                                          | " þe castelles alle y þe bykenne, <sup>13</sup><br>" Now loke þat noman slo ne brenne.                                                                                                                       | 7136 |
|                                                          | " In þy conseil onlyk am <sup>14</sup> y,<br>" Loke to me þou do truely.                                                                                                                                     |      |
| and exhorts<br>him to be true<br>to him.                 | " Of cites & of tresor al;<br>" Right as þou wilt, so be hit schal."                                                                                                                                         | 7140 |

<sup>1-1</sup> These two lines are from P.,  
and represent Wace's lines 6705-6,  
vol. i. p. 309.

<sup>2</sup> to haf þe regne on.

<sup>3</sup> here a desceite.

<sup>4</sup> sir.

<sup>5</sup> auh to witte.

<sup>6</sup> with þe Norweie.

<sup>7</sup> ert no kyng.

<sup>8</sup> þe soner.

<sup>9</sup> take.

<sup>10</sup> castels set þi warnisours.

<sup>11</sup> traitours.

<sup>12</sup> take þe kepyng.

<sup>13</sup> biken . . . bren.

<sup>14</sup> conseile þan.

- ƿenne was ffortyger at ese,  
 ffor alle þe strengþes he gan to sese.<sup>1</sup>  
 When he had alle þys forceresses,<sup>2</sup>  
 Wyp cites, tounes, & alle richesses,<sup>3</sup>  
 7144 towns, and  
 . 3yt he þoughte on oþer<sup>4</sup> wyse treasure,  
 . To contreoue a fals queyntyse:  
 "Sire," he seyde, "3yf þou wilt do  
 "pat y schal conseilþe þe to, 7148 and then ad-  
 "þy lond schaltow ful wel saue, vises Constant  
 " & do þyn enemys of þe stond awe.<sup>5</sup> to  
 "Sent for knyghtes þat conne of sleytes.<sup>6</sup> send for many  
 " & þat ar bolde men in feygþtes;<sup>7</sup> 7152 crafty and bold  
 "Lat þeym be alle þy souders, knights  
 "ffor of alle kyndes þey knowe þe maners;  
 "ffor 3yf þey be y þy court wyþynne, to be in his  
 "On whilk side þat<sup>8</sup> werre bygynne, 7156 court,  
 "þen may þou sende hem aboute,  
 "To serche of wham þer ys most<sup>9</sup> doute, men who know  
 10 "paw þe Peytes & þeir kendes, 7159 the Picts, and  
 "pat ofte han schewed þey were oure frendes."<sup>10</sup> king's foes.

ƿ Exe iam tradicio falsy ffortygerny.

- þe kyng to fforteger þus seyde: [leaf 31, back, col. 1.] Constant tells  
 "My purueaunce<sup>11</sup> ys on þe leyde; Vortiger to  
 "Do ryght als þy seluen wyle;  
 "Tak & lef as þou sest<sup>12</sup> skyle, 7164 settle it just as  
 "Als manye as þou hast<sup>12</sup> of nede; he likes.  
 "Bettere þan y þou wost<sup>12</sup> þe dede."

<sup>1</sup> þe forcelettes he did him seise.

<sup>2</sup> now has Vortiger þe forcelesse.

<sup>3</sup> richesse. <sup>4</sup> on oþer. [leaf 43.]

<sup>5</sup> & of þin enemys no drede haue.

<sup>6</sup> Sende . . . can of slegþtes.

<sup>7</sup> quante men ere alle þe peihtes.

(Des Pis d'Escocce soldiers, Wace, i.  
310, l. 6742.)

<sup>8</sup> what tyme so any.

<sup>9</sup> of whom is moste.

<sup>10-10</sup> þorgh þe peihtes & þer frendes.  
may men witte how mykell  
wendes.

<sup>11</sup> purueaunce.

<sup>12</sup> sees . . . has . . . wote.

252 VORTIGER MAKES FRIENDS WITH THE PICTS,

|                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                        |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Vortiger then<br>gets 100 Picts<br>to the court,                                       | pen fforteger had his wille ynow ;<br>An hundred Peyghtes to þe court he drow. 7168<br>Of castles, tounes, & tresorye,<br>Of al he hadde þe maystrie ; |      |
| gives them rich<br>presents,                                                           | . He gaf þe Peytes what þey wyld,<br>. Al þer askyng he fulfyld,                                                                                       | 7172 |
| honours them,                                                                          | He honoured hem swyþe mykel,<br>. ffor wel he wyste þey were ful fykel ;                                                                               |      |
| feasts them,                                                                           | Wyþ metes & drynkes he made þem glade,<br>& often dronken he þem made ;                                                                                | 7176 |
|                                                                                        | . He preised hem faste in his sawe,<br>. & oueral dide þem forþ drawe ;                                                                                |      |
| and prefers<br>them above all<br>others.<br>For this the<br>Picts say that<br>Vortiger | fforby alle opere <sup>1</sup> he þem honoured ;<br>pat mester hadde, he þem socourred ;                                                               | 7180 |
|                                                                                        | per-fore comunly ylka Peight,<br>Byfore alle þey seyde on heyght,<br>“ pat fforteger was more curteys                                                  |      |
|                                                                                        | “ þan þe kyng was ony weys,                                                                                                                            | 7184 |
| is more like a<br>king than<br>Constant.                                               | “ & bettere semed to bere þe honour<br>“ þan þe kyng or his auncessour.”                                                                               |      |
|                                                                                        | . In ilka stede whare <sup>2</sup> þey ferde,<br>. þus þey seyde ; þey ne roughete ho herde.                                                           | 7188 |
|                                                                                        | & for þe Peytes on hym seyde þis,<br>fforteger þer-of had gret blys ;                                                                                  |      |
| And Vortiger<br>rewards them<br>for it.                                                | & þe more þat þey hym preysed,<br>þe more he þem vp areysed.                                                                                           | 7192 |

¶ De Adulacione ffortygerny.

|                                 |                                                                               |      |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Vortiger feasts<br>the Picts ;  | A day hit was, to þeym he drank<br>. ffor to gete of hem more þank ;          |      |
| and while they<br>are drinking, | & right as þey dronke <sup>3</sup> & songe,<br>Com fforteger þeym alle among, | 7196 |

<sup>1</sup> biþor opere.

<sup>2</sup> als. [leaf 43, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> als. þei sat drunken.

- . & to þem seyde, "God glade ȝow here!"  
 Bot yuel he let, wyþ sory chere.  
 "Knyghtes," he seide, "mykel y ȝow loue, he says, "I love  
 "I haue ȝow holpen to ȝoure aboue, 7200 you Picts,  
 "& more y wolde, ȝyf y hadde ought; and I'd give  
 "þys [lond]<sup>1</sup> ys þe kynges, & myn ys nought; you more than  
 "Here hauy nought þat ought amountes; I do, if I had it.  
 "þat y spend of, y ȝelde acountes, 7204 But I get no-  
 "ffor y þys contre<sup>1</sup> haue y nought; thing  
 "ffro fer hit comeþ þat me ys brought.  
 "To serue þe kyng y do my tent;  
 "Of hym hauy no lond ne rent, 7208 from the king  
 "So þat y may nought holde to me for serving him.  
 "ffourty squiers<sup>2</sup> on al my fe;  
 "ȝyf y more hadde, hit were ȝour prow,  
 "per-fore nede y mot parte<sup>3</sup> fro ȝow; 7212 If I did, you  
 "and þat ouer-þynkes<sup>4</sup> me ful sore, should share it.  
 "ffor pouere y am, & may namore. But I must  
 "Bot ȝyf ȝe se þat y ought mende, leave you,  
 "Boldely comeþ to me, or sende, as I'm so poor.  
 "And y schal fonde, at al ȝour nede, 7216 Still, if any of  
 "Boþe forto cloþe & [to] fede." you are in  
 want, tell me,  
 and I'll help  
 you."

## ¶ Exe iam falcitas ffortygerny.

- Fortyger þenne turned his bak; [leaf 31, back, col. 2.] Vortiger then  
 Fals he was, & feyntyse spak; 7220 leaves the  
 And þo þat hadden dronke wel, Picts,  
 Trowed his sawes<sup>5</sup> ylkadel; and they, ex-  
 His word to truþe al þey hit turned, cited by drink  
 þat he to falsnesse had performed; 7224  
 þey seide til oper, "what haue ȝe mynt? say:

<sup>1</sup> lond. (ceste tere, Wace, i. 312, l. 6780.)

<sup>2</sup> sergeanz. (sergans, Wace, i. 312, l. 6788.)

<sup>3</sup> bot nedes .I. mot.

<sup>4</sup> forþenkes.

<sup>5</sup> falsnes. P. leaves out the next two lines.

"This fool of a  
king gives us  
little ;

let's kill him,  
and make  
Vortiger king."

They rush to  
Constant's  
room, cut his  
head off,

carry it to  
Vortiger,

and bid him  
take the crown.

But Vortiger,  
though really  
glad,

feigns sorrow,

has the mur-  
derers slain,

and proclaims  
death to other  
guilty Picts.

"pys curteys knyght<sup>1</sup> now haue we tynt.  
"pys folted king, he gyueþ<sup>2</sup> vs lytel,  
"ffor a monk can nought bot his chapitel. 7228  
"To slo þat folt, wel were to<sup>3</sup> done ;  
"A bettere myghte we haue ful sone ;  
"Go we now, & sle þat vnþrift/,  
" & ffortyger to kyng we lyft, 7232  
"ffor he ys worþy to haue<sup>4</sup> empyre,  
" & bettere hym<sup>5</sup> semed lord & syre  
"pan þis monk þat nought ne can ;  
"Go we & sle þis folted<sup>6</sup> man ! 7236  
"He haþ no kynde þat vs þarf<sup>7</sup> drede,  
"þat myghte may[n]tene host ne lede ;  
"Ne hym self schal neuere be nought ;  
"Go we & do þat we haue þought !" 7240  
þe whyles<sup>8</sup> þer wyll was þus hot,  
þey stirte tys chaumbre<sup>9</sup> ; his hed of smot.  
Wyþ þe heued als swyþe þey went,  
To ffortyger þey made a present, 7244  
þey gon to crie, "here may þow se  
"þat we wyl auaunce þe !  
"þis monk ys ded ! now do þy wyll !  
"Tak þe coroune, & hold vs styll !" 7248  
ffortyger, þat saw þe kynges heued,  
Glad he was þey haddyt hym reued ;  
Napeles he couerede hym queyntely ;  
Semblaunt he made he was sory, 7252  
& for þat dide þo Peytes deye,<sup>10</sup>  
And at Londone he dide crye,<sup>11</sup>  
'þat al þe Peyghtes þat men myght wyte,  
'þer heuedes scholde al of be<sup>12</sup> smyte.' 7256

<sup>1</sup> man.

<sup>2</sup> kyng serues.

<sup>3</sup> it.

<sup>4</sup> he were worþi to haf. [lf. 43, bk.]

<sup>5</sup> he.

<sup>6</sup> þat foltid.

<sup>7</sup> þar.

<sup>8</sup> to while.

<sup>9</sup> to his chambire.

<sup>10</sup> & more to did his felonys.

<sup>11</sup> þerfor in London did he crie.

<sup>12</sup> þer hedes of suld men.

Manyon were þat trowed & seyð,  
 þat 'non of þeym hadde handes leyð  
 ' On þe kyng wyþ yuel<sup>1</sup> manere  
 ' Wyþoute þe conseyl of ffortygere;  
 . & þe Peyghtes seyde þe same,  
 . þat þey dide hit for his frame.  
 þo þat þe children had in kepyng,  
 Aurelius & Vter, boþe ȝyng,  
 Dredde þat þorow þe conseil of þo  
 þat slown þe kyng, þem wolde þey<sup>2</sup> slo;  
 þer-fore þis conseil þey tok,  
 To Bretayne þey sentem, hem to lok,  
 To þe kyng Budice of þer kynde,  
 þat ful nobly dide hem fynde,  
 And honoured hem þorow al the lond;  
 When tyme was, armes hem fond.

However, many  
 folk believe

that Vortiger  
 prompted the  
 murder.

7260

The guardians  
 of Aurelius and  
 Uther,  
 7264 fearing that the  
 boys will be  
 slain,

7268

send 'em to  
 Budice, king  
 of Britanny,

7272

who cares for  
 them well.

### ¶ Hic cepit Regnare ffortygernus.

Fortiger had al in kepyng þe land,  
 Casteles, & cites, al in hys hand;  
 . & at his wyll þe folk he ledde;  
 . ffor his power, noman he dredde;  
 He sey fortune toward hym<sup>3</sup> falle,  
 And regned þen kyng ouer þeym alle.  
 Of two þynges wakned hys wough;  
 Of þe Peytes þat he slough;  
 þey cald hym traitour wyþ manace,  
 & to meschaunce þey scholde<sup>4</sup> hym chace;  
 An oþer þyng men hym telde,  
 þat whan þe childre were of elde,  
 þey scholde venge Constant her broþer;  
 . War<sup>5</sup> hym wel, & hope non oþer.

Vortiger reigns  
 over all Britain,

7276

[leaf 32.] threatened only  
 7280 by the Picts,—  
 who

7284

declare they'll  
 hunt him to  
 grief,—  
 and the report  
 that Aurelius  
 and Uther will  
 avenge Con-  
 stant's death.

<sup>1</sup> iſt.    <sup>2</sup> slouh þe kyng þam wild.

<sup>3</sup> he sauð his chance wele wild.

[leaf 43, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> mischeſe þei suld.

<sup>5</sup> were . . . no noþer.



256 In tempore ffortygerny venerunt Saxones  
primo in Anglia.<sup>1</sup>

Three ship-  
loads of fine  
men, led by  
Hengist and  
Horsa, land at  
Sandwich.

Vortiger says

that if the  
strangers come  
in peace,  
in peace they  
may dwell,

and go where  
they like.

Whyle þat fforteger þus<sup>2</sup> regnede riche,  
pre schypes aryued at Sandwiche 7288  
Wyþ fair folk & wel y-dight,—  
Hengist & Hors þer maistres hight;—  
Of fair stature wyþouten lak,  
& a selcouþ speche þey spak. 7292  
þis ffortyger þat held þonour,  
At Caunterbury he made soiour;  
To þe kyng men tydynges tolde,  
' þat a fair folk, wyþ faces bolde, 7296  
' At Sandwiche late gonne aryue;  
' So faire y-schape were non alyue.'<sup>3</sup>  
þen seyde þe kyng, "zyf swylk be comen,  
" & peysibly þe hauene han<sup>4</sup> nomen, 7300  
" In pes lat þem take þer rest,  
" & wyþ my pes to do þer best,  
" And zyf þey speke wyþ me in pes,  
" & right<sup>5</sup> so wende als þey ches." 7304

¶ Hengistus, & Horsus frater eius, cepunt portum  
apud Sandwycum.

Hengist and  
Horsa

come to Vor-  
tiger,

¶ When þyse breþere Hengist & Hors  
Had leue of þe kyng & of þe ports,  
He greyþed his feres<sup>6</sup> to fare al myry 7308  
To speke wyþ þe kyng at Caunterbyri.  
When þey come, þe kyng þey grette,  
& alle þat were by hym sette.

<sup>1</sup> This heading is at the top of  
the front page of leaf 32 of the  
Lambeth MS., as a head-line.

<sup>2</sup> In tyme þat Vortiger.

<sup>3</sup> so gentill of schap is non of  
lyue.

<sup>4</sup> & in pes haf hauene.

<sup>5</sup> & in þat.

<sup>6</sup> þei dight þer fers.

- þe kyng byheld þyse bachelers  
 Were faire of schap, & face clers,  
 How þey were mad so gentilly,  
 ffayrest of al þer compaigny:  
 þen seyde þe kyng, "of whenne<sup>1</sup> be 3e?  
 What haue 3e sought to þis contre?"  
 þen was Hengist eldest & more;  
 ffor alle his feres onswered he pore:  
 "In Saxoyne<sup>2</sup> were we born & fed;  
 ffro þennes<sup>3</sup> hyder our God vs led.  
 "3yf ye wil wite al þe manere,  
 "Whi & for what we ar com here;  
 "To telle 3ow, sire, gyues<sup>4</sup> me leue,  
 "þat 3e ne 3oure<sup>5</sup> wyþ me ne greue."  
 þe kyng gaf hym þe grauntise,  
 & Hengist teldym þen in<sup>6</sup> his wyse:  
  
 "Sire kyng," he seyde, "3yf þou euere herde,  
 "So waxynge<sup>7</sup> folk in al þys werde, 7312  
 "Ne so gendryng,<sup>8</sup> ne so pñentyue,  
 "Ne so gracious kynde<sup>9</sup> to þryue,  
 "Als we arn of oure kynde,  
 "In no lond scholde men fynde,  
 "Ne selcouþloker so<sup>10</sup> to gendre,  
 "Ne haue so manye childre tendre,  
 "& wexen boþe men & women y-nowe,  
 "þat alle þer dwelle þey ne mowe.<sup>11</sup>  
 "ffor whan þe folk ar woxen & larged,<sup>12</sup>  
 "& þe lond ys ouer-charged,  
 "Oure Prynces perceyue þer ar so fele,  
 "þe 3onge dur þey nought out wele,<sup>13</sup>
- 7312 who sees how  
 handsome they  
 are,  
 and asks them  
 whence and  
 7316 why they have  
 come.  
 Hengist  
 answers,  
 7320 "From Saxony  
 are we come  
 hither,  
 7324  
 because our  
 folk are such  
 waxing ones,  
 7332 and breed so  
 many children,  
 [leaf 32, col. 2.] who all grow  
 into men and  
 women,  
 7336  
 and over-  
 burden the  
 land.  
 When our  
 7340 princes see this,

<sup>1</sup> what lond. [leaf 44.]<sup>2</sup> sessoyne.<sup>3</sup> þien (no fro).<sup>4</sup> þe sir gif þou.<sup>5</sup> þou ne þin.<sup>6</sup> tellis on.<sup>7</sup> waxand.<sup>8</sup> genderand.<sup>9</sup> þrod (? for þeod (A.-S. þeod) people; or A.-S. þreot, þreat, a crowd).<sup>10</sup> ne so selcouþly.<sup>11</sup> duelle ne mowh.<sup>12</sup> is waxen & largid.<sup>13</sup> þe 3enge þorgh þei do wele.  
(wele = choose : see page 98, note 1.)

they make all  
the young  
strong men  
cast lots, and  
go forth to  
seek another  
land.

Just now the  
lot fell on us,

and our God  
Mercury  
brought us  
here."

Vortiger asks  
the names of  
the Saxon  
Gods,

and which is  
the chief.  
Hengist names  
five,

but says, that  
above all others

" Bot pulke of twenty<sup>1</sup> wynter elde  
" Or more, þat con þem kepe & welde,  
" On strong[e]<sup>2</sup> men, lotes þey kest,  
" & byddem<sup>3</sup> go purchace þem best, 7344  
" To seke oþer lond & lede,  
" ffor<sup>4</sup> mykel people may hit nought fede.  
" Mo childre þer are of oure gendrure  
" þan bestes are in oure pasture ; 7348  
" & for we so multeplye,  
" We ar of þe kynde of Germanie.  
" At þis tyme fel on vs þe lot,  
" þer-fore, nede, of lande<sup>5</sup> we mot, 7352  
" To seke vs oþer on to lende ;  
" & hidere oure Godes dide vs wende ;  
" Mercurius, þat vs saues & schildes,  
" Haþ vs brought vnto þys ylde." <sup>6</sup> 7356

When þe kyng herde hym nemne a God,<sup>7</sup>  
He asked þenne how þey trowd,<sup>8</sup>  
& what þer Godes name hight,  
On wham þey trowed<sup>9</sup> had most myght. 7360  
He seide, " We haue Godes seeres<sup>10</sup>  
" ffor whos wyrship we make auteres ;<sup>11</sup>  
" Mars, Iubiter, & Saturnus,  
" Dyane, & Mercuryus : 7364  
" þis ar Godes of oure paen lay,  
" þat we worschipe<sup>12</sup> at þer day.  
" & mo Godes ȝyt we holde,  
" As oure auncestres by-forn vs tolde ; 7368  
" Bot on ouer alle wyrschipe<sup>12</sup> we mest,

<sup>1</sup> þat ere of fiften. (qui de quinze  
ans sunt, et de plus, Wace, i. 319,  
l. 6911.)

<sup>2</sup> stronge.

<sup>3</sup> bid þam.

<sup>4</sup> so.

of ond nede.

<sup>6-6</sup> P. leaves out these two lines.

<sup>7</sup> herd þam neuen. [leaf 44, col. 2.]

<sup>8</sup> trod (see next note).

<sup>9</sup> whilk þei trowed.

<sup>10</sup> seere.

<sup>11</sup> to whom we mak autere.

<sup>12</sup> wirschipe.

- " Sire Mercurius, & holde his fest.  
 " Mercury ys on oure langage  
 " 'Woden,' louerd, ys oure vsage,—  
 " Oure auncessour set hit so,—  
 " þe ferþe day we halewe hym to.  
 " ffor we þat day worschipe<sup>n</sup> hym alle,  
 " 'Wodenesday' þat day we calle.  
 " Wypouten hym an oþer we haue,  
 " A Godesse þat we for help to craue;  
 " On oure speche we calle hure ffre;  
 " þe sixte day, hure worschipe we;  
 " ffor 'ffre' we calle hit ffryday,<sup>1</sup>  
 " & worschipe hure on payen lay."  
 ¶ þen seide þe kyng, " ȝe leue al wronge;  
 " Wyp false Godes ȝe make monge;  
 " On swylk ar nought for to leue,  
 " Hit ar ffendes þat schol ȝow greue;  
 " & þat sore ouer-þynkes<sup>2</sup> me;  
 " Napeles," he seyde, " welcome ar<sup>3</sup> ȝe!  
 " ffayre men ȝe are, & stalworthe seme.  
 " And ȝe wyl serue me to queme,  
 " Euerilkon y wyl ȝow take, [leaf 82, back, col. 1.]  
 " & riche men y schal ȝow make.  
 " þe Peytes wayten me wyþ wo,  
 " þe Scottes also vs brenne<sup>4</sup> & slo;  
 " ȝyf hit be so, ȝe may me vaille  
 " To vencuse<sup>5</sup> þem in pleyn bataille;  
 " Gyftes schol ȝe haue ful gode  
 " Til ȝoure cloþynge & ȝour fode;  
 " & kepes wel ay þe Northe cost;<sup>6</sup>  
 " ffro þennes comen ouer al þeyr<sup>7</sup> ost.
- Nota de die Mercurii & Veneris.**  
 7372 they worship Mercury or Woden; his day is the fourth of the week, and therefore called Wodensday. Also they have a Goddess Fre; and her day, the sixth, is called Fry-day.  
 7376  
 7380  
 7384 Vortiger tells them that their Gods  
 are fiends;  
 7388 but, nevertheless,  
 if they'll serve him,  
 7392  
 against the Picts and Scots,  
 7396  
 he'll give them rich gifts.  
 7400 They must keep well the north boundary.

<sup>1</sup> it freeday. (Freedai, Wace, i. 321, l. 6950.)

<sup>2</sup> forþynkes.

<sup>3</sup> welcom ere.

<sup>4</sup> robbe.

<sup>5</sup> venquis.

<sup>6</sup> þe north kepis ay wele þat cost. A fresh hand writes a page here in the Petyt MS., (leaf 44, back,) and the initial *qu-* for *wh-* comes in: see notes <sup>9</sup>, <sup>10</sup>, p. 261, below.

<sup>7</sup> þine comys euere aȝ oþer.

Thus Vortiger  
brings the  
Saxons among  
the Britons.

. " Loke y fynde in ȝow no feyntyse;  
 . " ȝe schul me *serue* of swylk *seruise*."  
 On þys manere come þe Saxouns <sup>1</sup>  
 . þorow ffortyger among þe Bretouns. 7404  
 . Hengist tok leue at þe kyng,  
 . To Londone <sup>2</sup> for to brynge his þyng;  
 & sone com to þe court agayn  
 Wyþ manye faire knyght & swayn. 7408

§ De Bello inter Saxones & Pictos.

Soon after,  
the Scots and  
Picts  
ravage Eng-  
land

up to the  
Humber.  
Vortiger and  
the Saxons  
march against  
them,

and drive them  
back.

Vortiger is a  
jolly man over  
this,

Wel sone after þat <sup>3</sup> þey were come,  
 þe Scottes & Peytes bataille nome,  
 And comen faste in-til þys lond,  
 Pylede <sup>4</sup> & brente al þat þey fond; 7412  
 Right <sup>5</sup> to Humber water þey cam.  
 þe kyng wyþ Saxons <sup>6</sup> ageyn þem nam.  
 . þe Saxons <sup>6</sup> were þer-of ful blyþe,  
 . þey arrayed hem wel, & þydeward swyþe, <sup>7</sup> 7416  
 þey smyte to-gedere bataille smert;  
 þe Peytes were euere ful egre of hert,  
 þey stode wel furst & hardyly;  
 ffor þey were wond to haue þe <sup>8</sup> maistri. 7420  
 þey wende haue had þer elde custume,  
 þe lenger ageyn þe Bretons þey nome.  
 þer wenyng þat day þey tynt,  
 ffor þe Saxons <sup>6</sup> did þem bakward stynt, 7424  
<sup>9</sup> [& were discounfet at þat dai;  
 þe Sessions bare þe prise a-wai.] <sup>9</sup>  
 . þen was þe kyng a ioly <sup>10</sup> man  
 . þat he þe bataille of þem so wan; 7428

<sup>1</sup> *sessouns*.

<sup>2</sup> *lond*.

<sup>3</sup> *was it not long sethen*.

<sup>4</sup> *robbid*.

<sup>5</sup> *reght*.

<sup>6</sup> *sessons*.

<sup>7</sup> *dyght þem wele & þidir swiþe*.

<sup>8</sup> *wer won haue*.

<sup>9-9</sup> From P., representing lines  
6995-6 of Wace (i. 323).

<sup>10</sup> *ioiefull*.

# HENGIST TELLS VORTIGER OF HIS BARONS' HATE. 261

|                                                                       |                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pen let he mykel <sup>1</sup> of þe Saxons, <sup>2</sup>              |                                                                                                            |
| & dide hem amende þer liuersons. <sup>3</sup>                         |                                                                                                            |
| þe kyng gaf Hengist faire <sup>4</sup> maners                         | makes the Saxons large allowances, and gives                                                               |
| In Kent, & fele opere stedes seers : <sup>5</sup>                     | 7432 Hengist many fair places.                                                                             |
| pys loue lested bytwyxt þem longe,<br>ffeyþfullike, wel & strong.     |                                                                                                            |
| Hengist sey til hym þe word wold schape, <sup>6</sup>                 |                                                                                                            |
| His nedes to spede þen had he rape ; <sup>7</sup>                     | 7436                                                                                                       |
| . He sey oper do <sup>8</sup> þer queyntyse,                          |                                                                                                            |
| . Wher-of auountage myghte aryse, <sup>9</sup>                        |                                                                                                            |
| & also þoughte he þan seye som þynge<br>ffor to plese wyþ-al þe kyng. | 7440                                                                                                       |
| On a day by þe kyng he sat,                                           |                                                                                                            |
| . To-gydere spekyng of many what ; <sup>10</sup>                      | One day Hengist says to Vortiger,                                                                          |
| He sey þe kyng was mury <sup>11</sup> at ese,                         |                                                                                                            |
| Wyþ his conseil he gan hym plese :                                    | 7444                                                                                                       |
| " Sire," he seis, " ȝe han do <sup>12</sup> me honour,                |                                                                                                            |
| " & mykel y haue y-take <sup>13</sup> of ȝour.                        |                                                                                                            |
| " ȝyf y haue serued þe to wille,                                      |                                                                                                            |
| " ȝyt bettere wol y forward fulfyllen ;                               | 7448                                                                                                       |
| " & mikel haue y herd & seen                                          |                                                                                                            |
| " Syþen y haue y þy court y-ben ; <sup>14</sup>                       |                                                                                                            |
| " ffor þou hast neyþer baron ne knyght,                               |                                                                                                            |
| " þat alle ne hate þe wyþ her <sup>15</sup> myght.                    | 7452 [If. 32, bk., cl. 2.] "I find that all your barons and knights hate you, and talk of two children who |
| " Of two childre y here þem speke,                                    |                                                                                                            |
| " þat on þe harde schul <sup>16</sup> þem wreke ;                     |                                                                                                            |

<sup>1</sup> þe king lete mikitt.  
<sup>2</sup> seasons.  
<sup>3</sup> did amend þer liuersons.  
<sup>4</sup> of his.  
<sup>5</sup> In Lindesai in stedis sers. (In Londesia regione, *Galf. Mon.*, vi. 11 ; Lindesce, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb. ; Lindesie, MS. du Roi, 73, Cange, *Wace*, i. 323.)  
<sup>6</sup> saw þe world wild shape.  
<sup>7</sup> for to spede & rape.  
<sup>8</sup> MS. to. P. has do. (*Wace's*

comment 'Comme cascuns faire 'devoit,' (i. 323, l. 7006), on Hengist's 'D'avancir soi s'entremetoit,' is not translated.)  
<sup>9</sup> qwere-of auountige mote rise.  
<sup>10</sup> spekin of mani quat. [If. 44, bk., col. 2.]  
<sup>11</sup> wele.  
<sup>12</sup> Sir king þou has done.  
<sup>13</sup> had.  
<sup>14</sup> Alls I haue in þi court bien.  
<sup>15</sup> att þe hate at þer.  
<sup>16</sup> of þe ful herd þei satt.

shall avenge  
themselves on  
you,

and bring you  
to an evil end.

When I hear  
this,

I think I'd  
better send to  
Saxony for my  
kin,

and then I  
could protect  
you better.

Also if I had  
any fortlet,

we should be  
more secure  
against our  
enemies.

It would be  
better for you

" *per* lige lordes þey scholden<sup>1</sup> ben,  
 " þorow heritage of þer faderes fe; 7456  
 " & bynne schort terme<sup>2</sup> schul<sup>1</sup> þey come,  
 " & of vs boþe take harde dome:  
 " & þis ys þe comune sawe of alle,  
 " þat yuel<sup>3</sup> endyng on þe schal<sup>1</sup> falle. 7460  
 " þus þey þrete wyþ<sup>4</sup> manace,  
 " & ful yuel þey<sup>5</sup> procure & purchace.  
 " When y here þem þus ȝelpe,  
 " þen þenky<sup>6</sup> how y myght ȝow helpe; 7464  
 " *per*-fore to Saxoyne woldy sende,<sup>7</sup>  
 " ffor my sib kynde, & oþer freinde;  
 " & ȝif y her hadde childre or<sup>8</sup> wyf,  
 " þen were y holden, on lymes & lyf, 7468  
 " þe forto socoure & to saue  
 " Wyþ al þe strengþe<sup>9</sup> y myghte haue;  
 " þe sikerer mightest þow<sup>10</sup> be for me,  
 " & y scholde deserue more loue of<sup>11</sup> þe; 7472  
 " ffor alle þyn enemis, þaw þey wild<sup>12</sup> fond,  
 " Ne durste nought reue þe a fot of lond.  
 " ffor y þe serue & loue truely,  
 " Haue y on me many enemy; 7476  
 " & y lyg euere so naked syde,  
 " & oure fomen spred ful wyde;  
 " ȝyf y had ony fforcelet,  
 " To haue *per*-inne som<sup>13</sup> syker recet, 7480  
 " þen myghte we þe more be syker,  
 " What tyme our enemis wold giue vs byker.  
 " *per*-fore wer hit prow to þe  
 " þat y hadde som<sup>14</sup> castel or cite 7484

<sup>1</sup> *suld*.

<sup>2</sup> *In scort time*.

<sup>3</sup> *An iuel* ('ill' was the first scribe's word).

<sup>4</sup> *þei* þe with *itt*.

<sup>5</sup> *And to*.

<sup>6</sup> *þink .I.*

<sup>7</sup> *in to session wild .I. send*.

<sup>8</sup> *ȝ*.

<sup>9</sup> *On att* þe purtenaunce.

<sup>10</sup> *mote þou*.

<sup>11</sup> *i suld* be loued bettir for.

<sup>12</sup> *enmis þou ne*.

<sup>13</sup> *haue on*.

<sup>14</sup> *oþer* [leaf 45, in the first scribe's hand again].

"Where-inne y mighte sauely slepe,  
 "pat none enemis on vs lepe;  
 "[wele more þan, þei wild me doute]<sup>1</sup>  
 "þan þey do now y lygge þer-oute." 7488

if I had a castle  
 or city."

þenne seide þe kyng vnto Hengist,  
 "þorow sonde y wolde þy folk hit wist,  
 "pat þey were her when we had nede;  
 "Inow þey scholden haue<sup>2</sup> to mede. 7492  
 "To gyue þe a toun, y ne may,  
 "ffor þou art of þe Payen lay;  
 "ffolye hit were, more þan resoun,  
 "To gyue a Payen a Cristen toun; 7496  
 "Of oþer þyng þe entermet,  
 "ffor of toun getestow no recet."

Vortiger

refuses alto-  
 gether to give a  
 Christian town  
 to Hengist, a  
 heathen.

### ¶ De cordys Corey Taury.

<sup>3</sup> "Syn þou," seide Hengist, "wypseyst þat me,  
 "A skylful preiere þou graunte me: 7500  
 "Of þy maners þat y mot haue—  
 "Wher-inne þat y may my lif saue—<sup>3</sup>  
 "Namore lond,<sup>4</sup> wyd ne syd,  
 "þan y may sprede a boles hyd." 7504  
 þat graunted anon kyng ffortygerne.  
 þen Hengist of sente his frende ȝerne;  
 A boles hyde, he broughte hit þyder;  
 On þonges he carf hit al<sup>5</sup> to-gyder,  
 And knytte hem alle þen on o þonge; [leaf 33.]  
 & al so fer as hit was long,  
 & euenlik al so mykel in brede,  
 þe lond he tok hit ouer ȝede. 7512

Vortiger agrees  
 to do this;

and Hengist  
 cuts his bull's  
 hide into  
 thongs,  
 knits these  
 into one,  
 takes the square  
 measure of that  
 in land,

<sup>1</sup> From the Petyt MS.

<sup>2</sup> *sall haf.*

<sup>3-3</sup> Said Hengist, if þou wilt nouht.  
 ne dar not gif .I. þe of souht.

on of þi maners þat .I. haue.  
 grante it me myself to saue.

<sup>4</sup> ne no more lond.

<sup>5</sup> thuonges he karue it att.



builds a fortlet  
on it,  
and calls it  
Thong Castle.

. þe lond aboute he dide hit stake,  
A fforcelet þer-on þan dide he make,  
& on his wyse<sup>1</sup> he gaf hit name,  
' þe Castel of ponges,'<sup>2</sup> þe firste fame; 7516  
. Syn, als schorter speche fel,  
. Hit was called ' þong castel ;' <sup>3</sup>  
. Bot Frenschemen coupe nought so seye,  
& caldit ' Castel de Correye ;' 7520  
. þat vse<sup>4</sup> men byzonde þe se,  
& Bretons caldit ' Kaer Karre.'<sup>5</sup>

¶ Exe Castellum factum est, cui dedit nomen  
þongcastre.

Hengist's  
friends come in  
16 ships,  
and with them  
his lovely  
daughter  
Ronewen  
(whom stupid  
people say was  
called Inge).

When þongcastre<sup>6</sup> was al closed,  
. þe name y-gyuen,<sup>7</sup> oueral alosed, 7524  
Of þo þat Hengyst sente his sonde,  
þer comen sexten schipe<sup>8</sup> to londe,  
Wyp mikel folk, knyghtes, swaynes, 7528  
& opere þat were of his demaynes.  
¶ In a schip wyp gentil<sup>9</sup> men  
Com Hengiste doughter þat hight Ronewen,<sup>10</sup>  
A zong woman & louely,<sup>11</sup>  
. Auen aunt, & fair & semly; <sup>12</sup> 7532  
. Bot þis lewed men sey & synge,  
. & telle þat hit was mayden Inge.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *langage*.

<sup>2</sup> Vancastre (*Wace*, i. 327), MS. du Roi, 27; Gancastre, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; Tuancastre, MS. de l'Ars., 171, B.-L.

<sup>3</sup> *thuancastell*.

<sup>4</sup> *vses*.

<sup>5</sup> Wace adds that many now call it ' Lancastre ' who don't know the cause of its first name, l. 7082-4.

<sup>6</sup> *thuancastell*.

<sup>7</sup> *giffen*.

<sup>8</sup> *xiij. schippis*. [leaf 45, col. 2.]

(dix huit nées, *Wace*, i. 327, l. 7087; decem et octo naues, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 12.)

<sup>9</sup> *geentitt* [leaf 45, col. 2.] the second scribe wrote this column and the next two: see his *g*, -*it*, -*is*, -*in*, in the notes <sup>10</sup>, p. 266; <sup>13</sup>, p. 264; <sup>11</sup>, p. 266; <sup>1</sup>, <sup>12</sup>, p. 265.

<sup>10</sup> Roven, *Wace*, i. 328, l. 7091.

<sup>11</sup> *a fair woman & a loueli*.

<sup>12</sup> *auenaunt gret & fair was hi*.

<sup>13</sup> *and tellit it was a maydin zinge*.

- . Wryten of Inge,<sup>1</sup> no clerk may kenne,  
 . Bot of Hengiste doughter, Ronewenne. 7536 *Nota de nomine Engeland. (In a later hand.)*  
 . Al þe folk Hengist fore sent;  
 . To poncastre<sup>2</sup> ilkon þey went.  
 . (fro Angle, a contre in Saxonye,  
 . Comen alle Hengistes compaynie; 7540 *Hengist's friends come from Angle in Saxony, and that is why Britain is called England.*  
 . So þat for Angle, y vnderstond,  
 . Bretayne was cald Engeland.)  
 þen Hengiste faste hym purueyd,<sup>3</sup>  
 & sente unto þe kyng, & seyð, 7544 *Hengist*  
 . ' Preyenge,<sup>4</sup> as he loued his grip,  
 . ' þat he wolde ony night herberwe<sup>5</sup> him wyþ,  
 . ' A day to ete a sop, & drynke,  
 . ' & se his werk, how þat hym þynke; 7548  
 . ' & of his folk, how þat hym þought,  
 . ' & wyþholden<sup>6</sup> þo þat to hym dought.'  
 . Hengystes<sup>7</sup> werk fayn wolde he se;  
 He zede þider al in pryute. 7552 *Vortiger goes, and likes*  
 Whan he hit saw, wel he hit preised,  
 & þat þer myght be folk wel aysed;<sup>8</sup>  
 & þo knyghte<sup>9</sup> þat late cam,  
 ffor þer sonde wyþ hym þey nam. 7556 *Hengist's castle and his friends.*  
 Hengist þat day dide his myght  
 pat al was<sup>10</sup> glad, kyng & knyght;  
 & als þey were best in gladyng,  
 & wel cuppe-schoten,<sup>11</sup> knyght & kyng, 7560 *When Vortiger is merry at the feast, and well cup-shotten,*

<sup>1</sup> *writin of Ingge.* Robert Manning poohpoohs this *Inge* notion again, when writing of King Engel, near the end of the first part of his *Stori*.

<sup>2</sup> *thuung castell.* P. leaves out the next four lines, 7539-42.

<sup>3</sup> *A day Hengest him purueid.*

<sup>4</sup> *Fraid him.*

<sup>5</sup> *A night herber.*

<sup>6</sup> *& held.*

<sup>7</sup> *þe king his.*

<sup>8</sup> *þat þus myght folk be wele asaied.*

<sup>9</sup> *knightes.*

<sup>10</sup> *wer.*

<sup>11</sup> *cop schotin.* (enivré, Wace, i. 239, l. 7108.)

¶ *Exe Ronewenna, pulcra puella, quam Rex ffortygerus desponsauit secundum legem Paganorum.*

comes the  
beautiful Rone-  
wen with a cup  
of wine,

kneels to him,  
and says,  
**Wassail.**

Vortiger asks  
what it means,

and Sir Breyth,  
who knows  
Saxon,

tells him that  
Ronewen has  
greeted him as  
king,

according to  
the Saxon  
custom,

and that he's to  
answer *Drynk  
hayl*,  
and Ronewen'll  
kiss him,  
and then he's to  
kiss her.

ffro chaumbre cam Ronewenne so gent,  
Byfore þe kyng in halle scheo went;  
A coupe wyþ wyn sche hadde in hande, [lf. 33, col. 2.]  
And hure atyr<sup>1</sup> was wel farande; 7564  
Byfore þe kyng o knes sche hir sette,  
In hure langage ful faire him grette:  
"Wassayl, my lord! wassail!"<sup>2</sup> seyde sche.  
þen asked þe kyng what þat myght<sup>3</sup> be: 7568  
On þat langage þe kyng ne coupe,  
Bot a knygh[t] þat speche had lered<sup>4</sup> in zoupe—  
Breyþ<sup>5</sup> highte þat knyght, y-born. Bretoun,  
þat wel spak langage of Saxoun.<sup>6</sup> 7572  
pys Breþ was þe kynges latynier;<sup>7</sup>—  
& what scheo seyde, teldyt ffortyger:<sup>8</sup>  
"Sire," Breþ seyde, "Ronewenne zow gretes,  
"And kyng calles, & lord zow letes; 7576  
"pys ys þer custume & þer gest,  
"Whan they arn at þer [ale or]<sup>9</sup> fest,  
"Ilk man þat loues, þer hym best þynk<sup>10</sup>  
"Schal sey 'wassail,' & to hym drynk; 7580  
"He þat haldes schal sey<sup>11</sup> 'wassayl,'  
"þat oþer schal seye ageyn 'drynk hayl';  
"þat seys [wassayl] drynkes<sup>12</sup> of þe coppe;  
"Kissing his felawe, he gyueþ<sup>13</sup> hit vppe; 7584  
" 'Drynk hail,' he seyþ, & drynkeþ<sup>14</sup> þer-of,  
"Kyssyng<sup>15</sup> hym in bourde & scof."

<sup>1</sup> *hir hatir.*

<sup>2</sup> *Lauerid king/ wassaitt.*

<sup>3</sup> *þe king askid what suld.*

<sup>4</sup> *langage lered.*

<sup>5</sup> *Brez.* [leaf 46, back.]

<sup>6</sup> *þat lered þe langage of sessoun.*

<sup>7</sup> *Brez, was þe latinier.*

<sup>8</sup> *told Vortiger.*

<sup>9</sup> *are at þe ale or.*

<sup>10</sup> *louis quare him pink.*

<sup>11</sup> *bidis satt say.*

<sup>12</sup> *sais wosseitt drinkis.*

<sup>13</sup> *Kissand his felaw he giues.*

<sup>14</sup> *drinks.*

<sup>15</sup> *kissand.*

- þe kyng seide as þe knight gan kenne,  
 "Drynk hayl," smylunge<sup>1</sup> on Ronewenne.  
 Ronewenne drank right as hure lyst,  
 & gaf þe kyng, & syn hym<sup>2</sup> kist.—  
 þat was þe firste wassail in dede,  
 þat now & euere þe<sup>3</sup> fame zede.  
 Of þat wassail men tolde gret tale,  
 & vsed 'wassail' when þey were at þale,  
 & 'drynk hail' to þem þat drank;  
 þus was wassail take<sup>4</sup> to þank.—  
 5. fful often þus þys<sup>5</sup> mayden z yng  
 Wassailed & kyste þer þe kyng;<sup>5</sup>  
 Of body sche was ful auenaunt,  
 Of fair colour, wyþ swet semblaunt.  
 Hure atir, ful wel hit bysmed;<sup>7</sup>  
 Merueillyke þe kyng scheo<sup>8</sup> quemed;  
 Out of mesure was he glad,  
 Opon<sup>9</sup> þat mayden he wax al mad.  
 þe ffend & dronkenesse hit wrought;<sup>10</sup>  
 On<sup>11</sup> þat Payen was al his pought.  
 As meschaunce þat tyme<sup>12</sup> hym spedde,<sup>13</sup>  
 He asked þat Payen for to wedde;  
 & Hengist wernde hym bot<sup>14</sup> lyte,  
 Bot graunted hure hym al so tyt;  
 & Hors his broþer consented sone;  
 Hire frendes seyð alle, hit was<sup>15</sup> to done;  
 þey askede þe kyng to gyue<sup>16</sup> hure Kent,  
 In dowarye, to take of rent.
- Vortiger says,  
 "Drynk hayl,"  
 7589 and Ronewen  
 kisses him.  
 7592 (Thus were  
 wassail and  
 drynk hail  
 brought in  
 here.)  
 7596  
 Ronewen was-  
 sails and kisses  
 Vortiger often;  
 and she's so  
 pretty  
 7600 and well  
 dressed,  
 7604 that he gets  
 quite wild  
 about her, and,  
 worked on by  
 the devil and  
 drunkenness,  
 7608 asks to wed her-  
 Hengist at once  
 gives her to  
 him,  
 7612 and asks for  
 Kent as her  
 dowry.

<sup>1</sup> Drinkheitt smiland.

<sup>2</sup> gave þe king sine him.

<sup>3</sup> & þat first of.

<sup>4</sup> tane.

<sup>5-6</sup> These lines are in the MS. de Ste. Gen. Y. of Wace, fol. 10. Wace, i. 332, note b.

<sup>6</sup> ffele sithes þat.

<sup>7</sup> Hir hatire full wele it semid.

<sup>8</sup> Meruelike þe king sche.

<sup>9</sup> ffor of.

<sup>10</sup> Drunkenes þe feend.

<sup>11</sup> Of.

<sup>12</sup> One stroke too many in the MS. m.

<sup>13</sup> A meschaunche þat time him led.

<sup>14</sup> Hengist wild noght draw o.

<sup>15</sup> Hir frendis said it were.

<sup>16</sup> gife. [leaf 46, back, col. 2.]

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vortiger gives<br>Kent to<br>Ronenen,<br>weds her in<br>Pagan wise,<br><br>without Priest<br>or Masse,<br><br>and has her<br>that night.<br><br>Earl Gorogon,<br>who holds<br>Kent, doesn't<br>know it is given<br>to Hengist,<br>till he is driven<br>out.<br><br>Vortiger dis-<br>pises the<br>Christians,<br>and they for-<br>sake him.<br><br>So do his three<br>children by his<br>former wife,<br><br><br><br>Vortimer,<br>Patens, and<br>Catyger. | Vpon þat mayde his herte so kast,<br>What-so þey asked, <sup>1</sup> þe kyng mad fast. 7616<br>I wene þe kyng tok hure þat day,<br>& wedded hure on Payens lay.<br>Of prest was þer no benisoun,<br>Ne messe songen, ne orysoun; 7620<br>In sesyn þe kyng had hure <sup>2</sup> þat nyght; [lf. 33, bk.,<br>col. 1.]<br>Of Kent he gaf Hengist þe ryght.<br>þe Erl þat tyme þat Kent <sup>3</sup> held,<br>Sire Gorogon, þat bar <sup>4</sup> þe scheld, 7624<br>Of þat gyft no þyng he ne wyste<br>Til he was dryuen out <sup>5</sup> wyþ Hengist.<br>þe Payens conseil þe kyng vnderstod,<br>& despised þe Cristene blod; 7628<br>& alle þe Cristene hym forsok,<br>ffor he hym to þe Payens tok;<br>His owen kynde hated hym mest, <sup>6</sup><br>His children loued hym alder lest. <sup>7</sup> 7632<br>Byfore tyme he hadde a wyf,<br>But deþ hadde departed <sup>8</sup> þer lyf;<br>Wyþ þat wyf he had þre sones<br>þat helde ageyn hym for þe Bretons; 7636<br>þe eldest highte sire Vortymer,<br>þat oper, Patens, and Catyger. <sup>9</sup> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### ¶ De blandicione Hengisty.

|                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hengist says to<br>Vortiger,<br><br>" We are both<br>hated ; | Hengist wente wyþ þe kyng aboute,<br>To be syker for drede & doute, 7640<br>& seyde, " y se hit on many gate<br>" þat þou for me of summe hast <sup>10</sup> hate ; |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> þat þei askid.<sup>2</sup> seisine he had hir. (si l'ot, Wace,

l. 7183.)

<sup>3</sup> Erett . . . Kent att.<sup>4</sup> had.<sup>5</sup> To he was cast oute.<sup>6</sup> kin hotid him.<sup>7</sup> childir loued him alle lost.<sup>8</sup> Bot dede had depart.<sup>9</sup> þe toper Passence & Katiger.<sup>10</sup> has.

- " & y am—syker mot ze be—  
 " Hated for þe loue of þe. 7644  
 " þou art my sone, for þys skyle,  
 " þou hast<sup>1</sup> my doughter; as lawe hit wyle,  
 " Y am þy fader, als in honour  
 " To be þe a god conseillour; 7648  
 " ¶ ȝyf þou wilt regne, trist on me wel,  
 " & help on my partie som del. and as I'm  
 " ȝyf þou wilt greue þyn enemis, your father,  
 " Y schal þe conseilliche by god auis,<sup>2</sup> I'm bound to  
 " Send after my sone, sire Octa, give you good  
 " & ffor his cosyn Ebsa,<sup>3</sup> counsel.  
 " & ffor a noble knyght<sup>4</sup> Kerdyk;  
 " in al Saxoyne nar<sup>5</sup> non þem lyk; 7652  
 " þey ar fighters, & noble iustours,<sup>6</sup> Therefore I  
 " & queynte men & werreyour[s]; advise you to  
 " Gyf hem lond y þe norþ to lende,— send for my son  
 " þy werre comeþ euere iu by þat ende,<sup>7</sup> Octa, his cousin  
 " ffor þyn enemis þey schul<sup>8</sup> þe were, 7656  
 " þat nought of þyn schulle þey<sup>9</sup> dere; Ebsa, and a  
 " So myght þou haue, til þy deses,<sup>10</sup> noble knight,  
 " O þys half Humber þy lond in pes." Kerdyk,  
 " ¶ þen seyde þe kyng, "send after þo,  
 " & of þe beste, ȝyf þer be mo." 7664  
 Hengist hadde his sonde<sup>11</sup> sone; and settle them  
 " þem to brynge þey were al bone; 7668 in the north  
 " Wyþ hem cam a flute of flode, to protect you  
 " pritty schipes<sup>12</sup> alle gode; against your  
 " Knyghtes þat wolde wende for wages, enemies."  
 " Wyþ Octa wenten to þe ryuages. 7672  
 and they come  
 with 30 ship-  
 loads of  
 knights.

<sup>1</sup> has.

<sup>2</sup> I. *satt þe counseitt a gode vis.*

<sup>3</sup> *Ebissa* (in Wace, and Geoff. too).

<sup>4</sup> *man.* [leaf 46.] The first scribe begins again.

<sup>5</sup> *sessone ere.*

<sup>6</sup> *þise ere feihters nobitt in stours.*

<sup>7</sup> See p. 235, l. 6703–4; p. 259, l. 7399, 7400, &c.

<sup>8</sup> *satt.* <sup>9</sup> *satt robbe ne.*

<sup>10</sup> *may þou haf to þi decese.*

<sup>11</sup> *had his sondes.*

<sup>12</sup> *à trois cent nès, Wace, i. 335, l. 7231; cum trecentis navibus, Galf. Mon. vi. 13.*

270 VORTIMER, SON OF VORTIGER, IS MADE KING.

Then come  
smaller parties  
of Saxons,

till there are as  
many Pagans  
as Christians  
in England.  
This annoys  
the Britons, and  
they ask Vor-  
tiger

to send them  
out of the  
country.

He will not.

After þat flute, com ouer þe se  
Schipes vmwhile by two or <sup>1</sup> þre,  
<sup>2</sup> By foure & fyue, by six & seuene,  
By eyghte & nyne, by ten & enleuene; <sup>3</sup> 7676  
In a þrowe were mo Payen men, [leaf 33, back, col. 2.]  
Or al so manie, as were Cristen.  
þis seye þe Bretons, & were onoyed, <sup>3</sup>  
& seide þe kyng þe lond destroyed; 7680  
To þe kyng þey pleyned in curteys sawe; <sup>4</sup>  
" Payens ageyn þe Cristen lawe  
" Bygynneþ gretly vs to greue;  
" To wende a-wey, sire, gyue þem <sup>5</sup> leue, 7684  
" Alle, or þe moste partye,  
" ffor to Cristendom ȝe do vlyenye."  
þe kyng answered, & seyde, " nay,  
" Y sente for þem; þey serue to pay." 7688

¶ Vortimerus, filius ffortigerni, factus est Rex.

On this the  
Britons

make Vortimer  
king,

and by his  
order

drive the  
Saxons out of  
his dominions.

Whan þe Bretons herde þat þe kyng  
Wolde nought leue for no þynge,  
At Londone þey sette a Parlement,  
& Vortimer to kyng þey hent, 7692  
þe eldest sone of ffortyger,  
þat was a doughti bacheler.  
þis Vortimer dide crie a cry,  
' þat no Saxon <sup>6</sup> were so hardy, 7696  
' In his demeynes dwelle ne be,  
' Neyþer in burgh ne in cite.'  
Anon alle out he dide hem keste; <sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> bi.

<sup>2-3</sup> P. leaves out these two lines,  
though Wace begins at four ships  
and goes up to ten, i. 335, l. 7237-8.

<sup>3</sup> noied.

<sup>4</sup> þei praied him he suld not drauh.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *us.* P. *gif þam.* (Départe

les, Wace, i. 336, l. 7249; ut ipsos  
expelleret, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 13.)

<sup>6</sup> . . . . krie a kri  
þat no sessone.

<sup>7</sup> smertli all did þam out keste.  
[leaf 46, col. 2.]

Among þe Bretons myghter non reste.<sup>1</sup> 7700  
 þe kyng, for loue of his wyf,  
 Held wyþ þe Saxons, & meyntend strif.<sup>2</sup> Vortiger holds  
 with the  
 Saxons,

**De infortuniis Saxonum.**

. Hys sone hadde þer-wyþ enuye,  
 & sey his fader meyntende folye; 7704  
 He spied þe Saxoyns,<sup>3</sup> whar þey ware,  
 & chased hem as hound doþ þe<sup>4</sup> hare;  
 His folk was god, hym-self doughti,  
 & meyntende wel his party. 7708  
 Baldely bolded on hym þe Bretons  
 Ageyns his fader & þe Saxons;<sup>5</sup> **De exilis**  
 ffoure tymes þey bataille nomen, **Saxonum.**  
 & euere þe Saxoyns<sup>3</sup> were ouer-comen; 7712  
 þe firste bataille was vpon Derewent,  
 . þer were þe Saxons<sup>3</sup> alle y-schent;  
 þat oþer at Berforde, att a brok,<sup>5</sup>  
 þer þe Saxons eft bataille tok,<sup>6</sup> 7716  
 þer was Hors & manye anoþer  
 Ageyn Catyger, Vortymeres broþer;  
 . Gretly þey 3ernde ilk oþer tasayle,  
 & boþe were slayn at þat bataille. 7720  
 þe þridde tyme in Kent, at an hauen;  
 To þer schipes þer<sup>7</sup> þey were drawen;  
 þer wer þey so harde byset,  
 þey fledde to þe yle of Tanet; 7724  
 ffro byzonde Humber, vnto þat ylde,  
 Was no Saxon<sup>3</sup> so bold ne wylde,  
 þat he ne dide hym þyder chace,

but Vortimer  
 hunts them  
 down like a  
 hound does a  
 hare.

Four times do  
 the Britons  
 beat the Saxons  
 in battle:  
 1. On Derwent;  
 2. At Berford,  
 where Horsa  
 and Catyger  
 are both slain:  
 3. In Kent,  
 when the  
 Saxons flee to  
 the Isle of  
 Thanet.

<sup>1</sup> non mot rest.

<sup>2</sup> held þe sessions mantende stryfe.

<sup>3</sup> sessions.

<sup>4</sup> þam als hunde dos.

<sup>5</sup> Berford at a broke. (Epifor, lines.

Wace, l. 7273; Episford, *Galf. Mon.*)

<sup>6</sup> þer eftsons bataile þei toke.

<sup>7</sup> as. P. transposes the next two lines.



4. In the Isle of  
Thanet, where  
they follow the  
Saxons,

who die for  
hunger.

Then the  
Saxons ask  
Vortiger  
to get them  
leave from  
Vortimer to  
leave his land  
peaceably ;

and they sail  
off, leaving  
their wives and  
children be-  
hind.

. ffor in ffortiger<sup>1</sup> þey fond no grace. 7728  
þe Bretons folewed þem & slowe ;  
þo þat ascaped, to þe hil<sup>2</sup> þey drowe.  
I þe yle þey assailed þem þer-ynne  
Wip botes, as þey myghte þem<sup>3</sup> wynne ; 7732  
By þe se syde on þem þey carf ; [leaf 34.]  
O þe oþer syde for hunger þey starf.  
þan sey Saxons<sup>4</sup> on ilk syde wo,  
& þoughte best<sup>5</sup> were to wende þer-fro ; 7736  
þey sente her sonde to ffortyger,  
' þat he wolde so sende to<sup>6</sup> Vortymer,  
' To gyue hem leue a-vey to wende  
' Wypouten slaughter,<sup>7</sup> as he was hende ; 7740  
' ffor þey ne leften nyght ne day  
' þem tasaille wyþ strong afray :  
' His trewes, þer-fore, fond vs<sup>8</sup> to gete.'  
þen drowe þe Saxons<sup>9</sup> alle to a flete, 7744  
& dight þer schipes, & sette vp sayl,  
Left wyf & childre, & oþer porayl :<sup>10</sup>  
On þis manere a-vey þey scaped,  
Ouer se til oþer land þeym<sup>11</sup> raped. 7748

### ¶ De Restauracione ecclesiarum per Vortimerum.

Vortimer re-  
stores the  
churches,

and has God's  
service sung in  
them.

Vortymer dide þanne restore  
þat for þem hadde any lore.  
He dide kirkes reyse & make,—  
. þo þat Hengist dide doun schake,— 7752  
& dide Godes seruise be songe & seyð,  
þat for þe Payens longe was leyð.

<sup>1</sup> for all þe kyng.

<sup>2</sup> Ilde.

<sup>3</sup> to þam.

<sup>4</sup> þe sessions sauh.

<sup>5</sup> þare best it.

<sup>6</sup> wild praie sir.

<sup>7</sup> scape. P. leaves out the next  
two lines.

<sup>8</sup> In þis treus leue. [leaf 46, back.]

<sup>9</sup> þe sessions drouh þam.

<sup>10</sup> childe & oþer apparaille.

<sup>11</sup> Into þer awen lond þam.

He sente to Rome, to seint Romeyn,  
 & he sente lider þe byschop Germeyn.  
 þen com wyþ hym seint Lowys,  
 An holy bischop & a wys,—  
 þey were sent þe londe to assoille,—  
 He kepte þe sege of the apostoylle.<sup>1</sup>  
 pyse two turned þe folk ageyn,  
 To Crist & to his lawe ageyn;<sup>2</sup>  
 & manion þorow hem saued was  
 . þat er wer gyuen to Satanas.  
 þorow hem schewed God many vertu,  
 þat in þis lond dide gret pru.

7756

The pope sends  
 him Bishops  
 Germeyn and  
 St. Lowys,

7760

and they turn  
 the folk to  
 Christ again.

7764

¶ De Maledicta Ronewenna.

When þey had stabled Godes lawe  
 . þorow miracle & þorow þer sawe,  
 Anoper sorewe com vp ryf,  
 þorow Ronewenne, ffortygeres wyf:  
 . Scheo made a drynke þorow treson,  
 & Vortymer sche dide poyson;  
 Scheo poysend hym þat louede Crist,  
 ffor þe payen, hure ffader Hengist.  
 Whan Vortymer wyste he scholde deye—  
 Leches to lyue coupe hym non seye,<sup>3</sup>—  
 þen sent he after his barons bolde,  
 Bytaught hem alle his tresor to holde,  
 & seide, “takeþ conseil & red,—  
 . “ Of me nys non, for y am ded,<sup>4</sup>—  
 “ Men of armes swyþe<sup>5</sup> ze take,  
 . “ By alle þe costes<sup>6</sup> quykly to wake  
 “ þat no Saxoyn<sup>7</sup> on ȝow aryue,

7768

Then Ronewen  
 poisons Vor-  
 timer;

7772

7776

and when he  
 knows he must  
 die, he bids his  
 barons

7780

set watches on  
 the coasts, so  
 that no Saxons  
 may land;

<sup>1</sup> see of þe apostole.

<sup>2</sup> to leue þe cristen lawe certayn.

<sup>3</sup> not seie.

<sup>4</sup> .I. am bot dede.

<sup>5</sup> knyghtes of sonde .I. rede.

<sup>6</sup> bi þe se side.

<sup>7</sup> sesson.

- and bury him  
by the sea side
- under a very  
high tomb,
- that may  
always meet  
the Saxon's  
eye, and keep  
them off.  
Vortimer then  
dies; and, as  
dead men's  
words are soon
- Nota.**
- forgotten,  
his barons bury  
him in London.  
Vortiger reigns  
again over the  
whole land;  
and, on Rone-  
wen's asking,
- sends word to  
Hengist to  
come over  
again, but with  
few folk, so as  
not to frighten  
the Britons.
- " Ne receyueþ non for þyng alyue; 7784  
 " Holdeþ þe stat þat y ʒow wan,  
 " And trauailleþ forþ as y began;  
 " And ʒyf ʒe do als y schal rede, [leaf 34, col. 2.]  
 " On ʒow to come þey schul drede. 7788  
 " By þe se side, byrieþ me þere,  
 " þe sight of me ʒyt schal hem fere;<sup>1</sup>  
 " & doþ make a tounge þat longe may last,  
 " þe sight þerof schal þem agast; 7792  
 " On alle manere ʒe make hit heye,  
 " þat y be euere ageyn þer eye;  
 " þat wey of me þan schul þey scurne,  
 " Ne neuere haue grace on me to turne." 7796  
 þus he þem taughte, þus he þem seyde,  
 & þenne byforn þem alle he deyde.  
 Bot þei dide nought his comandement; **Hen pro**  
 þe dedes conseyl<sup>2</sup> ys sone ouer-went,— **morte Vor-**  
 To Londone his body þey bar, **timery!**  
 & in þe cite biried hym þar.  
 þen wax ffortiger ful stout;  
 Als he fore dide, he<sup>3</sup> regned þorowout. 7804  
 Ronewenne þenne hure lord bysought  
 þat Hengist myghte a-geyn be brought.  
 Anon tys<sup>4</sup> wif, his wille he went,  
 & after Hengist his lettre sent: 7808  
 To come sleightly he scholde<sup>5</sup> fonde,  
 & litel folk wyþ hym brynge<sup>6</sup> to londe,  
<sup>7</sup> So þe barons þem nought mispaye,  
 Ne þe comun folk affraye;<sup>7</sup> 7812  
 " Hit nedep no þyng gret folk to haue,  
 " ffor Vortimer lygges ded<sup>8</sup> in graue."

<sup>1</sup> *satt þam afere.* [lf. 46, bk., col. 2.]<sup>2</sup> *dede conseile.*<sup>3</sup> *he are was.*<sup>4</sup> *titt his.* [went=turned]<sup>5</sup> *com stily he suld.*<sup>6</sup> *bot bring not mykett folk.*<sup>7-7</sup> P. leaves out these two lines.<sup>8</sup> MS. *dred.* P. *dede.*

¶ Hengistus reconsiliatus est.

|                                                         |      |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|
| When Hengist herde þo tydinges,                         |      |                  |
| His God he þanked, <sup>1</sup> & made offrynges ;      | 7816 | But Hengist      |
| He dight hym folk, an hundred <sup>2</sup> þousand      |      | brings over      |
| Of armed men, brought þem to land.                      |      | 100,000 men      |
| Many a Breton þen dredde hym sore,                      |      | with him.        |
| & so schold oper þat þenne [ne] <sup>3</sup> wore.      | 7820 | This frightens   |
| When þe kyng herde Hengist was comen,                   |      | the Britons      |
| & wiþ mykel folk þe lond <sup>4</sup> had nomen,        |      | and Vortiger     |
| He dredde hym sore, & mente his mone.                   |      | too,             |
| þe Bretons were greued ones <sup>5</sup> ilkone,        | 7824 | and the Britons  |
| & seide 'þey wolde do <sup>6</sup> þer myght            |      | say they'll      |
| ' To sle þem down wyþ force & <sup>7</sup> fight.'      |      | fight.           |
| Bot Hengist herde, what loud, what stille,              |      | On this,         |
| þe Bretons to hym hadde yuel <sup>8</sup> wille.        | 7828 | Hengist trea-    |
| Hym self was euere ful feloun ;                         |      | cherously        |
| He sente to þe kyng al in tresoun,                      |      |                  |
| 'þat he wolde speke wyþ alle in pees,                   |      | declares that    |
| ' & simply <sup>9</sup> wyþouten pres ;                 | 7832 | he wants peace   |
| ' Pes he asked, pes wolde he seke,                      |      | only,            |
| ' Til hym in pes he wolde be <sup>10</sup> meke,        |      | that he'll not   |
| ' & he wolde nought þe Bretons greue,                   |      | grieve the       |
| ' Ne dwelle wiþ force ageyn þer leue,                   | 7836 | Britons,         |
| ' Bot chese þem-seluen, as þey wol say,                 |      | but will stop or |
| ' Wheþer we schul dwelle, or go our way.' <sup>11</sup> |      | go as they       |
| On þat couenaunt & þat deuīs                            |      | choose.          |
| þey hadde trewes on boþe partys.                        | 7840 | So a truce is    |
| When þe partys to trewe <sup>12</sup> wer brought,      |      | made,            |

<sup>1</sup> he þankid his godes.

<sup>2</sup> þre hundreth. (trois cent milliers, *Wace*, i. 343, l. 7380 ; trecenta millia, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 15.)

<sup>3</sup> þan ne.

<sup>4</sup> hauen.

<sup>5</sup> euere.

<sup>6</sup> þei suld fōnd.

<sup>7</sup> & do him flie þorgh force of.

<sup>8</sup> had wikked.

<sup>9</sup> scmpely. [leaf 47.] A fresh scribe (? not the second) writes this page of P. and has -in, -is, -id, &c.

<sup>10</sup> wild him.

<sup>11</sup> or at þer wiþ go home þer weie.

<sup>12</sup> treus.

and a day for  
parleying fixed,  
on Salisbury  
plain, by the  
Marvel of Am-  
bresbury.  
Hengist is told  
to come alone ;

but he says  
he'll come with  
men unarmed.

Hengist of treson hym bypought ;<sup>1</sup>  
þorow trist of trues, of<sup>2</sup> on assent  
þey sette a day of Parlement 7844  
Opon þe Playne of Salesbury,  
Byside the Merueille of Aumbresbyry,<sup>3</sup>  
þey bede Hengist no gret folk lede, [leaf 34, bk., col. 1.]  
Bot senglely come, & noman<sup>4</sup> drede, 7848  
& what lordyng he gan mete,  
& Als he þem dredde he scholde<sup>5</sup> lete.  
Hengist sent hym bode a-geyn,  
þat he wolde comen to þe Playn 7852  
Wypoute armure on any wyght,  
ffor drede of contek & of fight.

¶ De tradicionē Hengisti, & occisione Britonum  
cum Sexis.

On the 1st of  
May the meet-  
ing at Salisbury  
is held.

But the traitor  
Hengist has  
told his men  
to bring two-  
edged knives—  
sexes—hidden  
in their hosen,

to set them-  
selves, each one

To þat playne þey come þat day,  
Of Salesbury, þe firste of May, 7856  
Many a man (wypoute<sup>6</sup> somons)  
Of þe Saxons<sup>7</sup> & of þe Bretons :  
Hereþ now how Hengist þought,<sup>8</sup>  
What treson he schop to be wrought.<sup>9</sup> 7860  
“ ffelawes,” he seyde, “ what so bytydes,  
“ Get ȝow knyues egged on<sup>10</sup> boþe sydes,  
“ & ber þem priuely, þat non ne se,  
“ In ȝoure hoses harde by ȝour kne.<sup>11</sup> 7864  
“ When we haue þem, & þey vs gret,  
“ & ilkon of vs by a Breton<sup>12</sup> set,—

<sup>1</sup> who wuld have wend of treson  
þoght.

<sup>2</sup> treist & treus on.

<sup>3</sup> Nunnis of Ammesberi. (l'abeie,  
Wace, i. 344, l. 7410; cænobium,  
Galf. Mon. vi. 15.)

<sup>4</sup> simpli no man suld.

<sup>5</sup> so suld he.

<sup>6</sup> þoru.

<sup>7</sup> sessons.

<sup>8</sup> heres now how . . . wrought.

<sup>9</sup> þis treson who wuld have þoght.

<sup>10</sup> þuruey ȝou kniues egid.

<sup>11</sup> In ȝoure bosums be ȝour the.

<sup>12</sup> Ilkone be sidyn oper.

- " On alle manere fondes how,  
 " Ay on of hem, anoper<sup>1</sup> of 3ow,— 7868  
 " Nymep out<sup>2</sup> 3our sexes when y so say,  
 " & handes on 3our felawes lay,  
 " On ilka Breton þat sittes 3ou nest,  
 " & strykep hem ded þorow bak &<sup>3</sup> brest." 7872  
 When Hengist to þem þus had yseyd,<sup>4</sup>  
 Ilka Saxon<sup>5</sup> a sex purueyd,  
 & com to þe Plaync of Salesbury,  
 flair felawschip,<sup>6</sup> & ful mury. 7876  
 When þey were alle set in fere,  
 Als he had seid hem þe<sup>7</sup> manere,  
 " Nymep out<sup>8</sup> 3our sexes," seide Hengist ;  
 Bot what lit mente þe Bretons nyst.<sup>9</sup> 7880  
 þe Saxons<sup>10</sup> anon þer sexes drowe ;<sup>11</sup>  
 His felawe next, þe Saxons<sup>10</sup> slowe.  
 þe kyng sey þat, anon vp stirt,  
 Bot Hengist laughtym<sup>12</sup> by þe skirt, 7884  
 & he held hym as stille as ston,  
 þat he mighte helpe to saue non.  
 þe Bretons seye þey were by-traischt,<sup>13</sup>  
 fful deolfully were þey þenne abayscht.<sup>14</sup> 7888  
 þat so sodeynly had þer lyues<sup>15</sup> reft/,  
 & so fewe lordes as þer were left ;  
 ffor þer wer slayn of knyghtes<sup>16</sup> bolde  
 pre hundred<sup>17</sup> & sexti Bretons tolde ; 7892  
 Alle were þey lordes<sup>18</sup> euerilkone,

next to a  
Briton,

and, when he,  
Hengist, calls,

let each Saxon  
draw his sex,  
and stab the  
Briton next  
him, in the  
back.

So every Saxon  
brings his sex,

and when  
Hengist gives  
the word,  
each kills the  
Briton next  
him,

7884 while Hengist  
holds Vortiger  
down.

7892 360 British  
knights are  
slain ;

<sup>1</sup> & on.

<sup>2</sup> takis oute.

<sup>3</sup> & smyle with knife þrou bak or.  
leaf 47, col. 2.] After, brest P. adds,

att gate þat 3ee him slo.  
no poer haue ferer to go.

<sup>4</sup> whan þis treson to þem was said.

<sup>5</sup> man.

<sup>6</sup> felichip.

<sup>7</sup> said on þat.

<sup>8</sup> takis oute.

<sup>9</sup> ne wist.

<sup>10</sup> sessions.

<sup>11</sup> drohe . . . slohe.

<sup>12</sup> toke him.

<sup>13</sup> be traist.

<sup>14</sup> So sodeynly þei were o beist.

<sup>15</sup> & þer lues so sone.

<sup>16</sup> baroñs.

<sup>17</sup> quatre cens, Wace, i. 346, l.

7438 ; quadringentos, Galf. Mon.

vi. 15.

<sup>18</sup> att riche men.

|                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| but some<br>escape, defend-<br>ing themselves<br>with stones. | . for whilk þe lond made mykel mone ;<br>& þo þat ascaped out of þe place,<br>Wyp stones foughte as <sup>1</sup> þey had space ;                                                                                                                               | 7896 |
| Eldok, earl of<br>Gloucester,<br>gets hold of a<br>tree,      | ffyghtyng þey fledde, þey hadde al <sup>2</sup> nede.<br>þe Erl <sup>3</sup> of Gloucestre was in þat drede ;<br>A tre he laughte, & þer-wyp smot,<br>& his dint on þe Saxons <sup>4</sup> bot ;                                                               | 7900 |
| and with it kills<br>30 men.                                  | Sire Eldok, þe noble Erl so <sup>5</sup> hight,<br>. His dint wyp-stonde, no Saxon <sup>6</sup> myght,<br>for he slow þer of Hengistes <sup>7</sup> men,<br>Als hit telles, twenty <sup>8</sup> & ten.                                                         | 7904 |
| He escapes to<br>Gloucester.                                  | He bar hym so in þat pres<br>þat of wounde he was wem-les,<br>þey seye he scaped so <sup>9</sup> wyp þe lyf,<br>& kesten after hym many a knyf ;<br>þer his hors was, þider he gan <sup>10</sup> spede,<br>& to Gloucestre on þat hors he zede ; <sup>11</sup> | 7908 |
| Vortiger's life<br>is saved by<br>Hengist,                    | And so he warnyscht al þat toun<br>. þat þey ne-dredde no Saxoun. <sup>12</sup><br>þen Saxoyns <sup>13</sup> wolde han slayn þe kyng,<br>Bot Hengist wold nought for no þyng ;<br>He bad hem "leue, do him bot god,<br>" for he haþ auauunced mykel my blod :  | 7912 |
| but he is pri-<br>soned in Lon-<br>don ;                      | " Als in lawe he ys my sone,<br>" Elles he scholde oþer weys mone."<br>þey ledde hym þenne to London,<br>& þer þey dide hym in prison.<br>London was þeirs, to Lincolne þey hasted,<br>Wynchestre & zork þey toke & wasted.                                    | 7920 |

<sup>1</sup> wit stonis faukt wen.<sup>2</sup> ffehtand þei fled as þei had.<sup>3</sup> Frett.<sup>4</sup> Sessons.<sup>5</sup> þis eritt sir Eldok he.<sup>6</sup> to stond his dint non ne.<sup>7</sup> þe Hengist.<sup>8</sup> seuenti. (soixante dis, Wace, l.7449 ; septuaginta, *Gulf. Mon.*, vi.  
16.)<sup>9</sup> þei sau he was schapid.<sup>10</sup> þer his hors was þider him.<sup>11</sup> on him to gloucestre he fled.<sup>12</sup> sessoun . . . Sessons. [lf. 47, bk.](These readings will not be given  
again.)

- ffortiger saw how þat hit foor;<sup>1</sup>  
 What þey hym asked, he þem swor. 7924  
 ffor to ben out of þer prisoun, and, to get free,  
 & quit of alle manere raunsoun,  
 He graunted þem þanne to haue Southsex, gives the  
 Oxenfordshire,<sup>2</sup> & Middelsex, 7928 Saxons Sussex,  
 ffor þey marchen vpon<sup>3</sup> Kent Oxfordshire,  
 þat he gaf Ronewenne to rent. and Middlesex,  
 & forto mene ȝyt of þe tresons which border  
 Of þe sexes & of þe Saxons, 7932 on Kent.  
 þo countres haue þer-of þe<sup>4</sup> name,  
 Sexes, fo[r] þe Saxons schame.  
<sup>5</sup> Sire ffortiger þe kyng þankede God þo, Vortiger thanks  
 . þat so quit & sker had lat hym go.<sup>5</sup> 7936 God he is quit  
 Toward Walys þen fledde he ȝerne, of the Saxons,  
 ffer away byȝonde Seuerne; flees to Wales,  
 pere he dwelled & made soiour:  
 . Now hereþ how he þer made his tour. 7940 and builds a  
 tower there.

¶ De castello ffortygerny in Wallia.

- He dide sende after þe clergie,  
 þe wysest men of astronomye;  
 At hem alle, conseil he took,  
 'How he myghtym saflieſt lok'<sup>6</sup> 7944  
 'A-geyn his enemis for to fende, how he can  
 'ȝyf host bysegged hym as he wende.' best defend  
 þus redde hym þenne his conseilours: himself against  
 'To make a strong castel wiþ tours 7948 his enemies.  
 'þat non wyþ force mighte hit take, They advise  
 'Ne wyþ engyns hit perebrake;<sup>7</sup> him to make a  
 strong castle,

<sup>1</sup> fore . . . suore.

<sup>2</sup> & estsex. (Essex, Wace, i. 348, l. 7474, from MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.)

<sup>3</sup> merched opon.

<sup>4</sup> haf þo cuntres þerfor to.

<sup>5-5</sup> Whan þe kyng sir Vortiger.  
 was laten go quyte & clere.

<sup>6</sup> saueþy loke.

<sup>7</sup> non engine perbrake.



|                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| and fortify it.                                                                                                                              | ' & when hit [was] <sup>1</sup> dight at his auys,<br>' To warnyschit <sup>2</sup> ageyn his enemis.'                                                                                                                                                   | 7952         |
|                                                                                                                                              | In fele stedes þenne ches he<br>Where was best & most ese.                                                                                                                                                                                              |              |
| Vortiger<br>chooses the hill<br>Mount de Tyre,<br>and sets masons<br>to work at his<br>castle.                                               | On an hil hight Mount de Tyre, <sup>3</sup><br>þer-on was his moste desire ;                                                                                                                                                                            | 7956         |
|                                                                                                                                              | Masons brought he þenne <sup>4</sup> þer-tille,<br>Bygonne þat castelwerk o <sup>5</sup> þat hille ;<br>Morter þey made, & ston dide fet,<br>& spedde hem faste þer-on to set.                                                                          | 7960         |
| But all that<br>they build up<br>in the day, falls<br>down at night.                                                                         | Alle þat þey made a day vpright,<br>ffallen was down vpon þat nyght ;<br>Often þey les al þeyr iornes,<br>þat what [þei] <sup>6</sup> made, lay down on knes.                                                                                           | 7964         |
| Vortiger sends<br>for his wise<br>men,<br>and asks them<br>why the work<br>falls,                                                            | þat saw þe kyng hit misferde <sup>7</sup> so ;                                                                                                                                                                                                          | [leaf 35.]   |
|                                                                                                                                              | þe maistres he dide eft com hym to,<br>& preide þem telle ' what þyng hit deres<br>' þat þe erþe pys werk ne beres ;                                                                                                                                    | 7968         |
| and what'll<br>make it stand.                                                                                                                | ' & zif þey myghte, þey scholde fonde<br>' To wyte what myghte don hit stonde.'<br>pys wyse maistres þer bokes kest, <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                       |              |
|                                                                                                                                              | . Why þat werk ne wolde nought lest ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 7972         |
| They search<br>their books, and<br>answer                                                                                                    | . þey fondyt þenne in þer musyng, <sup>9</sup><br>. A gret selcoup, & telde þe kyng :                                                                                                                                                                   |              |
| that if a child,<br>not begotten by<br>a man,<br>can be found<br>and killed,<br>the work will<br>stand on mortar<br>mixed with his<br>blood. | " zyf ani man myghte a child fynde<br>" þat hadde no fader of mankynde,<br>" zyf he were taken & slayn sone, <sup>10</sup><br>" & menged his blod wyþ mortar & stone,<br>" Vpon þat mortar þat blod wer inne,<br>" þat werk men mygh[t] safly bygynne." | 7976<br>7980 |

<sup>1</sup> whan it were.<sup>2</sup> warnissed.<sup>3</sup> Mont de Rir, *Wace*, i. 349, l. 7510 ; ad Erir montem, *Galf. Mon.*, vi. 17.<sup>4</sup> slie he brouht. [lf. 47, bk., col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> began a hastell opon.<sup>6</sup> þat þei.<sup>7</sup> þe kyng sawh it misfare.<sup>8</sup> maistres lotes caste. (ont deviné et sortoi, *Wace*, i. 351, l. 7529.)<sup>9</sup> fond in þer lotes kestying.<sup>10</sup> on one.



" Ne of what kynde þat he grew !  
 " þer wot no man of wham þat come,<sup>1</sup>  
 " þer-fore y halde þe no mannes sone ! " 8016  
 þe messengers lystned, & þought  
 þat swylk a child hadde þey sought ;  
 þey spird<sup>2</sup> at men of þat cite,  
 þat Dynabus seyde, ȝyf hit myght be, 8020  
 þat ffader wystey hym haue<sup>3</sup> non.  
 þey of þe cite seyde ylkon,  
 " His moder we knowe, þat hym bare ;  
 " Of his fader ne wyte we whare ; 8024  
 " Hys moder kynde alle we knowe,<sup>4</sup> [leaf 35, col. 2.]  
 " Bot his ffader we neuere sawe.  
 " Scheo was þe kynges doughter, Dymenice,<sup>5</sup>  
 " Of Walys he hadde half partye ; 8028  
 " Scho ys nonne of relygion  
 " At Seint Petres kirke of þis toun."  
 þey zede to þe Meyre of Kermerdyn,  
 O þe kynges halue asked Merlyn 8032  
 þat neuere ȝit no fader had ;  
 His moder also wyþ hym þey lad.  
 þe Meyre þen wolde þem nought werne,  
 Bot sped þem on þer wey ful ȝerne. 8036  
 þey come to þe kyng ffortyger,  
 & he welcomed hem on faire maner :  
 ¶ " Dame," seyde þe kyng, " welcome be þou !  
 " Nedlike at þe y mot wyse how, **Dicta**  
 " Who þan gat by sone Merlyne, **Matris**  
 " & on what manere was he þyne." **Merlyny.**  
 His moder stod a þrowe, & þought,  
 Er sche to þe kyng onswered ought. 8044  
 When scheo had stande<sup>6</sup> a litel wyght,  
 Sche seyde, " by Marye bright,<sup>7</sup>

You are no  
 man's son !"  
 The messengers  
 ask the citizens  
 about Merlin's  
 father.  
 They say they  
 don't know his  
 father, but they  
 do his mother,  
 who  
 is the daughter  
 of king Dy-  
 menice,  
 and now a nun  
 at St. Peter's  
 church.  
 The messengers  
 take Merlin  
 and his mother  
 to Vortiger,  
 and he asks her  
 who begat  
 Merlin on her.  
 She says " I  
 never saw or

<sup>1</sup> ne no man of þe may knowe.<sup>2</sup> þe spired.<sup>3</sup> wist þei him haf.<sup>4</sup> knowe . . . sowe.<sup>5</sup> demetic.<sup>6</sup> standen. [leaf 48, col. 2.]<sup>7</sup> bi ihesu in Mari liht.

- " þat y ne sey, ne neuere knew,  
 " Hym þat þis child on me sew ;<sup>1</sup>  
 " Y ne wiste neuere, ne y ne herde,  
 " What maner wyght<sup>2</sup> wyþ me so ferde ;  
 " Bot þis þyng am y wel of graunt,  
 " Whon y was of elde auenaunt,  
 " On com þer to my bed, y wyst,  
 " & wyþ force me clipte<sup>3</sup> & kyst ;  
 " Als a man y hym felt,  
 " & als a man he me welt,  
 " And als a man he spak to me,  
 " Bot what he was myght y nought se.  
 " So often to my bed he cam,  
 " & ofte me kyste, in armes nam,  
 " & knew me als a man schold do,  
 " Byfore ne syþen did neuere non so :  
 " Al þus<sup>4</sup> conseyued y þys knaue,  
 " & als y wiste, told y ȝow haue."  
 þen dide þe kyng a maister calle,  
 Magait<sup>5</sup> he highte, wysest of alle ;  
 He asked ȝyf hit myghte be so,  
 þat þyng þat scheo<sup>6</sup> telde þem to.  
 " ȝe,"<sup>7</sup> seyde þe Maistere to þe kyng,  
 " Hit may bityde, swylka<sup>8</sup> þyng.  
 " ffor we fynde writen in our scrytes  
 " Of swylk manere of spyrites ;  
 " Bytwyxtē þe mone & þe erþe þei wone—  
 " So telleþ vs our bokes þat we kone ;—  
 " Som what tak þey of mannes kynde,  
 " & mengyt wyþ angles, as we fynde ;  
 " ffor þeyr wonyng ys in þe eyr,  
 " Vmwhile to þe erþe þey make repeir.  
 " Mykel skape do þey nought ;
- 8048 knew the be-  
 getter of my  
 boy.  
 8052  
 A being came  
 to my bed,  
 who felt like a  
 man,  
 8056  
 spoke like one,  
 8060 and kissed and  
 knew me as a  
 man would.  
 But I never  
 saw him, though  
 I conceived  
 8064 my child by  
 him."  
 Vortiger asks  
 his wisest man,  
 Magait,  
 whether  
 8068 this is possible.  
 Magait says  
 " yes ;  
 8072 there are spirits  
 living between  
 the moon and  
 earth,  
 who have  
 partly man's  
 nature, and  
 8076 partly angel's.

<sup>1</sup> knaue on me sewe.<sup>2</sup> schap.<sup>3</sup> he me halsed.<sup>4</sup> þusgate.<sup>5</sup> Magaunt. (Malgant, Wace, i. 356, l. 7623.)<sup>6</sup> als scho.<sup>7</sup> ȝa.<sup>8</sup> of suilk a.

- When they take  
man's nature,  
  
they are like  
bodies here,  
  
and can do  
women shame.  
*Incubi* they are  
called, or  
*Fiends-in-Bed*.  
  
One of them  
may have be-  
got Merlin."  
Merlin bids  
Vortiger tell  
him plainly  
why he sent for  
him.  
  
Vortiger says  
"To find out  
from you why  
my castle-work  
  
set up in the  
day,  
falls down at  
night.  
  
My diviners  
  
say your blood  
must be shed  
on the walls."  
Merlin answers,
- "Drecchyng by tymes haue<sup>1</sup> þey wrought. 8080  
 "Mannes nature vmwhile þey take;  
 "þat ys þer myght þey may so make,  
 "Whan hit ys tyme of here powere,  
 "To haue lyknesse of bodyes here.<sup>2</sup> 8084  
 "What tyme þey tak hit, wot noman  
 "Bot he þat al may wyte & kan.  
 "pise spyrites do women schame; [leaf 35, back, col. 1.]  
 "Incuby / demones, ys cald þer name, 8088  
 "ffendes-in-bedde, as our bokes<sup>3</sup> sayn,  
 "þat many woman han forlayn.  
 "On þis manere myghte Merlyn  
 "Be geten & born, by<sup>4</sup> oure deuyñ." 8092  
 ¶ þen seide Merlyn: "Sire kyng! þou has  
 "Sent after me; sey me þy<sup>5</sup> cas! **Dicta**  
 "What þou wilt, sey me þy wille, **Merlyny.**  
 "Wheþer hit is for god oþer ylle!"  
 þen seid þe kyng, "þou schalt here; 8097  
 "ffor þe y sente, at þe to lere.  
 "A castel y haue bygonne,<sup>6</sup>  
 "& lore þer-on þat y haue wonne;<sup>7</sup> 8100  
 "Al þat þey make þer on a day,  
 "O nyght alone<sup>8</sup> stand hit ne may;  
 "& eft when þey gynne<sup>9</sup> þe walles,  
 "Eyþer hit synkes, or cleues, or falles; 8104  
 "& ffayn y wolde þe werk haue hasted,  
 "& mykel of myn þer-fore ys wasted.  
 "Bot þus seide alle my dyuinours,  
 "þat þer ne schal stande wal ne tours 8108  
 "Bot þy blod þer-on be schad,  
 "þow þat neuere no fader had."  
 þenne seide Merlyn, "þat wold nought God,

<sup>1</sup> *poyntes haf.* [leaf 48, back.]<sup>2</sup> *sere.*<sup>3</sup> *so þei.*<sup>4</sup> *in.*<sup>5</sup> *what.*<sup>6</sup> *begunnen.*<sup>7</sup> *& lost þerfor þat .I. haf wutnen.*<sup>8</sup> *holy.*<sup>9</sup> *begyn.*

- " pat swylk a fals schold be bytrowd,<sup>1</sup> 8112 " God will not  
 " pat þorow þe mengynge of my blod have such a lie  
 " þy tour schold stande strong & god. believed.  
 " Y schal proue þem fals fur-sworn  
 " ȝyf þou brynge þem me byforn : 8116 Bring your  
 " þo þat on me lotes cast, diviners here,  
 " & seyde my blod myght makyt<sup>2</sup> fast, and I'll prove  
 " Y schal þem proue for lyeres olde, them old liars."  
 " pylke<sup>3</sup> maistres þat þe so tolde." 8120  
 þe kyng dide þem come ilkone, Vortiger has up  
 Ageyn Merlyn hym self alone. the diviners,  
 " Maistres," he seyde, " what haue ȝe seyde, and Merlin says  
 " What lotes haue ȝe on me leyde, 8124 " What have to 'em :  
 " ffor þys þyng ys þus ffarand, you been saying  
 " þe kynges werk hit may nought stande? about this work  
 " Con ȝe sey non oper enchesoun<sup>4</sup> tumbling  
 " Whi þat pis castel þus falles down ? 8128 down ?  
 " & ȝyf ȝe can non oper sey If you know  
 " Why þat hit falles som certeyn wey, nothing certain  
 " How couþe ȝe wyte þat þorow my blod about it,  
 " pis tour myght stande stark & god ? 8132 how can you  
 " Seys what þyng ys on<sup>5</sup> þe ground tell that my  
 " pat hit ne may stande hol ne<sup>6</sup> sound, blood 'll make  
 " & seyþ what þyng hit helpe myght, it stand ?  
 " pat þys castel myght stande vpright. 8136  
 " & ȝyf ȝe ne conne nought do hym wyte  
 " What þe fallyng may wyþ-syt,<sup>7</sup>  
 " pat ȝe haue seyde, hit ys bot fable, That is a mere  
 " pat my blod schold make hit stable ! 8140 fable.  
 " Seys now hym al þe desturblaunce,<sup>8</sup>  
 " & where-of comeþ þat wonder chaunce ! " Tell the king  
 Dise maistres of astronomie & of deuyn<sup>9</sup> now what is the  
 wonder ! "

<sup>1</sup> *suilk fals worde so suld be trod.*

<sup>2</sup> *mot.* <sup>3</sup> *þo ilk.*

<sup>4</sup> *cheson.* [leaf 48, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> *in.*

<sup>6</sup> *may not be hole &.*

<sup>7</sup> *with site.*

<sup>8</sup> *disturbance.*

<sup>9</sup> *þat said þat deuyn.*

The astro-  
nomers can't  
say a word.

Onswered<sup>1</sup> nought o word to Merlyn. 8144  
When Merlyn sey þey ne onswered<sup>1</sup> nought,  
Right to þe kyng he sayde his þought :

¶ Dicta Merliny ad Regem. [lf. 35, bk., col. 2.]

Merlin explains  
that at the  
foundation of  
the work is a  
running stream.

If they dig,  
they'll find it.  
Vortiger's  
miners do dig,  
and do find the  
water.

"Now you  
diviners," says  
Merlin,  
"tell us what  
wonder is in  
this stream !"

They can't  
answer a word.

Merlin says,  
"Scoop out the  
water, and turn  
the bourne."

This is done.

"Syre kyng," he saide, "gyf now entent !"<sup>2</sup>  
"By-neþe þe erþe, atte ffundement, 8148  
"Is a water rennyng dep,<sup>3</sup>  
"þat makes þy werk slyden o slep.<sup>4</sup>  
" & serteyn þer-of [þat] þou be,  
"Do graue þe erþe al vp, & se." 8152  
þe kyng dide come mynours<sup>5</sup> ynowe,  
þat þe erþe vp caste & drowe.  
As Merlyn seyde, þe water þey fond.  
"þe maistres," seid Merlyn, "of þys lond, 8156  
"þyf þe con telle vs now here  
"What merueille ys in þys ryuere,  
"Seyþ now þe righte certeynete,  
"þe þat diuined þe dep of me !" 8160  
þe maistres alle stille þey stod,  
þey seyden neyþer yuel<sup>6</sup> ne god.  
þen to-ward þe kyng Merlyn gan turne :  
"Do scope þis water, & turn þe borne."<sup>7</sup> 8164  
"Sykes do þe graue & groupe,<sup>8</sup>  
"þe water þer-inne<sup>9</sup> men schal scoupe."  
þe kyng dide come folk ynowe,  
þat þe water wip scopes vp drowe. 8168

<sup>1</sup> *ansuerd . . . ansurd.*

<sup>2</sup> *þi tent.*

<sup>3</sup> *rynnand depe.*

<sup>4</sup> *to slide o slepe. (Par quoi ta  
tor en terre font, Wace, i. 359, l.  
7694.)*

<sup>5</sup> *grauers.*

<sup>6</sup> *seid noiþer itt.*

<sup>7</sup> *burne. [leaf 48.]*

<sup>8</sup> *MS. groupes. P. groupe.*

<sup>9</sup> *in þam.*

§ *De diuersitate duorum Draconum.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When þe water was oute clene,<br>Merlyn schewed what hit wold mene :<br>He telde þe folk alle atones,<br>þat "y þe ground leye two hole <sup>1</sup> stones; 8172<br>" By-twyxte þe stones were to dragons,<br>" þat dide hym make al þe <sup>2</sup> somons.<br>" Do þat þo stones weren a twynne,<br>" þe dragons schul ȝe fynde wyþynne." <sup>3</sup> 8176<br>þey brast þe stones vp al so tyt,<br>& founde a red dragon & a whyt. <sup>4</sup><br>þis rede dragon was grym to se ;<br>ffel to fyghte þen semed he ; 8180<br>þe white was nought so grym of <sup>5</sup> sight,<br>Ne so fel semyng <sup>6</sup> to fyght.<br>" Sire kyng," seid Merlyn, "to me þou herk !<br>" þyse two dragons fordede þy werk ! 8184<br>" ffor whan þy werk on heyght[e] larged,<br>" þen schok þe ground, <sup>7</sup> & þeym ouer charged ;<br>" þen meued þey hem, þe water al quok,<br>" & þe werk abouen al schok ; <sup>8</sup> 8188<br>" Of þat y seyde, nought y ne ley." <sup>9</sup><br>Vp in to þe eyr þe dragons þen fley,<br>& foughte so þat hit was selcoup ;<br>flaumes as fyr fley fro <sup>10</sup> þer mouþ. 8192<br>Al þe folk seide comunly,<br>þey hoped þe rede schold haue þe maistri.<br>When þey hadde longe to-gyder smyten,<br>Spatled, spouted, belewed, <sup>11</sup> & byten, 8196 | Then says<br>Merlin,<br>" Two stones<br>are there ;<br>and betwixt<br>them, two<br>dragons.<br>Break the<br>stones, and<br>you'll find the<br>dragons."<br>The people do<br>so : a red<br>dragon, grim<br>and fell ;<br>and a white<br>not so fell.<br>" These two<br>dragons upset<br>your work,"<br>says Merlin,<br>" by moving<br>when it gets<br>heavy on<br>them."<br>The dragons<br>then fly into the<br>air, and fight<br>fiercely |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *two holle.* [leaf 49.] (hole-y, Fr. *chaves.* Wace, i. 360, l. 7712.)

<sup>2</sup> *þis.*

<sup>3</sup> *þer Inne.*

<sup>4</sup> The explanation and dragon-fight are not in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

<sup>5</sup> *grimly in.*

<sup>6</sup> *semand.*

<sup>7</sup> *þe grounde satled.*

<sup>8</sup> *to schoke.*

<sup>9</sup> *say nouht .I. leih.*

<sup>10</sup> *of fire com of.*

<sup>11</sup> *spouted sperkes boled.*



|                                                                             |                                                                                                                 |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                             | . Wyppying wyþ wenges, ouer-wepen <sup>1</sup> & went,                                                          |      |
|                                                                             | . Cracchyng wiþ clawes, rubbed, & brent; <sup>2</sup>                                                           |      |
| all that day and<br>night.                                                  | . þe bataille lasted day & nyght,                                                                               |      |
|                                                                             | . Vntil þat oþer day was lyght.                                                                                 | 8200 |
|                                                                             | . þe folk wondred þat þe white dragoun                                                                          |      |
|                                                                             | . To þe rede had any foyssoun.                                                                                  |      |
| At last, the<br>white dragon<br>burns up the<br>red one,                    | . At þe ende, þe white a fflaume out cast, [leaf 38.]                                                           |      |
|                                                                             | . þat þe rede bolnede & brast.                                                                                  | 8204 |
|                                                                             | . When he was ded, þe rede dragoun,                                                                             |      |
|                                                                             | . þe white zede & leyde hym down;                                                                               |      |
| and dies him-<br>self three days<br>after.                                  | . þre daye þen lyued he, & na mo,                                                                               |      |
|                                                                             | . þe ferþe he deyde, y trowe, for wo.                                                                           | 8208 |
| Vortiger asks<br>Merlin the<br>meaning of this.                             | ¶ Vortiger sey þanne þis chaunce;<br>He askede Merlyn þe signifaunce,<br>& preyed hym telle what hit wild mene, |      |
|                                                                             | . Wheþer hit tokned ioye or tene.                                                                               | 8212 |
| Merlin then<br>speaks pro-<br>phecies<br>that are in the<br>books of Blase, | þenne seyde Merlyn many thynges,<br>What y þis lond schuld tide of kynges,                                      |      |
|                                                                             | . þat are in Blase bokes write, <sup>3</sup> —                                                                  |      |
|                                                                             | . þey þat hauyt, mowe hit wyte, <sup>4</sup> —                                                                  | 8216 |
| Tolomer, and<br>Amytyn,                                                     | . And in Tolomer & sire Amytyn; <sup>5</sup>                                                                    |      |
|                                                                             | . þyse hadde Merlynes bokes playn,                                                                              |      |
| who wrote<br>them, and were<br>his masters.                                 | . ffor þyse þre write his prophecyes,                                                                           |      |
|                                                                             | . And were his maistres in ser <sup>6</sup> partyes.                                                            | 8220 |
|                                                                             | . Som men haue þem mykel in hande,                                                                              |      |
|                                                                             | . þat con nought þem wel vndestande.                                                                            |      |
| But I have no<br>wit to undo the<br>knots that<br>Merlin knit.              | Y sey for me, y naue no wyt<br>To open þe knottes þat Merlyn knyht.                                             | 8224 |
|                                                                             | . Men may sey more þan he hap seyð,                                                                             |      |

<sup>1</sup> *wipped . . . ouerwarpen.*<sup>2</sup> *kracchid with clawes rombed & rent.*<sup>3</sup> See Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Liber septimus, qui est de Prophetiis Merlini." Wace leaves it out too:

Ne voil son livre tranlater,

Quant jo n'elsai entrepréter:

Nule rien dire ne volroie

Qu'issi ne fu com jo diroie.

Wace, i. 361, ll. 7733-6.

<sup>4</sup> *þo þat it haf þei it witen.*<sup>5</sup> (?) *Auntayn.*<sup>6</sup> *were maistres at sere.*

. pat nopyng þer-to may be leyd.  
. Merlyn spak on \*swylk a manere,  
. pat til hit be gon, non may hit lere.

8228 He spoke so,  
that till the  
thing happened,  
no body knew  
it.

¶ De interpretatione draconum per Merlynium.

þe kyng held Merlyn in mikel pris,  
ffor his seyng was god & wys.  
(In ffortiger tyme, men hit<sup>1</sup> told,  
He was þat tyme bot twolf 3er old.)  
þe kyng bisoughtym þat he wold seye  
What manere deþ þat he schold deye.<sup>2</sup>

## Vortiger

· “ Sire kyng, to wyte hastow<sup>3</sup> desir:

8232

" Al way war þe<sup>4</sup> wel fro fyr

"ffro Constantes childre,<sup>5</sup> pat ar comand,

"pat sone schul aryuen here on land.

“ pou signefiest <sup>6</sup> pe rede dragoun,

" pat ffader & broper slowe wyf tresoun; 8240

“ & hit menes, per bataille strong,

“pat pou hast halde<sup>7</sup> per lond wyþ wrong.

. " þe white dragon ys syngnefiaunce

“ pat þey schul take of þe vengauce :

“fful yuel pou slowe per ffader & broper,<sup>8</sup>

" & madest þe kyng, þat was anoper.

“pe pridde combraunce þat zit þe mones,

" pou receyuedest þe Payens Saxones.

“ On alle halue comes by wo :

“ þe Saxoyns wyl waite þe to slo ;

" I pat oþer halue þe eyres schul come,

" & aske þer lond of þe þorow dome;

asks Merlin  
how he (the  
king) shall die.  
Merlin says,

8236 "Beware of  
fire from Con-  
stant's children,  
who will soon  
land here.  
You are the red  
8240 dragon,  
You slew their  
father and  
brother.

8244 They are the  
white dragon,  
and shall take  
vengeance on  
you.

8248

The Saxons  
will try to kill  
you too.  
Constant's heirs

<sup>1</sup> *Merlin men.*

<sup>2</sup> dede he suld dye.

<sup>3</sup> *haves* þou.

<sup>4</sup> *war þe wer þe.* (Garde-toi, distil, garde-toi, *Wace*, i. 361, l. 7742.)

<sup>5</sup> *Constant Childir.*

<sup>6</sup> *signifise.*

7 þou haues.

<sup>8</sup> *An euell pou didis pou slou per  
broper.* (The second scribe began  
again in P. at line 8229.)

- will land to-  
morrow at  
Totness, and  
march after  
you.
- Flee at once to  
your best hold.
- Aurelius shall  
reign first, but  
only a short  
time.
- Then Uther  
shall succeed,
- and after him  
his son  
(Arthur) from  
Cornwall,
- who shall  
destroy all his  
enemies."
- Vortiger starts  
at once.
- " pey ar now saylynge<sup>1</sup> in þe se;  
" Awey by tyme y rede þow fle.  
" pey schul<sup>2</sup> aryue vp at Toteneys  
" To morn, wyþ hors & wyþ harneys; 8256  
" To renne on þe [þey] schul<sup>2</sup> þem renge; [lf.3a, cl.2.]  
" fader & broþer þey schul<sup>2</sup> þan venge.  
" þer þou wenst best recet<sup>3</sup> to haue,  
" fle now faste,<sup>4</sup> þy self to saue. 8260  
" ȝyt schal y warne þe of þys þynge,  
" Aurelius schal<sup>2</sup> first be kyng;  
" & he schal<sup>2</sup> lyue nought bot a stounde;  
" þorow poyson schal<sup>2</sup> he be brought to grounde.  
" Vter, his broþer, after hym schal<sup>2</sup> be 8265  
" Kyng, & regne als dide he.  
" Vter sone schal com fro Cornewaille,  
" As a fyghtyng bor<sup>5</sup> in bataille; 8268  
" þe traiturs of þyne þat he may fynde,  
" He schal furdo, and al þer kynde;  
" Of prowesse he schal haue þe pris,  
" & destruye alle his enemis." 8272  
Merlyn stynte,<sup>6</sup> & spak namore.  
þen fforteger tok his<sup>7</sup> leue þore;  
ffo[r] þes tydynges dwelt he<sup>8</sup> nought,  
On Merlynes wordes was al his þought. 8276

### ¶ Hic de Aurelyo Rege.

- Next day, Aurelius, Uther,  
and their host,  
land at Totness,
- þat oþer day, as Merlyn seyde,  
Totenesse was vmbyleyd<sup>9</sup>  
Wyþ schipes wyþ þe children<sup>10</sup> host,  
& spred aboute by al þe cost. 8280

<sup>1</sup> sailand. [leaf 49, back.]

<sup>2</sup> sull.

<sup>3</sup> wote best refute.

<sup>4</sup> suyth.

<sup>5</sup> als a feihtand bore.

<sup>6</sup> left.

<sup>7</sup> at Vortiger he toke. (Et Vortiger d'iloc torna, Wace, i. 363, l. 7778.)

<sup>8</sup> ne Vortiger duellid.

<sup>9</sup> be layd.

<sup>10</sup> childir.

- Bretons þat herde, & weren blyþe ;  
 . þey gadered þem, & þyder swyþe ;  
 þo þat were a-sondred ful<sup>1</sup> wyde,  
 Com to Toteneys on ilka syde ; 8284  
 . Lordes riden, & fotmen ran,  
 . Bretons were bliþe ilka man.  
 Hengist byforn had don hem skulke  
 In wodes, in hilles, to crepe in hulke,<sup>2</sup> 8288  
 & had ney slayn al þer barons  
 Wyþ þe sexes of þe Saxons.<sup>3</sup>  
 . þen were þey bolde of þe cominge ;  
 . þey tok Aurelius, & made hym kyng. 8292  
 . Wyþ þe Bretons was blisse ynough,<sup>4</sup>  
 . & pretten Hengist to wake hys wough.<sup>5</sup>  
 ¶ þys tidying com to ffortiger,  
 . þat Aurelius & sire Vter 8296  
 . Were comen, & hadde seysed þe lond,  
 . þeym to venge, ȝyf þey hym fond.  
 ffor þo tydynges & þo tales  
 He fledde & warnyschet hem<sup>6</sup> in Wales ;—  
 Genoyre hight þe castel name, 8301  
 . (I not ȝyf hit haue ȝit þe same ;)  
 þe hil hight Cloart, þer men hit kennes,  
 & byside þe water of Weye<sup>7</sup> rennes ; 8304  
 þe contre þat hit standes yn,  
 þe name þer-of hight Dergryn ;<sup>8</sup>—  
 pider gadered his folk & þaire vitaille,  
 & warnyschet<sup>9</sup> hem, ȝyf ought myght vaille.  
 ¶ þe ȝonge kyng & his broþer, 8309  
 . Wyþ mania Breton, on & oþer, **De Morte**  
 . & folk wyþ hym þat he brought, **ffortygerny.**
- and all the Britons in great joy resort to them.
- Till then, Hengist has made the Britons skulk in woods and corners:
- now they'll wake his woe[?] [See l. 8558.] Vortiger hears of this,
- and flees to his castle Genoyre, in Wales,
- on the hill Cloart, near the Wye,
- in Dergryn, and garrisons it.
- Aurelius and Uther, with their Britons,

<sup>1</sup> or sundird.

<sup>2</sup> to kreppe & hulk.

<sup>3</sup> Wace, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.  
 De Lincy's No. 27 has 'Des castiax  
 ot la signorie,' Wace, i. 364, l.  
 7790.)

<sup>4</sup> eneughe. [leaf 49, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> wakin his wough.

<sup>6</sup> wanisid him.

<sup>7</sup> be side weye a water þat.

<sup>8</sup> Hergrin.

<sup>9</sup> warnisid it.

march to Wales  
and besiege  
Vortiger.

In Walys fforteger þey sought. 8312  
þey byseced straite his castel;<sup>1</sup> [leaf 36, back, col. 1.]  
ffele arewes þey schotten, & quarel<sup>2</sup>  
þey caste þer-to, on manie a gate,  
ffor þey had þer-to ful gret hate. 8316

Eldok the Earl  
of Gloucester  
(who escaped  
from the  
slaughter at  
Ambresbury,  
p. 278) is in the  
host,  
and Aurelius  
appeals to him  
(for Constant's  
gifts to him,

I þe ost was þe erl<sup>3</sup> of Gloucestre,—  
In Walys he knew al þe estre,—  
Eldok he highte, man of honour;  
And hardy knyght & god werroure. 8320  
þe kyng Aurelius asked hym red  
ffor to venge his fader ded,  
& seyde, "Sire Erl,<sup>3</sup> þou furgettest ylk del  
" þat my fader feffed þe wel, 8324  
" & gaf þe armes, & made þe knyght;  
" Syþen my broþer, in al his myght;  
" & ȝif þou louedest<sup>4</sup> hym feyþfully,  
" Help me to venge his enemy! 8328

and the Saxons'  
treachery,) to  
avenge Con-  
stant's death.

They shout "to  
arms,"

" Let now no god wille be wane,  
" Bot help to venge my fader bane!  
5. " þenk o þe Payens þat sexes drow,  
" & at þe Parlement þe lordes slow!"<sup>5</sup> 8332  
When Eldok herde, he made swilk mone,  
þey cried "as<sup>6</sup> armes" euerylkone,  
To gyue<sup>7</sup> assaut to þem wyþynne;  
Bot þe castel was yuel<sup>8</sup> to wynne. 8336  
þey comaunded to al men lyk,<sup>9</sup>

fill up the  
castle ditch  
with brush-

Wip brusch to come,<sup>10</sup> & fyllē þe dyk.  
When hit was ful, fir þey set,

<sup>1</sup> besegid his castell Genoire.

<sup>2</sup> & fondit ȝif þei might it peire.

<sup>3</sup> erell (still in the second scribe's hand).

<sup>4</sup> louedis.

<sup>5-6</sup> & þink how he ye paiens  
droughe

þat Hengist at þe parlement  
slouh.

(leaf 50, where the first scribe  
begins again.)

<sup>6</sup> Has.

<sup>7</sup> mak.

<sup>8</sup> itt.

<sup>9</sup> þat att olike.

<sup>10</sup> brusche suld com.

. & on a lowe at ones hit set ;  
 pe lowe was mikel, & vp-ward stey,  
 So þat hit in to þe castel fley,  
 & vp in to þe tour hit went,  
 þat alle þe houses aboute brent ;  
 Castel, houses, wyþ al þer atyr,  
 . Man & best, al was on fyr ;  
 . Til al was brent, woldit nought lynne.<sup>1</sup>  
 pe kyng hym self was brent þer-ynne,  
 & alle his folk euerylkone,  
 . Brente to deþe, body & bone.  
 . Of ilka traytour swilk ys þe ende !  
 . Last of his lyue wyþ wo schal<sup>2</sup> wende !  
 . Of a traitour ys al of spoken ;  
 . Of Hengist wolde þe kyng be wroken.

When Aurelius & sire Vter  
 Were venged on sire ffortyger,  
 Al þe land, ouer al aboute,  
 Wyþ loue he did hit til hym loute.  
 . Whan he wyste þat al þe land  
 . Was til his wille bowand,  
 . He seide, ' he wolde no lenger abide ;  
 ' Agayn þe Saxons wold he ryde,  
 ' Deliuere þe land of þem al klene ;  
 . ' þey han vs do ful<sup>3</sup> mykel tene.'  
 Hengist herde þo tydynges seye,  
 Toward Scotland he nam<sup>4</sup> his weye ;  
 pe souþ contre al he fursok,  
 & ouer Humber þe way he tok ;  
 Of<sup>5</sup> Scottes & of Peytes þere  
 He hoped of help, ȝyf nede we[re].  
 pe kyng hym spedde,<sup>6</sup> when he hit wiste,

8340 wood, and set  
 fire to it.  
 The flames  
 mount up,

8344 and burn all  
 the castle,  
 house, man,  
 beast, and king  
 Vortiger and all  
 his folk, to  
 8348 death.

So end traitors!

8352

8356

All the land  
 submits lov-  
 ingly to Au-  
 relius,

8360

and he resolves

8364 to drive the  
 Saxons clean  
 out of it.  
 Hengist goes  
 to Scotland,

8368

in hope to get  
 help of the  
 Scots and Picts.  
 Aurelius

<sup>1</sup> wald it not blynnē.

<sup>2</sup> itt sath.

<sup>3</sup> haf vs wrouht.

<sup>4</sup> toke.

<sup>5</sup> at.

<sup>6</sup> spied.

follows him,  
[lf. 38, bk., col. 2.]

and finds the  
whole country,  
churches and  
all, destroyed  
by the Saxons.

Aurelius vows  
to restore it if  
he lives.  
Hengist fears,  
and doesn't  
know which  
way to turn.  
But, as he *must*  
fight, he calls  
his men  
together, and  
says,  
"These Britons

will give us  
battle ;

but if we stand  
well, they'll  
soon flee.  
You know  
what Britons  
are :

Toward þe northe after Hengyste. 8372  
When Bretons herde þe kyng passed Humbre,  
So fele to hym come, men myghtem nowt  
noubre.

Towards þe northe al ways[te] þey<sup>1</sup> fonde,  
Were þere non left myght tyle þe londe, 8376  
Casteles broken, tounes<sup>2</sup> brent,  
Holy kirke was broke & schent ;  
pyse Payens Saxoyns al had reft.

þen sey þe kyng nought waster<sup>3</sup> left : 8380  
Al he highte to restore,

ȝyf he myght lyue, & eft come<sup>4</sup> þore,  
¶ Whan Hengist wyste þat<sup>5</sup> þe kyng cam,  
ffor drede he ne wyste what<sup>6</sup> wey he nam ;  
ffor to fle myght hit nought vaille, 8385

Bot ned he mest byde<sup>7</sup> bataille.  
He calde his felawes,<sup>8</sup> & bad þem rest,  
& seide, "felawes, what ys þe best ? 8388

" þis Bretons folewe vs faste & ney ;  
" Vs by-houes be queynte & sley.

" In bataille now þey<sup>9</sup> wil vs frayst,  
" Lok þat ȝe be trewe & traist ; 8392

" Dredeþ nought þer gret compaignye ;  
" ȝyf we wel stande, sone schul þey flye.

" Wel wot ȝe what Bretons are ;  
" þey feynte ful sone ȝyf non þem spare. 8396

" Standeþ styf & truely<sup>10</sup> ageyn,  
" We schul þen of hem make feldes pleyn.<sup>11</sup>

" Wyþ fewe, we han seyn many<sup>12</sup> tyme,

<sup>1</sup> waste he. [leaf 50, col. 2.] (Mult  
trova li rois pais gaste, Wace, i.  
368, l. 7867.)

<sup>2</sup> MS. þey breken tounes þey. P.  
wisely leaves out the two þeys.

<sup>3</sup> was there. P. has *was* only.

<sup>4</sup> if he had life eft to com.

<sup>5</sup> herd.

<sup>6</sup> for him he wist þe.

<sup>7</sup> nede bord him stand to.

<sup>8</sup> called his folk.

<sup>9</sup> we.

<sup>10</sup> standes stify a þrow.

<sup>11</sup> þan gif þei bak & þe felde att  
playn.

<sup>12</sup> with litill folk many a.

- " We haue þeym sondred & smyten in swyme.  
 " Tak 3e non hede<sup>1</sup> of þeyr grete host, 8401 nothing but  
 " ffor wel 3e wot þei ar bot bost, brag and feeble  
 " & fals folk, wyþ feble heuede; polls!  
 " ffor þem our wed schal nought be leued. 8404 **Nota.**  
 " He ys a child þat hem ledes! They're led by  
 " He can nought 3it on swylk[e] dedes!<sup>2</sup> a child,  
 " & we ar noble werreours and we are  
 " þat han be<sup>3</sup> proued in many stours! 8408 proved war-  
 " Standes now wel ageyn 3our fo! riors.  
 " Raunsom for vs non may go. Stand well,  
 " Defende oure lyues, best is to chese, and defend  
 " Now al to wynne or al to lese!" 8412 your lives! It's  
 When Hengist had confortd hem þus, 'win all, or lose  
 þey armed þeym alle att o frusch,<sup>4</sup> all' with us!"  
 & riden fol softe & semly Hengist's men  
 Ageyn þe Bretons wypouten cri. 8416 arm, and ad-  
 þey hoped vnarmed þe Bretons mete, vance quietly,  
 & al vnwarned on þem schete; hoping to catch  
 Bot þe Bretons, ilka conrey, the Britons un-  
 Were as wel armed as þey; 8420 armed.  
 þey hadden of þe Payens drede, But the Britons  
 Night & day armed þey 3ede. are well armed,  
 þe kyng herde seye þey come þat syde, and Aurelius  
 And to bataille þey wolde abide; 8424  
 A feld he ches, fair & brod, chooses a broad  
 He wente pyder, & þere abod. plain to fight  
 in.

*De Bello inter Aurelium Regem & Hengystum.*

- pre hundred<sup>5</sup> knyghtes of his meyne  
 þat wyþ hym comen ouer þe se, 8428  
 Alle doughty knyghte, fro ferne he fet.<sup>6</sup> [leaf 37.]

<sup>1</sup> *Mak 3e no force.*

<sup>2</sup> *of suilk dedis.*

<sup>3</sup> *3e has ben.*

<sup>4</sup> *at a frusse.*

<sup>5</sup> *þousand.* [leaf 50, back.] (mit,  
*Wace*, i. 370, l. 7915.)

<sup>6</sup> *ferne fette.*



He sets two  
companies of  
Welshmen to  
stop the pagans  
taking to the  
hills and woods,

. Boþe batailles þen sone wer set;<sup>1</sup>  
Of þe Walsche he tok to<sup>2</sup> companies,  
. Papes to waite, & stretes, & styas, 8432  
pat Payens schulde for no nede  
þe hylles take, 3yf þeym fel drede.  
& þe wodes he dide so loke  
. Al so wel þat non þem toke, 8436  
pat 3yf ony þider drowe,  
þe Walsche men sone þem slowe,  
þe star-worþest<sup>3</sup> to fyght & fende,  
& his owen bataille þen schulde<sup>4</sup> be hende. 8440

and keeps the  
stalwartest men  
in his own line.

Aurelius lets  
his trusty kins-  
men bear his  
banner.

When his batailles<sup>5</sup> wer set & dight,  
Renged & redy for<sup>6</sup> to fyght,  
þe men of kuythe<sup>7</sup> þat he wel knewe,  
pat he wyste were gode<sup>8</sup> & trewe, 8444  
þem dide he bere his baner,  
& fro þo was he nought fer;  
Sire Eldok was euere hym by,  
& oþer barons also were ney. 8448  
“ Lord,” seide Eldok, “ had y þat grace,  
“ Hengist for to mete in place!  
“ Wel oughte<sup>9</sup> me þe treson mene  
“ pat on þe playne 3it is wel sene: 8452  
“ þe flour of al þis Empyre  
“ Wer slayn bysydes Ambresbyre<sup>10</sup>  
“ þe firste day of clene May.  
“ Wyþ mikel wo<sup>11</sup> y scaped away; 8456  
. “ Vneþes to Gloucestre y wan,<sup>12</sup>

Earl Eldok  
hopes he may  
meet Hengist,  
and repay him  
for his treacher-  
ous slaughter  
of the Britons  
at Ambresbury.

<sup>1</sup> bi þe to side att were sette.<sup>2</sup> toke tuo.<sup>3</sup> stalworþest.<sup>4</sup> his awen bataile suld.<sup>5</sup> barons.<sup>6</sup> renged att redi to.<sup>7</sup> kith. (Od ses homes fu naturax,  
Wace, i. 370, l. 7931.)<sup>8</sup> treist.<sup>9</sup> Wele burd. (mene = A.-Sax.  
mænan, mind, remember, Bosworth.)<sup>10</sup> ambirschire.<sup>11</sup> with mykith.<sup>12</sup> cam.

AURELIUS PUTS HENGIST'S ARMY TO FLIGHT. 297

- "Elles had we be<sup>1</sup> slayn, ilkaman."  
 Als Sire Eldok þus mente his mone,  
 Com Hengist & his men ylkone,  
 & vmbyleyden al þe feld,  
 . Redy armed wyþ spere<sup>2</sup> & scheld.  
 Sone after þat<sup>4</sup> þey were comen,  
 þe bataille bytwyhte þem was<sup>3</sup> nomen. 8464 Hengist comes  
 . Boþe partys ful felly<sup>5</sup> hated, with his host,  
 þe sonner to-gedere þey þem raped:<sup>6</sup>  
 þer myghte men se strokes set  
 . Bytwyxt enemis þat scharply<sup>7</sup> met; 8468  
<sup>8</sup> [sore he smote, þat smerte couht \* smyte; [\* So in MS.]  
 bitterly bote, þat best myght bite;  
 Ilkone peyned oper to slo,  
 for euerilkone was oper[es] fo;]<sup>8</sup> 8472  
 . Mercy was non on neyper partye,  
 . Ne no raunsom, bot al schold deye. no mercy is  
 þorow plate & hauberk þe spere out<sup>9</sup> brast; given, or ran-  
 Ilkon oper to deþ down cast; 8476 som taken.  
 þat down was<sup>10</sup> cast, þem lye most<sup>11</sup> nede,  
 ffor hors & man vpon þem zede.  
 . fful wel foughte þe Payen men,  
 . & mykel better þan dide<sup>12</sup> Cristen; 8480 The Pagans  
 . Bot sone after, þer force gan falle.<sup>13</sup> fight well at  
 Vpon þer Godes þen cried þey alle; first, but soon  
 þe Crysten cried [for] help to Crist fail.  
 . A-gayn þe Payenes<sup>14</sup> force Hengist. 8484 The Christians  
 þe Cristenmen þeir bataille brak; call on Christ,  
 When þey wer sondred, þey turd þe<sup>15</sup> bak; and the Pagans  
 break, and flee.

<sup>1</sup> þat þei were. [lf. 50, bk., col. 2.]  
<sup>2</sup> helm. <sup>3</sup> nouht fult long sen.  
<sup>4</sup> was with þam.  
<sup>5</sup> parties felonly.  
<sup>6</sup> abated. <sup>7</sup> smertli.  
<sup>8-9</sup> From the Petyt MS.  
<sup>9</sup> þorgh schelde & hauberk launces.  
<sup>10</sup> MS. wast.

<sup>11</sup> was cast die suld.  
<sup>12</sup> mykett bettere þe. (Et assés mius  
 li Crestien, Wace, i. 372, l. 7964.)  
<sup>13</sup> þe paien force fast gan fülle.  
<sup>14</sup> paien.  
<sup>15</sup> þ. sondred þam þat þei gaf.  
 [? tur the base of tur-n. See tur-de  
 . 8509.]

Hengist takes  
refuge in  
Coningsburgh  
castle,  
whither Au-  
relius  
pursues him.

. flele were slayn als þey fledde,  
 . & fle yng þey sparplyed<sup>1</sup> & spredde. 8488  
 When Hengist saw his folk fleand,  
 & his force faille, & myght nowt stande,  
 He fle y<sup>2</sup> to þe castel of Conyngesburgh,  
 ffor he wende saued haf ben þer-þorough. 8492  
 þat herde þe kyng, & after ȝerne, [leaf 37, col. 2.]  
 . þe entre of þe castel him for to<sup>3</sup> werne,  
 & cried þen faste, "folewe we to<sup>4</sup> slo!  
 . ffor þyse ar þey þat dide vs<sup>5</sup> wo." 8496

But Hengist  
does not like  
being in a  
castle;  
and resolves to  
fight in the  
open.  
He rallies his  
men;  
they turn  
eagerly to  
battle,  
and at first  
beat the Chris-  
tians,

When Hengist wiste þe kyng hym sywed,<sup>6</sup>  
 . porow castel þen wold he nought be rescowed:  
 . Hit was bot pyne, wel hadde he herd,  
 . Wypoute socour in castel be sperd; 8500  
 Leuere hym were holde hym wypoute;  
 . þat held he betere, & lasse<sup>7</sup> doute,  
 þan yn castel be closed yn,  
 ffor he nyste ho hym out schude wyn.<sup>8</sup> 8504  
 . ȝit þoughtym best myght hym<sup>9</sup> a-uaille,  
 . To relye his folk, & gyue<sup>10</sup> bataille.  
 þen gedred he his folk þat weren o stray,  
 ffor he wolde ȝit eft<sup>11</sup> make asay. 8508  
 þe Payens to bataille turde agayn  
 fful egrely, boþe knyght & swayn,  
 Agayn þe Cristen ful hardyly,  
 & ascryed þem þanne wyþ a gret cry.<sup>12</sup> 8512  
 At þat comyng<sup>13</sup> þe Cristen les,  
 So [s]toutly<sup>14</sup> þe Payens on þem gan pres:  
 . Grysly<sup>15</sup> & grym was hit to se,

<sup>1</sup> fleand þei sparpled.<sup>2</sup> þei fleh.<sup>3</sup> to entre þe hastett he wald him.<sup>4</sup> He cried & said folow fast &.<sup>5</sup> ȝow.<sup>6</sup> herd þe kyng him sued.<sup>7</sup> an enture him he was in. [leaf 31.]<sup>8</sup> he ne wist who suld him out wynne.<sup>9</sup> he sawh no þing mygh[t] more.<sup>10</sup> þan for to stand to.<sup>11</sup> & said he suld ȝit.<sup>12</sup> & discried þam with a cri.<sup>13</sup> cryng.<sup>14</sup> stiftly.<sup>15</sup> greuous.

- . Syn neyper partye wold blybely<sup>1</sup> fle. 8516  
 . In auenture þen was þe kynges syde,  
 . Bot his þre hundred knyghtes<sup>2</sup> holpe wel þat tyde who are in  
 þat comen out of þe Lytel Bretayn; great danger,  
 . ffor, þis Paiens þey feld doun playn;<sup>3</sup> 8520 but are rescued  
 by 300 knights  
 of Britany,  
 . Vpon þe Payens þey trauersed þe feld,  
 & þe kynges side wel vp þey held, who ride  
 through the  
 Saxon host.  
 Bot þe Payens so faste þey fought, But still the  
 . þey hoped of no socour þat dought, 8524 Saxons fight  
 ffor wel þey wyste þat þe ne myght  
 Ascape wyþoute strengþe<sup>4</sup> of fyght;  
 . þer-fore þei foughte as þey were wode, as if they were  
 . Abated þem boldely,<sup>5</sup> & styfly stode. 8528 mad.

¶ De Pungna inter Eldok & Hengystum.

- . As þey were boldest in þer baret,  
 Eldok & Hengist to-gedere met;  
 Sire Eldok, Hengist ful wel knew, Then Eldok  
 His herte a-geyns hym gros & grew: 8532 and Hengist  
 meet.  
 . þey hit<sup>6</sup> so dide, ful wel hit aughte,  
 . Gret encheson mad þeym vnsaughte;  
 He preied to God his desir<sup>7</sup> fulfil,  
 þat he of Hengist might haue his wyl. 8536  
 Wyþ scharpe swerdes to-gyder þey<sup>8</sup> ran, They fight,  
 & Hengist kepte hym as a man;  
 Eldokes strok ful wel he sat,  
 . Hengist ageyn anoþer smat; 8540  
 þer myg[h]te men se fighteres bolde;<sup>10</sup>  
 . ffor dynt of deþ spare þey ne wolde;<sup>11</sup> fearing not  
 death.

<sup>1</sup> *fō noiþer partie wald biþeli.*

<sup>2</sup> *his men.* (li trois mil, *Wace*, i. 373, l. 7990.)

<sup>3</sup> *opon þe paiens þei mad bargayn.*

<sup>4</sup> *ascaped þorgh force.*

<sup>5</sup> *bold.*

<sup>6</sup> *if it.*

<sup>7</sup> *He þanked god he hoped.*

<sup>8</sup> *with scharp spere tift him he.*

<sup>9</sup> One stroke too many in the MS. m.

<sup>10</sup> *se tuo Iuste & turne.*

<sup>11</sup> *for doute of dede non wild scurne.* [leaf 51, col. 2.]

The sparks fly  
like fire from  
flint;  
and Hengist is  
winning, when  
Eldok, heart-  
ened by Earl  
Corlyeus's  
coming,

rushes at  
Hengist, seizes  
him by the  
visor, and then  
by the neck.

Eldok thanks  
Jesus  
that his yearn-  
ing is fulfilled,  
his worst foe  
taken,  
the hound that  
never had pity.

He sends  
Hengist as a  
present to Au-  
relius.

Wyþ swerdes of werre double<sup>1</sup> dyntes,  
þe sparkles fleye as fir of flyntes; 8544  
zyf Eldokes help ne hadde be ney,  
Hengist had had<sup>2</sup> þe better party;  
Bot þe Erl Corlyeus<sup>3</sup> of Cornewaille,  
Cam right y<sup>4</sup> þe moste trauaille. 8548  
Whan Eldok sey þat þe Erl cam,  
More hardynesse in herte he nam,  
fful egrely þanne til Hengist he<sup>5</sup> went, [lf. 37, bk., cl.1.]  
& by þe vyser<sup>6</sup> he hym hent, 8552  
& heldit til he had sesed his nekke :—  
þe Payens wer al mat<sup>7</sup> wyþ þat chekke :—  
“ þanked be<sup>8</sup> Iesu, þat þou hit wylde!  
“ þat y haue ȝerned, now ys fulfilde! 8556  
“ Now hauy take oure moste fo,  
“ þat hap vs wakned many wo!  
“ þis ys þe hound—wo mot hym be !—  
“ þat neuere of vs hadde pyte! 8560  
9. “ þis hound y soughte, now y hym fond,  
“ He was heued to struye þis lond!<sup>9</sup>  
“ Sire Erl, þys hound, þys comelyng,  
“ O myn half present hym to þe kyng, 8564  
“ & sey his enemy ys ouer-comen  
“ Now þys hound Hengist ys nomen !”

### ¶ De capcione Hengisti per Comitum Gloucestrie.

Aurelius keeps  
him in chains.

þan was Hengist ful-like<sup>10</sup> schent,  
þat ffetered to þe kyng was sent. 8568  
þen dide þe kyng kep hym ful streit  
In cheynes bounden for deseit.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> with *scharp* *suerdes* *þei* *dubled*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. (*h* altered) *hed*. P. has *had*.

<sup>3</sup> *erle Gorleus*.

<sup>4</sup> *com in alle*.

<sup>5</sup> *for belde of him to Hengist*.

<sup>6</sup> *nasett*. (nasal, *Wace*, l. 8012.)

<sup>7</sup> *were mate*.

<sup>8</sup> *Merci*.

<sup>9-9</sup> Not in the Petyt MS.

<sup>10</sup> *fouly*.

<sup>11</sup> *fo desceite*.

- Hengistes sone þat highte Octa,  
 & his cosyn sire Ebbesa,  
 Wyþ gret pyne þey boþe ascaped,  
 & ʒork to take þey hem raped.  
 Bot whan þey hadde þe toun taken,  
 Warly wayted, & held þem waken,  
 poper þat lefte, fled her & per,  
 By dounes & dales, by<sup>1</sup> wodes ay-where.  
 þe kyng was ioyful þat he so spedde,  
 Hengist was taken, & his folk fledde;  
 To Conyngesburgh þe kyng gan turne,  
 & þere þre dayes mad he sojourne,  
 þe wounded for to hele & reste,  
 þe Payens fro þe Cristen keste.  
 In þat tyme þat þey þer lay,  
 þe Bretons<sup>2</sup> alle, þat oper day  
 To conseil þe kyng cald hem to,  
 þe beste to wite<sup>3</sup> what were to do:  
 Wheþer Hengist þey redder<sup>4</sup> hym<sup>5</sup> to slo,  
 Or hym enprisone,<sup>6</sup> or lete hym go,  
 A byschop onswered,—sire Eldadus,  
 Sire Eldokes broþer,—& seide right þus:  
 “ I deme Hengist þe same wys  
 “ As in þe bible Samuel seys.  
 “ Samuel did Agag to þe ded—  
 “ Kyng of Amalek was þat qued,—  
 “ A ful fers<sup>7</sup> kyng, riche & kene,  
 “ To Godes folk he wroughte al tene,<sup>8</sup>  
 “ He robbed here godes, þer tounes brent,  
 “ & alle he slow þat he myght hent.  
 “ Swylk sorewe<sup>9</sup> myght nought longe dure;  
 “ He was taken at a desconfytur,
- 8572 Hengist's son,  
Octa, and his  
cousin Ebbesa,  
  
take York.  
  
8576 The other  
Saxons hide  
in dales and  
woods.  
8580 Aurelius rests  
three days at  
Coningsburgh  
to heal his  
wounded.  
8584 He asks his  
Britons  
8588 what shall be  
done with  
Hengist.  
8592 Bishop Eldadus,  
Earl Eldok's  
brother, answers  
and says:  
“ Hengist shall  
be treated as  
Samuel treated  
8596 Agag, the king  
of Amalek,  
8600 who worried  
God's folk.  
When he was  
taken, and Saul

<sup>1</sup> in. <sup>2</sup> barons. [leaf 51, back.]<sup>3</sup> Of Hengist.<sup>4</sup> MS. reddem.<sup>5</sup> whedir þei red him for.<sup>6</sup> Hold him in prison.<sup>7</sup> proude.<sup>8</sup> titt godes folk he did ay tene.

at all his myght wo þam wrouht.

&amp; euer werre on þam souht.

<sup>9</sup> sulik mischeffe.

|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                   | " & brought byfore Saul þe kyng,<br>" ffor his mysdedes to haue demyng. <sup>1</sup> 8604                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| asked what<br>judgment he<br>should have,<br>the prophet<br>Samuel                | " Saul asked what iugement<br>" Schuld Agag haue, er þat he went.<br>" þan ros þe prophete Samuel, ꝥ <i>Exemplum de</i><br>" Keper of þe folk of Israel, <i>Iudicio Hengisti.</i><br>" And vpon Agag handes he leyð; [leaf 37, bk., col. 2.]<br>" Tyl hym & alle, þise wordes he seyð :       |
| answered that<br>as Agag                                                          | " ' Agag, þou has manion trauailed,<br>" ' Manion slayn, manyon assayled; <sup>2</sup> 8612                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| had made many<br>widows and<br>fatherless,                                        | " ' Many lond mad wast & wylde,<br>" ' Many wydewe, many faderles childe ;<br>" ' þorow þe haue [many] ben lorn & slawen,<br>" ' Many soule & bodies brought of dawes. <sup>3</sup> 8616<br>" ' þe same wyse schal þy body <sup>4</sup> be refte !<br>" ' Childles for þe þy moder ys left !' |
| so his mother<br>should be left<br>childless ; and<br>he hewed Agag<br>in pieces. | " Agag siþen he al to-hew,<br>" Thorow out þe contres þe peces þrew, 8620<br>" & seide, ' oueral þou hast don wo,<br>" ' Of þe oueral schal wonder <sup>5</sup> go.'                                                                                                                          |
| Even thus shall<br>Hengist be<br>slain."                                          | " As þe prophete gaf dom þorow lawe,<br>" So schal ȝe do Hengist to-drawe." <sup>6</sup> 8624                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Eldok at once<br>cuts off                                                         | When sire Eldok herd hym so say,<br>& þat holy wryt schewed þat euene way,<br>Smertly wyþ þe dom al hot,<br>Hengistes heued of he smot. 8628                                                                                                                                                  |
| Hengist's head,<br>and Aurelius<br>has him buried                                 | þen dide þe kyng þe body graue<br>I þe manere of Payen lawe. <sup>7</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Aurelius then<br>marches with<br>his host to<br>York,                             | Syþen quikly þe kyng hym spedde,<br>He ȝared <sup>8</sup> his host, to ȝork þem ledde, 8632<br>þe toun & his enemys for to wynne; <sup>9</sup>                                                                                                                                                |

<sup>1</sup> How he had don to here endyng.<sup>2</sup> essillié, Wace, l. 8082, from MS.  
du Roi, 7515<sup>3-4</sup>. Colb.<sup>3</sup> many saule of body drawn.<sup>4</sup> saff þi soule.<sup>5</sup> saff wondryng.<sup>6</sup> so suld ȝe do Hengist of dawes.<sup>7</sup> on þat maner þat paen saff haue.  
[leaf 51, back, col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> Dight.<sup>9</sup> P. leaves out this line.

- ffor Hengistes sone was *per-ynne*,  
<sup>1</sup> & *oper* manye lordynges *per* ware,  
 . & somme y *pe* contre in mykel kare.<sup>1</sup>  
*pen* Octa studied in his pought :  
 . To stonde to fens auailed nought ;  
*Socour* to sende he wyste of non,  
 . *per* socour was for euere gon ;  
 He coupe se no bettere bote,  
 Bot auntre, & <sup>2</sup> falle *pe* kyng to fote ;  
 . ffel hit to wysdom or to foly,  
 He schulde auntre hym mercy to cry :  
 & alle his men red hym *per-tyl*,  
 . Napeles hit was his owen wyl.  
 Out of *pe* tour<sup>3</sup> ilkon cam ;  
 . As prisoners, barfot<sup>4</sup> *pey* nam.  
 Octa had don, in stede of streng,  
 Aboute his nekke a chayne heng,  
 . & on his knes fel mekely,<sup>5</sup>  
 & seide, "Sire kyng ! Mercy ! Mercy !  
 " Alle oure Godes ar vs failed ;  
 " *pat* we on trowe, haue vs nought vailed ;  
 " *zour* God ys of wel more myght ;  
 " *pat* we in leue, ar nought so right ;  
 " He scheweþ miracle for þy loue ;  
 " We ar byneþe, & *ze*<sup>6</sup> aboue ;  
 " We ar ouer-comen, *per*-fore we<sup>7</sup> com ;  
 " Mercy to craue,<sup>8</sup> to *pe* we nom.  
 " Haue here þys cheyne, & do þy wylle,  
 " Wheþer *pat* *ze* wil<sup>9</sup> vs saue or spille !  
 " We ar payed, wheþer þou wylt ;  
 . " We arn aknowe we haue agilt.<sup>10</sup>
- as Hengist's  
 son, Octa, holds  
 it.  
 8636 Octa sees  
 he can't defend  
 the city, and  
 that he  
 8640 has no chance  
 of help,  
 so he resolves  
 to chance it,  
 and ask Au-  
 relius's mercy.  
 8644  
 8648 Octa and his  
 men come out  
 barefooted,  
 and he, with a  
 chain round his  
 neck, kneels to  
 8652 Aurelius, and  
 asks his mercy :  
 " Our Gods  
 have failed us ;  
 8656  
 8660 and we are  
 overcome.  
 You may save  
 or kill us ;  
 8664 we confess our  
 guilt ;

<sup>1-1</sup> & many lordes of his kynd.  
 & som in *pe* cuntre myght men  
 fynd.

<sup>2</sup> bot for to.

<sup>3</sup> toun.

<sup>4</sup> als prisons bare fote.

<sup>5</sup> full myldely.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *we*. P. has þou.

<sup>7</sup> .I.

<sup>8</sup> haf.

<sup>9</sup> whedir þou wilt.

<sup>10</sup> I am oknowe .I. haf þe gilt.



but if you will  
spare our lives,  
we'll serve you  
till we die."

Aurelius asks  
counsel of his  
lords:

"Are the  
Saxons to  
live?"

Bishop  
Eldadus says,

"He who  
craves mercy  
should have it.

Britain has  
many waste  
places.  
Give of these to  
the Saxons to  
till;  
but take  
hostages from  
them.

"To haue oure lyues, ȝyf þou wilt graunt,  
"What so þou saist, we holde couenaunt<sup>1</sup>  
"To serue [þe]<sup>2</sup> til oure lyues ende,  
"Ne neuere more ageyn þe wende." 8668  
þe kyng was of ful gret pite;  
He saide: "lordynges, what sey ȝe?  
"What conseil wil ȝe me gyue?" [leaf 38.]  
& seide, "rede ȝe þat þey lyue?" 8672

þenne spak þe Byschop Eldadus  
Vnto þe kyng Aurelius:  
"Wel ys worþy, mercy to haue,  
"þat mekely mercy wyl craue. 8676  
"Agayn mercy who-so ys grym,  
"God wyl haue no mercy of<sup>3</sup> hym.  
"To þy mercy þey made asay,  
"Mercy þey seke haue, ȝyf þe[y]<sup>4</sup> may. 8680  
"ffor Bretaigne ys large & long,  
"& many stedes wast among,  
"Deliuere þeym lond þer þay<sup>5</sup> se skil,  
"Let þem trauaille þer-on to tyl. 8684  
"Bot y rede, hostages ȝe take;  
"Sykernesse þey schul<sup>6</sup> ȝow make,  
"In alle seruise to be trewe;  
" & ȝour mercy schal hem be newe. 8688

### ¶ Exemplum Byblie.

The folk of  
Gibeon  
wronged the  
Jews,  
and then asked  
mercy for it.

"In þe bible ensample bygan:  
"þe folk of Gabaot, þat wyþ wrong wan  
"Of þe Iewes, & syþen hit les;  
"At þe Iewes þey bysoughte pes, 8692  
"Of þer wrong bysoughte<sup>7</sup> mercy,

<sup>1</sup> *sais we hold conant.*

<sup>2</sup> *þe.*

<sup>3</sup> *god has not mercy on.* [leaf 52.]

<sup>4</sup> *þei.*

<sup>5</sup> *ȝe.*

<sup>6</sup> *satt.*

<sup>7</sup> *asked.*

- " & þey graunted hem al redy.  
 " Syn þey had mercy & pyte,  
 " Wirse þan þey, schul nought do we.<sup>1</sup>  
 " At þe Iewes, ensample nymes,  
 " Graunt hem mercy, lyf & lymes."  
 þe kyng graunted þem þanne his pes  
 As þe bischop Eldade ches.  
 Bysyde Scotlond he gaf hem londes;  
 þey tyled, & were grete husebondes;<sup>2</sup>  
 Er þey wente, þey geue hostage,<sup>3</sup>  
 Children of þeyres, of best lynage.<sup>4</sup>  
 fiftene dayes his court gan ly,  
 þen dide he somone al þe clergy,—  
 & gaf þem landes, rentes, & fees,<sup>5</sup>—  
 Bischopes, abbotes, of þe contres.<sup>5</sup>  
 Schirreues, baillifs, he sente<sup>6</sup> ay-whore,  
 His rentes to gadere & to restore;  
 Masons, whrightes, kyrkes dide make,  
 þat þe Payens dide down schake;  
 þat fordon were þorow Hengist,  
 Were wrought a-geyn to serue Crist.  
 ffro þenne<sup>7</sup> to Londone euene he went:  
 þe toun he fond peyred & schent;  
 Kyrkes, houses, were beten down;  
 To þe kyng þey mente hem of þe toun,  
 þat many of þe beste burgeys  
 Were fled, euery man his weys.<sup>8</sup>  
 He bigged eft þat er was playn,—  
 Clerkes, burgeys, dide come agayn,—  
 & gaf ilkon ageyn þer estre.  
 Syþen he wente<sup>9</sup> to Wyncestre,  
 & bygged kirkes & houses<sup>10</sup> þere,
- The Jews  
granted it;  
8696 and you must  
not be worse  
than Jews."  
  
Aurelius for-  
gives the  
Saxons,  
8700 settles them on  
the Scotch  
border,  
but takes  
8704 hostages of  
them.  
  
Aurelius then  
endows the  
clergy,  
8708  
sends bailiffs to  
collect his rents,  
makes masons  
8712 rebuild  
churches,  
  
and then goes  
8716 to London,  
  
8720 which he re-  
pairs.  
8724 He does the  
same at  
Winchester,

<sup>1</sup> *suld we not be.*<sup>2</sup> *gode hosbondes.*<sup>3</sup> *he toke ostages.*<sup>4</sup> *childere of þer best lynes.*

P. transposes these lines.

<sup>6</sup> *sett.*<sup>7</sup> *þiþen.* [leaf 52, col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> *& ilk man ȝede his weis.*<sup>9</sup> *turned.*<sup>10</sup> MS. *housed.* P. *houses.*

Als he had don elles where.  
 Syþen he zede to Salesbury,  
 and then goes to Ambresbury, & til þe abbey of Aumbresbury; 8728  
 & til þat stede he tok his waye<sup>1</sup>  
 pere Hengist dide þe Bretons deye.  
 where he wishes to build an everlasting memorial over the Britons' graves, þeyr buryels he þoughte for to honure [17.38, col. 2.]  
 Wyþ som þyng þat ay myght dure, 8732  
 & fryþe þe<sup>2</sup> stede þer þey lay,  
 . þat hit myght laste til Domesday.  
 . He dide masons diuise a cast  
 . What werk myghte lengest last. 8736

¶ *De consilio Tremorii Episcopi.*

Wyþ þe kyng a clerk was þore,  
 Archbishop Tremore His name<sup>3</sup> was sire Tremore,  
 Was Erchebischop of Kerlyon;  
 advises Aurelius He seyde the kyng a god<sup>4</sup> reson : 8740  
 to send for Merlin, " 3yf he wolde make a werk fyn,<sup>5</sup>  
 " Do send 3our sonde after Merlyn.  
 " To make þis werk, may no man  
 " Gyue swylk conseil als he can; 8744  
 and do what he says. " He can þe telle what schal bityde :  
 " After hym, y rede, 3our werk abyde."

¶ *Rex mysit hic pro Merlyno.*

þen seyde þe kyng, "hit scholde so be ;  
 The king agrees, " Mikel y desire Merlyn to se; 8748  
 " Of his wysdam woldy here,  
 " He telleþ wondres<sup>6</sup> on many manere."  
 and his messenger finds Merlin at the At a welles<sup>7</sup> fer in Walys—  
 ' Baynes ' hit highte by olde tales— 8752

<sup>1</sup> ? MS. *a* altered to *e*, or first *e* to *a*.

<sup>2</sup> *frithe* þat. (*frithe*, preserve.)

MS. *mame*. <sup>4</sup> he did þe king in.

<sup>5</sup> if he wild mak a werk of fyne.

<sup>6</sup> *sais selcouthes*.

<sup>7</sup> *well*. (a Labenes, une fontaine, Wace, l. 8217.)

"SEND FOR THE AFRICAN STONES IN IRELAND." 307

|                                                     |      |                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pe messenger þen Merlyn fond:                       |      | well of Baynes<br>in Wales.                                                      |
| "Cum, spek wyþ þe kyng! he sent his sond."          |      |                                                                                  |
| When he com byfore þe kyng,                         |      | Merlin comes.                                                                    |
| He made ioye for his comyng,                        | 8756 | Aurelius<br>makes much<br>of him,                                                |
| & honoured hym, for he was wys,                     |      |                                                                                  |
| & cherished him ouer alle opere of pris;            |      |                                                                                  |
| He praaied hym wel wyþ louely <sup>1</sup> speche,  |      | and begs him to<br>tell him what<br>will happen.                                 |
| What scholde bytide, he wolde hym teche.            | 8760 |                                                                                  |
| ¶ "Syre kyng," he seyde, <sup>2</sup> "certes nay,  |      | Merlin says,                                                                     |
| "To opene my mouþ y ne dar ne may,                  |      | "I dare not<br>open my mouth<br>except in case<br>of real need,                  |
| "Bot hit [be] a byhouely <sup>3</sup> þyng at nede, |      |                                                                                  |
| "pat were warnyng or tokene of dede,                | 8764 |                                                                                  |
| "& zit wyþ gret lownesse of hert,                   |      | and with low-<br>ness of heart;                                                  |
| "pat pruyde turne hit nought ouerthwert.            |      |                                                                                  |
| "ffor zyf y spak þorow pride or bost,               |      | for if I were<br>to speak from<br>pride,                                         |
| "Oper for scorn, ageyn my gost,                     | 8768 | the spirit in me<br>that teaches me<br>everything,<br>would leave<br>me.         |
| "pat ilke gost pat in me wones,                     |      |                                                                                  |
| "pat al me kennes & al me mones,                    |      |                                                                                  |
| "Out of my mouþ hit wolde hym drawe,                |      |                                                                                  |
| "Of my connyng reue me my sawe,                     | 8772 |                                                                                  |
| "pat namore myght y þen spek wyþ mouþ               |      |                                                                                  |
| "pan an oper þat nought ne coup.                    |      |                                                                                  |
| "per-fore of swyilk priuete                         |      | Therefore, Au-<br>relius, think<br>not of such<br>secrets,                       |
| "penk nought per-on, but let hit be.                | 8776 | but only of<br>what you sent<br>for me for.                                      |
| "penk on þat why þou me soughtest; <sup>4</sup>     |      | If you want to<br>set up an ever-<br>lasting work<br>here,                       |
| "Bryng þat til ende whi þou me broughtest:          |      | send for the<br>stones that the<br>Giants brought<br>to Ireland from<br>Africa." |
| "zyf þou wilt make a werk stedefast,                |      |                                                                                  |
| "pat fair wyl be, & euere to last,                  | 8780 |                                                                                  |
| "Sent for þo <sup>5</sup> stones, pere þey stande,  |      |                                                                                  |
| "pat þe Geaunt <sup>6</sup> broughte til Irlande.   |      |                                                                                  |
| "Rounde aboute, þen ar þey set;                     |      |                                                                                  |
| "Out of Aufryke were þey fet;                       | 8784 |                                                                                  |
| "Ilkon on oper ys set vpright,                      |      |                                                                                  |

<sup>1</sup> *fulþ louand.* [leaf 52, back.]

<sup>2</sup> *said Merlyn.*

<sup>3</sup> *bot if it be a behouely.*

<sup>4</sup> *souhtes . . . brouhtes.*

<sup>5</sup> *send for þe.*

<sup>6</sup> *Geantz.*

Aurelius  
laughs, and  
says,  
"That's  
strange!  
Why, the stones  
are so heavy  
that no one can  
move 'em, and  
are so far off!  
Who's to bring  
'em here?"

"No man in erþe haþ no myght  
"ffor to take doun a ston;  
"Ne sette peym eft ys per non." 8788  
pen seyde þe kyng, & on hym low : <sup>1</sup> [leaf 38, bk., col. 1.]  
"Sertes, þat were selcouþ ynow <sup>2</sup>  
"þat þo stones þat þou of seys,  
"Ar so heuy, & of swylk peys, 8792  
"þat non haþ force ne fuysoun  
"To remue þem vp ne doun,  
" & ar so fer ouer þe se!  
"Who myghte þem þanne brynge to me?" 8796

### ¶ Prudencia superat omne Robur.

Merlin answers,

"What  
strength can't  
do,  
sleight and  
knowledge can.  
Sleight can  
bring the stones  
to Britain,  
while strength  
can't move 'em  
their own  
length.

pen seide Merlyn vnto þe kyng,  
"Queyntise ouer-comeþ alle þyng.  
"Strengþe ys god wyþ <sup>3</sup>trauaille;  
"per strengþe ne may, sleyght wil auaille; 8800  
"Sleyght & connyng doþ many a chare,<sup>4</sup>  
"Bygynneþ þyng þat strengþe ne dar;  
"Wyþ sleyght myght þou þe stones wynne,  
" & in Bretaigne set þem inne, 8804  
"per þou ne schalt wyþ no strengthe  
"Remewe hem a stones lengthe.

### ¶ Exe virtus de Stonhenges.

"Giants first  
brought these  
stones from  
Africa to Ire-  
land,

"In Aufrik were þey compassed & wrought;  
"Geauntz til Irland þennes hem <sup>5</sup>brought,  
" & sette þem on an hil ful hey 8809  
"Wiþ engyns ful queyntely.  
"ffirst when þey ware compassed newe,  
"þey dide gret god to þem þat knewe; 8812

<sup>1</sup> lowh.

<sup>2</sup> it were þan grete ferly how.

<sup>3</sup> vnto. [leaf 32, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> Engins et ars font mainte cose,  
Wace, i. 386, l. 8265.

<sup>5</sup> fro þiþen þam.

- " þo þat were seke, or had laught<sup>1</sup> skapes,  
 " Wasche<sup>2</sup> þe stones, did hit in bapes;  
 " þat felde hem greued of grettere<sup>3</sup> þynges,  
 " Wasched þem<sup>4</sup> of þe selue waschinges, 8816 and sick men  
 " & warysched<sup>5</sup> wel of al þer pyne; were cured by  
 " Had þey non oper medycine." water that had  
 washed the  
 stones."  
 ¶ When þe kyng herde of þer vertu, Aurelius then  
 þat þey myght falle þe folk to prw, 8820  
 He had longyng for þem to go,— longs to send  
 & of þat wyl wer oper mo,—  
 þe stones to Bretaigne for to brynge, and fetch the  
 þat Merlyn made of sermonyng. 8824 stones to  
 þey chosen<sup>6</sup> Vter, þe kynges broþer, Britain.  
 þe kyng ofred hym self þat oper; So Uther is  
 Of folk þey ladde fyftene þousand, sent,  
 Agayn þe Irische<sup>7</sup> for to stand; 8828 with 15,000  
 Wyþ þem wente daunz Merlyn, men,  
 ffor þo stones to make engyn. and Merlin,  
 When Vter wyþ his folk was ȝare,  
 To schip þey went, ouer se to fare, 8832 in ships to  
 & aryued vpon þat cost. Ireland.  
 þe Irisch<sup>7</sup> kyng gadered his host; The Irish king  
 Ageyn þe Bretons þey cam right ȝerne, 8836  
 þe lond ȝyf þey myghte þem werne.  
 þe Irisch kyng þat regned þar,  
 His name was sire Gwylomar;  
 When he wyste why þat he cam,<sup>8</sup> Gwylomar  
 & so fer viage for stones nam, 8840  
 He scorned þem on his langage,<sup>9</sup>  
 ' So fer for stones to make passage,<sup>9</sup>  
 ' Ouer se til an oper lond,  
 ' ffor þey no stones hender<sup>10</sup> fond; ' 8844  
 scorns them for  
 coming over to  
 fetch stones,  
 as if they'd got  
 none in their  
 own land.

<sup>1</sup> & laucht.

<sup>2</sup> wesh.

<sup>3</sup> felt þam greued of grete.

<sup>4</sup> bathed þam.

<sup>5</sup> heled.

<sup>6</sup> ches.

<sup>7</sup> Iris (but *Irisch* l. 8837).

<sup>8</sup> whi þei kam. [leaf 53.]

<sup>9</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>10</sup> ne stones hender.

'But they shall  
buy the stones  
here dear.'

. & seyde, "þe stones þey schold haue here, [lf. 38, bk.,  
col. 2.]

. " þey schul by hem first ful dere ;

" ffor ȝyf we may, þey schul nought spede,

" þe stones out of my land to lede." 8848

. He scorned & seyde, "hit schal be nought,

. " þey schul faille þat þey haue sought."

pys kyng byhig[h]t hem foul despit,<sup>1</sup>

Bot wykke þey were to desconfyt.<sup>1</sup> 8852

So longe he manased & þret,

Atte laste to-gydere þey met.

At last the  
hosts meet,

At þeyr metyng, hit was nought lyte

When þey gonne to-gyder smyte. 8856

. fful wel foughte boþe partys,

and the Britons  
soon win.  
The Irish

. Bot þe Bretons wan sone þe pris ;

þe Irische<sup>2</sup> coupe nought so wel feight,

Ne of armure þey hadde no sleight, 8860

. Ne þer-of were so wel bone,

flee, and

þer-fore þe Irische<sup>2</sup> fledde ful sone ;

ffro stede to stede þey fledde to skulk,

hide in holes.

. On heþ & hilles to hyde in<sup>3</sup> hulk. 8864

When Bretons hadde don þat chace,

& rested þeym a gret[e]<sup>4</sup> space,

Merlin takes  
the Britons to  
see the stones  
on the hill  
Kylomare.

Merlyn had þem alle at ones

To þe hil to se þe stones.— 8868

Kylomare highte þe hyl

þer þe geauntz broughte þem tyl.—

### ¶ De asportacione lapidum de Stonhenges, de Hybernia in Brytanniam.

They look at  
the circle of  
stones,

pys Bretons aboute renged þe feld,

þe carole of þe stones byhe[l]d.<sup>5</sup> 8872

fful often ȝede þey<sup>6</sup> aboute,

. Byhelde wyþynne & eke<sup>7</sup> wyþoute ;

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> *Iris*.

<sup>3</sup> *on hii hilles to hide &c. (hulk, cubile, tugurium, hovel, sty.)*

<sup>4</sup> *long.*

<sup>5</sup> *beheld.*

<sup>6</sup> *many tyme ȝede þam.*

<sup>7</sup> *within beheld.*

- Alle þey seyde, so seyde þe kyng,  
 ' þey sey<sup>1</sup> neuere so selcouþ þyng.'  
 How þey were reysed þey had wonder,  
 & how þey scholde be brought a-sonder.<sup>2</sup>  
 Merlyn seyde, "now makeþ assay  
 " To potte þe stones, ȝyf þat<sup>3</sup> ȝe may;  
 " & wyþ force fondeþ þem to bere:  
 . " þer force ys mykel, lesse wyl þem<sup>4</sup> dere."  
 . þe host atones to þe hil þey went,  
 & ilk man tok þat he myght hent,  
 . Ropes to drawe, tres to potte,<sup>5</sup>  
 þey schouued, þey þriste, þey stode o strot,<sup>6</sup>  
 On ilka side, byhynde, by-forn;  
 Al for nought; þer trauail was lorn.  
 . When þey ofte hadde<sup>7</sup> put & þryst,  
 . & ilk man do what hym do lyst,  
 . & left þer pottying<sup>8</sup> many on,  
 ȝit stiredre þey nought þe leste ston.  
 Bot Merlyn wiste hit scholde nought vaille:  
 . Strengþe of body ne myght nout vaille.  
 He bad hem alle drawe þem o drey;  
 " þorow strengþe come ȝe neuere þem ney."  
 Al stille<sup>9</sup> he stod, syþen hym bywent,  
 & spak, but non wist what he ment;  
 His lippes þey seye stire vp & doun,  
 Bot non herde his coniurysoun.  
 When he had gon alle aboute,  
 . Wyþynne þe carole, & wyþoute,  
 & seide his coniurisouns,  
 Ageyn he calde al þe Bretouns,  
 And seyde, "now may ȝe lyghtly bere
- and say they  
 never saw such  
 a strange thing.
- 8876
- Merlyn bids  
 them try and  
 push the stones  
 down.
- 8880
- The Britons
- 8884
- get ropes to  
 pull, trees to  
 push.  
 They shove and  
 thrust.
- 8888
- All no good!  
 Push as they  
 will,
- 8892
- no stone stirs.
- Merlin tells
- 8896
- them to stand  
 aside.
- 8900
- He speaks;  
 they see his lips  
 move, but do  
 not hear his  
 conjurings.
- 8904
- Then he tells  
 the Britons  
 they can easily
- [leaf 39.]

<sup>1</sup> *sauh.*<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. adds,—  
 with þat worde þei þam rescued.  
 þei ne wist how þei suld remued.<sup>3</sup> *putte þis stones down if.*<sup>4</sup> *þe lesse witt.* [leaf 53, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> *put (push).*<sup>6</sup> *o strut.*<sup>7</sup> *att þe had.*<sup>8</sup> *puttyng.*<sup>9</sup> *a littl.*



312 STONEHENGE IS SET UP IN SALISBURY PLAIN.

|                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| carry the<br>stones to their<br>ships.                                                                  | " þe stones to schip wypouten dere.<br>" Gop now alle, & spedep̃ ȝow,<br>" ffor ȝe schal welde þem wel ynow." 8908                                                                        |
| They do so,                                                                                             | Als Merlyn þem taughte & seyd,<br>In <sup>1</sup> to þe schypes þem lyghtly leyð;<br>þen had þey wonne þat <sup>2</sup> fer had sought.                                                   |
| and carry them<br>to Ambresbury,                                                                        | . To þe playne of Salesbury þem brought, 8912<br>Of Aumbresbyri bysyde an abbay,<br>& hit was atte Whitemonday. <sup>3</sup>                                                              |
| on Whitsunday.<br>Aurelius sum-<br>mons all his<br>bishops and<br>nobles ;                              | þen dide þe kyng make somons<br>Of bischopes, erles, & barons, 8916<br>& oper lordes of þe nobleste, <sup>4</sup><br>& dide hym coroune at þat feste.                                     |
| is crowned ;                                                                                            | pre dayes laste þe feste fode ; <sup>5</sup><br>þe ferþe day he gaf <sup>6</sup> gyftes gode— 8920<br>Croces [riche] to clerkes of pris,<br>To seint Saunsom <sup>7</sup> & seint Dubris. |
| and gives St.<br>Dubrice the<br>see of Kaerlyon,<br>and St. Saunson<br>the see of York.                 | Seint Dubrice he gaf Kaerlyon,<br>ȝork he gaf to seint Saunson ; <sup>7</sup> 8924<br>þys gaf he at his coronement,<br>& many mo, þorow <sup>8</sup> comun assent.                        |
| Merlin sets the<br>stones as they<br>were before, in<br>Ireland ;                                       | . Byfore þe lordes þat come þyder,<br>Merlyn sette þe stones to-gyder ; 8928<br>Als þey were or, in þat certeyn,<br>So stande þey now vpon þe pleyn.                                      |
| and within their<br>circle are<br>buried the<br>bones of the<br>lords whom<br>Hengist slew<br>(p. 277). | . Wyþynne þe compas of þe stones<br>. Ar byried alle þo lordes bones 8932<br>. þat Hengist atte Parlement slow ;<br>. Here byforn ȝe herde wel how.                                       |

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Im.*

<sup>2</sup> *won þei.*

<sup>3</sup> & was at þe whitsonenday. (à  
Pentecoste, *Wace*, i. 391, l. 8370.)

<sup>4</sup> *folk of noble geste.*

<sup>5</sup> *sat þe feste of fode.*

<sup>6</sup> *on þe ferth day gaf he.*

<sup>7</sup> *Sampson.*

<sup>8</sup> *bi.*

## ¶ De Pascencyo, filio ffortygerny.

- Of ffortyger, þat þe kyng had brent,  
 Was left a sone þat highte Passent.  
 ffor drede of Aurelius & of Vter,  
 Vntil Alemayne he fledde fer,  
 & purchaced hym folk on þe se,  
 & aryued vp y þe northe contre,  
 Tounes struyed, contres wasted.  
 þe kyng herd seye, & sone hym<sup>1</sup> hasted.  
 When Pascence herde þat þe kyng cam,  
 Ageyn to þe se þe wey he nam;  
 þer he cam fro, durst he nought wende,  
 Vpon Irland his flute<sup>2</sup> gan lende;  
 He spak so wyþ þe kyng of þat land,  
 þat he was his wel willand  
 Vpon Bretaigne a route to renge,  
 & on þe Bretons for to venge.  
 Passent calanged<sup>3</sup> his fader wones,  
 þe kyng for robberye of þe stones;  
 Trupe to-gydere boþe þey plyght,  
 To take vengauunce at þer myght.  
 Wyþ al þe force þei myght gete,  
 In Walsche lond<sup>4</sup> aryued þer flete.  
 þey spirde aboute in ilka contre;  
 Meneue þey tok, was a<sup>5</sup> cite;  
 Meneue ys langage on Bretoun,  
 & now hit hatte Seint Dauy toun.  
 In þat tyme þat þey cam þus,  
 Syk lay oure kyng Aurelius  
 At Wynchestre mani a day;  
 Longe bedrede þer he lay,
- 8936 Vortiger's son  
 Pascent,  
 who had fled  
 to Germany,  
 and raised men  
 at sea,  
 lands in North  
 Britain, and  
 wastes it; but  
 hearing that  
 Aurelius is  
 after him,  
 he sails  
 to Ireland, and  
 persuades its  
 king  
 8948 to join him  
 in invading  
 Britain.  
 8952  
 8956 They land  
 in Wales,  
 take Meneue,  
 8960 now St. David's  
 (see p. 110,  
 l. 3097).  
 Aurelius lies  
 sick at Win-  
 chester,  
 [leaf 39, col. 2.]  
 8964

<sup>1</sup> & þider.<sup>2</sup> flete.<sup>3</sup> chalanged.<sup>4</sup> & in wales.<sup>5</sup> toke þat.

and hears that  
Pascent and  
the Irish  
king are in  
Wales.

He sends  
Uther against  
them, as he  
cannot go  
himself;

but a long  
time goes  
by before  
Uther gets all  
his host into  
Wales.

pat he ne myghte neyþer couere ne deye,  
 . Bot euer<sup>1</sup> more languished on<sup>2</sup> weye.  
 As he lay sek, bode hym was sent  
 pat ffortigeres sone, sire Passent, 8968  
 In Walys was, & þe Irische<sup>3</sup> kyng,  
 . On hym to make a chalangyng;  
 . He chalanged hym of robbery,  
 . & sire Pascent<sup>4</sup> of felony. 8972  
 þe kyng seide, " Vter for me schal go,  
 " ffor y ne may, me ys ful wo."  
 Sire Vter seyde, " y am redy;"  
 His folk somonde al pryuely, 8976  
 . Wyþ hors & armes redy to ryde,  
 . & com til hym; he scholde þem byde.  
 Longe hit was y þe somouns,  
 & þe buschyng<sup>5</sup> of þe barouns;<sup>6</sup> 8980  
 God whyle<sup>7</sup> hit was er he þem wan  
 In-til Walys, ilka man.

### ¶ Appas traditor.

So I'll tell you  
about Appas,

an artful  
Saxon,

who pretends  
to be a doctor,  
and can speak  
many tongues.

¶ In al þys drechyng als þey gan dwelle,  
 Of on Appas y schal ȝow telle: 8984  
 Appas he highte, & was a Saxon,<sup>8</sup>  
 & well couþe contreue a treson;  
 He ffeyned hym to be [a]<sup>9</sup> leche,  
 & couþe speke diuerse speche. 8988  
 A day to Pascent þis Appas spak,—  
 . Treson he poughte, & out hit brak,—

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ouer*.

<sup>2</sup> *euer languet one*.  
[leaf 53, back, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> *Iris*.

<sup>4</sup> *passent of dede*.

<sup>5</sup> *buskyng* (preparing, getting  
ready).

<sup>6</sup> P. adds these two lines, not re-  
presented in Wace's text, ii. 3,—

*dred þei were þe kyng suld die.  
 & in to wales fer was þe weie.*

<sup>7</sup> *gude stound*.

<sup>8</sup> *Appas was a session*.

<sup>9</sup> *fened him to be a*.

- " Passent," seyde Appas, " wel y wot,  
 " Bytwixt þe kyng & þe ys hatrede<sup>1</sup> hot. 8992  
 " What wiltow gyue me, & y schal go,  
 " þe kyng Aurelyus for to slo?"  
 Passent seyde, " y schal gyue þe  
 " A þousand pound of god mone, 8996 " £1,000."  
 " Wyþ<sup>2</sup> þy word be certayn  
 " To sey me when þou hast hym slayn."  
 Appas seyde " wel y graunt;"  
 Seide Passent, " y holde couenaunt." 9000  
 . Appas spak Latyn parfit,  
 & clad hym in a monkes habyt;  
 Als a monk he dide hym schauē,  
 Contenaunce couþe he ful wel haue.<sup>3</sup> 9004  
 . Venyn<sup>4</sup> for salue wyþ hym he nam,  
 Als a monk to court he cam;  
 ffor yueles<sup>5</sup> he couþe medicine make,  
 þe kyng he seyde he wolde vndertake: 9008  
 ' ȝyf he wolde do after<sup>6</sup> his quēyntise,  
 ' Sone he scholde<sup>7</sup> do hym vp ryse.'  
 He tasted his pous, saw his vryn,  
 He seide he knew his medycyn.<sup>8</sup> 9012
- He asks  
 Pascent  
 " What'll you  
 give me to kill  
 Aurelius?"
- The bargain is  
 struck.
- Appas, who  
 knows Latin,  
 disguises him-  
 self as a monk,
- goes to Aure-  
 lius,  
 and undertakes  
 to cure him.
- He feels the  
 king's pulse,  
 looks at his  
 urine, and says  
 he knows the  
 cure for him.

¶ *De Morte Aurelij Regis per Appas traditorem  
 Saxonem.*

- þe kyng ȝerned his hele mykel,<sup>9</sup>  
 He wende nought a monk were fykel;  
 He dide hym in kepyng of þe feloun,  
 & he gaf hym drynke poysoun, 9016
- Aurelius puts  
 himself in  
 Appas's hands

<sup>1</sup> *hated.*

<sup>2</sup> *with þi (with that, so that).*

<sup>3</sup> *Od contenance monial, Wace, ii.  
 5, l. 8465.*

<sup>4</sup> *Venom. [leaf 54.]*

<sup>5</sup> *Iuels.*

<sup>6</sup> *at.*

<sup>7</sup> *so he will.*

<sup>8</sup> *A bit from the Normandy of  
 Wace's time.*

<sup>9</sup> *'Si com cascuns de vous vol-  
 ' droit,' adds Wace, ii. 5, l. 8476.*

# 316 AURELIUS DIES. A WONDROUS COMET APPEARS.

Appas gives  
him poison and  
bids him sleep,  
that the poison  
may work.  
Then Appas  
flees.  
And Aurelius  
soon knows  
that he must  
die.

At Stonehenge

he is buried.

& happed hym warme, & bad hym slepe,  
ffor in his lymes hit schold al lepe.

When þys Appas his nedes had sped,

Al so swyþe a-wey he fled;

9020

And sone after in a þrowe

[leaf 39, back, col. 1.]

þe kyng hit wiste, & men wel sowe,<sup>1</sup>

þat he scholde al-gate deye.

þen preied he men þey scholde hym leye 9024

At Stonhenges in a graue,

His byriels for to mene & sauc.

On þys manere þe kyng was ded,

& beryed als after his red.

9028

## ¶ De stella Cometa que apparuit.

Vter þat tyme in Walys was

þat þe kyng was poysond wyþ Appas.

Als he was ded, þen ros a sterne

þat many a man biheld ful ȝerne,

9032

'Comete' ys cald in astronomye,

Kynges dep<sup>2</sup> wil hit signefye.

ffro þat cam a bem ful bryght,

Onlyke on, þat lemede lyght;

9036

þe lemyng was boþe red & schir,

Lyke a dragon þat sparkled fyr;

Was þer neuere erl ne<sup>3</sup> baroun

þat þey ne lykned hit til a dragoun.

9040

Two brondes come out of his moup

þat lightned Est, West, &<sup>4</sup> Souþ:

Vpon ffraunce lygh[t]ned<sup>5</sup> þat on;

þat oper vntil Moungow schon;

9044

þe þridde, þat vntil<sup>6</sup> Irland ȝede,

In seuen braunches gan it<sup>7</sup> sprede,

When Aurelius  
dies, men in  
Wales see a  
star called a  
Comet, which  
shows a king's  
death.  
From it goes a  
beam

like a dragon,

with brands out  
of its mouth,

1. stretching  
over France,  
and to Italy,

2. over Ireland,  
this second  
dividing into  
seven branches.

<sup>1</sup> knowe.

<sup>2</sup> dede.

<sup>3</sup> was noȝer erle no.

<sup>4</sup> est with þe.

<sup>5</sup> lighted.

<sup>6</sup> þrid vnto.

<sup>7</sup> MS. þey. P. has it. (see  
9096.)

- & alle were þey schynand  
 On þe water & on þe land. 9048  
 þys ilke merueille þat þus was sene,  
 Men wondred what hit wolde<sup>1</sup> mene.  
 Sire Vter, þe kynges broþer,  
 Hym merueilled more þan anoper;<sup>2</sup> 9052  
 Merueillyng, he was affrayed;  
 Of þat affray he was nought payed;  
 He preyed Merlyn ful specialy  
 þe toknyng þer-of to telle,<sup>3</sup> & why. 9056  
 þen sey Merlyn þat<sup>4</sup> sire Vter  
 Sore sykede, & feightit<sup>5</sup> fer,  
 And stod as he were in dwale,  
 No word ne seide, bot wax al pale. 9060  
 When his spirit was comen ageyn,  
 & þoughte, 'þat may nought helpe, ys veyn,'  
 Seid Merlyn, "Sorewe<sup>6</sup> may þey mone,  
 "Alle þat now in Bretaigne wone! 9064  
 "Lore þey haue þer noble kyng  
 "þat brought hem of Saxons<sup>7</sup> encombrynge,  
 "Out of þe false Payens<sup>8</sup> hardes,  
 "þat manion broughte in<sup>9</sup> bitter bandes!" 9068  
 When Vter herde his broþer was ded,  
 He bycom as heuy as led;  
 "Alas!" he seide, "now hap Bretayne  
 Loren þer noble cheuentayne!"<sup>10</sup> 9072  
 He syked<sup>11</sup> for sorewe, deol was to se.  
 þen seyde Merlyn, "Vter, let be,  
 "þer no bote ys ouer sore ne sorewe!  
 "py lyf may no man bye ne borewe; 9076

Men wonder  
 what this comēt  
 means;  
 and Uther is

afraid and ill at  
 ease.

He asks Merlin  
 about it.

Merlin sighs,  
 and at first says  
 nothing, but  
 turns pale.

Then his spirit  
 comes again,

and he tells  
 Uther that

Aurelius is  
 dead.

Uther turns as  
 heavy as lead,

laments, and

sighs sorely.

Merlin tells him

**Nota.**

"sorrowing  
 is no good,

<sup>1</sup> *mot.* [leaf 64, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *any oþer*; and leaves out the next  
 two lines.

<sup>3</sup> *to telle him what it ment.*

<sup>4</sup> *Merlyn sawh it with sir vter.*

<sup>5</sup> *Sore sighyng he fecched it.*

<sup>6</sup> *Thesu he said sore.*

<sup>7</sup> *yam of.*

<sup>8</sup> *þe paiens sessions.*

<sup>9</sup> *to.*

<sup>10</sup> *lorn hym þat was a noble chef-  
 tain.*

<sup>11</sup> *sighed.*

|                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| attack your foes<br>at once.<br><br>You'll win the<br>battle,<br><br>and then be<br>crowned king. | " Of ded may non þe <sup>1</sup> bale bete,<br>" þe sorewe nedly byhouep men <sup>2</sup> lete;<br>" Bot haste þe swyþe on þyn enemis!<br>" Of þe bataille þou getest þe prys, 9080<br>" To morewen schul þey boþe be schent, [lf. 39, bk.,<br>col. 2.]<br>" & al þer folk boþ sleyn & hent. <sup>3</sup><br>" Syþen schaltow þe coroune take,<br>" þe pes to menteyne & to make. 9084 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ De interpretacione Comete per Merlynym.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| "The comet be-<br>tokened Aure-<br>lius's death;<br>the dragon<br>yourself,<br><br>the first brand<br><br>your future son<br>(Arthur),<br><br>whom France<br>and Italy shall<br>obey;<br>the second<br>brand with<br>seven branches,<br>your daughter,<br>who shall<br>marry the king<br>of Scotland,<br>and have seven<br>sons, all kings."<br>Uther<br><br>next morning | " þe sterne þat þou seye <sup>4</sup> so red,<br>" Bytokneþ euere þe kynges ded.<br>" þe dragon, þat semeþ <sup>5</sup> so hey, 9088<br>" py self hit menes, þat ys so hardy;<br>" þe brond þat schyned out of his moup,<br>" þat spreden <sup>6</sup> boþe Est & South,<br>" þat ys, of þe schal <sup>7</sup> come a sone<br>" Doughty of dede, many on schal mone; 9092<br>" Alle ffraunce þen schal <sup>7</sup> hym loute,<br>" Vntil Mongow men schal <sup>7</sup> hym doute.<br>" þat oper, þat schon West so euen,<br>" Toward þe Norþ hit spredde in seuen, 9096<br>" A doughter hit ys, y vnderstande,<br>" þat maried schal <sup>7</sup> be bysyde Scotlande;<br>" Hure eyres bymene þo <sup>8</sup> seuen brondes,<br>" þat schullen <sup>7</sup> welde alle þo londes." 9100<br>¶ Syre Vter listned ilka del<br>How Merlyn confortd hym wel;<br>He bad his host reste al þat nyght,<br>On morn erlik <sup>9</sup> to bataille þem dight. 9104 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> dede may non no.

<sup>2</sup> sorow þos men nedes.

<sup>3-3</sup> of þe Iris kyng & passent.  
to morne satþ þei boþe be  
schent.

<sup>4</sup> ses.

<sup>5</sup> P. inserts *flaumand*.

<sup>6</sup> spredes.

<sup>7</sup> satþ.

<sup>8</sup> mene þe. [leaf 55, back.]

<sup>9</sup> arely.

þe Irische<sup>1</sup> wyste whan þey schold come,  
& made hem redy alle & some;<sup>2</sup>

Stalworthly to-geder þey fought,

Bot þe Irische<sup>1</sup> sone were brought to nought,<sup>3</sup> 9108

ffor þe Irische<sup>1</sup> kyng & Passent

Were slayn, & þer host al to-schent;<sup>4</sup>

& þo þat wyþ þe lyf ascaped,<sup>5</sup>

To þer schipes faste þem raped.

Of þo þat fledden<sup>6</sup> to þe se,

þat was ouer-taken, slayn was he.

Whe[n] al were slayn þey myghte hent,<sup>7</sup>

To Wynchestre sire Vter went.

I þe weye he mette a messeger,

þat teldyt al to<sup>8</sup> sire Vter

What manere þat þe kyng deyd,

& byryed [was]<sup>9</sup> þer (als he seyð)

At Stonhenges so louely,<sup>10</sup>

Wyþ þe byschopes & al þe clergy.

As Vter com rydyng<sup>11</sup> y þe stret,

þe folk on hym sore gon<sup>12</sup> gret,

& seyde, "sire, haue mercy on vs!

"Ded ys þy broþer Aurelyus

"þat mayntende vs in al his myght;

"Tak þou þe coroune, hit ys þy right,

"& be our heued, for we hit ȝern,

"& fend vs from our enemys fern."

attacks the  
Irish and  
Pascen-  
t, defeats them,  
and kills Pas-  
cent and the  
Irish king.

9112 Only a few  
Irish escape to  
their ships.

9116 Uther goes  
to Winchester,

and hears how  
Aurelius was  
poisoned, and  
buried at  
Stonehenge.

9124 Uther is prayed  
by the folk

9128 to take the  
crown, and

defend them  
from their foes.

<sup>1</sup> *Iris.*

<sup>2</sup> *þei dight þam & agayn þam nom.*

<sup>3</sup> *sone nouh ne douht.*

<sup>4</sup> *MS. alto schent. P. alle schent.*

<sup>5</sup> *with þe life scaped.*

<sup>6</sup> *& þei þam folowed in.*

<sup>7</sup> *mot ouerhent.*

<sup>8</sup> *tald att titt.*

<sup>9</sup> *was.*

<sup>10</sup> *þe stonhenges solemPLY.*

<sup>11</sup> *ridand.*

<sup>12</sup> *gon sore.*



¶ *Vter apud Wyntoniam cepit coronam.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Uther is                                                                                                                                                                              | Syre Vter sey hit was to do,<br>ffor his heritage hit was of blod al so.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 9132                       |
| crowned at<br>Winchester,                                                                                                                                                             | Hys barons pyder he dide somounne,<br>& made a feste, & dide hym coroune.<br>ffor Merlyn tolde þat toknyng<br>þat Vter scholde be doughty kyng,<br>& of hym swylk heyres schold be,<br>Alosed þorow-out <sup>1</sup> al Cristiante,<br>And for þat dragon he sey in syght<br>Bytokned hym self kyng þorow right,                                                                                                                          | 9136<br>[leaf 40.]<br>9140 |
| and has two<br>dragons made;<br>one to be borne<br>before him in<br>war,<br>the other hung<br>in St. Peter's<br>church;<br>and from this<br>cause he is<br>called Uther<br>Pendragon. | He dide make two dragons<br>By conseil of hys barouns;<br>þat on he dide byfore hym bere,<br>& ilka <sup>2</sup> tyme he zede to were;<br>þat oper dragon he did wyrk,<br>& heng hit <sup>3</sup> at seinte Petres kirk.<br>ffor þat skyl & þat enchesoun <sup>4</sup><br>Was he cald Vter Pendragoun:<br>Pen ys heued in Walsche langage;<br>Dragon ys seyð on oure vsage;<br>Pendragon was his to-name<br>In all his lyue for þat same. | 9144<br>9148<br>9152       |

¶ *De Octa, filio Hengysty.*

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                           |      |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Octa, Hengist's<br>son, | Octa, Hengystes sone þat was,<br>When Aurelius furgaf <sup>5</sup> his trespas,<br>& had hym gyuen, <sup>6</sup> & his meyne,<br>Londes y þe norþ contre;<br>When he wyste þat he was ded | 9156 |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|

<sup>1</sup> named þorow. [leaf 54, back, col. 2.]<sup>2</sup> at ilk.<sup>3</sup> it hang. (A l'eglise de l'Eves-  
quié, Wace, ii. 11, l. 8610.)<sup>4</sup> cheson.<sup>5</sup> Forggyuen before.<sup>6</sup> & þe kyng gaf him.

OCTA INVADES BRITAIN. UTHUR FIGHTS HIM. 321

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pat þeym þe lond furst furbed,<br>Of hym he gaf nought, þat was newe,<br>Til hym þoughte he neuere be trewe.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| What dide þis schrewe, þe false Octa?<br>Conseilled wyþ his cosyn Ebessa, <sup>1</sup><br>Wyþ alle þo of his owen kynde,<br>& oper Saxons þat þey myght fynde;<br>& fele of þo wyþ hem went<br>pat scaped atte <sup>2</sup> slaughter of Passent;<br>pat fro Vter handes <sup>3</sup> fled,<br>þey com til Octa, & he þem led.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 9160 pooh-poohs<br>Uther,                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| By-þonde Humber al þe land<br>Octa tok vntil hys hand,<br>Al til Scotland in lengþe & bred.<br>To 3ork syþen al þey 3ed,<br>pat [toun] for to bysege <sup>4</sup> & to wyn;<br>þey defended hem faste wyþyn; <sup>5</sup><br>þe kyng þe sege wolde remewe,<br>þe toun a-geynes þeym rescuwe;<br>He þoughte nought longe fort <sup>6</sup> abyde,<br>Bot gadered folk on ilka syde.<br>When he was comen, he abod nought,<br>Bot on þe Payens bataille sought;<br>& þe Payens egre & stout,<br>porow þe Bretons held þem out;<br>Payens & Cristen, many were slawen,<br>& many a sowle fro <sup>7</sup> body drawen. | 9164 consults with<br>Ebessa, and<br>gathers a large<br>host of Saxons.<br><br>9168 They seize all<br>Northumbria,<br><br>9172 and besiege<br>York.<br><br>9176 Uther collects<br>his folk,<br><br>9180 and attacks the<br>Pagans,<br><br>9184 |

<sup>1</sup> *Cosa*. (Eossa, *Wace*, ii. 12, l. 8640; Eosa, *Galf. Mon.* viii. 18.)

<sup>2</sup> *fro þe*.

<sup>3</sup> *in weles*.

<sup>4</sup> *þe toun for to sege*.

<sup>5</sup> *fended it that was per-In*.

<sup>6</sup> *long to*. [leaf 55.]

<sup>7</sup> *Many saule of*.

¶ *Obsitus est Vterus Rex super collem qui vocatur  
Damer; et ex saluati sunt per consilium  
Gorleni Comitiss.*

but is driven  
back

þe Bretons þat tyme myght nought sped;  
Bak þey turnde, þey saw ned;  
þe Payens after folewed fast,  
& many vn-to dede cast. 9188

to a hill called  
Damer.

. Whider to fle þey were al wyl;<sup>1</sup>  
þe Payens hem chased vntil an hyl,<sup>1</sup>  
'Damer'<sup>2</sup> þe hil so hight.  
þe Bretons tok hit þo þat nyght; 9192  
Hey & streit, ful narow<sup>3</sup> to prykke,  
Aboute y-busched wyþ þornes<sup>4</sup> þykke.

There the  
Pagans  
besiege them,  
but cannot  
assault, because  
of the night.

When þe Bretons þe hil had taken,  
Wyþ sege þe Payens held þem waken, 9196  
. Bot hit was atte þe nyght,  
. þeym to saille þey ne myght;  
þey logged þem stille in þe playn, [leaf 40, col. 2.]  
& þe Bretons were y þe mountayn; 9200  
. þe Payens to þer loggyng<sup>5</sup> gan lep;  
. Wery þey were, & fulle on slep.

Uthur is  
anxious about  
saving his men,

þe kyng had of hym self gret drede,  
& of his folk þat he schold<sup>6</sup> lede, 9204  
. How he scholde<sup>6</sup> a-scape þem fro;  
. þer weyes wer stopped þer þey schold<sup>6</sup> go.

and asks Gor-  
lens, the Earl  
of Cornwall,  
for advice.

þe Erl of Cornewaille was o þat hyl,  
Gorlens he highte, a man of skyl, 9208  
Wysest he held hym of ylkon;  
To hym for conseil þey mente þer mon,

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> Daniens, *Wace*, ii. 13, l. 8675; *Damen*, *Galf. Mon.*

<sup>3</sup> *hie & narrow fult strayte.* (agus en som, *Wace*, ii. 13, l. 8676.)

<sup>4</sup> *busched with hesils.*

<sup>5</sup> *loges.*

<sup>6</sup> *suld.*

- ffor he was man of gret queyntyse,<sup>1</sup>  
 & neuere louede no cowardyse.<sup>1</sup> 9212  
 He seide "for conseil ze com me to;  
 " Y schal zow conseille, zyf ze wil so.  
 " ¶ Mercy to God, first we schal cry,  
 " & mende vs of al oure foly,  
 " & preye Iesu our Saueour  
 " To schulde vs fro<sup>2</sup> mysauentour,  
 " & gif vs grace & powere  
 " Ageins þe Payens þat sege vs here, 9220  
 " þat vs often wo han vs<sup>3</sup> wrought,  
 " & hym for Lord ne knowe þey nought;  
 " þat he to day stonde vs by,  
 " On hys enemys to haue maystri. 9224  
 " zyf he wyl helpe, our Lord Ihesus,  
 " Who may þanne ageyns vs?"  
 To his conseille þei graunted alle,  
 & faste on Iesu þen gon þey calle, 9228  
 & highte to make amendement,  
 . þat tyme to schape zyf<sup>4</sup> he þem lent.  
 " Arme zow," he seyde,<sup>5</sup> "pryuely,  
 " & go we stille, wypouten cry;  
 " þey arn a<sup>6</sup> slepe, y am right siker;  
 " þey trauailed faste to gyue vs byker,  
 " & wene nought we dur vs abate,  
 " ffor þey desconfit vs so late; 9236  
 " þey hope to morn atte sonne rysyng  
 " Vs to slo, or<sup>7</sup> take our kyng.  
 " Arme vs swyþe, & go we down,<sup>8</sup>  
 " Wypoute any more sarmoun!" 9240  
 ¶ þey armed þenne<sup>9</sup> knyght & swayn,
- Gorlens bids the Britons ask God's mercy,  
 and pray to Jesus  
 for strength against the Pagans,  
 his enemies.  
 The Britons accordingly pray, and promise amendement if they escape.  
 Gorlens then tells them to arm, and attack the sleeping and weary Pagans.  
 The Britons arm,

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> Wace invents this piece of piety; but puts it (ii. 15) after Geoffrey's and his advice to attack by night.

<sup>3</sup> vs cristen wo has.

<sup>4</sup> scape. if. [leaf 55, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> vs he said now.

<sup>6</sup> ere oñ.

<sup>7</sup> g.

<sup>8</sup> MS. douns.

<sup>9</sup> þam some.

come down to  
the sleeping  
and unarmed  
Pagans,

Pryuely com doun in to þe playn,  
& fond hem slepyng,<sup>1</sup> als he sayd;  
Vnarmed, ilkon were þey leyd.

9244

¶ *Occisio Paganorum.*

and slaughter  
them pitilessly.

. When þe Bretons were spred aboute

. In þer host, wybynne<sup>2</sup> & wyboute,

þen was slaughtere wyboute pite;

Was non for merci ȝolden fre;

9248

þorow wombe & breste þe speres bot,

Hedes, handes, fet, of smot.

To arme þeym þey nadde no space,

Ne to fle had þey no grace;

9252

ȝyf any fledde þat fle myght,<sup>3</sup>

þe merknesse saued [hem] þat nyght.<sup>3</sup>

Octa and  
Ebessa are  
taken, and  
prisoned in  
London.

Octa & Ebessa<sup>4</sup> o lyue þey tok,

At Londone in prison he dide þem lok.

9256

Uther goes  
through North-  
umberland and  
Scotland,

¶ When þis Payens were desconfit,

Toward þe norþ þey went ful tyt;

Northumberland, Scotland, þorow þey rod,

Als hit was fer, [þop] long & brod.

9260

takes the un-  
ruly into his  
own hands,  
and establishes  
peace.

þo þat myghte no men<sup>5</sup> iustise,

Al he drow til his seruise;

Ouer al he sette swylk pees, [leaf 40, back, col. 1.]

Bettere neuere no man ches.

9264

When he was kyng kyd & coup,

He tok his gate toward þe souþ;

At Londone his Pasches he held,

Wyþ erl & baron, & knyght of scheld;

9268

Byschopes, abbotes, he dide somoune,

. & riche burgeyses, & oþer in<sup>6</sup> toune;

Then he returns  
to London for  
Easter,  
and bids all his  
nobles, bishops,  
and burgesses,  
with their

<sup>1</sup> *slepad.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *wybynne & wybynne.*

<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out  
these lines; but they are in Wace,  
ii. 17, l. 8761-2.

<sup>4</sup> *cosa.*

<sup>5</sup> *non myght ore.* (La gent qui  
estoit sans justice, Wace, ii. 17, l.  
8773.)

<sup>6</sup> *of.* [leaf 55, back.]

OF UTHER'S FEAST, AND THE LOVELY IGERNE. 325

He dide comaunde, vpon þer lyf,  
 þat wedded men schold bryng þer<sup>1</sup> wyf, 9272 wives, to his  
Feast.  
<sup>2</sup> & opere honeste of his meyne,  
 . Man or woman, wheþer þey be ;  
 Al he bad vntil his feste,  
 þat were worpy & honeste.<sup>3</sup> 9276

¶ De festo Vtary Regis.

When alle were comen þat schold or wylde,  
 Innes taken, ne<sup>3</sup> fulfilde,  
 & at þe kirke þer seruise seyde,  
 . In halles & hales bordes leyde, 9280  
 þe kyng was set, & serued of mees,  
 & at þat oper ende was a dees ;  
 þer set þe barons of pris,  
 þe Erl of Cornewaille ageyn his vys ; 9284  
 By hym sat Igerne his wyf,  
 . Of whas fairhede was speche ryf ;  
 In al þe reome,<sup>4</sup> so fair was non,  
 Ne of swylk kynde, bot scheo al on.<sup>5</sup> 9288  
 Often þe kyng had herd hure preyse,  
 þat sche was fair, god, & curteyse ;  
 Mikel desired he hure to se.  
 When he hure sey,<sup>6</sup> more louede he ; 9292  
 . þe sight of hure hym al to-blast ;<sup>7</sup>  
 His herte on hure ageyn he cast ;

When all are  
come, and Mass  
is said,  
  
Uther is seated  
  
and opposite  
him, Earl Gor-  
lens (who  
rescued him),  
with his lovely  
countess Igerne.  
  
Uther has often  
wished to see  
her,  
  
and when he  
does so, the  
sight of her  
blows him all  
to pieces.

<sup>1</sup> his.

<sup>2-3</sup> & if he wuld his oper meigne  
 þat were auenant in courte to se.  
 Man or woman þat were  
 honeste  
 att he bed unto his feste.

<sup>3</sup> &.

<sup>4</sup> regne.

<sup>5</sup> ne of suilk was þer non.

<sup>6</sup> hir sawe.

<sup>7</sup> att to brast.

¶ De Igerne, Comitissa Cornubye.

Eating or  
drinking,  
Igerne is always  
in Uther's head,  
and he can't  
take his eyes  
off her.  
He sends her  
presents,  
smiles at her,  
and looks  
loving;  
but she'll have  
none of him.

Earl Gorlens  
sees Uther's  
little tricks,

and at once  
starts up from  
the board,  
takes his wife,  
calls his  
knights, and  
goes off  
to Cornwall.  
But before he  
goes,  
Uther orders  
him back again,

or he'll be his  
enemy.

Wheper he et or drank, spak ought or nought,  
Igerne was euere in his þought, 9296  
Ne cam sche neuere out of his hert,  
To hure was his eye euere ouer-thwert.  
By his priues often [he] hure<sup>1</sup> grette,  
& his presentes byforn hure sette, 9300  
Often hure lout,<sup>2</sup> & on hure low,  
& made semblaunt of loue ynow.  
Hure contenaunce was, & hure semblaunt,  
Sche nought ne seyde, ne nought wold graunt;  
þe kyng of hure nought vnderstod 9305  
In contenaunce but<sup>3</sup> stable & god.  
What for laughynge & oper tyhtes,  
What for presentes & oper delites,<sup>4</sup> 9308  
þe Erl perceyued & þoughte ful ȝerne  
þe kyng louede his wyf Igerne;  
& þoughte<sup>5</sup> no feyþ til [him] wold<sup>6</sup> bere,  
But he in pes his wyf myght were. 9312  
Vp þen stirt he fro þe bord—  
To þe kyng ne spak he word,—  
His wyf by þe hand he hent,  
& calde his knyghtes, & pennes<sup>7</sup> went. 9316  
Hastely þer hors were bone,  
& to Cornewaille þey come sone.  
Er he was redy for<sup>8</sup> to wende,  
þe kyng comaunded, as he was hende, 9320  
' þat he schold comen to court a-geyn,  
' Or he dide vylenye<sup>9</sup> til his souereyn;  
' And ȝyf he ne wolde come bleþely, [lf. 40, bk., col. 2.]  
' Waite hym wel as for<sup>10</sup> his enemy.' 9324

<sup>1</sup> of he hir.

<sup>2</sup> oft on hir luke.

<sup>3</sup> bo.

<sup>4</sup> sightes.

<sup>5</sup> þoughte = þought he. P. He þouht.  
[leaf 55, back, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> þat faith he ne wild him.

<sup>7</sup> þien.

<sup>8</sup> ȝare redy.

<sup>9</sup> els did he vilte.

<sup>10</sup> kepe him wele he were.

- þe kynges sonde he wolde nought here,  
 He made no force of his preyere.  
 When þe kyng wyste þat he wold nought  
 . Come ageyn, as he bisought, 9328  
 He manased hym wyþ [felle]<sup>1</sup> herte,  
 . & seyde he schold hit<sup>2</sup> sore smerte.  
 . ffor no<sup>3</sup> manace ne wolde he byde;  
 . Bot he ne wyste what scholde bytide. 9332  
 Two casteles he hadde in Cornewaille,  
 þo he warnished wyþ vitaille;  
 In þe castel of Tyntagel  
 He dide his wyf to kepe wel; 9336  
 Of defens hit hadde<sup>4</sup> gret los,  
 Wyþ dyk & se hit<sup>5</sup> ys in clos;  
 Who-so kepes þat [zate]<sup>6</sup> in nede,  
 In oþer stede dar<sup>7</sup> hym nought drede; 9340  
 þer-inne scheo was<sup>8</sup> zemed & sperd,  
 & he til his oþer castel ferd;  
 þider he ledde his souders,  
 . To kepe þe kyng at sautes sers; 9344  
 I þat castel was, þat he to cam,  
 þe force of al his erldam.  
 with all his forces.
- Gorlens dis-  
 regards Uther's  
 orders,
- and Uther de-  
 clares he shall  
 smart for it.
- Gorlens puts  
 his wife Igerne  
 in his impreg-  
 nable castle of  
 Tyntagel,
- and goes him-  
 self to his other  
 castle,

¶ De obsisione Gorlencii Comit̃is per Regem.

- þe kyng wyste he made purueaunce  
 A-gayns hym to stande<sup>9</sup> to chaunce. 9348  
 þe kyng also sone purueyed his host;  
 . þer þe Erl was, bysegged þe cost;  
 þe castel þat. þe Erl was in,  
 He bysegged hyt for to wyn. 9352  
 There Uther  
 besieges him;

<sup>1</sup> felle.

<sup>2</sup> it suld him.

<sup>3</sup> att þe.

<sup>4</sup> it his.

<sup>5</sup> see & fen it.

<sup>6</sup> þe zate. (la porte, Wace, l. 8852.) See l. 9412 below.

<sup>7</sup> þar.

<sup>8</sup> he did hir be.

<sup>9</sup> at stand.



but after a week  
wins nothing.

Gorlens ex-  
pects the Irish  
king's help.  
Uther is in a  
hurry to get  
Igerne,  
and is disgusted  
at losing his  
time.  
He tells Ulfyn

how bad he is.  
"I love Igerne  
so much that I  
shall die if it  
lasts long.

I can't eat or  
drink.  
Love has  
brought me to  
death's door,  
What shall I  
do?"  
Ulfyn says:  
"You love  
your foe's wife,  
and think to  
win her by  
war!  
You're too late.  
Who put this  
way of making  
love in your  
head?  
I can't advise  
you about it.  
No doubt  
Merlin can.

Al a wyke<sup>1</sup> þe kyng þer lay,  
He spilte his tyme, sped of no pray;  
Of þe Erl nought he ne wan,  
Ne dide scape til no man, 9356  
ffor þe Erl kepte euere þe comyng  
Hy[m]<sup>2</sup> to socoure þe Irische kyng.  
þe kyng sey þe sege was wast;  
Igerne to haue he wilde hym hast; 9360  
He was ful gretlyk onoyed  
þat his tyme so was destroyed.  
He calde Vlfyn, his priue baroun,  
To conceille hym of som resoun: 9364  
"Vlfyn," he saide, "þou conseil me;  
"My beste conseil y take at þe.  
"On Igerne y am enamured<sup>3</sup> strong,  
"I deye ȝyf hit me laste long; 9368  
"Y ne may slepe, wyþ wo y wake,<sup>4</sup>  
"So am y in hure loue y-take;  
"Ete ne drynke ne may y nought,  
"So lowe hure loue haþ me<sup>5</sup> brought; 9372  
"Loue dereþ me so, to deye<sup>6</sup> y dred;  
"Y aske conseil how y may sped."  
Seyd Vlfyn þen, "y here merueilles!  
"þou louest his wyf þat þou<sup>7</sup> assailles! 9376  
"Wenestow þer-wyþ to ben aboute?  
"þorow werre wynne<sup>8</sup> his wyf to loue?  
"Hure to loue þou com to late;<sup>9</sup>  
"Hure loue to gete, hure lord to take.<sup>9</sup> 9380  
"At wham toke þou þis conseil, [leaf 41.]  
"To loue in tene & in<sup>10</sup> turpeyl?  
"Conseil of þis can y non kest;  
"Of swylyk conseil Merlyn can best; 9384

<sup>1</sup> *seuentyght.* [lf. 58.]

<sup>2</sup> *him.*

<sup>3</sup> *anamorde.*

<sup>4</sup> *slepe wo .I. waken.*

<sup>5</sup> *his luf benethen has me so.*

<sup>6</sup> *luf has me wounded dede.*

<sup>7</sup> *lufes his wife & him.*

<sup>8</sup> *to wyn.*

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>10</sup> *with.*

" He can ynow of swylke craftes,  
 " Of alle vigures<sup>1</sup> he turnes þe schaftes.  
 " ȝyf he can kenne þe no weye,<sup>2</sup>  
 " Igerne to wynne, can no man seye."<sup>2</sup>  
 þorow þe conseil of sire Vlfyn  
 þe kyng dide sende after Merlyn.  
 Merlyn com þe kyng byforn;  
 He seide, " Merlyn, y am ner lorn!<sup>3</sup>  
 " Conseille me, syn þat þou can,  
 " & y schal euere-more be þy man!  
 " Y haue ner lorn wyt & lyf  
 " ffor Igerne, þe kynges<sup>4</sup> wyf!  
 " Help me now, þat y hure haue;  
 " & what þou wilt, y vouche saue."

9388 If he can't, no  
 one else can."

9392 So Uther sends  
 for Merlin,  
 and tells him,  
 " I've nearly  
 lost

9396 wit and life for  
 Igerne.  
 Help me to  
 have her."

## Dicta

" Syre,"<sup>5</sup> seid Merlyn, " God furbede  
 " þat þou for hure schold be in drede,  
 " ffor Igerne to haue þe ded!<sup>6</sup>  
 " Er schold y don anoper red;  
 " þou schalt hure haue wypoute pyne,  
 " & ȝit wol y haue nought of þyne.  
 " Bot, sire Vter, þou wost hit wel,  
 " Strong ys þe hold of Tyntagel;  
 " & scho ys loken þer-yn so strait,  
 " Bot þorow queyntise or deseit  
 " Noman ne may hure out[e] take,  
 " þorow non engyn þat men can make;  
 " ffor two men þat oughtes<sup>7</sup> be,  
 " May kepe þe issue<sup>8</sup> & þe entre;  
 " & þey al hit be wykke to wynne,  
 " fful wel schal y þe brynge<sup>9</sup> þer ynne."

Merlynny. Merlin says:  
 " God forbid  
 that you should  
 die for Igerne!

9401 I'll manage it.  
 You shall have  
 her.

9404 But you know  
 Tyntagel is so  
 strong that you  
 can only get her  
 by stratagem.

9408 Two brave men  
 can keep the  
 castle gate.

But I'll take  
 you in.

<sup>1</sup> figures.

<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leave out these  
 lines.

<sup>3</sup> am forlorn.

<sup>4</sup> erles.

<sup>5</sup> Sir kyng. [leaf 56, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> in drede for to haf þi dede.

<sup>7</sup> without (aht, oht, brave).

<sup>8</sup> isshen.

<sup>9</sup> .I. suil do þe.

## § De transfiguracione Merlyn.

|                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                         |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| I can turn any<br>form into<br>another ;                                                                                               | " ffor alle manere forme þat ys,<br>" Kan y turne til oper <sup>1</sup> lyknes:                                                                                                         | 9416 |
|                                                                                                                                        | " A face to be like anoþer,<br>" & a body vnto þat oper; <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                   |      |
| can change the<br>face, body, and<br>speech of any<br>one,                                                                             | " Stature of body, speche & leryng, <sup>3</sup><br>" & contenance of ylka þyng, <sup>3</sup>                                                                                           | 9420 |
|                                                                                                                                        | " Y schal chaunge, what so þey are, <sup>3</sup><br>" Ilkon schal wene þat oper ware. <sup>3</sup>                                                                                      |      |
| so that they<br>shall be thought<br>another's.<br>Now Earl Gor-<br>lens has two<br>trusted knights,<br>Bertel and<br>Jordon.           | " þe Erl cherly <sup>4</sup> wyþ hym ledes<br>" Two knyghtes, doughti of dedes ;                                                                                                        | 9424 |
|                                                                                                                                        | " Sire Bertel þen hat þat on, <sup>5</sup><br>" þat oper heyghte sire Iordon ;<br>" þis are his priue conseilours :                                                                     |      |
|                                                                                                                                        | " Til þeir lyknesse y schal turne oures ;                                                                                                                                               | 9428 |
|                                                                                                                                        | " Y þe Erles lyknesse y schal þe dight,<br>" Y schal be lyke Bertil <sup>6</sup> his knyght,<br>" Lyke Iordan schal <sup>7</sup> be Vlfyn ;                                             |      |
| I'll make you,<br>Uther, like the<br>Earl ; I'll be<br>Bertel ; and<br>Ulfin shall be<br>Jordon.<br>We'll all three<br>go to Tyntagel, | " þus schal we come þe castel yn ;<br>" Alle þre at euen schol <sup>7</sup> we go<br>" To þe castel, wypouten mo,<br>" & speke þer speche & þer facounde ;                              | 9432 |
|                                                                                                                                        | " We schul <sup>7</sup> come in þen on a stounde.                                                                                                                                       | 9436 |
|                                                                                                                                        | " Dred þe nought of no man,<br>" ffor no queyntise þat any can ;<br>" And þou schalt haue hure to <sup>8</sup> þy wyll, [L. 41, col. 2.]<br>" þy grete desir <sup>9</sup> to fulfille." | 9440 |
| and you shall<br>work your will<br>with Igerne."                                                                                       | Al þat euere Merlyn teld,<br>As gospel þe kyng hit held :                                                                                                                               |      |
| Uther gives his<br>host in charge<br>to a leader.                                                                                      | þen comaunded he til on certeyn,<br>þe host to kepe til he com ageyn.                                                                                                                   | 9444 |

<sup>1</sup> turne þe.<sup>2</sup> & his agayn vnto þe toþer.<sup>3</sup> (? MS. *heryng*.) The Petyt  
MS. leaves out these four lines.<sup>4</sup> MS. *chly*. P. þe erle specially.<sup>5</sup> *bretell* hate þe ton.<sup>6</sup> & .I. satt be *bretell*.<sup>7</sup> *satt*.<sup>8</sup> *at*.<sup>9</sup> *zernyng*.

- pem charmed Merlyn þorow vertue,  
 & colour & clopyng dide remue,  
 Contenaunce, speche, þe same assise;  
 . He *turnde* þe kyng on þe Erles wyse,  
 & he & Vlfyn, to alle<sup>1</sup> sightes,  
 . As Bertel & Iordan, þe Erles knyghtes.  
 At euen þey come to Tyntagel,  
 & þo þat wende haue knowe pem wel,  
 Receyued þeym wyþ glad[e] chere,  
 As hit were þe Erl lef & dere.  
 . What þey wilde, non wold pem werne;  
 þe kyng lay þat myght by Igerne,  
 & scheo conseyued of hym þat nyght  
 Arthur, þat was so mykel of myght. **Concepcio**  
 In þe host was told anon, **Arthury.**  
 ‘ þat non wiste whider þe kyng was gon : ’  
 His ordynaunce þey al fursok,  
 þat þe kyng þe kepyng took;  
 þey armed hem to make asaut,  
 . ffor þat þey hadde of heued default,  
 & went forþ y þe morn[e]<sup>2</sup> tyde;  
 . Non for oper<sup>3</sup> wold oper abyde;  
 Of bataille sette þey no right<sup>4</sup> rengo,  
 . Bot ilkon forþ, þe kyng to venge.  
<sup>5</sup> þen gon þey assaille boþ fer & hende.  
 þe Erl ageyn pem faste ga[n] fende:  
 As he stod, er he lest<sup>6</sup> wende,  
 He was schot to deþe, & made his ende.<sup>5</sup>  
 . When he was ded, his side gan slaken;  
 Lightly was þen þe castel taken.
- Merlin charms  
 9448 Uther into Gorlens, himself into Bertel, and Ulfyn into Jordon.  
 9452 They go to Tyntagel, are received gladly, and get all they want.  
 9456 Uther lies by Igerne, and begets Arthur on her.  
 9460 Uther’s men hear that he’s away; they won’t attend to his substitute,  
 9464 but go to assault Gorlens’s castle, all out of proper formation.  
 9468 Gorlens defends his castle,  
 9472 but is shot and killed, and his castle soon won.

<sup>1</sup> be þo. [leaf 56, back.]

<sup>2</sup> morne.

<sup>3</sup> honour.

<sup>4</sup> ne bataile set ne rightly.

<sup>5-6</sup> was þer non held right aray.

bot ilhone went to þe assay.

on ilk a side þei gaf batayle.

þe erle agayn gan fast assaile.

as he & his stode þam to fende.

he was slayn or [þat] þei

wende.

<sup>6</sup> MS. left (lest=least).

## § De Morte Comitiss Cornubye.

Gorlens's men  
that escape tell  
Igerne that her  
husband is  
dead, and his  
castle taken.  
Uther (per-  
sonating Gor-  
lens) starts up,  
says "Thank  
God, I'm alive!

Don't believe  
such lies!  
No doubt my  
men are in  
trouble. When  
I left, I never  
told any one  
where I was  
going;

and as I haven't  
come back yet,  
they think I'm  
dead.  
It is a sad  
thing that my  
men and castle  
are lost;  
but I'm alive,  
thank God!

I'll go now, and  
make peace  
with Uther,  
and be friends  
with all."

Igerne agrees.

þo þat askaped wyþ þe lyf,  
Brought tydyng to the Erles wyf, 9476  
' Hure lord was slayn y þe mornynge,  
' þe castel taken vnto þe kyng.'  
þe kyng hym selue þe tydyng herd,  
He styrt vp, & þem answerd: 9480  
" Let be þour tales to tene my wyf,<sup>1</sup>—  
" Y þank God y am her on lyf!<sup>2</sup>—  
" To telle swylk tales for to greue!  
" Lesynges ar nought to byleue! 9484  
" Y wot wel þey are in doute;  
" Vnwarned fro þeym y went oute;  
" ffor when y out of þe castel zede,  
" Y spak to non,—þat ys þer drede,— 9488  
" Ne seyde whider þat y wold<sup>3</sup> go,  
" ffor doute & treson<sup>4</sup> of my fo;  
" & for y cam nought sone<sup>5</sup> agayn,  
" Wene þey now þat y be<sup>6</sup> slayn. 9492  
" Bot þat my folk doun ys born,  
" Slayn, & [eke] þe castel lorn,  
" Hit may do tene & greuaunce;  
" Bot y lyue, God þanky þe<sup>7</sup> chaunce! 9496  
" I schal me haste, out y schal<sup>8</sup> wende,  
" Pes for to seke; þe kyng ys hende.  
" Er any more skape falle, [leaf 41, back, col. 1.]  
" Y wyl acorde me wiþ þem alle. 9500  
" ȝyf he wyþ sege sperre me her-yn,<sup>9</sup>  
" More wo þan ys, þen scholde bygyn."<sup>9</sup>  
To þat conseil Igerne redde,—  
Alle tymes þe kyng scheo dredde;— 9504

<sup>1</sup> þei be not trod.

<sup>2</sup> I. am o life .I. tanke it god.

<sup>3</sup> suld. [leaf 56, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> drede.

<sup>5</sup> suyth.

<sup>6</sup> am.

<sup>7</sup> lyf þank god þat.

<sup>8</sup> witt .I.

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

In armes boþe ilk oþer hent,  
 þe kyng hure kyste, & out he went.  
 ¶ When þey<sup>1</sup> passed, alle þre,  
 Ilkon was, as fel to be,<sup>2</sup>  
 & come dryuande vntil þe host;  
 After þe Erl he spyrd most,  
 Who gaf conseil for to go,  
 þe castel to take, þe Erl to slo?  
 þe soþe þenne<sup>3</sup> was hym told,  
 Of on & oþer, symple & bold.  
 þe kyng þer-fore was wo ynow,  
 He wraped wyþ hem þat hym slow;  
 Bot longe nold he þer-fore mourne,  
 To Tyntagel a-geyn gan tourne,  
 & to þeym of þe castel spak  
 & seide: "y rede ȝe turne ȝour bak,  
 " ffor he þat bataille on me bed,  
 " þe Erl ȝour lord, [he] ys now ded<sup>4</sup>;  
 " Now schol ȝe of non fynde socour  
 " Agayn[e]s me to stande in stour."  
 When þey herde þe kyng þus seyd,  
 þer socour lorn, þer heued<sup>5</sup> doun leyd,  
 þe castel anon til hym þey zolde,  
 & leet hym do what þat he wolde.  
 He ȝede anon to dame Igerne;  
 Als he had don, he teld hire ȝerne,  
 Al how he by hure lay,  
 & how he wente from hure away:

Uther kisses  
 and leaves her.

9508 He, Merlin, and  
 Ulfyn, take their  
 own forms,  
 and Uther asks  
 his men who  
 advised the  
 9512 attack on Gor-  
 lens.

9516 He is angry at  
 first,

but soon turns  
 back to Tyn-  
 tagel,  
 9520 tells the folk  
 that their Earl  
 is dead, and  
 they can't  
 resist any  
 longer.

9524

They give up  
 Tyntagel to  
 9528 Uther,  
 and he tells  
 Igerne

how he lay by  
 9532 her,

¶ Rex desponsauit Igerniam.

"Y am," he seide, "wyþouten wyf,  
 " & þou art a sengle woman of lyf;

and offers to  
 wed her.

<sup>1</sup> þei were.

<sup>2</sup> com estre dut, *Wace*, ii. 28, l.  
 9022.

<sup>3</sup> sone.

<sup>4</sup> he is dede.

<sup>5</sup> hede.

|                                                                    |                                                   |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------|
| She consents.                                                      | " Y wol þe wedde, ȝyf þou wilt so."               |      |
|                                                                    | Dame Igerne consented þer-to :                    | 9536 |
|                                                                    | " Of no deseite nere wist y ;                     |      |
|                                                                    | " Bot of þy weddyng, sire, graunt mersy."         |      |
|                                                                    | þe child scheo <sup>1</sup> conseyuod byforn,     |      |
| Arthur is born ;                                                   | When tyme fel, hit was born :                     | 9540 |
|                                                                    | Arthur was þe childes name,                       |      |
|                                                                    | A noble man, of ful gret fame.                    |      |
| then a daughter<br>Anna, who is                                    | A doughter þey hadde,—Anne sche hight,—           |      |
|                                                                    | pat gyuen was til a doughti knyght,               | 9544 |
| married to sir<br>Loth, and has a<br>son, Gawain<br>the courteous. | Vntil sire Loth of Lonneys ;                      |      |
|                                                                    | Hys sone was Wawayn þe Curteys.                   |      |
|                                                                    | Syþen regned Vter ful longe,                      |      |
| Uther falls ill,<br>and lies bed-<br>ridden.                       | & þan fel hym <sup>2</sup> an yuel stronge ;      | 9548 |
|                                                                    | Bedrede doun ful longe he lay,                    |      |
|                                                                    | & languissed so forþ fro <sup>3</sup> day to day. |      |

### § D[e] Octa, filio Hengisty.

|                                                                |                                                                                     |                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| The keepers<br>of Octa and<br>Ebessa (see p.<br>324, l. 9256). | þo pat kepte Octa, Hengistes sone,<br>& Ebessa, <sup>4</sup> at Londone in prysone, | 9552                     |
|                                                                | þey greued þem of þer <sup>5</sup> longe loking,                                    |                          |
|                                                                | And Octa gaf þem mykel þynge.                                                       |                          |
|                                                                | ffor gyftes gyuen ofte & gret,                                                      | [leaf 41, back, col. 2.] |
| let them out of<br>prison, and go<br>with them to<br>Saxony.   | þey leet hem scape of þe prison sket,                                               | 9556                     |
|                                                                | & wente wyþ hem ouer þe se                                                          |                          |
|                                                                | In-til Saxoyne, þeyr contre.                                                        |                          |
| Octa gathers a<br>host,                                        | þer gadered Octa ful gret host ;                                                    |                          |
| gets a fleet,                                                  | Toward our kyng þey blewen <sup>6</sup> bost ;                                      | 9560                     |
|                                                                | He purchased <sup>7</sup> hym a flute on flod ;                                     |                          |
|                                                                | Wyþ men of arnes & <sup>8</sup> archers god                                         |                          |

<sup>1</sup> *scho had.* [leaf 37.]<sup>2</sup> *in.*<sup>3</sup> *languysced fro.*<sup>4</sup> *Cosa.*<sup>5</sup> *þei were greued of.*<sup>6</sup> *he lewe.*<sup>7</sup> *purueid.*<sup>8</sup> *with knyghtes & with.*

Toward Scotland þey gan vp ryue,  
Pyled & brent, men brougte of lyue. 9564

lands in Scot-  
land, and  
ravages it.

Our kyng þat lay in langoryng,<sup>1</sup> ¶ De langore Uther lies ill,  
Of hym was non help ne socuring Vtery Regis. and

His lond for to fende &<sup>2</sup> were,

· He myghte nought ryse armes to bere; 9568 cannot rise.

per-fore he bad alle his barouns

Don after Lotes<sup>3</sup> somouns,

He bids his  
barons  
obey his son-  
in-law, Loth,

ffor he was doughti, noble & wys,<sup>4</sup>

& sley cheuentayn of god auys.<sup>5</sup>

9572 a skilful chief-  
tain.

Sire Octa þat hadde folk ynowe,

Oueral þe Bretons þei pyled<sup>6</sup> & slowe;

Octa pillages  
the Britons

He bolded hym wyþ mykel pryde,

þat þe kyng ne myghte go ne ryde;

9576

To meschef he putte al þat he fond,<sup>7</sup>

and slays all  
the folk he  
finds.

· Man & wyf, þorow al þys lond.<sup>7</sup>

Bot often Lot wyþ hym met,

& ofte hym chaced þorow<sup>8</sup> baret.

9580

Loth often  
beats him,

Many tyme of hym he wan,

& eft on hym þat oper ran:—

Hit ys custume þat werre bygynne,<sup>7</sup>

Somme to lese, & somme to wyne:—<sup>7</sup>

9584

and then he  
beats Loth,  
(as is the cus-  
tom in war).

Lot ful often<sup>9</sup> dide hym fle,

& chaced hym vnto þe se;

Bot gret dedeyn [was] of þe barouns,

þat wold nought come for Lotes somouns,—

þey þought hem al [so]<sup>10</sup> gentil of blod, 9589

But the British  
barons will not  
obey Loth,  
think them-  
selves as good  
as he,

& al so mykel in stede stod

At ylka tyme, or more þan he,

or better,

· & also mykel of rente & fe;—

9592

þus þey delayed,<sup>11</sup> long was þe drede,

and delay their  
musters,

<sup>1</sup> langoure . . . socoure.

<sup>2</sup> fend no.

<sup>3</sup> to do after sire loth. [lf. 57, cl. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> knyght of gode auys.

<sup>5</sup> doughty man large & wys.

<sup>6</sup> þe bretons ouer robbed.

<sup>7</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>8</sup> with.

<sup>9</sup> son.

<sup>10</sup> als.

<sup>11</sup> deleyd.



|                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| till Octa wins<br>all the north,<br>and the south<br>to St. Alban's.    | Til <sup>1</sup> þe kyng sey how þat hit zede;<br>. ffor Octa, al þe Norþ he wan,<br>. & of the Southe to seint Alban;<br>. pys wan he for þe barons defaut,<br>. þat for Lot nolde gyue <sup>2</sup> assaut. | 9596               |
| The land cries<br>to Uther,                                             | Al þe lond, to þe kyng þey pleyned<br>þat þe barons alle <sup>3</sup> feyned.                                                                                                                                 | 9600               |
| and he, though<br>sick, rises<br>from his bed,<br>has a litter<br>made, | ¶ Bot hereþ now of þe kynges wyl,<br>þat lefte <sup>4</sup> for syknesse ne for yl<br>þat he ne ros vp ful auster,<br>& dide hym make a liter                                                                 | 9604               |
| and says he'll<br>see who'll<br>neglect his<br>summons.                 | Corneled <sup>5</sup> as an hors bere,<br>& seyde þis word þat alle myght here:<br>" Now schal y se ho schal wyþstonde,<br>" & ho wyl come for my sonde!"                                                     | 9608               |
| He summons<br>first those who<br>disobeyed<br>Loth.                     | He somounde firste þo til his werre<br>þat deynd nought for Lot come nerra.<br>þey come, & were ful sore agrysen                                                                                              |                    |
| They all come<br>to Verulam,                                            | . Whan þey wyste þe kyng was rysen.<br>To þe toun of Wyrolhram <sup>6</sup><br>þe kyng & alle þe barons cam:                                                                                                  | 9612               |
| where St.<br>Alban lies,                                                | Seint <sup>7</sup> Albon, þer lygges he,<br>þat highte Wyrolhram <sup>6</sup> þe cite.                                                                                                                        | [leaf 42.]<br>9616 |
| and where Octa<br>and his host<br>are.                                  | þer com þey to þe toun wyþ wyn; <sup>8</sup><br>Octa & hyse were alle þer-yn.                                                                                                                                 |                    |
| Uther besieges<br>St. Alban's,                                          | þe kyng bysegged hit aboute,<br>Dide make engyns stronge & stoute.                                                                                                                                            | 9620               |
| but the town is<br>so strong,                                           | þe toun was þanne so strong & fyn,<br>Hit hadde no dere <sup>9</sup> of non engyn;                                                                                                                            |                    |
| and Octa and<br>his men so<br>bold,                                     | Octa & hyse were ryght <sup>10</sup> bolde,<br>. þey hadde god folk & syker holde,                                                                                                                            | 9624               |

<sup>1</sup> to.<sup>2</sup> wild gif non.<sup>3</sup> all þam.<sup>4</sup> He ne left.<sup>5</sup> kirmeld.<sup>6</sup> Verolhram.<sup>7</sup> At saynt. [leaf 57, back, col. 1.]<sup>8</sup> þe kyng com þat toun to wyn.<sup>9</sup> doute.<sup>10</sup> full.

- & seyde, 'hit was neuere [to] fere<sup>1</sup>  
 ' Of half a dedman lyggyng on<sup>2</sup> bere,  
 ' Ne for swyche on to kepe þe<sup>3</sup> gates loken ;  
 . " Cowardyse of vs scholde<sup>4</sup> be spoken, 9628 it would be  
 . " ffor to haue of swylkon drede, cowardice to  
 . " pat in a bere to bataille zede." keep the gates  
 . Alas ! hit<sup>5</sup> was no Cristen man, shut for him.  
 . þes<sup>6</sup> Octa pat so fer wan. - 9632  
 His ouerwenyng & his pryde  
 Dide þem opene þe gates wyde,  
 & com stoutly vnto þe byker ;  
 . Bot þer hap was al vnsyker ;<sup>7</sup> 9636  
 . ffor synne of Octa, fals & fursworn,  
 Dide al his felawes & hym be lorn ;  
 ffor slayn was þere sire Octa,  
 & his cosyn sire Ebessa ;  
 Oper ynowe zit þey skaped,  
 Vntil Scotland þey hem raped,  
 & ches þeym a prynce, sire Colgroyn,  
 pat was sire Octa cosyn. 9640  
 . Longe þey lendend<sup>8</sup> by pat cost,  
 . & gedered þere<sup>9</sup> anoper host.  
 ¶ But for þis noble ouercomyng  
 pat God gaf Vter oure kyng, 9648  
 ffor ioie he stirte vp<sup>10</sup> of his bere  
 Als he hadde be<sup>11</sup> hol & fere,  
 . Al armed in ire[n]<sup>12</sup> & stel,  
 & bolded alle his barons wel,  
 & seyde, þus standynge, & low :<sup>13</sup> 9652

that they say  
they've no fear  
of a half-dead  
man on a bier :  
it would be  
cowardice to  
keep the gates  
shut for him.

For pride they  
open their gates,

and attack  
Uther ;

but Octa's sin  
is their destruc-  
tion,

and he and  
Ebessa are also  
slain.

Some of their  
men escape to  
Scotland, and  
choose Col-

gryn king.

**Dicta** For joy of this  
**Vtery.** noble victory,  
Uther starts  
from his bier as  
if he were well,

and says,  
" It is more

<sup>1</sup> it was schame to bere fere.  
<sup>2</sup> for a half dede man in a.  
<sup>3</sup> For to hold þer.  
<sup>4</sup> of þam.  
<sup>5</sup> he.  
<sup>6</sup> þis.  
<sup>7</sup> was not siker. For the next  
two lines P. has—

þer fals trouth did þam misfalle.  
 þat felt to wyn he wan þam alle.  
<sup>8</sup> langed.  
<sup>9</sup> þam.  
<sup>10</sup> out.  
<sup>11</sup> had bene.  
<sup>12</sup> Irne.  
<sup>13</sup> standand & lowh.

honour to lie  
in a bier, and  
win,

than be whole,  
and lie dead on  
the ground.  
Octa despised  
me, and

held me only a  
half-dead man;  
but the half-  
dead man has  
slain his whole  
foes,  
and lives still!  
I'll follow the  
fleers too,

and pay hard  
measure to the  
destroyers of  
our lands."

But the barons  
persuade Uther  
to keep still till  
he is cured,  
while

they chase  
the Saxons.

The pursuit  
ended, the  
Saxons gather  
again, and con-  
sult how to put  
Uther to death

" More worschip ys, as me þynkep<sup>1</sup> now,

" In a bere for to lye,

" In syknesse wyne þe maistrie,

9656

" þan be a man hol & sound,

" & schamely lygge ded on<sup>2</sup> ground.

" Octa despised me many a day,

" ffor þat y sek in bedde lay;

9660

" Skornful wordes þey me bed,

" & held me bot an half man<sup>3</sup> ded.

" þe half dedman ful felonlyk

" Hap slayn his fos, boþ hol & quyke.

9664

" þe hole & quyke ar dede & fled;

" ȝyt lyueþ þe syke þat lay in bed;

" ȝit schal<sup>4</sup> y folewe þem þat fle!

" Do dight ȝow alle, & wendeþ wyþ me!

9668

" ffor no þyng ne schal<sup>5</sup> y leue

" þat y ne schal exyle<sup>6</sup> & reue,

" & ȝelde þem ful harde stoures,

" þat my lond destruyde,<sup>7</sup> & ȝoures."

9672

¶ When þe kyng had seyð his wille,

Hys barons bed hym byleue stille

Til he were warysched of his syknesse,

Or his penaunce y-swaged lesse.<sup>8</sup>

9676

þus departed alle þe barouns,

& chased after þe Saxouns.

When þe chas was al lefte,

[leaf 48, col. 2.]

& þe Saxoyns were gadered eft,

9680

þey conseilled hem, & toke þer red,

How þey might do þe kyng to ded:

þey seide, 'ȝyf þey myghte þe kyng destruye,

' He hadde non eir þat scholde þem noye;

9684

' & al so lange as he myght lyue,

' Bataille dirste þey neuere hym gyue,

<sup>1</sup> men say.

<sup>2</sup> schamfully leid to þe.

[leaf 57, back, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> cald me bot a man half.

<sup>4</sup> wil.

<sup>5</sup> no seknes sat.

<sup>6</sup> .I. sat exile þam.

<sup>7</sup> My lond þei destroyed.

<sup>8</sup> or a partie suaged les.

- ' Bot ȝif hit were þorow tresoun,<sup>1</sup> 9688  
 ' To gyue hym venym & <sup>2</sup> poyoun.' **Consilium** by poison.  
 ¶ þen ches þey men þat coupe swilk dede; **explora-** They choose  
 To go þider þey gaf þem mede: **torum.** assassins,  
 To Wyrolhram<sup>3</sup> þey bad hem go, bid them go to  
 & fonde<sup>4</sup> þe kyng for to slo. 9692 Verulam, and  
 In pouere<sup>5</sup> wede þey dide þem dight, kill Uther.  
 & þyder þey come byn<sup>6</sup> seuenyght; The assassins  
 Alle manere langage þey coupe come in poor  
 . pat semeþ<sup>7</sup> wel in traytours mouþe. 9696 clothing,  
 þey ȝede aboute þe court to spye and spy about  
 Wher þey myght do þer trayterye. the court.  
 So yuel þey spedde of<sup>8</sup> þer pray, They can't get  
 pat þey ne myght come þer þe kyng lay. 9700 to the king,  
 So longe al wey to þe<sup>9</sup> court þey ferde, but they find  
 pat þey perceyued & often herde that he always  
 pat for certeyn was hit told, drinks cold  
 þe kyng drank nought bot water cold, 9704 water  
 pat was best for his peyne, from a well  
 & euere of o welle certeyne near his hall.  
 pat sprong vp byside his halle, 9708  
 & beste water forby alle;  
 Non oper þyng þought hym so god,  
 . pat best ageyn his yuel stod.  
 When þo þat his deþ so sought,  
 Wiþ þer wyles auailed nought, 9712 This well they  
 þey wente & venymed þat welle poison,  
 . Of þat he drank, als þey herd telle.  
 ¶ When þey had don þat wykked dede, 9715 and then leave  
 Out of toune sone þey ȝede, **De morte** the town,  
 & ay lystned what<sup>10</sup> þey herd seye, **Vtery.** and listen to  
 hear of the  
 king's death.

<sup>1</sup> poyson.

<sup>2</sup> or.

<sup>3</sup> Verolhram.

<sup>4</sup> to fond.

<sup>5</sup> pure.

<sup>6</sup> & com þidir þat day.

<sup>7</sup> comes.

<sup>8</sup> wele þei sped neuer. [leaf 58.]

<sup>9</sup> all gate so long to.

<sup>10</sup> were listenand whan.

340 *Arthurus nobilissimus Rex Christianitatis.*<sup>1</sup>

|                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                 |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| When Uther<br>drinks the<br>poisoned water,<br>he turns black<br>and dies;                                                                                                         | How þe kyng schold <sup>2</sup> sone deye.<br>þe kyng, whan he þe water drank,<br>He wax al blak, & bolned rank,                                                | 9720 |
| and so do<br>many others<br>that drink of it,<br>till the wile is<br>found out.<br>Then the peo-<br>ple fill up the<br>well with earth<br>and stones, and<br>make a hill of<br>it. | & deyde sone yn <sup>3</sup> a þrowe<br>. Byfore his meyne þat hit <sup>4</sup> sowe;<br>& so dede <sup>5</sup> fele oþer mo<br>þat drank þerof, to deþ gon go. | 9724 |
| Uther is                                                                                                                                                                           | & þis lasted a god whyle<br>Til men aperceyued þat gyle.<br>þen zede þe comune alle atones,<br>& stopped þe welle wyþ erþe & stones.                            | 9728 |
| buried at Stone-<br>henge.                                                                                                                                                         | So longe ber þey erþe þer til,<br>þat er was welle, now ys an hil.<br>When sire Vter oure kyng<br>Was ded, & don his endyng,                                    | 9732 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                    | At Stonhenges, as he seyde,<br>Bysyde his broþer men hym leyde.                                                                                                 |      |

¶ *Arthurus, filius Vtery, factus est Rex, & coronatus  
apud Cyrencestriam.*

|                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| A great Parlia-<br>ment                                                                                               | The Erchebishop his conseil held, [leaf, 42 back, col. 1.]<br>Of erles, barons, & knyghtes of scheld;                                                             | 9736 |
| is held at<br>Cirencester,<br>and Arthur is<br>crowned king<br>by common<br>agreement.<br>He is only 15<br>years old. | . Ilkon after oþer sent<br>To come to comune Parlement,<br>& after sire Vteres sone Arthorghe <sup>6</sup><br>To come to Circestre, þe noble <sup>7</sup> burghe; | 9740 |
|                                                                                                                       | & þere bitaught hym þe coroun,<br>. þorow comun graunt of ilka baroun.<br>. fful zonge þen was he, lond to welde; <sup>8</sup><br>ffyftene zer þan was his elde;  | 9744 |

<sup>1</sup> This is the heading to the page  
in the MS.

<sup>2</sup> þe kyng were ded or suld.

<sup>3</sup> son within.

<sup>4</sup> men þat þei.

<sup>5</sup> did.

<sup>6</sup> Arthure.

<sup>7</sup> to Cecestre.

<sup>8</sup> zelde. [leaf 58, col. 2.]

- . At Circestre pat tyme par  
 . Was first tyme pat he croune bar;<sup>1</sup>  
 Some of his þewes y wil descrye;  
 I trowe y schal nought mykel lye:<sup>2</sup>  
 ¶ Craftily dide he mannes dedes,  
 Doughtiest knyght at alle nedes;  
 . pan of myrþe most was<sup>3</sup> in halle,  
 . Glad-chered, louely, & lordlyest of alle;<sup>4</sup>  
 Ageyn þe proude, proud herted<sup>5</sup> was he;  
 Ageyn þe meke, debonere<sup>6</sup> & ese;  
 þe hardiest man hym self to fende,  
 . Bleþely gaf, largely wold spende;  
 pat nedful was, & hym bysought,  
 pat he myghte, he werned hym<sup>7</sup> nought;  
 Mykel loued he ioie & worthly<sup>8</sup> þynge,  
 Doughti dedes made of menyng;  
 Nobliche his court he ledde,  
 Richely alle hyse he fedde;  
 . Ilka day come tydynges newe;  
 . Gestes of ioie, wyþ knyghtes trewe;  
 Ouer alle prynces þe pris he nam  
 Of curteseye & of wysdam;  
 Was no þyng so noble of þewes,<sup>9</sup>  
 As men reden of hym, & schewes.<sup>9</sup>
- 9748 I'll tell you  
 some of his  
 ways, and  
 think I sha'n't  
 lie much.  
 He is the  
 doughtiest man,  
 the merriest,  
 handsomest,  
 and lordliest.  
 Proud to the  
 proud, gentle to  
 the meek;  
 bold, generous,
- 9752 a helper of the  
 needy,
- 9760 a doer of  
 doughty deeds,
- 9764 and above all  
 princes in  
 courtesy and  
 wisdom.
- 9768
- When he had take þe regalte,  
 & mad op by<sup>10</sup> his wille fre,  
 ' pat Saxons schulde neuere haue pes  
 ' In stede of his þer þey ought ches,'—  
 Hys fader & his em þey slow,
- 9772 Arthur swears  
 the Saxons  
 shall never  
 have peace in  
 his land,

<sup>1</sup> croune on hede nouht he ne bare.<sup>2</sup> Noiant ne vous en mentirai,  
Wace, ii. 39. l. 9250.<sup>3</sup> Man of myrth most.<sup>4</sup> & glad to gle his gestis alle.<sup>5</sup> man.<sup>6</sup> suete.<sup>7</sup> werned he.<sup>8</sup> worþi.<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines. Wace has for them,

"Et de valor et de largece."

ii. 40, l. 9264.

<sup>10</sup> an othe he mad.

342 ARTHUR DEFEATS AND BESIEGES COLGRYM.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Arthur summons his folk,</p> <p>passes York and meets the Saxons, under Colgrym, with the Scots and Picts,</p> <p>near the river Douglas.</p> <p>Colgrym is defeated,</p> <p>and flees to York,</p> <p>where Arthur besieges him.</p> | <p>&amp; oper wo þey wroughte y-now,—<br/>         He dide somoune þe folk, &amp; fette;<br/>         Largely he gaf, &amp; wel þem hette,<br/>         &amp; bad hem be redy wyþ hym to wende:<br/>         þey passed 3ork toward<sup>1</sup> þe norþ ende.<br/>         Colgrym of Saxons was<sup>2</sup> cheuetayn<br/>         Syn Octa was at Wyrrolhram slayn;<br/>         ꝥ þe Scottische men wer at his cry, ꝥ Colgrym<br/>         þe Peytes wyþ hem were ay redy princeps<br/>         A-geyn Arthur, &amp;<sup>3</sup> al þer myght, Saxonum.<br/>         &amp; redy wyþ hym for to fyght.<br/>         Bysyde þe water of Douglas,<br/>         pere þey mette att a pas:<br/>         þe partys were bolde, &amp; poughte wel<sup>4</sup> hyde;<br/>         Many on wer slayn on ilka syde.<br/>         Desconfit was þer sire Colgrym,<br/>         Vnneþe he scaped<sup>5</sup> wyþ mykel pyn;<br/>         Toward 3ork Colgrym fley,<br/>         Arthur hym pursued faste &amp; ney;<br/>         3ork he tok for drede &amp; doute,<br/>         &amp; Arþur byseged hym wyþoute.</p> | <p>9776</p> <p>9780</p> <p>9784</p> <p>9788</p> <p>9792</p> <p>[leaf 42, back, col. 2.]</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

ꝥ De Balduk fratre Colgrym.

|                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <p>Colgrim's brother Balduk</p> <p>hears of Arthur's besieging York,</p> | <p>Colgrim had a broþer on þe se,<br/>         Balduk, þat hadde gret meyne;<br/>         He abod þe kyng of Alemyne,<br/>         þat cam wyþ host toward Bretayne.<br/>         Son hym was told of on &amp; oper<br/>         þat Arþur byseged Colgrim<sup>7</sup> his broþer,<br/>         How in bataille [he] was<sup>8</sup> desconfit.<br/>         To londe he drow hym þenne as<sup>9</sup> tyt:</p> | <p>9796</p> <p>9800</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> to.

<sup>2</sup> After þat Octa.

<sup>6</sup> folowed bi bank & beghe.

<sup>3</sup> at.

<sup>7</sup> had biseged.

<sup>4</sup> þat wele wild. [leaf 58, back.]

<sup>8</sup> How he was in bataile.

<sup>5</sup> vnneþis fled he.

<sup>9</sup> drouh full.

- In a wode by þat cost,  
 ffyue mile Balduk busched<sup>1</sup> fro þe host ; 9804 and puts 6,000  
 & many were in his compayny, men in ambush,  
 Six þousand armed redy,  
 þat scholde haue stolen þat ylke nyght  
 Vpon Arþur, al redy dight. 9808 to attack  
 Arthur at  
 night.  
 A man perceyued þer enbuschment,  
 & til Arþur þe bodeword sent. Arthur is told  
 of this wile.  
 When Arþur wyste þat þey wer þer,  
 He calde to consail þe Erl Cador 9812 He bids Earl  
 Cador  
 þat was lord of Cornewaille:  
 Hys lyf to lese ne wold he faille.  
 "Cador," he seyde, "Balduk wyþ gyle  
 "Ys enbusched fro vs four<sup>2</sup> myle. 9816 take a force,  
 "Tak sex hundred of gode knyghtes,  
 "þre þousand oþer,<sup>3</sup> ȝyf þou myghtes ;  
 "Al vnwarned on þem falle,  
 "Lightly may þou wynne þem alle." 9820 and fall on  
 Balduk's men  
 when unarmed.  
 Sire Cador dight þem al redy,  
 & wente wyþoute noyse &<sup>4</sup> cry. Cador does so,  
 Al vnwarned right þore þey ware ;  
 Sore<sup>5</sup> to smyte wold he nought spare ; 9824  
 þe most del was slayn of<sup>6</sup> þat frape,  
 Vnneþes myghter<sup>7</sup> any a-scape ;  
 ȝyf any of hem ascape myght,  
 þe derknesse<sup>8</sup> sauēd hem þat nyght,  
 & wode letted þem to renne ;<sup>9</sup> 9828 A few escape  
 by help of the  
 darkness  
 and a wood.  
 þe redy wey coup þey nought kenne.<sup>9</sup> Balduk flees  
 from bush to  
 bush,  
 ȝ Balduk fledde, & durst nought hyde, 9832  
 ffro busche to busche<sup>10</sup> on ilka syde ;  
 Lorn he hadde<sup>11</sup> his men ilkon,

<sup>1</sup> he busshed.<sup>2</sup> es busshed hiþen bot fyue.<sup>3</sup> de la geude (foot-soldiers),  
Wace, ii. 42, l. 9317.<sup>4</sup> or.<sup>5</sup> wele.<sup>6</sup> More þan half was slayn.<sup>7</sup> myght.<sup>8</sup> mirknes. [leaf 58, back, col. 2.]<sup>9</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>10</sup> bush to bush.<sup>11</sup> lost he had.



- and doesn't  
know how to  
help,  
or to get to,  
his brother  
Colgrym.  
So, as he can  
sing and harp,  
he feigns him-  
self a juggler,  
and comes to  
Arthur's camp  
with head and  
beard all  
shaven.
- He gets to the  
wall of York,  
and Colgrym's  
men let down a  
rope,  
and draw him  
into the city.
- They want to  
escape ;  
but soon hear  
that their ally  
Cheldrik has  
landed with a  
great host.
- Conseil couþe he take at non  
How he moughte his broþer helpe,—  
Of gret los<sup>1</sup> mighte he make his ȝelpe,— 9836  
ffayn he wolde wyþ hym speke,  
Bot of his enemis ne<sup>2</sup> myght him wreke.  
He couþe of notes & of layes,  
& of harpe he knew þasayes ;<sup>3</sup> 9840  
He feyned hym as a iogelour,<sup>4</sup>  
& cam to þe ost of kyng Arþour ;  
His hed, his berd, he dide al<sup>5</sup> schauē ;  
Men wend a<sup>6</sup> were a folted knaue ; 9844  
Als a gleman gan he synge,  
& couþe a party of harpyng.  
Longe he ȝede þus aboute,  
Non ne wende of gyle ne doute ; 9848  
Bot he was boþe wyly & sley ;<sup>7</sup>  
þe wal he neighede ful ney ;<sup>7</sup>  
He spak to þeym, & þey hym knew, [leaf 43.]  
Doun to hym a rop þey þrew, 9852  
& he knytte hym þer-inne al,  
& þey drow hym ouer þe wal.  
Netheles þey were at meschef,  
ffor to ascape þem were ful lef ; 9856  
Bot sone com þem tydynges gode,  
pat sex hundred schipes on flode<sup>8</sup>  
Out of Alemayne were comen,  
& in Scotland had hauen nomen. 9860

<sup>1</sup> of tynsetl̃ (loss).<sup>2</sup> he ne.<sup>3</sup> half. (par mi, Wace, ii. 43, l. 9341.)<sup>4</sup> att þe saies.<sup>5</sup> he.<sup>6</sup> him a Ioguloure. (comme jonglère, MS. du Roi, 27; come Juglères, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; Wace, ii. 43, l. 9336.)<sup>7</sup> slehi . . . neghi.<sup>8</sup> schippes gude. (à cinq cent nes, Wace, ii. 44, l. 9355.)

## § De potestate Cheldryk contra Arthurum.

- Til Arthur cam bode als quyk,<sup>1</sup>  
 pat pider schold come þe child <sup>2</sup> Cheldrik  
 Wyþ mykel people<sup>3</sup> on ilka syde,  
 pat Arthur schold nought dur abyde. 9864  
 þe beste frendes þat were hym coup,  
 Conseilled hym turne toward þe South,  
 & gyue no bataille at þat tyme,  
 Bot let his folk sprede & ryme: 9868  
 " Hys folk ys fresche<sup>4</sup> & ful auster  
 " & twyes so fele<sup>4</sup> as we haue her;  
 " & ȝyf þey folewe vs ouer Humber,  
 " þe sonner schul we þem a-comber; 9872  
 " þen schal vs come folk ay fresche,  
 " & þey schul euere wexe þe lesse."  
 To þat conseil he gaf god tent,  
 & to Londone right fro þenne<sup>5</sup> he went. 9876  
 § þe folk hadde sorewe & wo,  
 þe drede<sup>6</sup> þat al to deþe schold go;  
 pat hadde castele, pider þey drow;  
 pat non ne hadde, þey hem slow; 9880  
 To holes & hilles men crep<sup>7</sup> for nede;  
 pat sykerest was, had ful gret drede.<sup>8</sup>
- Arthur too  
 hears of Cheld-  
 rik's coming,  
 and is advised  
 by his friends,  
 not to give  
 battle at once,  
 but to retreat  
 over the Hum-  
 ber, and get  
 fresh folk there,  
 while Cheld-  
 rik's men  
 grow less.  
 So Arthur  
 retreats to  
 London.  
 His men are  
 much afraid;  
 some are slain,  
 others hide  
 themselves.

§ Hic Arthurus misit pro Ohele, Rege Mynoris  
Brytannie.

- But men gaf Arthur in conseil,  
 To sende for his cosyn Ohel,<sup>9</sup>  
 Kyng of Bretayne, his sister sone:  
 By lettre his nedes gan hym mone, 9884
- Arthur sends  
 to his cousin  
 Ohel, king of  
 Britany,

<sup>1</sup> com tīþinges at̃ quike.<sup>2</sup> com kyng.<sup>3</sup> folk mykilt.<sup>4</sup> fett.<sup>5</sup> fro þēen to london. [leaf 59.]<sup>6</sup> þei dred.<sup>7</sup> crept.<sup>8</sup> had grete nede.<sup>9</sup> Oheile.

|                                               |                                                                                                     |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| and prays for help,                           | . & preyed hym of help a stounde,<br>. Or elles he scholde go to grounde: <sup>1</sup>              | 9888 |
|                                               | " Bot y som help of þe now haue,<br>" Or of som oþer, my lond to saue,                              |      |
| or he will lose his land.                     | " Wypynne a þrowe hit schal be lorn,<br>" þat oure auncestres han had byforn;                       | 9892 |
|                                               | " & schame hit were til oure lynage<br>" So sone to lese myn heritage."                             |      |
| Ohel at once starts with all his forces,      | fful wel he <sup>2</sup> vnderstod his nede.<br>Wyþ al þe poer þat he myght spede                   | 9896 |
|                                               | He made no long soiournynge,<br>Hors & harneys <sup>3</sup> he dide bryng,                          |      |
| 15,000 knights and other men,                 | ffyftene þousand helmes clers, <sup>4</sup><br>Wypoute seriauntz & archers.                         | 9900 |
|                                               | God wynd þey hadde þat gan hem dryue,<br>At Southaumptone þey dide vp ryue.                         |      |
| and lands at Southampton. Arthur is rejoiced, | Mikel ioye made sire Arthurgh, <sup>5</sup><br>& feire receyued hym in toun & burgh.                | 9904 |
|                                               | Wolde þey make no lenger <sup>6</sup> delay,<br>. ffor þey nadde neyþer drede naffray; <sup>7</sup> |      |
| summons his folk, and they come.              | Bot sende messegers [ful] smert, <sup>8</sup><br>& folk com til hym wyþ ful god hert.               | 9908 |

¶ De bello apud Lyncolniam per Arthurum.

|                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| The Britons and Bretons march quietly to Lincoln, which Cheldrik is besieging, | To Lyncolne wente ilka baroun,<br>ffor Cheldryk hadde biseged þe toun.<br>Wypoute noise, sp[e]che, or cry,<br>þey come to Lyncolne al stillely; <sup>9</sup> | 9912 |
|                                                                                | No scape ȝit þe toun had taken,<br>. ffor þey wypynne held þem wel waken.                                                                                    |      |

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out this line.

<sup>2</sup> Ohel.

<sup>3</sup> armes.

<sup>4</sup> Douse mil orent chevaliers.  
Wace, ii. 46, l. 9392.

<sup>5</sup> kyng Arthoru.

<sup>6</sup> long.

<sup>7</sup> þei had no drede of non affray.

<sup>8</sup> MS. smert.

<sup>9</sup> stilli.

- pe host was aryued on a þrowe,  
 Bot horn ne trompe dide non<sup>1</sup> blowe, 9916 arrive there,  
 . Ne oþer dene in<sup>2</sup> none manere,  
 . Til alle were splayed ilka banere,  
 . Alle þey wroughte at on a-vys,  
 & priuely þe felle o<sup>3</sup> þeyr enemys. 9920 and fall privily  
 Neuere ȝyt byfore of no Saxon on the Saxons.  
 Was er<sup>4</sup> so gret destruccion, Never before  
 In no stude þer men wyst whare; was such a  
 . ffor sex þousand wer slayn þare. 9924 6,000 Saxons  
 þey caste<sup>5</sup> þer armes, þer horses let, are slain,  
 Naked þey fledde on þer fet,  
 In to þe water faste þey ran,  
 Of þeym were drenkled many a<sup>6</sup> man; 9928 and others  
 þe Bretons on þem were euere prest, drowned.  
 þey suffred þem nought<sup>7</sup> to haue no rest.  
 A wode byside hight Calydoun,  
 . þat now men calleþ hit ffyskertoun; 9932 Some take  
 By þe water side þe wode was set, refuge in the  
 þer-inne had þey gret recet. wood Calydon,  
 þe Bretons byhalued þe wode aboute, now Fiskerton.  
 . þat no Saxon dirst come wyþoute; 9936 The Britons  
 Arthur dide hit loke so streit; surround the  
 ffor þe<sup>8</sup> nyght he dredde deseit, wood with  
 He dide hewe tres & pykke,  
 & palysed hit aboute ful pykke; 9940 a palisade  
 Tre ouer tre, stok ouer stok,<sup>9</sup>  
 As pikke as men myghte hem schok.<sup>9</sup>  
 His ost was logged to þat oþer<sup>10</sup> party,  
 þat non com in, ne ȝede forby. 9944 so that no one  
 þo in þe wode hadde no mete, can come out.  
 The Saxons in  
 the wood have

<sup>1</sup> þat trompe ne horn non did.  
 [leaf 59, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> dyn on.

<sup>3</sup> priuely felt on.

<sup>4</sup> are.

<sup>5</sup> kest.

<sup>6</sup> was dronkled many.

<sup>7</sup> þei þoled þam.

<sup>8</sup> for on þe.

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
 lines.

<sup>10</sup> on þe toþer.

no food,  
can provide  
none, on ac-  
count of their  
rapid flight.

For three days  
they taste  
nothing,  
and then, see-  
ing death be-  
fore them,

offer to leave  
their arms,  
go quietly to  
their ships,  
give hostages,

and pay Arthur  
tribute.

Arthur agrees  
to this,

takes hostages  
of them,

gives them  
their ships, and  
takes their  
arms.

- . Ne non þem broughte þat mought out gete,  
Ne nought had purueyd þer byforn,  
Neyþer bred, [ne] mele ne corn ; 9948  
. þey were so hasted, faste þey fleȝ,<sup>1</sup>  
. Bot helpless weren fer or neȝ.<sup>1</sup>  
pre dayes hit was þey nought ete,  
. Ne nought drank þat was wete ; 9952  
þey sey wel alle þat þey schuld deȝe,  
þorow force myghte þey make no weȝe.  
þey toke conseil oþer weȝe,  
' To leue armes & harneys, 9956  
' In pes to þer schypes to go  
. ' Wyþouten any more wo,  
' & þey schold leue þem god hostage,<sup>2</sup>  
. ' þer best men of noblest lynage,<sup>3</sup> 9960  
' & gyue hym truwage ilka ȝer  
' In pes, wyþouten wo & wer.'  
And Arþur gaf hem þe grauntȝse  
ffor to wende forþ on þat wyse : 9964  
Ostage he tok atte remenaunt,<sup>4</sup> [leaf 43, back, col. 1.]  
þat þey schold holde þe couenant ;  
He deliuered þem schipes wyþoute mo harmes,  
& lefte þer robes, & harneys of<sup>5</sup> armes ; 9968  
Al senglȝ<sup>6</sup> to schipe þey went,  
No þyng was þem gyue ne lent ;  
. & ȝit he dide gret curtesȝ  
. þat wyþ þe lyf gaf hem merci. 9972

### ¶ De reuerencie Regis Cheldryk apud Totenes.

Cheldrik and  
his men set  
sail,

- . þey set vp sail, þe wynd hem blew,  
So fer þei seyled þat non þem knew.  
When þey were so fer born

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>2</sup> *suld leue gode ostages.*

<sup>3</sup> *þer lynages.*

<sup>4</sup> One stroke too many in the  
second MS. n.

<sup>5</sup> *herneis &.* [leaf 50, back.]

<sup>6</sup> *Sengli.*

|                                                       |        |                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------|
| pat we of peym þe sight had lorn,                     | 9976   |                  |
| 3ut þoughte þey more treson & gyle,                   |        | but afterwards   |
| þey turnde þer flute wyþynne a while                  |        | traitorously     |
| Bytwix Ingeland & Normandye,                          |        | turn back,       |
| þey dighte eft hydeward þer nauie,                    | 9980   |                  |
| & entred in til Dertemuthe; <sup>1</sup>              |        | land at Dart-    |
| . Neyþer fond þey arest ne <sup>2</sup> rescue;       |        | mouth,           |
| At Totenes toke þey hauen & <sup>3</sup> lond;        |        |                  |
| Al zede to deþ þat by-forn hem <sup>4</sup> fond.     | 9984   | kill the in-     |
| In þe contres þey spredde aboute;                     |        | habitants,       |
| To go to deþ <sup>5</sup> al was in doute;            |        |                  |
| Robes þey refte, armure þey tok, <sup>6</sup>         |        | rob, burn, and   |
| Tounes brente, houses doun schok. <sup>6</sup>        | 9988   | destroy the      |
| þe contres trauersed þey ouerþwert,                   |        | towns.           |
| . Ouer al was wo, & no whar <sup>7</sup> quert;       |        |                  |
| Deneschire, <sup>8</sup> & Somersete,                 |        | They waste       |
| & a partie of Dorsete,                                | 9992   | Devon, Som-      |
| Al þey wastes, <sup>9</sup> & robbed þe god;          |        | set and Dor-     |
| Was þer non þat hem wyþstod;                          |        | set, —           |
| þe knyghte þat aughten haue <sup>10</sup> ben at hom, |        | the English      |
| To Scotland wyþ Arþur þey nom.                        | 9996   | knights being    |
| þe Saxons dide so mykel scape,                        |        | with Arthur in   |
| þey robbed in to þe toun of Baþe;                     |        | Scotland,—       |
| Bot þey of Baþe held þem wyþoute,                     |        |                  |
| . & þey bysegged hit alle aboute.                     | 10,000 | and besiege      |
| ¶ Arthur werred vpon þe Scottes,                      |        | Bath.            |
| . ffor þey had don as foule <sup>11</sup> sottes,     |        | When Arthur      |
| Holpen <sup>12</sup> Colgrim & Cheldryk,              |        | hears of this in |
| & ageyns þer lord do so wyk;                          | 10,004 | Scotland,        |

<sup>1</sup> *Dertmuc.*

<sup>2</sup> *was þer non mad þam rescue.*

<sup>3</sup> *Toteneis þei toke.*

<sup>4</sup> *to dede biþor þam.*

<sup>5</sup> *dede.*

<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>7</sup> & *noure.*

<sup>8</sup> *Douerschire.* (Neversaire, MS. du Roi, 27; Venescire, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3-3</sup>. Colb.; *Wace*, ii. 50, l. 9480.)

<sup>9</sup> *wasted.*

<sup>10</sup> *feþ haf.*

<sup>11</sup> *þei did as fole.*

<sup>12</sup> *helped.*

**.War.**

he hangs the  
Saxon host-  
ages,  
and marches  
south,

leaving Ohel  
sick in Aclud  
(Dumbarton),

to raise the  
siege of Bath.

Arthur halts  
his men near a  
wood,  
to arm and  
arrange them.

He himself is  
armed in mail  
foot-, leg-,  
thigh-, and  
knee-pieces,  
breeches,  
hauberk, lower,  
upper, and side  
arm-pieces,  
and an aketon,  
and is girt with  
Caliburn, his  
good sword  
made in Ram-  
esey, 10 feet  
long,

Bot when he wyste þat þe Saxons  
. Brek couenaunt, & dide tresons,  
& hadde byseged þe toun of Baþe,  
. Hei seyde, "þe Saxoyns false me ful rape."  
per ostages ilkon he heng 10,009  
. Heye on galewes, wyþ rop & <sup>1</sup> streng.  
. When per ostages to deþ wer done,  
Toward þe souþ he hyed hym sone 10,012  
Ohel his cosy[n], & his meyne,  
He lefte sek in a cite,  
In Aclud, þer-inne he lay,  
. þat was þe name by þat day. 10,016  
Wyþ al þe folk Ohel myght spare,  
Toward Baþe, Arþur was ȝare.  
Cheldrykes sege he wolde remue,  
His men wyþynne he þoughte rescue. 10,020  
In a playn by a wode syde  
Arthur dide his folk abide,  
To arme þem, & til ordeyne  
Whylk schuld go, & wyþ whilk seyne. 10,024  
Hym self was armed fynly wel [leaf 43, back, col. 2.]  
✓ <sup>2</sup> Wyþ sabatons, & spores, & iǣmbers of stel,  
. Doublet & quysseux, wiþ poleyns ful riche,  
. Voydes, breche of maille, wyþ paunz non liche  
Hauberk wiþ plates y-burnuscht ful wel, 10,029  
. Vaumbras & rerbras, wyþ coters of stel,  
. þer-opon an aketon wyþ stof & al sylk,  
. His cote of armes þer-on; in world was no swylk; <sup>3</sup>  
& þen girt<sup>3</sup> wyþ Caliborne, þat gode brond; 10,033  
. A bettere cam neuere in no kynges hond;  
Ten fote longe was þen þe blade,  
In <sup>4</sup> Ramesey & oþer stedes þe merke ys ymade; <sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> with a. [leaf 59, back, col. 2.]

<sup>2-3</sup> with gode chambres of Iren & stele.

& a Hauberk þat non was sui lk.  
abouen an acton mad of silk.

For swylk, l. 10,032, L. has swyik.

<sup>3</sup> & gird.

<sup>4</sup> Im in the MS.

<sup>5</sup> in Rameseie þe merk is made.  
(En l'ile d'Avalon fu faite, Wace,  
ii. 52, l. 9516.)

- ffro þe hilde vnto þe pomel 10,037  
 . Was twenti vnche large, meten ful wel;<sup>1</sup>  
 þe brede of þe blade was seuen inche & more; seven inches  
 . Wond was hit y þat world smite ful<sup>2</sup> sore.<sup>3</sup> 10,040 broad,  
 An helm he had on his hed, no betere vp on<sup>4</sup> His helm is  
 molde; of jewels  
<sup>5</sup> A riche corounal wip perre, al of brent golde,  
 þe nasel & bendeles of gold ful bryght, and gold; on it  
 per-ouon a dragoun selcouþ of sight;<sup>5</sup> 10,044 a dragon.  
 Aboute his nekke heng his scheld, On his shield  
 . Pryd-wenne<sup>6</sup> hit highte, many hit byheld; Prydwenne  
 per-on was purtrayd, next hym by, is an image  
 þe ymage of oure swete leuedy, 10,048 of the Virgin.  
 In nede to byholde hure face,  
 Ageyn his enemis to haue grace.  
 Hys spere was gret,<sup>7</sup> he cald hit Ron,<sup>8</sup> His spear Ron  
 Wyþ an hed by-fore, ful noble þer-on; 10,052  
 Hit was long, & swyþe gret,<sup>9</sup>  
 þer was no scheld þat he ne þorow schet.<sup>9</sup> will pierce any  
 shield.

### § De recuperacione belly & montis per Arthurum.

When Arthur<sup>10</sup> was armed wel, Arthur bids his  
 & his folk dight ilka del, 10,056 folk  
 Al softly he bad þem go,

<sup>1</sup> Tuelue Inche grete þat tyme as  
 fett.

<sup>2</sup> I trow þat wild smyte.

<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. adds two lines  
 not in Wace, ii. 52,—

Arthur luffed it wele Inouh.

Mishapped him neuer whan he it  
 drouh.

<sup>4</sup> om in the MS. P. has, His helme  
 was gode non better on.

<sup>5-6</sup> þe nasel befor was att of golde.  
 þe bendeles of gold burnyst  
 bryght.

a dragon aboun selcouth in  
 sight.

<sup>6</sup> pridwen.

<sup>7</sup> his lance grete. [leaf 60.]

<sup>8</sup> Roit, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé;  
 Roil, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3-4</sup>. Colb.;  
 Rederon, MS. de Ste.-Genevieve, Y,  
 f. 10; Wace, ii. 54, note c.; Ron,  
 Galf. Mon. vii. 2.

<sup>9</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>10</sup> þe kyng.



352 ARTHUR URGES HIS MEN TO ATTACK CHELDRIK.

|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| advance in an<br>unbroken line.                       | pat non schulde byfore oþer þro<br>Til þey come vnto þe bataille.                                                                                                                                                                                        |                      |
| The Saxons<br>flee to a hill,                         | Bot þe Saxons durst nought assaille,<br>Bot fledde vntil an hey hyl,<br>pat non myghte wel wynne þem til.                                                                                                                                                | 10,060               |
| and hold it like<br>a castle.                         | þey helde þat hil als castel strong,<br>& defended þem ferly <sup>1</sup> long,<br>As þey were closed wyþ <sup>2</sup> a wal;<br>Bot atte þe laste hit stod no stal.                                                                                     | 10,064               |
| Arthur dislikes<br>this delay,                        | . Arthur saw þe hil was taken,<br>& longe þere þey held hem <sup>3</sup> waken;<br>Tene hym þoughte þey fro hym brak,<br>& til his men þus he spak:                                                                                                      | 10,068               |
| and says,<br>"This hill is<br>high;                   | . ¶ "Lordynges," he seide, "þis hil ys hey,<br>" & we may nought wel com þem ney<br>" Bot hit were þorow long destresse.                                                                                                                                 | 10,072               |
| but we must<br>attack it at<br>once.                  | . " þe lengþe fayn woldy schorte <sup>4</sup> lesse;<br>" Ageyn to Scotland woldy <sup>5</sup> be,<br>" Ohel my cosyn, fayn woldy <sup>5</sup> se."<br>He bad <sup>6</sup> þem wyþ wordes smert<br>. pat [þey] schold alle <sup>7</sup> be gode of hert: | 10,076               |
| There are the<br>foes who have<br>wasted our<br>land, | " Lo! here byforn vs þan ar þo<br>" pat han vs wrought ful muche wo!<br>" pyse are þat han wasted our lond, <sup>8</sup><br>" pat riche was, & farre vs fond! <sup>8</sup>                                                                               | 10,080               |
| slain our an-<br>cestors,                             | " þise are þat slowe our auncessours, <sup>8</sup><br>" Als wel myne als zoures! <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                            | 10,084               |
| assailed us!                                          | " þis ar þo þat vs assailed, <sup>8</sup><br>" & often in werre vs trauailed! <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                               |                      |
| Take venge-<br>ance on them!                          | " Venge vs now we se hem here!<br>" Let hem abyþ <sup>9</sup> our godes dere!                                                                                                                                                                            | [leaf 44.]<br>10,088 |

<sup>1</sup> full.

<sup>2</sup> with in.

<sup>3</sup> & long mot þei hald þam.

<sup>4</sup> wald .I. schorten.

<sup>5</sup> wald .I.

<sup>6</sup> monessed.

<sup>7</sup> & bad þam.

<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>9</sup> late þam bie.

" Lat peym bye þey toke byforn,<sup>1</sup>  
 " & let hem now lese, for we haue lorn!<sup>1</sup>  
 " & y schal zelde, ȝyf þat y may,  
 " þe fals op<sup>2</sup> þey swore þe toþer day; 10,092  
 " þer turnyng y wole rescowe,<sup>3</sup>  
 " þat þey come til Dertemuwe.<sup>3</sup>  
 " ȝyf y may ought wyþ hem mele,  
 " Hand of hand strokes schul<sup>4</sup> dele, 10,096  
 " þey schul neuere eft haue power  
 " In bataille to neighe me ner!"

I will pay them  
 for their false  
 oath, and turn-  
 ing back to  
 Dartmouth,  
  
 if I can but get  
 at them."

¶ De occisione Saxonum apud Bathoniam.

Wyþ þat word he smot his stede,  
 Byforn þem alle vpward he zede; 10,100  
 Hys launce ful wel he bar þe point,  
 Hys scheld byfore ful wel was ioynt;  
 þe firste Saxon þat wyþ hym met,  
 His dayes were no lenger set. 10,104  
 þen bygan Arþur to crye,  
 " A-geyn þes Payens, helpe,<sup>5</sup> Marie!"  
 & bar on hem þe breste byfore.  
 . After hym þe Bretons gon bore: 10,108  
 " þe firste strok þann ys myn!"  
 On he mette, & m[a]de hys fyn;  
 þen myghte men se þe Bretons strike,  
 & felle þe Saxons doughtilyke.<sup>6</sup> 10,112  
 . Arthur þen egred þem<sup>7</sup> so wyþ sawe,  
 . ffo[r] schame ne myghte þey hem<sup>8</sup> wyþdrawe;

Arthur spurs  
 up the hill,  
  
 kills the first  
 Saxon he  
 meets,  
  
 calls on Mary  
 to help,  
  
 and so cheers  
 on his men

<sup>1</sup> For these lines the Petyt MS. has—

*þei haf don vs many trauaile  
 quyte þam þat þei scored on taile.*

<sup>2</sup> þat othe.

<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>4</sup> to hand strokes.

<sup>5</sup> ? MS. *helper*. P. *help me*. [leaf 60, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *felled þe sessions doughtilyke*: and P. adds—

*Ilkon wald haf bien þe breste  
 & at his power Arthure neste.*

<sup>7</sup> & he þam egred.

<sup>8</sup> non mot þam.

|                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| that they<br>charge through<br>and rout the<br>Saxons,<br>while Arthur,<br>with Caliburn,              | pey byhalued þem aboute,<br>& ryden þorow þe Saxons route.                                                                                                                                                                             | 10,116 |
|                                                                                                        | On ilka syde doun þey fley,<br>& euere Arthur vpward stey<br>Wyþ Caliborn drawen in his hond;<br>Was non his dynt þat myghte wyþstond,<br>pat hym ne byhoued nedly deye;                                                               | 10,121 |
| kills 400<br>Saxons more<br>than all the<br>rest of his<br>army do.                                    | per-fore þey fledde, & gaf hym weye;<br>. So fele he slow, & broughte til schame,<br>ffor þus þey counted þat coupe þem ame,<br>ffour <sup>1</sup> hundred he slow, mo allone<br>þan his host dide ilkone.                             | 10,124 |
| Balduk and<br>Colgrim are<br>slain; and<br>Cheldrik, with<br>some Saxons,<br>flees towards<br>Totness. | Ded was Balduk, slayn was Colgrym,<br>& Cheldrik fledde wyþ mykel pyn;<br>Toward þer schipes to Toteneys<br>þey fledde, & lefte al <sup>2</sup> oþer harneys;<br>. Lyghtly to go, wightly to fle,<br>þey leften al, & fledde to þe se. | 10,128 |
| Arthur tells<br>Cador to pursue<br>Cheldrik                                                            | Arthur perceyued wel ynow<br>pat to þer schipes þey fledde & drow;<br>þen bad he sire Cador of Cornewaille<br>Take ten þousand of gode apparaille; <sup>3</sup><br>& after hem swyþe hey spedde,<br>& ouertoke þo þat fledde;          | 10,136 |
| while he goes<br>to Scotland<br>to rescue Ohel<br>from the Scots.                                      | ffor Arthur to Scotland went:<br>Ohel a messeger hym sent,<br>& seyde 'þe Scottes byseged þe castel,<br>' & hadde ner taken sire Ohel.'<br>Cheldrik fledde til his nauye;                                                              | 10,140 |
| Cador goes by<br>a byway to<br>Totness,                                                                | But Cador was queynte & wyly;<br>By a bywey <sup>4</sup> to Totenes lay,<br>Cador & hyse toke þat way,<br>And to þe hauen wel rapur <sup>5</sup> cam                                                                                   | 10,144 |

[leaf 44, col. 2.]

<sup>1</sup> fyue.<sup>2</sup> þer.<sup>3</sup> aparaille.<sup>4</sup> bigate. [leaf 60, back.]<sup>5</sup> ore.

- Er any Saxon to schipe nam. 10,148 gets there  
Sire Cador, þe mene folk he tok, before the  
He gaf þem þe schipes for to loke, Saxons,  
& bad þem ryde<sup>1</sup> fer fro þe land, and sends their  
pat Saxons ne raughte no bot wyþ<sup>2</sup> hand. 10,152 ships out to  
Syþen went he wyþ alle his ost, sea.  
& y þe contres kepte þe cost, He then  
& kepte þem euere as þey come; watches for the  
By ten, by twelue,<sup>3</sup> vm-while þey nome; 10,156 Saxons as they  
Armure & robes hadde þey cast, come in  
pat þey were lyght to fle right fast; by tens and  
þey hadde but swerdes on þer hypes, 10,160 twelves,  
Sone to come vnto þer schipes. armed only  
Als þey passed þe water of Teyne, with their  
Were þey war of Cadores seyne.<sup>4</sup> swords.  
When þey hit sey, þey held hem schent, 10,164  
Hider & þyder a-wey þey glent. Cheldrik is  
As þey tok þe hil of Teynewyk,<sup>5</sup> slain,  
þer was he slayn, þe kyng Cheldryk; and all the  
þe opere þat wende wel haue scaped, other Saxons  
To deþe were þey al to-fraped; 10,168 are put to  
þo þat ascaped to þe hauen vnslayn,<sup>6</sup> death,  
When þey com þere, þey were vnfayn,<sup>6</sup>  
ffor þey kept [hem] atte brynke, 10,172 drowned,  
In to þe water þey dide hem synke.  
On alle halue wax þem wo;  
To wodes & hilles fledde somme of þo,  
þeym to hyde, þat non ne wyst,  
Tyl þey deyde for hunger & þirst.<sup>7</sup> 10,176 or starved.
- When Cador had mad þe contre clene, Cador hies  
pat no Saxon were more sene,

<sup>1</sup> *houe.*<sup>2</sup> *in.*<sup>3</sup> *tenwik.*<sup>4</sup> *Dui et dui, trois et trois, Wace,*  
ii. 58, l. 9616.<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. transposes these  
lines.<sup>4</sup> *Cador syne.*<sup>7</sup> *thrist.*

356 THE SCOTS FLEE TO THE ISLES OF LOCH LUMINE.

|                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                              |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| to Scotland,<br>and finds<br>Arthur and<br>Ohel in Aklud,                              | He hyed hym faste toward Scotland.<br>In Aklud, Arthur he fond,<br>& Ohel wyþ hym, his cosyn,<br>Of his seknesse warisched fyn.                                                              | 10,180 |
| the Scots                                                                              | þe Scottes <sup>1</sup> þer sege remued<br>When Arthur cam, Ohel rescued ;                                                                                                                   | 10,184 |
| having fled to<br>Moray,                                                               | Al þe contre gan þey weyue,<br>& fledde a-wey vn to Murreyue, <sup>2</sup><br>þer þey hoped best to be,                                                                                      | 10,188 |
| to a strong<br>city, which<br>they hope to<br>hold against<br>Arthur ;                 | & closed þem in a strong cite ;<br>þere þey hoped Arthur to byde, <sup>3</sup><br>A-geyns þem what wolde bytyde. <sup>3</sup><br>Arthur wyste hit certeynly                                  | 10,192 |
| but on his ad-<br>vancing, they<br>flee to the<br>wondrous<br>Loch Lumine<br>(Lomond), | þey gadered ageyns hym party ;<br>He hyed hym þide[r]ward ful ʒerne,<br>& þey herd hit seye, & fledde ʒit ferne<br>Right vnto þe Louh Lumyne : <sup>4</sup><br>A selcouþ þyng hit ys to see. | 10,196 |

¶ De admiracione Lacus Lumine in Scotia.

|                             |                                                                                                                                                   |        |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| wherein are 60<br>isles,    | <sup>5</sup> ¶ In þat louh ar sexti iles—<br>In þo þe dwelte longe <sup>6</sup> whyles—<br>& ilk an yle hap a rocher <sup>7</sup>                 | 10,200 |
| and in each isle<br>a rock, | & a water dep & cler.<br>In þo roches foules reste,<br>& ernes brede, & make þer neste ;<br>ʒyf any sorewe or any wo,<br>Or any werre or any pro, | 10,204 |

<sup>1</sup> *sessions*.

<sup>2</sup> Murif, *Wace*, ii. 59, l. 9652.

<sup>3</sup> P. leaves out these two lines.

[leaf 60, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> En l'estang de Lymonoi, *Wace*, ii. 60, l. 9660.

<sup>5</sup> The next fourteen lines are not represented in the MS. du Roi, 27,

but are in four of De Lincy's other MSS., du Roi, 73, Cangé; 7515<sup>2-3</sup>. Colb.; de l'Ars. 17, B.-L.; de Ste.-Genev. Y. f. 10. *Wace*, ii. 61, note a.

<sup>6</sup> in þo þei duelled long.

<sup>7</sup> *rochere*.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Schal in þat lond tyde or gynne,<br>Alle þe ernes þat brede þer-inne<br>Schul crie & zelle, & make rere, [leaf 44, back, col. 1.]<br>þat al þe contre aboute schal here,<br>& feighte to-gydere four daies or fyue,<br>. & al to-pulle þe feperes, <sup>1</sup> & ryue.<br>pys lough, Luminie men calle,<br>Sexti watres þer-inne falle,<br>& alle dwelle þer-inne ilkon ;<br>Non rennes out to þe se but on.<br>Wyþynne þis lough had þey dwellynge, <sup>2</sup><br>þe Scottes, for Arthur oure kynge. <sup>3</sup><br>Arthur byseged alle þe loughes,<br>& gadered botes, chalans, <sup>3</sup> & trowes,<br>. þat non myghte brynge þem ne gyue<br>. Mete ne drynke, wyþal to lyue.<br>So wyþynne a lytel while<br>So mykel hunger was yn þe ile,<br>Men sey <sup>4</sup> by hundredes & þousandes<br>Ly <sup>5</sup> ded for hunger on þe sandes ;<br>. Men seye þem go & falle right doun <sup>2</sup><br>. ffor hunger, þat was lord of toun. <sup>2</sup> | 10,208                       | these eagles<br>cry and yell,<br><br>and fight for<br>four or five<br>days.<br><br>Sixty streams<br>also fall into<br>Loch Lumine.<br><br>Here Arthur<br>besieges the<br>Scots,<br>collecting all<br>the boats and<br>barges so that<br>no food may<br>get to the isles.<br><br>The Scots soon<br>die by hundreds<br>and thousands. |
| G wylomar, <sup>6</sup> þe Irische kynge,<br>. Com ouer þe se wyþ many lordyng<br>To helpe þe Saxons <sup>7</sup> in þer nede.<br>. Lytel, y wene, myghte þey <sup>8</sup> spede !<br>He aryued <sup>9</sup> vp by þat cost<br>þer Arthur lay, & al his host.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 10,228<br><br><br><br>10,232 | The Irish king<br><br><br>lands with a<br>force to help<br>the Saxons ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

<sup>1</sup> þer fedres.

<sup>2</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>3</sup> The heavily-laden boats that navigate the Seine from Paris to Havre, are still called *chalans*. De Lincy, *Wace*, ii. 61, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> *sauk þam*.

<sup>5</sup> *lig*.

<sup>6</sup> *Diramaurus*, *Wace*, (ii. 61, l. 9690), MS. du Roi, 27; *Gillamurus*, MS. du Roi, 78, *Cangé*; *Ghillomarus*, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>2-3</sup>. Colb.

<sup>7</sup> *scottis*.

<sup>8</sup> *he mot*.

<sup>9</sup> *ryued*.

but Arthur  
soon drives  
them back to  
Ireland.

Arthur & hyse a-geyn hym nomen,  
Bot þe Irische wer sone ouer-comen ;  
He dide þe Irische wyþ force to fle  
A-geyn til Irland, ouer þe se. 10,236

¶ De vastacione Scocie, & lamentacione Scotorum.

Arthur keeps  
up his siege of  
the Isles ;  
but bishops

But 3yt Arthur nought ne left  
þat he þe Scottes bysegged eft.  
þen come þe byschopes of þe land,  
& religious relikes bryngand, 10,240

and ladies bare-  
foot and bare-  
headed,

And preyed Arthur of mercy ;  
& als wyþ hem com many ledy,  
Alle barfot, & bare þe<sup>1</sup> heued,  
þer her to-rent,<sup>2</sup> or litel leued ; 10,244

with young  
children, come  
weeping,  
fall at Arthur's  
feet, and pray  
him to have  
mercy :

3onge childre wyþ hem brought,  
& reuly gretying,<sup>3</sup> mercy bysought,  
Mekely fulle down til his fet.  
Byschops, abbotes, & ladis<sup>4</sup> alle gret, 10,248  
& asked hym 'mercy & pes,  
' To saue þo childre helples :

" Give us those  
who live ! Let  
not all die !  
Let us not buy  
so dear the  
Saxons' felony !  
Not by our will  
did they harm  
you.

" þyse ladies þat þis sorewe haue,  
" 3eld þem þer lordes, þer lyues<sup>5</sup> to saue ! 10,252  
" 3eld vs þo þat are on lyue !<sup>6</sup>

" Let us not buy  
so dear the  
Saxons' felony !  
Not by our will  
did they harm  
you.

" Let hem nought alle to deþe dryue !<sup>6</sup>  
" Let vs nought alle so dere a-bye<sup>7</sup>  
" þe false Saxons felonye ! 10,256

They harmed  
us ;

" ffor hit was neuere by our wille  
" þat þey com here to do 3ow ylle !  
" Of þer comyng had we no frame,  
" þer dwellyng dide vs mykel schame ; 10,260

<sup>1</sup> & all bare. [leaf 61.]

<sup>2</sup> vestéures descirées, *Wace*, ii. 62,  
l. 9706, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.

<sup>3</sup> gretand.

<sup>4</sup> abot &.

<sup>5</sup> life.

<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>7</sup> bie.

- " Al day were we wyþ hem noyed,  
 " Oure lyf[e]lode<sup>1</sup> þey ete & stroyed, eat our living,  
 " Catel þey bar a-wey, & spended; and spent our  
 " Had we non heued<sup>2</sup> þat vs defended! 10,264 goods,  
 " þat we þem halp,<sup>3</sup> ys no trespas; [lf. 44, bk., col. 2.]  
 " Maugre oures, forsoþe hit was; in spite of us,  
 " þeir force was more þan oures, being stronger  
 " We nyste of non to haue socoures. 10,268 than we.  
 " ȝe wot þey are of þe lawe Payen, They are  
 " & we, as ȝe, ar men Crysten; Pagans, we  
 " per-fore þey dide vs þe more wo. Christians:  
 " At ilka tyme, boþe to & fro, 10,272 therefore they  
 " Wo dude þey vs! & worse haue [we]<sup>4</sup> now! did us woe.  
 " & þat ys non honour til ȝow, But we suffer  
 " Vs to slo þat crye mercy, worse now  
 " & deye for hunger so deolfoly. 10,276 from you,  
 " pou hast vs wonnen; lef vs þe lyf, and die for  
 " Lord to lady, husebande to wyf! hunger.  
 " & gyue vs lond on for to lyue! Leave us life!  
 " Trewe hostage we wol þe gyue. 10,280 Give us land to  
 " þorow righte reson þou scholde vs spare, live on!  
 " ffor we ar Cristen as ȝe are; We are  
 " & ȝyf we deye in swylk destresse, Christians, so  
 " Cristendam ys mykel þe lesse; 10,284 are you.  
 " þan ys þy peryl mykel þe<sup>5</sup> more, Destroy not  
 " þat þou wrapest<sup>6</sup> Crist so sore." Christendom!  
 " Arthur wiste þey seide reson, Christ!  
 " & wel excused hem of þe Saxon. Arthur 10,288  
 " ffor byschope & clerkes þat hym bysought,  
 " & þe relikes þat þey brought,  
 " & of þe lauedies<sup>7</sup> hym rewed sore, pities the ladies  
 " & ȝonge childre þat þer wore, 10,292 and young  
 " children,

<sup>1</sup> lifelade.

<sup>2</sup> we had no hede.

<sup>3</sup> servis, Wace, ii. 63, l. 9736.

<sup>4</sup> wars haf we.

<sup>5</sup> þe perill mykett. [leaf 61, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> wrethis.

<sup>7</sup> ladies.



and grants  
them all they  
ask.

Ohel tells  
Arthur

that he wonders  
at the Lake,  
its isles,

and eagles,  
with their cry.

Ohel thinks it  
a wonder.

But Arthur  
tells him of  
a greater :

a 20-foot  
square Loch  
with four  
corners,

in each of  
which is a  
different kind  
of fish ;

and none of  
the four kinds  
ever mix with  
another,

though there's  
no partition  
between them.

What the  
reason of it is,  
Arthur doesn't  
know.

He graunted þem alle þat þey ches,  
Lyf & lymes, & his pes.

¶ Ohel byheld þe lough, þat lake, *De primo*  
& til Arthur þer-of he spak : *Lacu in Scocia.*

" Arthur," he seyde, " y haue merueille 10,296

" Of þis lough & of þis entaille :

" So many yles, y telde sexty,

" & ilkon haþ a roche hey ; 10,300

" & so manye ernes nestes,

" & þer cri þat ilkon kestes :

" A wonder me þynkeþ hit<sup>1</sup> may be, 10,304

" Of ilka þyng þat y se ! " *De secundo*

¶ þen seyde Arthur vnto Ohel, *Lacu ibidem.*

" Of þis ne merueilleþ me no del ;<sup>2</sup>

" But of an oþer ys selcouþ more,

" & so schaltow seye when þou comes þore :

" þat lough ys here yn þys contre, 10,309

" Cornerd as a cheker quarre ;

" Twenty fot of lengþe, as þe<sup>3</sup> brede, es,

" & fyue fot hit haþ of depnes ; 10,312

" In þe water, atte<sup>4</sup> corners,

" Are fisches inne fourre maners :

" þo þat are y þat o corner,

" Neuer more come þat oþer ner ; 10,316

" Ne þe fisches alle fourre,

" Ne wyþ oþer menge ne voure ;<sup>5</sup>

" Ne no partyng ys þem bytwene

" Of erþe ne ston, but water clene, 10,320

" Ne oþer þyng þat may bywyte,<sup>6</sup>

" þat myghte þer mengyng wyþ-sitte ;

" I ne wot zyf hit be þorow kynde,

" Or craft of clergie, as men may<sup>7</sup> fynde. 10,324

<sup>1</sup> þink how it.

<sup>2</sup> me mervailles neuer a dele.

<sup>3</sup> P. has þe, no as. " Vint piés de  
lonc, et vint de lé," *Wace*, ii. 65,  
l. 9780.

<sup>4</sup> at fourre.

<sup>5</sup> meng noure.

<sup>6</sup> man may wite. [leaf 61, back.]

<sup>7</sup> of clerk þat he mot.

§ De terciu lacu versus Walliam iuxta<sup>1</sup> Seuerne.

|                                                    |                        |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| § " Of anoþer ys more selcoup,                     | [leaf 45.] But a third |
| " & þat lough ys in þat soup,                      | Lake in Wales,         |
| " Toward Walys, bysyde Seuerne.                    | near Severn, is        |
| " When þe flod flowes þider <sup>2</sup> in ȝerne, | more wondrous          |
| " þe water wexes noþyng on hey,                    | still.                 |
| " þan þe flod come neuere þer ney; <sup>3</sup>    | 10,328 While the flood |
| " Als longe as flod þer-ynne flowes, <sup>4</sup>  | flows into it, it      |
| " þe water of þe lough no þyng ne growes,          | never rises at         |
| " In no stede, by bank ne bre,                     | all;                   |
| " þat any man may perceiue or se.                  |                        |
| " But when þe flod drawes ageyn,                   |                        |
| " & ys atte þe ebbe <sup>5</sup> certeyn,          | 10,336 but when the    |
| " þenne bygynnes þe lough to flowe,                | flood has              |
| " & ouer þe bankes to renne & rowe;                | ebbed,                 |
| " Wyþ rysyng <sup>6</sup> wawes, & wyþ grete,      | then the lake          |
| " ffer aboute hym wil he wete.                     | begins to rise,        |
| " ȝyf hit beo a coup man of þe contre              | and overflows          |
| " þat goþ þider þe water to se, <sup>7</sup>       | with great             |
| " & feleþ <sup>8</sup> þe wawes þat so wetes,      | waves.                 |
| " Hit rennes on hym, & doun hym betes.             | 10,340 If a native of  |
| " Of-ten of þo þat so haue gon,                    | the country            |
| " Han be drenkled manion.                          | goes to see it,        |
| " ȝyf any connyng <sup>9</sup> man of þo           | (with his face         |
| " Standeþ stille, or sidlyng can <sup>10</sup> go, | towards it.)           |
| " He may stande on þe brynkes                      | it runs on him,        |
| " Al so lange as hym god þynkes :                  | 10,345 beats him       |
|                                                    | down, and              |
|                                                    | drowns him.            |
|                                                    | But if an artful       |
|                                                    | man goes side-         |
|                                                    | ways to it,            |

<sup>1</sup> MS. iux with a contraction, above. P. has *walliam mirabili*.

<sup>2</sup> *fleues þer*.

<sup>3</sup> *þan þe flode . . . nehie*.

<sup>4</sup> *fleues . . . grewes*.

<sup>5</sup> *& es þe ebbe in*.

<sup>6</sup> *risand*.

<sup>7</sup> Qui vëir l'aut, le vis torné, *Wace*, ii. 66, l. 9809; Si gens totius

patriæ illius, facie versa, prope astaret, *Galf. Mon.* ix. 7.

<sup>8</sup> *fles*.

<sup>9</sup> *conand*.

<sup>10</sup> or *sidelynges*. Se home i vient, le dos avant, Les talons tornés, reculant, &c., *Wace*, ii. 66, l. 9816-7; Tergo autem verso, non est irro-  
ratio timenda, *Galf. Mon.* ix. 7.

|                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| it'll never wet<br>him at all."                                                                                                                           | " Schal he neuere take <sup>1</sup> scathe,<br>" Ne haue wetyng <sup>2</sup> ne waþe."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 10,352                     |
| Ohel thinks<br>this a real<br>wonder.                                                                                                                     | Ohel seyde, "yt is wonder <sup>3</sup> þyng,<br>" & selcouþ ho made þe gynnyng <sup>4</sup> !"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                            |
| Arthur has the<br>"retire"<br>sounded,                                                                                                                    | þan dide Arthur bemes blowe,<br>Hornes, belles, þat men myght knowe<br>pat he wolde þennes <sup>5</sup> turne,<br>. & remue his host fro þat burne.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 10,356                     |
| and bids his<br>barons                                                                                                                                    | His barons þat come fro ferne,<br>He bad hem renne hom ryght <sup>6</sup> ȝerne,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 10,360                     |
| go home to<br>their wives.                                                                                                                                | To wyte how hit for <sup>7</sup> at home,<br>. & glade þer wyues whan þey come.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                            |
| His host goes<br>homeward<br>merrily, prais-<br>ing Arthur<br>to the skies.                                                                               | Wyþ mykel ioie & mykel play<br>Wente þe ost homward þer way;<br>. Of Arthur made þey mykel pris,<br>. How he was hardy, large, & wys,<br>& seyde "neuere or in Bretaigne<br>" Was so noble a cheuentayne!"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 10,364<br>10,368           |
| Arthur spends<br>his Christmas<br>at York,<br>has a feast on<br>on Christmas-<br>day;<br>and as the<br>houses and<br>churches had<br>been beaten<br>down, | Vntil ȝork Arthur gan turne;<br>pere al þe ȝol he made <sup>8</sup> soiourne.<br>¶ On þe ȝol day he made his feste<br>. Wyþ þe <sup>9</sup> barons of his geste.<br>fful mykel enpeired was þe toun,<br>Kyrkes, houses, were beten doun;<br>. þer burgeyses were bygged riche,<br>. Wast & Eyuere <sup>10</sup> was hit liche.—<br>. þe bischop was slayn wyþ þe Saxons,<br>. & opere manye religions;—<br>. Aþ he dide hit bigge ageyn<br>. As hit was byfore <sup>11</sup> certeyn. | 10,372<br>10,376<br>10,380 |
| he has them<br>rebuilt.                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                            |

<sup>1</sup> latche.<sup>2</sup> haf wettenes.<sup>3</sup> selcouth.<sup>4</sup> MS. gymnyng. P., ferly who  
mad þe gynnyng.<sup>5</sup> wild þien.<sup>6</sup> þam wend home.<sup>7</sup> fore.<sup>8</sup> ȝole mad þer. [leaf 61, col. 2.]<sup>9</sup> many.<sup>10</sup> wasten & way was all o liche.<sup>11</sup> in þe right.

|                                                  |                    |                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hym serued a prest, a ful god man, <sup>1</sup>  |                    | Arthur makes                                               |
| Hys name was cald sire Pyran; <sup>2</sup>       | [leaf 46, col. 2.] | Pyran arch-<br>bishop of York,                             |
| He gaf hym þe erchebishes se,                    |                    |                                                            |
| & bad hym 'kepe þat dignite,                     | 10,384             |                                                            |
| ' & holy kirke a-geyn restore,                   |                    |                                                            |
| ' þat þe Saxons had wasted byfore.'              |                    |                                                            |
| . Pes he dide oueral <sup>3</sup> crye,          |                    | proclaims                                                  |
| . þat non dide oþer vylene,                      | 10,388             | peace over all<br>the land,                                |
| But in lawe, right, & skyle; <sup>4</sup>        |                    |                                                            |
| Husebande men, bad hem tyle; <sup>4</sup>        |                    | bids husband-<br>men till,                                 |
| ffrankeleyns þat hadde desheritison,             |                    | reinstates                                                 |
| He dide þem seke <sup>5</sup> in ilka toun,      | 10,392             | franklins in<br>their holdings,                            |
| & gaf hem a-geyn þer heritage,                   |                    |                                                            |
| Restored þem þer oþer damage.                    |                    |                                                            |
| pre þer were, doughti & gode,                    |                    | and divides all                                            |
| Noble men, of kynges blode,                      | 10,396             | the north coun-<br>try between                             |
| Loth, Aguisel, & Vryen,                          |                    | Loth, Anguisel,<br>and Urien.                              |
| þe northe langed to þyse pre men ;               |                    |                                                            |
| þyse pre departed þe northe lond                 |                    |                                                            |
| porow Arthures gift, y vnderstond. <sup>6</sup>  | 10,400             |                                                            |
| To Lothe he gaf al Lounes, <sup>7</sup>          |                    | Loth gets                                                  |
| Al þe contre, right as hit es.                   |                    | Lounes ;                                                   |
| Scotlond he gaf sire Anguisel;                   |                    | Anguisel,                                                  |
| Vryen had Murreue vntil <sup>8</sup> his del ;   | 10,404             | Scotland ;<br>Urien, Murreve.                              |
| . & alle to holde of hym þer þynge,              |                    | All hold their                                             |
| . ffor Arthur was þer chef[e] <sup>9</sup> kyng. |                    | lands of<br>Arthur.                                        |
| Sire Lothe þat weddede Anne,                     |                    | Loth, who                                                  |
| Wawayn þer sone at Rome was þanne                | 10,408             | wedded                                                     |
| . To norise, als þe romaunce seys,               |                    | Arthur's sister                                            |
| . & he highte Wawayn þe curteys.                 |                    | Anne, has his<br>son, Wawayn<br>the Courteous,<br>at Rome. |

<sup>1</sup> a gode man.

<sup>2</sup> Piran. (Pyram, Wace, ii. 68, l. 9842.)

<sup>3</sup> alle.

<sup>4</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> did þam.

<sup>6</sup> þorgh Arture gift as .I. fond.

<sup>7</sup> tot Loënois, Wace, ii. 69, l. 9874.

Lot . . . ad consulatum Londone-  
siæ, ceterarumque comprovinciarum,  
quæ ad eum pertinebant, reduxit,  
Galf. Mon. lib. ix. § 9.

<sup>8</sup> Morey tith. (Morayshire ?)

<sup>9</sup> chefe.

¶ *Hic desponsauit Guenneueram.*Arthur then  
weds

Genoyre, a

cousin of Earl  
Cador's, born  
of the Roman  
line,fair, courteous,  
generous,  
lovely of  
speech, and  
sweet to look  
on.But, alas!  
they could get  
no heir.

When Arthur hadde his lond iustised,  
 & don als he hadde auised, 10,412  
 Genoyre<sup>1</sup> he wedded, & mad hure quen:  
 Norysched wyþ Cador had scheo ben;  
 Sche was sire Cadores cosyn,  
 & born was of þe Romayns lyn, 10,416  
 ffor hure moder was of Romayns<sup>2</sup> kynde.  
 So fair as scheo myght no man fynde;  
 Y-now scheo coupe of *curtesy*,  
 Large gyuere, & spak<sup>3</sup> louely; 10,420  
 Of body was scheo swyþe auenaunt,  
 ffair contenaunced,<sup>4</sup> wyþ swete semblaunt.  
 Alas! þey myghte non heyr haue,  
 Neyþer maide<sup>5</sup> child, ne knaue. 10,424

¶ *Deuicit Hyberniam.*Next summer  
Arthur pre-  
pares a fleetto conquer  
Ireland.He summons  
his folk;

When wynter cold was al away,  
 & hete comen of someresday,  
 & fair weder on se to fare,<sup>6</sup> 10,428  
 A flute on flode Arthur dide ȝare;<sup>6</sup>  
 He seide he wolde til Irland,  
 & wyne hit al to Bretons hand.  
 Longe tyme wolde he nought waste,  
 He dide somoun his folk on haste, 10,432  
 Erles, barouns, knyghtes, squiers,  
 Alle þe ȝongest bachelers  
 pat wel myghte, & best coupe  
 Stonde in werre, & were of ȝoupe. 10,436

<sup>1</sup> Genièvre, *Wace*, ii. 69, l. 9882;  
*Guanhumara, Galf. Mon.* lib. ix.  
 § 9.

<sup>2</sup> *roman.* [leaf 63.]

<sup>3</sup> *giffer spehand.*

<sup>4</sup> *contenance.*

<sup>5</sup> *maiden.*

<sup>6</sup> P. transposes these lines.

- Vpon Irland his flute gan lende ; [leaf 46, back, col. 1.] they land in  
 Swyþe vp to lande gon þey wende, Ireland,  
 Vitaille to seke, & mele & corn ; and go forag-  
 Bestes slayn to schipe were born, 10,440 ing.  
 Lyflode al þat þey myghte gete, They kill  
 . To sustinaunce vntil þer mete, beasts,  
 . Ilkadel to schipe þey drow, and victual  
 . & vitailled hem wel y-now. 10,444 their ships.  
 To Gwylomar, þe Irische kyng, King Gwylom-  
 Com bode sone of þeir comyng ; mar hears of  
 þat Arthur was aryued þere, this,  
 . Al his lond for to conquere. 10,448  
 þe folk pleyned hem aboute ;  
 þer godes were lorn,<sup>1</sup> & þey in doute. and of his  
 þe Irische kyng dide folk somoun people's losses.  
 . þorow-out þe lond, of ylka toune, 10,452 He summons  
 . Of vpland & of burghe,<sup>2</sup> his folk  
 To giue bataille to kyng Arthurghe.<sup>3</sup> to fight Arthur.  
 When boþe partis come to þe fight,  
 þe naked Irische were nought dight ; 10,456 The Irish are  
 Hauberk ne scheld ne myghte þey bere, naked and un-  
 Ne fro þe arewes couþe þem nought were ; armed.  
 þey nadde neuere seen non ar.  
 O syde þey fledde here<sup>3</sup> & þar ; 10,460 They flee at  
 . Ilkon made oper agast, once,  
 . & conseilled hem to fle ful fast  
 To wodes, to hilles, þer lyues to saue ; to save their  
 Oper socour þey wyste non haue. 10,464 lives.  
 þe kyng fley til a wode syde ;  
 Arthur hym folowed, & dide hym byde, Gwylomar  
 & al wyþ force hym þer tok ; flees too ; but  
 & he swor hym vpon þe bok, Arthur takes  
 To holde of hym his heritage him,  
 & zelde hym ilka 3er truwage. 10,468 and he swears  
 fealty to  
 Arthur, and

<sup>1</sup> was lost. [leaf 62, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> P. transposes these lines.

<sup>3</sup> hider.

gives hostages  
to secure it.

þer-til he gaf hym god hostage,  
To holden his fewte & homage. 10,472

§ Hic transfretauit, & Orchades cepit.

Arthur then  
goes to Iceland,  
and soon wins  
it.

When þat was pesed & brought til ende,  
Til Island<sup>1</sup> [Arthur] dight hym to wende.  
Island<sup>2</sup> sone al he wan,  
ffor lord þey knew hym ilka man. 10,476

And there,  
Goneweys, king  
of Orkney,  
Doldan, king of  
Gotland,  
and Rumarek,  
king of Went-  
land,

Goneweys<sup>3</sup> þe kyng of Orkeneye,  
How Arthur wan, wel herde he seye;  
So dide Doldan of Gotland,  
& Rumarek þe kyng of Wentland;<sup>4</sup> 10,480

Tyl alle þre was hit told  
þat Arthur was a conquerour bold.  
pyse þre kynges, þey hym dredde  
ffor þe gret host þat he ledde; 10,484

come and sub-  
mit themselves  
to him.

þey durste nought stande hym ageyn,  
Ne þey ne hadde non host certeyn,  
Ne þey ne wolde þer lond destruye,  
Ne hym ne peym to-gedere noye. 10,488

Arthur takes  
their fealty in  
lovely wise.

þe beste consail þey toke on hand,  
& wente to Arthur into Island,<sup>2</sup>  
& for þeyr landes made alle pes.  
Arthur þem þanked þat þey so ches; 10,492  
Louely tok he þer alle here fewte,  
ffor þey come alle so wyþ wyllle fre.

He then returns  
to England,

When al was syker & certeyn, [leaf 45, back, col. 2.]  
Til Ingland he turnde<sup>5</sup> ageyn; 10,496  
& when þey wyste þat he cam,  
Wyþ ioie alle a-geyn<sup>6</sup> hym nam.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Ingelond. Island, P.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *Irland. Island, P. Islande, Wace, ii. 72, l. 9941.*

<sup>3</sup> *Geneweis. Gonvals, Wace, ii. 72, l. 9945.*

<sup>4</sup> Et Doldamer rois de Gollande  
Et Romarec de Guenelande.

*Wace, ii. 72, l. 9946-7.*

<sup>5</sup> *com. [leaf 63, back.]*

<sup>6</sup> MS. *ageym. P. ageyn.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Twelf ȝer <sup>1</sup> after þat comyng,<br>In reste & pes he regned kyng,<br>þat neuere on hym no werre bygan, <sup>2</sup><br>Ne he ne werrede vpon no man.<br>He tok so mykel of curtesy,<br>Wypoute techyng of any hym by,<br>þat non ne mighte conne more,<br>. Neyþer þorow kynde, ne craft of lore.<br>. In alle answeres he was right wys,<br>Of alle manhede he bar þe pris;<br>Of non þat tyme ne was swylk speche,<br>þat til his nobleye mighte reche,—<br>Nought of þe Emperour of Rome,—<br>. þat he ouer hym ne bar þe blome;<br>. In alle manere þat kynges schold do,<br>. Non oper hadde such grace þer-to.<br>He ne herde neuere speke of knyght<br>þat losed was of dedes wyght,<br>þat he ne ȝerned hym for to se,<br>& for to haue hym of meyne; <sup>3</sup><br>ȝyf he for mede serue hym wolde,<br>He ne lefte for seluer ne for golde. | 10,500<br><br><br><br><br>10,504<br><br><br><br>10,508<br><br><br><br>10,512<br><br><br><br>10,516<br><br><br><br>10,520 | and reigns for<br>12 years in<br>peace.<br><br>He knows so<br>much courtesy<br>that no one can<br>know more.<br><br>He is wise,<br>most manly,<br>and more re-<br>nowned than<br>the Emperor of<br>Rome.<br><br>Whatever<br>doughty knight<br>he hears of,<br>he strives to<br>get him in his<br>household. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ *Hic ordinatur Tabula Rotunda.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                      |                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| For his barons þat were so bolde,<br>þat al þe werld pris of þem tolde,<br>ffor noman wyste who was best,<br>. Ne in armes doughtiest,<br>Dide Arthur ordeyne þe round table<br>þat ȝit men telle of many a fable.<br>At þer bord in tyme of mete,<br>Alle þis noble knyghte schold <sup>4</sup> ete; | 10,524<br><br><br><br><br><br>10,528 | For his bold<br>barons, of<br><br>whom no man<br>knows which<br>is best,<br>Arthur ordains<br>the Round<br>Table.<br>At this table at<br>meals, |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> Trente ans, *Wace*, MS. du Roi,  
27; Douze ans, MS. du Roi, 73,  
Cangé, &c. (*Wace*, ii. 73, note a).

<sup>2</sup> neuer no were on him nam.

<sup>3</sup> of him mercy.

<sup>4</sup> þo doughty knyghtes suld.



|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                               | Non sat wyþynne, non sat wyþoute,<br>Bot alle euene rounde aboute ;                                                                            |        |
| no knight sits<br>above another,                                              | . Non sat first, ne non sat last,<br>But per by per, in euen cast ; <sup>1</sup>                                                               | 10,532 |
|                                                                               | Non sat heye, non sat lowe, <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                       |        |
| but all sit as<br>equals ;                                                    | . But alle euenlyk men myghte þem knowe ; <sup>3</sup><br>. Non was set at non ende,<br>. But alle a round, for <sup>4</sup> alle were hende ; | 10,536 |
|                                                                               | . Non wyste whiche of pris <sup>5</sup> most was,<br>. þer-fore þey sete alle in compas ;                                                      |        |
| all sit down,<br>all rise, at<br>once,<br>and all have the<br>same allowance. | . Alle at ones down þey seten,<br>. At ones ros when þey hadde eten ;                                                                          | 10,540 |
|                                                                               | Alle were þey serued of o seruise,<br>Euenly, alle of on assise.                                                                               |        |

¶ De gloria Curye Arthury.

|                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Of whatever<br>repute any<br>knight may be,<br>whether he is<br>French, Flem-<br>ing,<br>Angevine,<br>Irish, Picard,<br>Zeelandish,<br>Catalan,<br>Provinçal, | What knyght had ben in al þe werld,<br>. Had his los be neuere so wel byherd, <sup>6</sup><br>Were he ffrenche, <sup>7</sup> were he Bretoun,<br>Normaund, fflemyng, or Burgoiloun,<br>Spaynard, Gascoyn, or Angeuyn, <sup>8</sup><br>Scot, Irische, Pykard, or Peyteuyn, <sup>8</sup><br>. Daneys, Norneys, or Selander, <sup>8</sup><br>. Henner, ffryson, or Katelaner, <sup>8</sup><br>. Arragoneys, Lombard, or Brabaunt, <sup>8</sup><br>. Prouyncial, Nauerner, or Alemaunt, <sup>8</sup><br>Of wham he held his fe, or how,<br>ffro þe Weste [or] Est vntil <sup>9</sup> Mounow,<br>He was told of non honour<br>Bot he had ben wyþ kyng Arthour, | 10,544<br><br><br><br><br>10,548<br><br><br>10,552<br><br>[leaf 46.]<br><br>10,556 |
| he is held of no<br>honour unless<br>he has been<br>with Arthur.                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                    |

<sup>1</sup> pere bi pere euen kast.

<sup>2</sup> lawe. [leaf 62, back, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> euenly for to knowe.

<sup>4</sup> o round &.

<sup>5</sup> who of þam.

<sup>6</sup> þof his los had bene wele herd.

<sup>7</sup> frankis.

<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>9</sup> west vnto.

- & hadde taken of his liuere,  
 Cloþ or queyntise,<sup>1</sup> þat knowe myght be.  
 Of ferne landes many on namen,<sup>2</sup>  
 & til þat court for worschyp camen,<sup>2</sup> 10,560 To him come  
 To lere honour & curtesy,<sup>2</sup> many from far  
 & here þe prowess of knyghtes hardy,<sup>2</sup> lands to learn  
 . & to here þe faire gestes<sup>2</sup> courtesy,  
 . þat knyghtes broughte & telde at festes.<sup>2</sup> and hear  
 Somme come to se his faire wonyng,<sup>2</sup> 10,565 fair tales at  
 . & se & here þere selcoup þynge;<sup>2</sup> feasts.  
 Pouere men, þey louede hym alle,  
 & riche honoured hym in halle; 10,568 Poor men love  
 ffele kynges of ferne stede<sup>2</sup> Arthur;  
 Sent hym gyftes for doute & drede;  
 . þey wylt hit wel, ȝyf þey wold ryde,<sup>2</sup> many kings  
 . His werre durste no kyng abide;<sup>2</sup> 10,572 send him gifts,  
 . Kynges aforced þer casteles aboute,<sup>2</sup>  
 . ffor alle landes of hym hadde doute,<sup>2</sup> and all lands  
 þat ȝyf he come, he scholde þem lese,<sup>2</sup> fear him.  
 Or gyue hym truwege as be wold chese;<sup>2</sup>  
 . þer-fore ilkon at þer myght<sup>2</sup> 10,577  
 . Aforced þer cites, & wel þeym dight.<sup>2</sup>

## ¶ De nobilitate Arthury.

- But in þyse twelf ȝeres tyme  
 ffele auentures þat men rede in ryme;  
 . In þat tyme were herd & sen 10,581 In these 12  
 þat somme seye, þat neuere hap<sup>4</sup> ben. years happen  
 Of Arthur ys seid many selcoup adventures,  
 . In diuerse landes northe & souþ 10,584 told in ryme,  
 þat men holdeþ now for fable, that some say  
 are lies.  
 And yet many  
 of these strange  
 tales, held false,

<sup>1</sup> þing.<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> thede.<sup>4</sup> had.

are true.

All arn't true ;  
but all arn't  
lies ;  
yet all may be  
put to good use.

Arthur's deeds  
were greater  
than other  
men's, and if  
they'd not been  
written of, we  
shouldn't have  
known of 'em.  
Geoffrey of  
Monmouth  
wrote of him,  
and blamed  
Gildas and  
Bede  
for not writing  
of Arthur, who  
was greater  
than any men  
they did write  
of (savesaints.)

Arthur is  
written of  
everywhere,  
and specially in  
France ;  
but not here.

We have to go  
to strangers'  
books for him.

But till Dooms-  
day shall men  
write of Arthur.

. Be þey neuere so trewe ne stable.  
Al ys nought soþ, ne nought al lye,  
Ne al wysdam, ne al folye ; 10,588  
. <sup>1</sup> þer nys no þyng of hym seyð  
. þat hit ne may be to godnesse leyð.<sup>2</sup>  
. More þan opere were his dedes,  
. þat men of hym so mykel redes ; 10,592  
. Ne were his dedes hadde be writen,<sup>3</sup>  
. Of hym no þyng men scholde haue wyten.<sup>4</sup>  
. Geffrey Arthur of Monemu,  
. He wrot his dedes þat were of pru, 10,596  
. & blamed boþe Gyldas & Bede,  
. Why þey wolde nought of hym rede,  
. Syn he bar þe pris of alle cristen<sup>5</sup> kynges,  
. & write so litel of<sup>6</sup> his preysynges, 10,600  
. & more worschip of hym spoke þer was<sup>7</sup>  
. þat of any of þo þat spekes Gildas,  
. Or of any þat Bede wrot,  
. Saue holy men þat we wot. 10,604  
. In alle landes wrot men of Arthur,  
. Hys noble dedes of honour :  
. In ffraunce men wrot, & zit men wryte,  
. But herd haue we of hym but lyte ;<sup>8</sup> 10,608  
. pere-fore of hym more men fynde<sup>9</sup>  
. In farre bokes, als ys kynde,<sup>9</sup>  
. þan we haue in þys lond :<sup>9</sup> [leaf 46, col. 2.]  
. þat we haue, þer men hit fond ;<sup>9</sup> 10,612  
. Til Domesday men schalle spelle,  
. & of Arthures dedes talke<sup>10</sup> & telle.

<sup>1</sup> See the lines 10,040-7 in *Wace*,  
ii. 76-7 from MS. du Roi, 73, Cange,  
against the embellishers of the  
Arthur story throwing discredit on  
it by their fables.

<sup>2</sup> þat ne it may to gode laid.

<sup>3</sup> P. leaves out this line and the  
next.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *wryten*.

<sup>5</sup> *siþen he was pris of aff.* [lf. 63.]

<sup>6</sup> *þei wild not write.*

<sup>7</sup> *of him was.*

<sup>8</sup> *Here haf we of him bot lte.*

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>10</sup> MS. *takke*. P. *talk*.

- . Now ys Arthur of pleyn age,  
 . He conseilled wyþ his baronage; 10,616 Arthur says  
 . & his gode knyghtes hym redde,  
 . þat he had fostred & forþ fedde.  
 He seyde he wolde ouer se<sup>1</sup> to Fraunce, he'll conquer  
 & wynne hit al wyþ dynt of launce. 10,620 France;  
 But first he seide 'he wolde<sup>2</sup> to Norweye, but will first  
 ' þe kyng had sent hym bode<sup>3</sup> he hoped to deye; win Norway  
 " & Loth, myn neuwe, schal he his eyr; for his nephew,  
 " To make hym kyng y am in speyr; 10,624 Loth,  
 " His neuwe he ys, of next degre, who is next in  
 " Of blod ys non nerrer þan<sup>4</sup> he." blood to the  
 Right as he seyde, also he<sup>5</sup> þought, dying king.  
 . He wende þe barons wolde so haue wrought;  
 But when þey seye þat he was ded, 10,629 But when the  
 þey toke þem til anoper red: king does die,  
 Loth to haue, þey hym forsok,  
 . & anoper kyng þey tok; 10,632 the Norse  
 . ffor alle<sup>6</sup> þey seide wyþ o mouþ, barons choose  
 ' þey wolde haue no kyng<sup>7</sup> vncoup; a native king;  
 . ' þey hoped nought þey schold hym fynde<sup>8</sup> they wo'n't  
 . ' Als godliche as þer owen kynde.<sup>8</sup> 10,636 have a stranger,  
 ' Alyens,' þey seyde, 'he wolde auaunce, who'll promote  
 ' þat schulde be þeirs appurtynaunce. aliens, and not  
 ' A heued þey wolde haue þem aboue, them.  
 ' þat hem wolde auaunce & loue.' 10,640  
 þorow þat consail & þat reson, So they crown  
 Rycolf þey ches, was a baron, Rycolf king;  
 & coroned hym, & now ys<sup>9</sup> kyng;  
 & þus hap Lot<sup>10</sup> lorn þat þyng. 10,644

<sup>1</sup> he wald wend.<sup>2</sup> bot first he wuld.<sup>3</sup> þe kyng sent. (Sicelins li rois mors estoit, Wace, ii. 77, l. 10,052.)<sup>4</sup> non heire bot.<sup>5</sup> Sichelyn said & þus.<sup>6</sup> þus.<sup>7</sup> man.<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>9</sup> mad him.<sup>10</sup> þus gate hast.

but Arthur  
declares

"ffor help," seid Arthur, "Loth hap bysought;<sup>1</sup>  
 "ffaille hym by no weye wol y nought;  
 "Y wolde his honur & [his]<sup>2</sup> right,  
 "& þat schal y he[l]pe at my<sup>3</sup> myght. 10,648  
 "Rycolfes coroune y wolde abate,  
 "þat þe Noreys gef hym so late."

he'll lay Ry-  
colf's crown  
low.

### § De conquestu Norganie.

Arthur and his  
folk sail to

Tyl Arthur com þer folk ynow;  
 To schipes on flode faste þey drow; 10,652

Norway,

þe wynd blew, & gan hem dryue,  
 Vp in Norweye gon þey aryue.  
 Ricolf was god, & wolde nought fle  
 Ne remue hym out of þe contre; 10,656

slay Rycolf and  
his men,

He gadered host, for wel he wende  
 Ageyn Arthur hym self defende;

and make Loth  
king.

But his wenyng was al<sup>4</sup> veyn,  
 ffor Ricolf & hise wer alle þer sleyn. 10,660

When Arthur hadde Norweye wonnen,  
 þe barons alle ouer riden & ronnen,

Loth, his neuw, he gaf þe croun,  
 After Ricolf þat was doun. 10,664

Sir Wawyn  
[Gawein], who  
has been at  
Rome with  
Pope Sim-  
plicius

Loth made Arthur þenne feute,  
 Als til his chef ouer al þat fe.

§ Lothes sone, sire Wawayn,  
 Had ben at Rome to lere Romain, 10,668

Wyþ Supplice þe Apostoille<sup>5</sup> to wone,  
 Honur to lere, langage to kone;

& þere was he dubbed knyght.  
 And holden hardy, strong, & wyght. 10,672

When Supplice had don his ende, [leaf 46, back, col. 1.]

now comes  
home to Bri-  
tain.

Tyl Bretayne-ward Wawayn<sup>6</sup> gan wende.

<sup>1</sup> *has sought.*

<sup>2</sup> *his.* [leaf 63, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> *& help þerto þat .I.*

<sup>4</sup> *alle.*

<sup>5</sup> *pape.* (St. Simplicie, pope, 468-488 A.D. De Lincy, *Wace*, ii. 79.)

<sup>6</sup> *to bretayn Wawan home.*

Now ys Wawayn comen hom,  
 fful blithe ys Loth al of his com; 10,676  
 Noble he was, & ful curteys, He is noble  
 Mykel honour of hym euere men seys:<sup>1</sup> and courteous,  
 He loued mesure & faire beryng;  
 Pruyde ne bost loued he no pyng; 10,680 hates pride  
 Vnkynde, false, & fykele,<sup>2</sup> he hated;  
 Lesynges, alle swilk he abated;<sup>3</sup> and lies,  
 More he gaf þan he by-hette, and gives more  
 Wel more he dide þan terme of sette. 10,684 than he pro-  
 mises.

Now ys Loth in Norweye seised,  
 & Wawayn comen, þat mykel ys praised.<sup>4</sup>  
 Alle þo men þat were of myght, Arthur gathers  
 þat weren zonge, & coupe<sup>5</sup> of fyght, 10,688 a host of young  
 & loueden<sup>6</sup> more werre þan pes, fighting men,  
 Arthur til hym alle swyche<sup>7</sup> ches;  
 Of swylk gadered he many on,  
 & schipes on se ful god won. 10,692  
 When his host was styf & stark, and ships them  
 He schiped to-wardes Denemark. over to Den-  
 Achil, þat þen was kyng of Danes, mark.  
 Saw Bretons & Noreys come alle at anes 10,696 The Danish  
 king, Achil,  
 Wyp Arthur, to wynne his lond,  
 & for to destruye al þat he<sup>8</sup> fond.  
 But Achil poughte, as kyng ful wys,  
 þat<sup>9</sup> Arthur oueral hadde þe prys; 10,700  
 He wiste wel he schulde conquere  
 His lond of hym, ȝyf he come þere;  
 But he seide 'he wolde nought<sup>10</sup> so  
 ' Hym seluen ne his lond fur-do,<sup>11</sup> 10,704  
 knows that  
 Arthur will  
 beat him.  
 He says he  
 won't have his  
 land destroyed,

<sup>1</sup> honour of him men rede & seis.<sup>2</sup> fals & fikell lesyng.<sup>3</sup> auantour alle swilk he bated.<sup>4</sup> is comen & praised.<sup>5</sup> in youth þat couth ouht.<sup>6</sup> þat lufed. [leaf 63, back.]<sup>7</sup> Arthure all swilk men.<sup>8</sup> þei.<sup>9</sup> He sauh.<sup>10</sup> if he suld not.<sup>11</sup> P. leaves out this line.

|                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| his folk slain,<br>his treasure<br>spent,                                                     | ' Ne suffre his folk to be slayn,<br>' Ne his tresor spende in vayn,<br>' Ne his casteles beten <sup>1</sup> down,                                                                                   |        |
| and his towns<br>burnt.<br>So he submits<br>to Arthur,                                        | ' Ne kirke robbed, <sup>2</sup> ne brenne toun ;'<br>But faire he spak, & wel he hette,<br>& wysly gaf giftes wel bysette, <sup>3</sup>                                                              | 10,708 |
| and is allowed<br>to hold his land<br>in peace,                                               | So þat of Arthur he had grauntise,<br>þe lond in pes for his seruise ;<br>& Arthur þen his seruise tok,                                                                                              | 10,712 |
| after swearing<br>homage to<br>Arthur.                                                        | Omage he swor hym on þe bok.<br>¶ Arthur was glad þat he þus wan,<br>So sone þe kyng bicam his man ;                                                                                                 | 10,716 |
| Arthur then<br>picks out the<br>best Danish<br>knights and<br>archers,                        | But ȝut he þoughte to wynne wel <sup>4</sup> more.<br>Of þe beste knyghtes he ches þore,<br>& squiers bolde, & gode <sup>5</sup> archers,<br>þat louede werre, & knew þe maners—                     | 10,720 |
|                                                                                               | I ne wot how manye <sup>6</sup> þousandes<br>þat he so gadered y þo landes ;—<br>Of gret folk mad he purueaunce,<br>ffor he seyde he wolde to ffraunce :                                             | 10,724 |
| and wins<br>Flanders and<br>Boulogne ;                                                        | fflaundre he wan, Boloyn he tok ;<br>Tounes, casteles, for hym þey quok ;<br>His folk so wysly gan he lede,                                                                                          |        |
| but he plunders<br>no land,                                                                   | Struyed he no lond als he ȝede,<br>He tok no þyng fer ne hende,                                                                                                                                      | 10,728 |
| takes only<br>food for horse<br>and man, and<br>pays for it all.                              | But mete & drynke, & hors prouende ;<br>ȝit toke þei non wyþ no maistrie,<br>But bought hit þere hit was to bye.                                                                                     | 10,732 |
| France is then<br>called Gaul, is<br>held by the<br>Romans, and<br>has no king of<br>its own. | þat tyme þat þis chaunce gan falle,<br>þat now hat ffraunce, þo hight hit Galle ;<br>þe Romayns þat ilke tyme hit held, [ff. 46, bk. col. 2.]<br>Was þer <sup>7</sup> no kyng bar croune ne scheld ; | 10,736 |

<sup>1</sup> be casten.<sup>2</sup> to robbe.<sup>3</sup> giftes gaf & wisly sette.<sup>4</sup> he wild wyg.<sup>5</sup> gode & slie.<sup>6</sup> þe hundrethes ne.<sup>7</sup> þan. [leaf 63, back, col. 2.]

ARTHUR DEFEATS FROLLE WHO RULES FRANCE. 375

. & ilk ȝer toke þey þer-of truage,  
 . Syþen<sup>1</sup> Iulius wan hit in seruage.

¶ De ffrolle, Romano Regente francie.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Frolle, a doughti bacheler,<br/>                 Had hit in keypyng many a ȝer;<br/>                 To Romayns<sup>2</sup> byhoue gadered þer rent,<br/>                 &amp; at termes to Rome<sup>3</sup> hit sent,<br/>                 Or bar hit hym self to þe Emperour.<br/>                 ffrolle was a ful hardy man in stour,<br/>                 He was comen of Romayns blod,<br/>                 He dredde<sup>4</sup> non þat ageyns hym stod.<br/>                 Al day tydyng men hym told,<br/>                 þat Arthur com wyþ host ful bold,<br/>                 . &amp; þat no man myghte dwelle ne be<br/>                 . But ȝif he helde of hym in fe.<br/>                 . þat herde ffrolle, &amp; was ful<sup>5</sup> wo,<br/>                 . &amp; seide hit schuld nought þat wey<sup>6</sup> go.<br/>                 He dide somoun<sup>7</sup> alle to come<br/>                 Til hym, þat helde þer fe of Rome,<br/>                 . ffor to brynge hors &amp; armes,<br/>                 . þe lond for to fende fro harmes,<sup>8</sup><br/>                 . &amp; doughtily to-gydere stande<br/>                 . Ageyn Arthur þat was comande.</p> | <p>10,740 Frolle holds<br/>                 France for the<br/>                 Romans,<br/>                 gathers their<br/>                 rent, and sends<br/>                 it to Rome.</p> <p>10,744 He is a brave<br/>                 man,</p> <p>10,748 and is told that<br/>                 no one can<br/>                 stand against<br/>                 Arthur.</p> <p>10,752 But he says he<br/>                 will.<br/>                 He summons<br/>                 his host</p> <p>10,756 to fight<br/>                 doughtily<br/>                 against Arthur.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ Hic gens ffrolly cecidit.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>¶ Hit was nought longe bytwyxt hem set<br/>                 Ar<sup>9</sup> þer hostes<sup>10</sup> to-gedere met.<br/>                 ffrolle mysfel atte firste pres,<br/>                 ffor ner alle his beste folk he les,</p> | <p>10,760 The hosts soon<br/>                 meet,<br/>                 and Frolle is at<br/>                 once defeated.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> sen.

<sup>2</sup> þer.

<sup>3</sup> termes home.

<sup>4</sup> douted.

<sup>5</sup> right.

<sup>6</sup> said it suld not so gate.

<sup>7</sup> did somond.

<sup>8</sup> P. leaves out this line.

<sup>9</sup> þat.

<sup>10</sup> ? final s added by a later hand.



|                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                                                                               | What y-slayn & ouer schaken,<br>• & nerhande hym self had ben taken.                                                                                                                              | 10,764 |
| No wonder<br>either! For<br>Arthur's host is<br>so great that<br>none can<br>number it.                                       | Hit was no wonder <sup>1</sup> þat he fledde,<br>ffor þe gret host þat Arthur ay ledde;<br>• Was non þat coupe hit noumbre <sup>2</sup> ne seye,<br>þe folk he tok, comynge in <sup>3</sup> weye; | 10,768 |
| Wherever he<br>finds a doughty<br>man, will he,<br>nill he, forth<br>he must with<br>Arthur!<br>Some come to<br>him for love, | Hit was no lond þat he þorow sought,<br>Euere þe beste wyþ hym he brought;<br>þat doughti was on horse or fote,<br>• Wold he, nold he, <sup>4</sup> forþ he mote:                                 | 10,772 |
|                                                                                                                               | Somme wente for his fair speche,<br>• & somme for drede of oper wreche,<br>& somme for he gaf largely,<br>& somme for his grete curtesy, <sup>5</sup>                                             | 10,776 |
| and some for<br>fear;                                                                                                         | & somme for los & doute of ded, <sup>6</sup><br>Knowlechyng til hym þey bed:                                                                                                                      |        |
| and many<br>French lords<br>hold their fees<br>of him.                                                                        | Of ffraunce many a lordyng<br>Comen to holde <sup>7</sup> of hym þer þyng.                                                                                                                        | 10,780 |

¶ De obsidione ffrolly per Arthurum.

|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                            |        |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Frolle flees to<br>Paris, his<br>strongest city, | ffrolle fledde faste to Parys,<br>• Hit was þe strengest cite of pris;<br>He knew no bettere recet to haue <sup>8</sup><br>Ageyn Arthur, þat myghte hym saue; <sup>8</sup> | 10,784 |
| and victuals it.                                 | Night & day dide his trauaille<br>To warnische <sup>9</sup> þe toun wyþ vitaille.<br>Mykel folk to Paris fledde,                                                           |        |
| Arthur follows<br>him,                           | & Arthur pider faste hym spedde;<br>& Arthur vnderstod ful wel<br>þe purueaunce of ffrolle <sup>10</sup> ilka del;                                                         | 10,788 |

<sup>1</sup> was ferly.

<sup>2</sup> couth noumbre it.

<sup>3</sup> comand i þe.

<sup>4</sup> wild he ne wild he.

<sup>5</sup> tant por la noblesce de lui,  
Wace, ii. 84, l. 10, 210.

<sup>6</sup> tynsell & doute of dede. [leaf 64.]

<sup>7</sup> com & held.

<sup>8</sup> P. transposes these lines.

<sup>9</sup> store.

<sup>10</sup> þer puruciance.

FROLLE CHALLENGES ARTHUR TO FIGHT HIM. 377

- . per-fore he hasted his sege to sette,  
 . His purueaunce for to lette. 10,792  
 Arthur bysegged hym so streit  
 pat frolle mighte wyþ no deseit [leaf 47.] and besieges  
 Of vitaille helpe hym at nede, him in Paris so  
 By londe ne by water lede, Frolle can get  
 Ner al a monþe, as men teld, 10,796 in no provi-  
 . pat frolle þe cite of Paris held; sions  
 & al pat tyme Arthur per lay, during the  
 . He ne remued night ne day. 10,800 month that  
 So mykel folk was per-ynne, Arthur lies  
 þe raþer bigan per fight to gynne;<sup>1</sup> Food fails;  
 Hit was despended, pat þey in drow; 10,804  
 þey hadde no tyme to drawe inow; the people  
 ffor hunger gan þey make mone, mean for  
 Men, women, & childre, ilkone. hunger,  
 ȝyf frolle wylde as þey wolde, 10,808  
 þe toun had ben ful sone ȝolde; and pray  
 þey preied frolle þorow<sup>2</sup> þe burghe Frolle to make  
 To make pes wyþ kyng Arthurghe. peace with  
 frolle saw þey pleyned þem sore, Arthur.  
 & per vitaille was namore, 10,812 Frolle sees  
 & seye wel þey<sup>3</sup> alle wylde their distress,  
 þe toun vntil Arthur ȝylde; and that they  
 . & [pat]<sup>4</sup> þought hym schame & vyl; want to give up  
 Hym self had leuere be in peril, the town to  
 & auenture hym his deþ to take, Arthur.  
 þan wyþ his wille Parys fursake;<sup>5</sup> 10,816 Frolle thinks  
 "Strengþe of body or wille y fonde." he'd rather risk  
 Tyl Arþur he sente his sonde: his life than be  
 'ȝyf þat he wilde bytwyxt þem to<sup>6</sup> disgraced,  
 'To-gedere fighte, wyþoute mo, 10,820 and accord-  
 ingly challenges  
 Arthur to  
 single combat.

<sup>1</sup> soner gon þer foute begynne.  
 (Et de viande poverté, Wace, ii. 85,  
 l. 10,239.)

<sup>2</sup> þorhout.

<sup>3</sup> þat þei.

<sup>4</sup> þat.

<sup>5</sup> þe toun forsake. [leaf 64, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> tuo.

# 378 ARTHUR AND FROLLE ARM FOR THE FIGHT.

|                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                  |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Whoever wins<br>is to have all<br>France.  | ' & whilk of þem were ouer-come,<br>' Or slayn, or wyþ force nome,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 10,824           |
| Arthur gladly<br>accepts the<br>challenge. | ' Tak hym þe lond til his wyll,<br>' So þat þe folk nought ne spille.'<br>pat bode cam Arþur wel to hert;<br>His gloue he gaf vp al so smert,<br>& tok hostage o boþe partys,<br>Of Arthures host <sup>1</sup> & of Parys,<br>þe bataille scholde be in a pleyne<br>. Bytwyxt two watres, Marne & Seyne. | 10,828<br>10,832 |

## ¶ De bello inter Regem Arthurum & frollum.

|                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| When they are<br>ready armed,<br>the French<br>folk tremble,                                               | When þey were armed & redy dight,<br>& were comen þer þey schold fyght,<br>Men myght þer <sup>2</sup> se folk tremble & quake,<br>. On boþe partis gret deol to make,                                                                                                             | 10,836 |
| and pray to<br>God<br>that he who<br>wishes peace<br>may win.<br>Arthur's folk<br>pray that he<br>may win. | . Handes wrynge, on knes to <sup>3</sup> falle,<br>On Godes name to crie & calle,<br>' þat he myght wynne, þat pes wold haue,<br>' & þe lond fro werre myght saue.'                                                                                                               | 10,840 |
| Both knights<br>are nobly<br>armed<br>for their trial;                                                     | Arþures folk stode & byheld,<br>. Redy [digh]t <sup>4</sup> wyþ helm & scheld,<br>& by[sought]e God inderly <sup>5</sup><br>To [graunt] Arþur þe maistri.                                                                                                                         | 10,844 |
| none better are<br>in their time.                                                                          | py[se two] knyghtes þat forþ were fet,<br>N[obilly di]ght, on horse wel set,<br>. T[o assay]e þem how þey were wyght,<br>[þe lanc]e to reyse, þer scheld to ryght.<br>[Who myg]hte <sup>6</sup> wel telle, & soþ to seye,<br>. [þat sui]lk <sup>7</sup> wer non þat tyme als þey; | 10,848 |

|                                                                               |                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <sup>1</sup> of Arthure. (cil de l'ost, Wace, ii. 86, l. 10,274.)             | from the Petyt MS., except as noted below. |
| <sup>2</sup> men mot.                                                         | <sup>5</sup> praied god interly.           |
| <sup>3</sup> wroeng on knes.                                                  | <sup>6</sup> ho mot.                       |
| <sup>4</sup> A long piece has been torn out of the MS. The gaps are filled in | <sup>7</sup> Suilk.                        |

- . [Ilk o]f þeym was horsed wel,  
 . [Had a]rmes.<sup>1</sup> stronge as any stel; 10,852  
 By sight myght non þer chese þe best, [It. 47, col. 2.] You can't tell  
 . Ne whilk þen semed doughtiest; by look which  
 Ne whilk schold wyne, ne haue þe gre,<sup>2</sup> is the doughtier.  
 . By sighte myghte þer non hit se.<sup>3</sup> 10,856

- When þey were bone, redy to smite,  
 & þer hors<sup>4</sup> sondred a lyte, They charge.  
 Wyþ speres þey smot,<sup>5</sup> þe bridel brayd,  
 þer scheldes sette, þer launces<sup>6</sup> forþ layd; 10,860  
 þer horses at þer power runnen,  
 þe partis wende haue<sup>6</sup> lorn or wonnen;  
 But ffrolle failled of his dynt,—  
 I trowe his stede a syde stynt,— 10,864 Frolle's thrust  
 & Arthur smot hym in þe scheld. misses,  
 . þe hed<sup>7</sup> was god, & ful wel held, and Arthur  
 & ffrolle out of his sadel cast unhorses him.  
 So fer so þe launce might last. 10,868  
 ffrolle vp stirte, & sydlynges glent, Frolle jumps  
 His scheld dressed, his launce vp<sup>8</sup> hent; up,  
 Til Arþures stede þe point he bar, stabs Arthur's  
 þorow þe breste þe herte he<sup>9</sup> schar. 10,872 horse,  
 Arþur fel; he moste nede; and Arthur  
 . He was a fote, ded was his stede. falls.  
 þe Bretons seye he had þat fal, The Britons  
 þem þoughte for wo þey al to-swal,<sup>10</sup> 10,876 shriek for woe,  
 . þe erþe dunede<sup>11</sup> for þeir cry, want to cross  
 To passe þe water þey were redy, the river, and  
 þe trewes to breke þey were ful wylde, break the truce.  
 To haue gon ouer in to þe ilde; 10,880

<sup>1</sup> in *armes*.<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> *horses*.<sup>4</sup> MS. *snot*. P. *smote*.<sup>5</sup> on *lance*.<sup>6</sup> *att.* [leaf 64, back.]<sup>7</sup> *Iren*.<sup>8</sup> *schelde dight his lance he*.<sup>9</sup> *it*.<sup>10</sup> to *sualle*.<sup>11</sup> *stoned*.

|                                                                      |                                                |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|--------|
| But Arthur is soon up again,                                         | . But þey sawe hym sone vp a-geyn ;            |        |
|                                                                      | . þey wyþstod þen, & wære fayn.                |        |
|                                                                      | . When he was vp, he hadde no rest,            |        |
|                                                                      | . Wyþ ffrolle to fighte he was ful prest,      | 10,884 |
| draws Caliburn,                                                      | He leyde his hand to Caliborne,                |        |
|                                                                      | . þat neuere for armes wolde scurne.           |        |
| and attacks Frolle.                                                  | per-wyþ on ffrolle ful sore he sought,         |        |
|                                                                      | & ffrolle a-geyn ne dredde hym nought ;        | 10,888 |
|                                                                      | . Agayn Arthur he stod & stynt,                |        |
|                                                                      | Nought abaischt hym for <sup>1</sup> no dynt ; |        |
| Frolle strikes Arthur,                                               | His swerd had drawen, he lyft hit heye,        |        |
|                                                                      | On Arþur he let hit sore fleye :               | 10,892 |
|                                                                      | þe dynt was gret, for he was strong,           |        |
|                                                                      | þe fir out fley, þe sparkles sprong,           |        |
|                                                                      | þe helm he claf, & þe basyn,                   |        |
|                                                                      | & þe coyfe þat was so fyn.                     | 10,896 |
| cleaves his helm, basinet and coif, and cuts into Arthur's forehead. | . þe swerd was scharp, & ful wel bot,          |        |
|                                                                      | In þe forehed Arþur he smot,                   |        |
|                                                                      | . porow þe flesche, vnto þe pan ;              |        |
|                                                                      | After þe strok þe blod out ran.                | 10,900 |

¶ De occisione ffrolly, Regentis fffrancie.

|                                         |                                                    |        |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Arthur                                  | When Arthur felde <sup>2</sup> þat he was wounded, |        |
|                                         | Nopyng he ne <sup>3</sup> stinte ne stounded ;     |        |
| gets angry,                             | ffor, ful of yre, wyþ colour teint,                |        |
|                                         | Was he neyþer abaischt ne feint ;                  | 10,904 |
| and with Caliburn                       | Caliborne he hadde in hande,                       |        |
|                                         | . He tok hym byre þe strok teysande ; <sup>4</sup> |        |
| cleaves Frolle through head and breast. | Abouen <sup>5</sup> his helm ful faste he dref ;   |        |
| The Parisians grieve ;                  | Hed & nekke & breste he clef. <sup>6</sup>         | 10,908 |
|                                         | þey of þe cite mad deol ynow,                      |        |
|                                         | & þe Bretons þer-fore þey low ;                    |        |

<sup>1</sup> abaist for him.

<sup>2</sup> felte.

<sup>3</sup> Noþer he.

<sup>4</sup> bir þe stroke teysand.

[leaf 64, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> Aboun.

<sup>6</sup> to þe girdill þe body clefe.

|                                                   |                          |                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| What sorewe so þey made al gates,                 |                          |                                                                |
| Agayns Arthur þey opened þe gates,                | 10,912                   | but they open<br>their gates to                                |
| And let hym in, & alle hyse,                      | [leaf 47, back, col. 1.] | Arthur,                                                        |
| & dide <sup>1</sup> hym omage & seruise.          |                          | and do him<br>homage.                                          |
| When he had homage of lef & loþ,                  |                          |                                                                |
| Hostages he tok to halde þer op;                  | 10,916                   |                                                                |
| At Parys to soioune he ches;                      |                          | Arthur stays in<br>Paris,                                      |
| Baillifs he sette to ȝeme þe pes;                 |                          |                                                                |
| He parted his host in haluendel, <sup>2</sup>     |                          | but divides his<br>host, and gives                             |
| Bytaughte he þem to <sup>3</sup> sire Ohel,       | 10,920                   | half to Ohel,<br>to win Poitiers,<br>Gascony, and<br>Lorraine. |
| & bad hym 'go to wynne Burgoyne,                  |                          |                                                                |
| ' Peytowe, Nauerne, & Gascoigne,                  |                          |                                                                |
| ' & Lorreyne, ȝyf <sup>4</sup> he myghte,         |                          |                                                                |
| ' Assaye þem wyþ loue or fyghte.'                 | 10,924                   |                                                                |
| Ohel dide his comaundement,                       |                          | Ohel makes all<br>these lands pay<br>tribute.                  |
| He tok þe folk, & þyder went;                     |                          |                                                                |
| And alle þo landes <sup>5</sup> þat y haue seyde, |                          |                                                                |
| To gyue truage on þem he leyde.                   | 10,928                   |                                                                |

¶ De austeritate Gwytardi.

|                                                 |        |                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Gwithard, <sup>6</sup> þe Duk of Peyters,       |        | Gwitard, the<br>Duke of Poi-<br>tiers,                |
| Was a fel knyght & a fers                       |        |                                                       |
| ffor to kepe his heritage,                      |        |                                                       |
| Nought ne wolde gyue <sup>7</sup> truage;       | 10,932 | will not give<br>truage, but<br>often fights<br>Ohel, |
| Often he turnde Ohel þe vys,                    |        |                                                       |
| & often of hym wan þe pris,                     |        |                                                       |
| & often a-geyn hym he les                       |        |                                                       |
| . Er þan he wolde come til <sup>8</sup> þe pes. | 10,936 |                                                       |
| Ohel destruide ner al þe lond;                  |        | who destroys<br>his land                              |
| þat he wyþouten castel fond,                    |        |                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> mad.

<sup>2</sup> betought he vnto.

<sup>4</sup> lorenge if þat.

<sup>5</sup> & wan all þo.

<sup>2</sup> & þe halfende.

<sup>6</sup> MS. Gwichard. P. Witard.  
(Guitart, Wace, ii. 90, l. 10,375.)

<sup>7</sup> he wild gyfe no.

<sup>8</sup> are he wild com vnto.

|                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                               |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| and does not<br>leave even the<br>vines.<br>Gwytard then         | Al was destroyed, & al was reft,<br>þe selue vynes <sup>1</sup> þey ne left.                                                                                                  | 10,940 |
|                                                                  | When Gwytard <sup>2</sup> saw ner al was lorn,<br>. So þat he ne mighte be byforn, <sup>3</sup><br>He saw hit was non oper bote,                                              |        |
| goes to Arthur,<br>falls at his feet,<br>and does him<br>homage. | . Bot zede & fel Arthur to fote,<br>& dide <sup>4</sup> hym homage & feute,<br>. Of hym to halden al <sup>5</sup> his fe.<br>Syþen loued Arthur Gwytard <sup>2</sup> ful wel, | 10,944 |
| Arthur wins all<br>the countries<br>south of<br>France.          | . Non so mykel, but only Ohel.<br>þo opere contres south fro ffraunce,<br>Arthur þem wan til his alliaunce.                                                                   | 10,948 |

§ Hic remuneravit Arthurus famulos & seruientes.

|                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Arthur pays<br>off his old<br>soldiers,                                            | When Arthur had geten alle þo landes,<br>& wonne hem wyþ dint of his handes,<br>Til þo men þat trauailed sore,                                                                                                                                                                             | 10,953           |
| and bids them<br>go home.                                                          | Wel of elde þat wyþ hym wore,<br>zald hem þer sond & þer seruise,<br>Vnto þer contres he bad þem wyse.                                                                                                                                                                                     | 10,956           |
| The wild young<br>men he                                                           | But þo þat were zonge & wylde,<br>þat neyþer hadde wyf ne childe,<br>& louede to bere spere <sup>6</sup> & scheld,                                                                                                                                                                         |                  |
| keeps in France<br>for nine years ;<br>and in that<br>time many<br>wonders befall, | Nyne zer in ffraunce he þem held.<br>Manye wondres by times <sup>7</sup> sers<br>Bytydde Arthur þo nyn[e] zeres ;<br>Many a proud man lowe he brought,<br>Til many felon, wo he wrought ;<br>. Enuyous men he hated alle, <sup>8</sup><br>. þe mysproude ful lowe dide falle. <sup>8</sup> | 10,960<br>10,964 |

<sup>1</sup> þe vineis.<sup>2</sup> Witard.<sup>6</sup> lused to bere helm.<sup>3</sup> he myght not be forborn.<sup>7</sup> selcouth be tyme.<sup>4</sup> mad. [leaf 66.]<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> hold all.

- |                                                    |        |                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------------------|
| . per haue men bokes of al his lyf,                |        |                                                 |
| . per are his merueilles red ful ryf; <sup>1</sup> | 10,968 | about which there are books in France.          |
| . pat we of hym here alle rede,                    |        | The Arthur-                                     |
| . pere were þey writen ilka dede.                  |        | books we have                                   |
| . þyse grete bokes so faire langage,               |        | were written in                                 |
| . Writen & spoken of ffraunces <sup>2</sup> vsage, | 10,972 | France,                                         |
| . pat neuere was writen þorow Englischemen,        |        | [leaf 47, bk., cl. 2.] and never by Englishmen. |
| . Swilk stile to speke, kynde ne <sup>3</sup> can, |        | It's not their                                  |
| . But ffrensche men wryten hit in prose,           |        | nature to write                                 |
| . Right as he dide, hym for to alose;              | 10,976 | so well as Frenchmen                            |
| . In prose al of hym ys writen, <sup>4</sup>       |        | wrote Arthur's                                  |
| . þe bettere til vnderstande & wyten. <sup>4</sup> |        | deeds in prose, the better to be understood.    |

§ *Hic diuisit Arthurus Prouincias, & dedit Ducibus Comitibus, Baronibus, Militibus, & aliis, secundum probitates suas.*

- |                                                   |        |                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------------------|
| A rthur at Pasches, <sup>5</sup> at Parys,        |        |                                                  |
| He held his feste of gret[e] <sup>6</sup> pris :  | 10,980 | One Easter at Paris, Arthur holds a noble feast. |
| Til alle þo þorow hym had lorn,                   |        |                                                  |
| Restored he als þey were <sup>7</sup> byforn ;    |        | He restores to all their losses by him,          |
| . Riche or pore, gentil or þral,                  |        |                                                  |
| . pat he þem aughte, he ȝald <sup>8</sup> þem al. | 10,984 |                                                  |
| After pat he was worthy,                          |        |                                                  |
| He ȝald þer seruise largely :                     |        |                                                  |
| To Kaye pat was his stywarde,                     |        | gives Anjou to Kay ;                             |
| Aungowe he gaf hym til his part ;                 | 10,988 |                                                  |
| He gaf also sire Beduer,                          |        | to Beduer                                        |
| pat was of fe his boteler,                        |        | Normandy,                                        |
| He gaf hym in fe all Normandie,                   |        |                                                  |
| But þenne hit was cald <sup>9</sup> Neustrie ;    | 10,992 | (then called Neustria) ;                         |

<sup>1</sup> had full rife.

<sup>2</sup> on france.

<sup>3</sup> no kynde.

<sup>4</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> At þe pasch.

<sup>7</sup> had.

<sup>8</sup> paid.

<sup>9</sup> þat tyme men say it hight.

<sup>6</sup> fest of grete.

[leaf 66, col. 2.]



|                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                             |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| to Holdyn,<br>Boulogne;<br>to Borel,<br>Maine;<br>and gifts to<br>under-vassals. | Boloyn he gaf to sire Holdyn,<br>And Mayne <sup>1</sup> to Borel his cosyn;<br>He gaf giftes of honurs,<br>& landes & rentes, to vauasours. | 10,996 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|

§ Reuersio Arthury in Angliam, in Mense Aprilis.

|                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                               |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| • Arthur                                                                                           | When he had feffed his barouns,<br>& mad his priues lordes of touns,<br>pe nexte April, when somer gan,<br>Til Ingeland wente ilka man.                                       | 11,000           |
| comes back<br>to England.                                                                          | When men wiste þat þey wer comen,<br>Ageyn Arthur faste þey nomen;<br>þey made suche ioye, non myghte be more;<br>Hys longe dwellyng þem for-boughte sore;                    |                  |
| The Britons<br>rejoice at<br>Arthur's re-<br>turn.                                                 | Ladies kyste þer lordes swete,<br>Modres & childre for ioye gon <sup>2</sup> grete,<br>Sones welcomed þer fadres home,<br>& made al murthe for þer come; <sup>3</sup>         | 11,005<br>11,008 |
| Wives kiss<br>their husbands,<br>mothers their<br>sons,                                            | Lemmans leue ilk oþer kest, <sup>4</sup><br>Of more þey esed hem when þem lest; <sup>4</sup><br>Neueus nyftes, <sup>5</sup> sistres broþer,<br>Ilka frend welcomede oþer;     | 11,012           |
| sweethearts<br>their lovers,                                                                       | þey stode in ilka strete & sty,<br>In grete routes men passed for-by, <sup>6</sup><br>þey spirde <sup>7</sup> at hem 'how þey hadde faren,<br>' & whi þat þey so longe waren, | 11,016           |
| friends their<br>friends.<br>Everyone is<br>out, asking<br>Arthur's men<br>how they have<br>fared, | ' & how þey spedde of þeyr conquest,<br>' & what þey wonne <sup>8</sup> so fer est,<br>' & how þey ferde in al þer wo:<br>" We wole namore 3e fare vs fro."                   | 11,020           |
| and what they<br>have won.                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                               |                  |

<sup>1</sup> *pe Mannes.* (Le Mans, *Wace*,  
ii. 92, l. 10,422.)

<sup>2</sup> *on childir for Ioy.*

<sup>3</sup> *at þer tocome.*

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> A.-Sax. *nefa*, a niece.

<sup>6</sup> in *gashadles men passed bie.*

<sup>7</sup> *to spir.*

<sup>8</sup> *whan þei wan.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| & þen þey told hem al þer chaunce,<br>How Arthur hadde wonne ffraunce,<br>& of merueilles þat þey had sen,<br>& in what peryl þey had ben. <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | The warriors<br>tell them of<br>their conquests<br><br>11,024 and dangers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| þe lordynges of þys lond<br>þat Arthur bifore hym fond,<br>Riche presentes þey hym sent,<br>Hys longe dwellyng mykel þey ment;<br>& he ageyn was ful curteys,<br>Some gaf he hors or oþer harneys;<br>Gladly he gaf, & largely.<br>ffor to schewe his curtesy,<br>ffor to schewe his grete prowess, <sup>2</sup><br>& do by-knowe his grete riches, <sup>2</sup><br>& for to speken of his dedes, <sup>2</sup><br>þat alle kynges doutes & dredes, <sup>2</sup><br>þey conseilled hym his lond to somoune,<br>At Whitsonday, <sup>3</sup> to do hym coroune.<br>At Kerlyon in Glamorgan, <sup>4</sup><br>Dide somoune þyder <sup>5</sup> ilka man.<br>Karlyoun was som <sup>6</sup> tyme riche,<br>Rome & hit lykned y-liche;<br>Hit standeþ on a water men calleþ Vsk/<br>To Seuarne hit rennes by bank & busk;<br>In Vsk men myghte pider wende,<br>Outlandes fer þat pider wol lende;<br>On þat o syde ran þat ryuer,<br>þat oþer side, <sup>7</sup> fforest, ful of der; | [leaf 48.] Arthur's lords<br><br>send him pre-<br>sents,<br><br>11,028<br><br>and he gives<br>them others in<br>return.<br><br>11,032<br><br>To show his<br>prowess and<br>riches,<br><br>11,036<br><br>Arthur sum-<br>mons his folk<br>to crown him<br>at Kaerlyon on<br>Whitsunday.<br><br>11,040<br><br>Kaerlyon was<br>once as rich as<br>Rome.<br>It stands on the<br>Usk;<br><br>11,044<br><br>and on its other<br>side is a forest<br>full of deer.<br><br>11,048 |

<sup>1</sup> The Lambeth MS. has the next two lines twice over; first in this form,—

*Alle þe lordes of þis Londe  
þat Arthur byfore hym fonde.*  
The Petyt MS. wisely leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>3</sup> Qu'à la Pentecoste, en esté,  
*Wace*, ii. 94, l. 10,458.

<sup>4</sup> & *Klamorgan*. [leaf 65, back.]

<sup>5</sup> *did somond pider*.

<sup>6</sup> *þat*.

<sup>7</sup> *on þe toþer*.

|                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                         |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                      | Venisoun þer was ynow,<br>Plente of fysche in water þey drow ;<br>Large medes wyþ gras plente,<br>Lond to tile, non bettere myght be.                                   | 11,052 |
| Its meads and<br>land are very<br>fertile.                           | Two kyrkes were in þe toun,<br>pat tyme had þey gret renoun ;<br>Of seint Iuly was þat on,<br>pat oþer was of seint Aaron.                                              | 11,056 |
| It has two<br>churches,<br>St. Julius's                              | Seint Iuly in martirdam gan deye,<br>Nonnes were at his abbeye ;<br>Seint Aaron, þer was þe bysches se, <sup>1</sup><br>þe heued kyrke of þe cyte ;                     | 11,060 |
|                                                                      | . þer-of Arthur was [þe] ffoundour,<br>& <sup>2</sup> set hit in seint Arons honour ;<br>þer were chanons of clergie,<br>& knewe þem wel in <sup>3</sup> astronomye ;   | 11,064 |
| and at the<br>latter<br>are learned<br>astronomers,                  | To knowe þe sternes, þer tente þey <sup>4</sup> leyd,<br>& til Arthur often <sup>5</sup> seyde,<br>pat what þyng he was aboute,<br>He schulde spede wyþoute doute :     | 11,068 |
| who tell Arthur<br>how things will<br>turn out.                      | Wel was pat tyme at Kerlyoun ! <sup>6</sup><br>But sip <sup>7</sup> pat tyme hap hit go down.<br>. ffor þe plente of ffysche & flesche,<br>Of wode & water, hey & gres, | 11,072 |
| Fine times then<br>at Kaerlyon !<br>But it's gone<br>down now.       | Of housyng, & of oþer aysement<br>. By water & londe men broughte & sent.<br>þen seide Arthur he wolde þer holde<br>ffeste wyþ alle his barons bolde,                   | 11,076 |
| Arthur resolves<br>to hold a feast<br>and be crowned<br>at Kaerlyon. | . & at þat selue samenynge<br>. He seyde he wolde be corouned kyng.                                                                                                     |        |

<sup>1</sup> at saynt Aaron was þe bisshop  
see.

<sup>2</sup> did.

<sup>3</sup> þat knewe wele of.

<sup>4</sup> þer wittes.

<sup>5</sup> oft tymes.

<sup>6</sup> Fele was þan a karlioun.

<sup>7</sup> sen.

¶ *Exe quot Reges Comites & Barones venerunt ad coronacionem Arthury.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Messegers <sup>1</sup> he dide sende<br>ffor kynges & ducs, fer & hende,<br>And for erles & barouns,<br>Knyghtes of castels, lordes of touns.<br>A legat fro Rome was sent <sup>2</sup><br>ffor to make þe corounement/;<br>Erchebischopes were þer þre,—<br>At Londone was þenne þe se,<br>pat oper was at Euerwyk,<br>At Kaerlioun was seynt Dubryk/;—<br>Of Scotland king Agusel, <sup>3</sup><br>pat til Arthur was ful lel;<br>Of Murreue þe kyng Vrian,<br>Wyp hym com his sone Ywayn;<br>Stater of Southe Walys al,<br>Of North Walys þe kyng Cadwal,<br>Cador þe Erl of Cornewaille,<br>ffor Arthur hadde many trauaille;<br>Sire Moryond þe Erl of Gloucestre,<br>Sire Mauryce þe Erl of Wyncestre,<br>Gurgoynt þe Erl of Hereforde, <sup>4</sup><br>& sire Beus of Oxenforde, <sup>4</sup><br>Sire Vrgence þe Erl <sup>5</sup> of Bathe, <sup>4</sup><br>pere þe Saxons dide scape;<br>Sire Cursal of Chestre was, <sup>4</sup><br>Of Dorcestre sire Ionatas, <sup>4</sup><br>Emoraund þe <sup>6</sup> Erl of Salesbury, <sup>4</sup> | 11,080<br>[leaf 48, col. 2.]<br><br><br><br><br>11,084<br><br><br><br><br>11,088<br><br><br><br><br>11,092<br><br><br><br><br>11,096<br><br><br><br><br>11,100<br><br><br><br><br>11,104 | Messengers are<br>sent to fetch<br>kings and<br>nobles to<br>Arthur's feast.<br><br>A legate comes<br>from Rome,<br><br>three arch-<br>bishops,<br><br>kings Agusel,<br><br>Urien (and his<br>son Ywayn),<br><br>Stater, and<br>Cadwal,<br><br>Moryond,<br>Maurice,<br>Gurgoynt,<br>Beus,<br>Urgence,<br><br>Cursal,<br>Jonatas,<br>Emoraund, |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Messe essegers*. P. *Mes-sengers*.

<sup>2</sup> See Wace, ii. 100, l. 10,563. He gives the "legation" to Archbishop Dubrice.

<sup>3</sup> *Anguisell*. [leaf 65, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> These lines are from the Arsenal MS. of Wace, 171 B.-L. Wace, ii. 97-8, note (c).

<sup>5</sup> *þat was*.

<sup>6</sup> *Amorand*.

|             |                                             |        |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|--------|
| Kynmar,     | & Kynmar, kyng of Kaunterbury, <sup>1</sup> |        |
| Baruk,      | Sire Baruk, Erl of Circestre, <sup>1</sup>  |        |
| Jugens, and | & sire Iugens of Leycestre, <sup>1</sup>    | 11,108 |
| Ergal.      | Sire Ergal, þe Erl of Warewyk/ <sup>1</sup> |        |
|             | . Hys men come to court ful þyk/.           |        |

### § De filiis Magnatum.

|                |                                                      |        |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Of the mag-    | Of þer childre hit seis þe names ;                   |        |
| nates' sons,   | . To nemne hem here, litel hit <sup>2</sup> frames : | 11,112 |
| come           | þer was Porfodes <sup>3</sup> sone, Donaunt ;        |        |
| Donaunt,       | & sire Regines <sup>4</sup> sone, Elaunt ;           |        |
| Elaunt,        | & Coyles <sup>5</sup> sone highte Keneus ;           |        |
| Keneus,        | & Catel sone, Catellus ;                             | 11,116 |
| Catellus, &c., | . & oper names selcoup to telle,                     |        |
|                | . But hit ys nought on þem to dwelle ;               |        |
|                | pyse serued atte rounde table ;                      |        |
| who serve at   | To rekene þem alle hit ys but fable.                 | 11,120 |
| the Round      | So manye þer were in chaumbre & halle,               |        |
| Table.         | Men schuld yrke to telle þem alle ;                  |        |
| So many there  | . What of þo þat y fond writen, <sup>6</sup>         |        |
| are, it would  | . & of þo þat fewe men wyten, <sup>6</sup>           | 11,124 |
| be a bore to   | . Hit are but fewe þat can þem telle, <sup>6</sup>   |        |
| name them all. | . & þo þat can, þer-to ne wyl dwelle. <sup>6</sup>   |        |

### § Nomina Regum.

|               |                                                     |        |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Of outlandish | . Outlandische <sup>7</sup> kynges þat of hym held, |        |
| kings come    | . þat bowed vntil Arthures scheld,                  | 11,128 |
|               | . þo þat he wan wyþ his hand, <sup>8</sup>          |        |
| Gwylomar,     | Gwylomar þe kyng of Irland, <sup>8</sup>            |        |

<sup>1</sup> These lines are from the Arsenal MS. Wace, 171 B.-L. Wace, ii. 97-8, note (c).

<sup>2</sup> here it ne.

<sup>3</sup> Porsud.

<sup>4</sup> Regin.

<sup>5</sup> Cohel.

<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>7</sup> Outlandes. [leaf 66.]

<sup>8</sup> P. transposes these lines.

|                                                         |                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| þe kyng of Demark, sire Askyl,                          | Askyl,                  |
| Loth of Norweye com hym tyl,                            | 11,132 Loth,            |
| Goneweys þe kyng of Orkeneye,                           | Goneweys,               |
| (By Irland he cam in his weye,)                         |                         |
| Doldan þe kyng of Gouthland,                            | Doldan,                 |
| & Reumarek, <sup>1</sup> kyng of Wentland,              | 11,136 Reumarek,        |
| Of Nauare þe kyng, & of Gascoigne, <sup>2</sup>         | and the king            |
| Sire Liger, þe Erl <sup>3</sup> of Boloyn, <sup>3</sup> | of Navare.              |
| And of fflaundres, þe Erl Holdyn,                       | Of earls, come          |
| Of Chartres, þe Erl Geryn,—                             | Liger,                  |
| He was a man noble & fers,                              | Holdyn,                 |
| Wyþ hym come alle þe dusze pers,—                       | 11,140 Geryn,           |
| Sire Gwyrtard, <sup>4</sup> þe Erl of Peyters,          | Gwyrtard,               |
| & sire Caye, <sup>5</sup> lord of Aungers ;             | 11,144 Caye,            |
| Of Normandie, sire Beduer,                              | Beduer,                 |
| (Of fe þe kynges boteler.)                              |                         |
| & of Manns, <sup>6</sup> þe Erl Borel,                  | Borel,                  |
| Of Bretaigne, sire Ohel ; <sup>7</sup>                  | 11,148 Ohel, and others |
| Sire Ohel & þo of ffraunce, <sup>7</sup>                | of France.              |
| þey were of noble contenance, <sup>7</sup>              |                         |
| Wel clad & arayed y þe richest, <sup>7</sup>            |                         |
| & horsed alle for þe best. <sup>7</sup>                 | 11,152                  |

¶ *Pro quantis comeditibus venerunt ad Curiam  
Arthuri.*

|                                          |               |
|------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Hit was no baron in al Spaigne,          | Every baron   |
| Ne þennes in-til <sup>8</sup> Alemaigne, | from Spain to |
| pat he til Arthures feste ne ferde,      | Germany comes |
| pat doughti was, & þer-of herde ;        | to Arthur's   |
| Somme, hym seluen for to se,             | 11,156 feast. |
|                                          | Some come to  |
|                                          | see Arthur ;  |

<sup>1</sup> *hynmare.*<sup>2</sup> P. transposes these lines.<sup>3</sup> MS. *Erk.* P. *erle.*<sup>4</sup> *witard.*<sup>5</sup> *Key.*<sup>6</sup> þe *Mans.* (Del Mans, *Wace*, ii. 101, l. 10,591.)<sup>7</sup> P. leaves out these lines, though they are in *Wace*, ii. 101, l. 10,593-6.<sup>8</sup> *þien vntill.*

|                                                           |                                                        |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                           | . & to byholde <sup>1</sup> his meyne ;                |        |
|                                                           | . & somme, to se on <sup>2</sup> what wyse             |        |
|                                                           | . þey ordeigned þer faire seruise ;                    | 11,160 |
| some to see the<br>Table Round ;                          | . & some, to se þe Table Rounde                        |        |
|                                                           | . þat neuere byforn þat tyme <sup>3</sup> was founde ; |        |
|                                                           | & somme, to se his faire paleys ;                      |        |
|                                                           | . Somme, to biholde his riche harneys ;                | 11,164 |
| some to see the<br>folk ;                                 | . Somme, þe folk to by-howe ;                          |        |
|                                                           | & somme, his knyghtes for to knowe ;                   |        |
|                                                           | & somme, for his geftes gode ;                         |        |
| some, for<br>Arthur's noble<br>food ;                     | . & somme, for his noble fode ;                        | 11,168 |
| and some, to<br>learn courtesy.                           | & somme come for to haue bailly ;                      |        |
|                                                           | & somme, to lere þere curtesy.                         |        |
| When all the<br>guests are<br>come,                       | ¶ When Arthures court was <sup>4</sup> plener,         |        |
| the earth<br>shakes with the<br>tramp of their<br>horses. | & alle were comen, fer & ner,                          | 11,172 |
|                                                           | þe erpe abouen <sup>5</sup> stired & quok,             |        |
|                                                           | So faste hors & man þer schok :                        |        |
|                                                           | þer was puttynge, pristinge, & pro,                    |        |
|                                                           | Wyþ fot-folk þat come to & fro,                        | 11,176 |
| Those who<br>can't get inns,<br>pitch tents.              | Innes for to teme & take ;                             |        |
| Marshals are<br>busy about.                               | þat non hadde, paulions did make ;                     |        |
|                                                           | þer maistres mareschals ferde aboute,                  |        |
|                                                           | Deliuered innes <sup>6</sup> wyþynne & wyþoute ;       | 11,180 |
|                                                           | . Bordes broughte, cordes & cables,                    |        |
|                                                           | & made manglers <sup>7</sup> to stande in stables.     |        |
| Laddies wash<br>palfreys and<br>steeds,                   | þen mighte men se þe ladies <sup>8</sup> lede          |        |
|                                                           | Many fair palfray & stede                              | 11,184 |
|                                                           | . In mud, in mires, to soille & dasche, <sup>9</sup>   |        |
|                                                           | Sipen in wayers to watre & wasche, <sup>9</sup>        |        |
| tie 'em up,<br>and feed 'em.                              | Syþen to wype, & to manglers teye, <sup>9</sup>        |        |
|                                                           | Hey & prouende byfor þem leye. <sup>9</sup>            | 11,188 |

<sup>1</sup> be holden of.<sup>2</sup> of.<sup>3</sup> ore or þat.<sup>4</sup> Arthure court was att.<sup>5</sup> about.<sup>6</sup> stedes. [leaf 66, col. 2.] (soliers et cambres, Wace, ii. 102, l. 10,616.)<sup>7</sup> mad maniores.<sup>8</sup> þan mot men laddes. (escuiers, Wace, ii. 102, l. 10,619.)<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

- ¶ þenne come chaumberleyys & squiers,  
 Wip riche robes of<sup>1</sup> mani maners,  
 To folde, to preasse, & to pyke,  
 & somme to hange, & som to strike, 11,192  
 Manteles, forours<sup>2</sup> of riche pris,  
 Of meneuer, stranlyng, veyr, &<sup>3</sup> gris;  
 Oper pelure ynowe þer were,<sup>4</sup>  
 . þe names of þem y ne wot what are,<sup>4</sup> 11,196  
 . Lomb or boge, conyng or hare,<sup>4</sup>  
 . Y ne knowe me nought in swylk chaffare.<sup>4</sup>
- þe<sup>5</sup> morn when þe feste schuld be, [leaf 48, bk., col. 2.] On the morn of  
 Come þe Erchebischopes of þer<sup>6</sup> degre; 11,200 the Feast,  
 . Wyþ hym,<sup>7</sup> of Rome cam þe legat;  
 And oper bischopes of mener stat;  
 & right als þe story seys,  
 Dubrice corouned hym in his paleys; 11,204 Archbishop  
 . A legat of Rome & he Dubrice and the  
 . Dide þer þat solempnete. legate of Rome  
 . When he was corouned on þat wyse, crown Arthur  
 To þe kyrke þey zede to þer<sup>8</sup> seruise; 11,208 in his palace.  
 þe two Erchebischopes þat þer war, Then they go  
 þey ledden hym, ys armes vp bar,<sup>8</sup> to church.  
 & sette hym in a riche chayer, Two arch-  
 . þer he scholde his seruise her. 11,212 bishops lead  
 ffoure swerdes of golde were born Arthur to a  
 Wyþ ffoure kynges hym byforn,— chair;  
 þat seruise fel to þer<sup>9</sup> scheld  
 When þat Arthur his feste held,—] 11,216  
 þe kyng of North Walys & of Scotland,  
 & of Southe Walys (þus wryten y fand), four swords are  
 borne before  
 him by  
 the kings of  
 North Wales,  
 Scotland, and  
 South Wales,  
 and duke Cador  
 of Cornwall.

<sup>1</sup> on.<sup>2</sup> forres.<sup>3</sup> strinkled with.<sup>4</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> On þe.<sup>6</sup> Archbishop of his. <sup>7</sup> him.<sup>8</sup> Chascuns un bras li sostenoit, Wace, ii. 103. l. 10,643 (from the MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; whence the next line comes too).<sup>9</sup> fetþ ilk a. (Cist mestiers lor apartenoit, Wace, ii. 104, l. 10,649.)



|                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Dubrice and the Romish legate perform the service. | Of Cornewaille, þe Duk Cador,<br>þe fferþe sward bar he þor;<br>þaw <sup>1</sup> his stat were nought so hey,<br>3it was he man ful wel <sup>2</sup> worþy.<br>Dubrice, þat was a noble prelat,<br>& of Rome þe Legat, <sup>3</sup><br>þat office þey dide, þey myghte best,<br>. Of dignete þey were heyest. | 11,220<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>11,224 |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|

¶ De Regina Guenore.

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Queen Guenore is served by | þe Quen Guenore, on hure syde<br>Was serued of mykel pryde,<br>ffor scheo had byfore y-sent<br>After leuedys & maydens gent<br>þat were of hure owen <sup>4</sup> kynde,<br>& oper of pris þat scheo myght fynde;<br>. Quenes, cuntesses, oper laydys mo, <sup>5</sup><br>Comen to mayntene þe fest þo; <sup>5</sup><br>And in hure chaumbre vpon a pal<br>þey corouned hure wyþ a coronal.<br>When <sup>6</sup> scheo was corouned, þe leuedys<br>Led hire to kyrke of Seint Iulys;<br>þer were þe nonnes of religion,<br>& þer þe Messe schulde <sup>7</sup> be don. | 11,228<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>11,232<br><br><br><br><br><br>11,236<br><br><br><br>11,240 |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

ladies and maidens,

queens and countesses.

She is crowned in her chamber with a coronal,

and then led to St. Julius's church to hear Mass.

¶ De processione eorum.

|                                      |                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Guenore and Arthur are crowned sepa- | To ben a twynne, <sup>8</sup> so þey ches,<br>ffor to departe þer mykel pres; |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> þof.

<sup>2</sup> man most.

<sup>3</sup> Dubric, qui de Rome ert légas,  
Et de Charlion ert prélas.

Wace, ii. 104, l. 10,658-9.  
See p. 387, n.<sup>2</sup> above.

<sup>4</sup> hir awen. [leaf 66, back.]

<sup>5</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>6</sup> with.

<sup>7</sup> þer suld hir messe.

<sup>8</sup> þer to be.

- . þey myghte nought be in o stede,  
 . ffor folk vnryde, & mykel crede.<sup>1</sup>  
 ffoure ladies wente þe same assise  
 . As þe kynges dide Arþures seruise,  
 ffour white douues byforn hure bare ;—  
 þe ladies, kynges wyues ware ;—  
 & after þem come oþer leuedys  
 Richely cled in pourpre & bys,  
 . In cloþes of golde þat schon so schene,<sup>2</sup>  
 . & opere in scarlet & in grene,<sup>2</sup>  
 Alle were þey richely y-dight ;  
 . þer was neuere seyen swyche a<sup>3</sup> sight !  
<sup>6</sup> . I trowe þer were many doude<sup>4</sup>  
 . þat proudly spak for noble schroude ;  
 . Ilkon<sup>5</sup> oþer faste byheld,  
 . And of þe faire, mykel was of teld.<sup>6</sup>
- 11,244 rarely because  
of the rough  
crowd.
- 11,248 Four kings'  
wives bear four  
white doves  
before her; and  
after them,  
come ladies,  
in purple, gold,  
11,252 scarlet, and  
green.
- 11,256 Many a dowd  
speaks proudly  
for her noble  
shroud.

## De Cantu ad Missam.

[leaf 49.]

- When þe Procession was gon,  
 þe Messe bygan sone anon :  
 þer myghte men se fair samninge  
 Of þo clerkes þat best couþe synge,  
 Wyp treble, mene, & burdoun,  
 Of mani on was ful swete soun ;  
 Of þo þat songe heye & lowe,  
 & þo þat couþe org[a]nes blowe,
- 11,260 After the pro-  
cession, Mass  
begins.
- 11,264 Clerks sing  
sweetly, treble,  
tenor, and bass ;
- and blow  
organs.

<sup>1</sup> *krede* (crowd). A.-S. *cread*, a company, troop. *Lye*, in *Bosworth*.

<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines. Wace has others, ii. 105, instead of them.

<sup>3</sup> & gay to behold in.

<sup>4</sup> Common dowdy girl or woman. See the *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 312.

If she be never so fowle a *dowde*,  
 with hir kelles and hir pynnes  
 The shrew hir self can shrowde,

both hir chekys and hir chyn-  
 nes ;

She can make it fulle prowde  
 with japes and with gynnes,  
 Hir hede as hy as a clowde.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *Ilkon*.

<sup>6-6</sup> For these four lines the Petyt MS. has,—

*Grete presse was at þe procession.*  
*Ilkon prouderre þan þe lion.*

|                 |                                                       |        |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                 | . Inow þer was of menestralcie,                       |        |
|                 | . & of song gret <sup>1</sup> melodye.                | 11,268 |
|                 | þer myght men se folk come & go                       |        |
|                 | To þe kyrkes, boþe to & fro,                          |        |
| Knights listen, | Of knyghtes & [of] <sup>2</sup> squiers bolde         |        |
| look at the     | To listne song, leuedis <sup>3</sup> byholde ;        | 11,272 |
| ladies,         | ffro þat o kyrke to þe oper þey ran ; <sup>4</sup>    |        |
| and run from    | Where was þe beste, wyste no man ; <sup>4</sup>       |        |
| one church to   | At neyþer þem þoughte þey dwelled longe, <sup>4</sup> |        |
| another         | Ne nought were ful to herø þe songe ; <sup>4</sup>    | 11,276 |
|                 | ȝyf hit had ben at her pay,                           |        |
| to hear the     | þat song had lasted al þat day.                       |        |
| singing :       | ¶ When þe Messes were boþe done, <sup>5</sup>         |        |
| they want it to | . & homward þey were al bone,                         | 11,280 |
| last all day.   | þe kyng dide of his atir <sup>6</sup> þar             |        |
| After Mass,     | . þat he vntil þe kirke bar,                          |        |
|                 | & tok anoper of lasse peys ;                          |        |
| Arthur and      | þe quene dide þe same weys ;                          | 11,284 |
| Guenore         | þeir heuy atir þey dide of boþe, <sup>4</sup>         |        |
|                 | & in lightere dide þem clope. <sup>4</sup>            |        |
| change their    | þe kyng com vntil his paleys                          |        |
| heavy clothes   | & sat atte þe mete þat ilke weys ;                    | 11,288 |
|                 | þe quene vntil anoper ȝede,                           |        |
| for lighter     | & þe leuedis wiþ hure gan lede :                      |        |
| ones ;          | But custume was whilom in <sup>7</sup> Troye,         |        |
| he goes to one  | þat when þey made feste of ioye,                      | 11,292 |
| feast with his  | Men to-gydere schuld <sup>8</sup> go to mete,         |        |
| men, and she    | þe ladys by þem self schuld <sup>8</sup> ete ;        |        |
| to another with | þe Bretons had þe selue vsage, <sup>4</sup>           |        |
| her ladies,     | . þey were of þe Troiens lynage ; <sup>4</sup>        | 11,296 |
| after the       | . þat ilke vsage was at þer feste,                    |        |
| manner of       |                                                       |        |
| Troy,           |                                                       |        |
| which the Bri-  |                                                       |        |
| tons adopted.   |                                                       |        |

<sup>1</sup> faire.<sup>2</sup> of.<sup>3</sup> liste songe ladies to.

[leaf 65, back, col 2.]

<sup>4</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> were don.<sup>6</sup> tire.<sup>7</sup> Som tyme was custom of.<sup>8</sup> suld.

. No womman cam among þer geste;  
 þe wommen wyþoute men schuld be,  
 But seruiturs of here meyne. 11,300

§ De nobile Conuiuio & seruientibus.

þe kyng was set vp at þe des, Arthur sits on  
 þer was in ful<sup>1</sup> mykel pres, the dais;  
 But aboute hym þe lordynges sat,  
 Ilkon after his astat.<sup>2</sup> 11,304  
 Kay was styward, chosen of alle Kay is steward,  
 . To serue byforn þe kyng in halle;  
 Hys cloþyng was god<sup>3</sup> & fyn, clad in ermine,  
 & þe pelure of eremyn;<sup>4</sup> 11,308  
 Wyþ hym serued byfore þe kyng  
 A þousand y þe same cloþyng;<sup>5</sup> and has 1,000  
 Out of the kechene serued sire Kay, servitors clad  
 & alle his felawes þat day. 11,312 like him.  
 § Sire Beduer on þat oþer partie, Beduer is  
 He serued of þe botelerye;<sup>6</sup> butler,  
 Wyþ hym was clad in eremin<sup>4</sup> has 1,000  
 A þousand þat serued of<sup>7</sup> þe wyn: 11,316 ermine-clad  
 Was þer non þat serue bad,<sup>8</sup> servants too,  
 But he in riche pelure were clad.<sup>6</sup>  
 þe kynges coupe sire Beduer bar, [leaf 40, col. 2.]  
 & zede byforn al þat þer war; 11,320 and bears  
 After hym come alle þe route Arthur's cup.  
 þat serued þe lordes<sup>9</sup> alle aboute.  
 § þe quene was serued ful richely,  
 Hure seriauntz were assigned<sup>10</sup> redy 11,324 Guenore is  
 also served richly

<sup>1</sup> about him þe.

<sup>2</sup> ilk a lord after his state.

<sup>3</sup> riche. (Vestus d'un vermel sig-  
 laton, Wace, ii. 107, l. 10,742.)

<sup>4</sup> pelore of hermyne.

<sup>5</sup> vestu d'ermine, Wace, l. 10,745.

<sup>6</sup> boterie.

<sup>7</sup> þat br. uht.

<sup>8</sup> The l'etyt MS. leaves out these  
 lines, but they are in Wace, ii. 108,  
 l. 10,755-6.

<sup>9</sup> barons.

<sup>10</sup> hir sei uantz were signed.

[leaf 67.]

|                  |                                                                   |        |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                  | In alle offices for to serue,                                     |        |
| with carvers,    | & byfore þe ladys kerue.                                          |        |
| coloured         | Many a vessel was <i>per</i> riche,                               |        |
| vessels,         | Of sere colours, nought alle y-liche;                             | 11,328 |
| many meats       | Of metes many manere <i>seruise</i> ,                             |        |
| and drinks.      | & seer drynkes of <sup>1</sup> <i>þat</i> wyse.                   |        |
| I can't tell you | Al þe nobleye couthe y nought telle,                              |        |
| all the grand    | Ne y naue no stounde <sup>2</sup> <i>þer-on</i> to dwelle,        | 11,332 |
| things, or       | þe names to seye of þe richesse,                                  |        |
| name the bold    | Ne of þe men of prowesse;                                         |        |
| men at this      | <sup>3</sup> Was <i>þer</i> no lond in al þe werd,                |        |
| feast.           | Of gode knyghtes so mykel of herd. <sup>3</sup>                   | 11,336 |
| However high-    | Was <i>þer</i> no knyght of so hey blod,                          |        |
| born a knight    | Ne so mykel hadde of wordles <sup>4</sup> god,                    |        |
| is,              | <i>þat</i> <i>þer</i> fore scholde be holde in <sup>5</sup> pris, |        |
|                  | But <sup>6</sup> he in dede were proued prys;                     | 11,340 |
|                  | pries y-proued atte þe leste;                                     |        |
|                  | þen was he alosed at þe feste,                                    |        |
| he gets no       | þen schulde <sup>7</sup> his armes <i>þat</i> men knew,           |        |
| honour unless    | & his clopyng [be] al on hew;                                     | 11,344 |
| he has been      | þe same queintise his armes had,                                  |        |
| proved thrice    | In <i>þat</i> same schuld <sup>7</sup> he be clad;                |        |
| in fight.        | & his wyf clad y þe same colour,                                  |        |
| Then his arms    | ffor hure lord was man of honur.                                  | 11,348 |
| and clothing     | zyf on <sup>8</sup> were doughti, & sengle man,                   |        |
| are all of one   | þen schuld <sup>7</sup> he chese hym a lemman;                    |        |
| hue,             | Elles schold <sup>7</sup> he nought be byloued                    |        |
| and his wife's   |                                                                   |        |
| too.             |                                                                   |        |
| If he's un-      |                                                                   |        |
| wedded, he       |                                                                   |        |
| must choose a    |                                                                   |        |
| sweetheart.      |                                                                   |        |

<sup>1</sup> *sere drinkes on.*<sup>2</sup> *Ne myght stonde.*<sup>3-3</sup> *Ne þe curteisie ne þe honour  
of cristiente þer was þe flour.*Wace (ii. 109, l. 10,772-82) puts it  
better for England:—De biax homes et de noblèce,  
Et de plenté et de ricèce,  
De cortoisie et d'onor,  
Portoit Engleterre la flor.  
De tos les resnes environ,  
Et sor tos cels que nous savon.Plus erent cortois et vaillant,  
Néis li povre paisant  
Que chevalier en autres regnes;  
Et autre si erent les fenes.<sup>4</sup> *werldes.*<sup>5</sup> *suld be holden of.*<sup>6</sup> *Bod.* (The treble proof is from  
the MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3-3</sup>. Colb. of  
Wace. See De Lincy's edition, ii.  
110, note (a).)<sup>7</sup> *suld.*<sup>8</sup> *if anc.*

|                                      |        |                 |
|--------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| But he had ben in bataille proued.   | 11,352 |                 |
| po leuedys pat were holden chast,    |        | Those ladies    |
| . ffor nopyng wolde do no wast,      |        | who are chaste  |
| po leuedis were clad al in on,       |        | are clad all in |
| . & by þeir cloþyng men knewe ilkon. | 11,356 | one colour.     |

¶ De diuersis Ludis ibidem.

|                                                 |        |                  |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------|
| When þey had eten, & schulde <sup>1</sup> rise, |        | After eating,    |
| Ilk man dight hym on þat wyse                   |        |                  |
| pat he best couþe inne playe. <sup>2</sup>      |        | they go to their |
| In to þe feld þey tok her <sup>3</sup> waye,    | 11,360 | games :          |
| & parted hem in stedes sers                     |        |                  |
| To pleye ilkon on þer maners :                  |        |                  |
| Somme iusted, pat couþe & myght,                |        | joust,           |
| ffor to schewe þer stedes wyght ; <sup>4</sup>  | 11,364 |                  |
| Somme skipte, & keste þe ston,                  |        | cast the stone,  |
| & somme skirmed <sup>5</sup> ful god won,       |        | fence,           |
| Dartes schoten, launces cast,                   |        | dart,            |
| . & po þat couþe, wrastled <sup>6</sup> fast.   | 11,368 | wrestle, &c.     |
| Ilkon pleide þe gamen þey couþe,                |        |                  |
| . pat mest had vsed in his zouþe ;              |        |                  |
| pat best dide in his pleyng,                    |        |                  |
| He was brought by-fore þe kyng,                 |        | The best men     |
| & þe kyng gaf hym mede,                         | 11,372 | get prizes from  |
| pat he was paied er pat he zede.                |        | Arthur.          |
| ¶ þe ladies vpon þe walles stey                 |        |                  |
| ffor to biholde al þer pley ;                   |        | Ladies look on   |
| Who so hadde lemman þan <sup>7</sup> in place,  | 11,376 | from the walls,  |
| Toward hym turned boþe eye & face ;             |        | and look at      |
| . On boþe sides ilk oþer byhelde,               |        | their lovers.    |

<sup>1</sup> suld.

<sup>2</sup> þat he couth in play.

<sup>3</sup> vnto þe felde he toke his.

<sup>4</sup> lyght.

<sup>6</sup> wrestrid. [leaf 67, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> skirmed. (alèrent escremir,  
[faire des armes, se battre], Wace,

l. 10,807.

<sup>7</sup> þore.

|                               |                                                     |                          |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Jugglers are there,           | . po on þe walles, þey in þe fælde. <sup>1</sup>    | 11,380                   |
|                               | Iogelours were þere ynowe,                          | [leaf 40, back, col. 1.] |
| and minstrels                 | . pat þer queyntise forþ <sup>2</sup> drowe;        |                          |
| with clarions,                | <sup>3</sup> Many mynestrales porow out þe toun,    |                          |
| tabours,                      | Som blewe trompe & clarioun, <sup>3</sup>           | 11,384                   |
| fiddles,                      | Harpes, pypes, & tabours,                           |                          |
| cymbals, &c.                  | ffypeles, sitoles, sautours,                        |                          |
|                               | Belles, chymbes, & symfan, <sup>4</sup>             |                          |
|                               | & opere y-nowe, þat nemne y ne can; <sup>5</sup>    | 11,388                   |
| Singers sing,                 | Gestours, singers, þat merye sang, <sup>6</sup>     |                          |
|                               | . So gret murþe was, þat ouer al rang; <sup>7</sup> |                          |
| Fablers fable.                | Dysours y-nowe tolde þem fables,                    |                          |
| Men play at dice,             | & somme pleide wyþ des & <sup>8</sup> tables,       | 11,392                   |
| hazard, and                   | & somme pleide at hasard fast,                      |                          |
|                               | & lore & wonne wiþ <sup>9</sup> chaunce of cast;    |                          |
|                               | Somme þat wolde nought of þe tabler,                |                          |
| chess, with knight and rook,  | Drowe forþe meyne for <sup>10</sup> þe cheker       | 11,396                   |
|                               | . Wyþ draughtes queinte of knight & rok,            |                          |
|                               | & oper sleyghtes ilk oper byswok; <sup>11</sup>     |                          |
| crying "check" at every mate. | At ilka mattying <sup>12</sup> þei seide 'chek;'    |                          |
|                               | pat most þer loste, sat y þe blek. <sup>13</sup>    | 11,400                   |

<sup>1</sup> The next 20 lines are abridged from the Wace MSS., du Roi, 73, Cangé; du Roi, 7515<sup>3-3</sup>. Colb.; de l'Ars. 171, B.-L.

<sup>2</sup> forþe.

<sup>3-3</sup> *Mynstrals many with dyuers glew.*

*souns of bemes þat men blew.*

<sup>4</sup> *Chymes & synfan.* (Monacordes, cymbes, chorons, Wace, ii. 112, l. 10,832.)

<sup>5</sup> *Oper Inouh neuen .I. ne kan.*

<sup>6</sup> *Sangsters þat myry song.*

<sup>7</sup> *sounde of glew ouer att rong.*

<sup>8</sup> *deez at.*

<sup>9</sup> *lost & wan bi.*

<sup>10</sup> *of.*

<sup>11</sup> *with grete sleiht ilk oper snoke.*

<sup>12</sup> *matyng.*

<sup>13</sup> *most les sat in his nek.*

## § De donis Arthury.

- þre daies þe feste sat<sup>1</sup>—  
 I trowe neuere non was lyke<sup>2</sup> þat—  
 & when hit cam to þe<sup>3</sup> Wodnesday,  
 þat þe people schuld parte, to wende þer<sup>4</sup> way,  
 þe kyng þem gaf his giftes riche, 11,405  
 þo þat til his seruise were briche,  
 & for þer seruises held hem at fees;<sup>5</sup>  
 & somme he gaf burwes & cites; 11,408  
 Bischopes & abbotes, auaunced þer<sup>6</sup> rent  
 Er þan þey fro his court[e] went;  
 And opere þat of strange landes<sup>7</sup> were,  
 þat for worschip were come þere,<sup>8</sup> 11,412  
 He gaf þem stede,<sup>9</sup> & coupes of golde,  
 & opere iuels, þe beste on<sup>10</sup> molde;  
 Somme gaf he hauberks, & somme grehoundes,  
 Somme riche robes, wyþ<sup>11</sup> many poundes, 11,416  
 Somme manteles wyþ veyr & grys,  
 & somme masers of riche pris,  
 & somme helmes, & somme<sup>12</sup> hauberkes;  
 & gode palefrays he gaf to clerkes; 11,420  
 Bowes, arewes, he gaf to<sup>13</sup> archers,  
 Rounsyes<sup>14</sup> gode vnto squiers;<sup>15</sup>  
 Som gaf he plates & swerdes<sup>16</sup> of plyght, 11,423  
 Somme gyrdles & knyues ful<sup>17</sup> richely dight;

After three  
days' feasting,  
people go,

and Arthur  
gives them  
gifts:

burghs and  
cities,  
rent,

steeds, gold  
cups,  
jewels,  
greyhounds,  
robes,  
furred mantles,

hauberks,  
palfreys,

bows,  
hack-horses,

armour,  
knives,

<sup>1</sup> lasted þe feste.

<sup>2</sup> was neuer non as.

<sup>3</sup> it com.

<sup>4</sup> folk suld parte a.

<sup>5</sup> seruise held þer fees. [lf. 67, bk.]

<sup>6</sup> Abbot & bisshop auanced his.

<sup>7</sup> þat of oper londes.

<sup>8</sup> for luf com.

<sup>9</sup> gaf stedes.

<sup>10</sup> non richere about.

<sup>11</sup> worth.

<sup>12</sup> helmes &.

<sup>13</sup> & arwes he gaf.

<sup>14</sup> Runces (? for Wace's *chactours*,  
hunters, ii. 115, l. 10,890.)

<sup>15</sup> The Petyt MS. adds,—

*som he gaf hauberions.*

*som plates & som aktens.*

<sup>16</sup> som he gaf knyues.

<sup>17</sup> And som suerdes.



|                  |                                                  |        |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------|
| jugs, basins,    | . Somune gaf he ewer & basyn, <sup>1</sup>       |        |
| ermine.          | . & somme pelure of fyn eremin. <sup>1</sup>     |        |
| To Tellers of    | . Vnto disours þat telde þem gestes,             |        |
| Tales he gives   | . Gaf he cloþes, or <sup>2</sup> wylde bestes,   | 11,428 |
| clothes, or      | Lyouns, lepards, þat wold þem take, <sup>3</sup> |        |
| lions, leopards, | Beres & apes boþe white & blake; <sup>3</sup>    |        |
| bears, and apes. | Was þer non ought worthy                         |        |
|                  | þat he ne gaf hym ful bleþely,                   | 11,432 |
|                  | . & after þat his astat was lyft,                |        |
|                  | . Als he rewarded hym of <sup>4</sup> gyft.      |        |

¶ De Nunciis Lucii Inperatoris Rome.

|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                     |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| As the gifts are<br>in giving,                                                    | Ryght als þis giftes were in gyuyng, <sup>5</sup>                                                                                                   |        |
|                                                                                   | & alle y-serued, knyght & kyng,                                                                                                                     | 11,436 |
| and Arthur is<br>on the dais<br>with all the<br>kings and<br>nobles round<br>him, | Arthur sat [vp]on <sup>6</sup> þe des,<br>And aboute hym his mykel pres<br>Of kynges, dukes, erles, <sup>7</sup> & barouns, [leaf 49, bk., col. 2.] |        |
|                                                                                   | . & of straunge lordes <sup>8</sup> & Bretons,                                                                                                      | 11,440 |
|                                                                                   | . & schulde haue taken leue, & went,                                                                                                                |        |
| come twelve<br>messengers<br>from the Em-<br>peror of Rome,                       | Twelue messegers til hym were sent<br>ffro þe Emperour of Rome :                                                                                    |        |
|                                                                                   | Two to-gydere, faire þey come                                                                                                                       | 11,444 |
|                                                                                   | In to þe halle, Arthur byforn,                                                                                                                      |        |
| with olive<br>branches in<br>their hands,                                         | Wyþ olyue braunches in handes born,<br>Wyþ softe pas & [fulle] seine <sup>9</sup>                                                                   |        |
|                                                                                   | Gret þei Arthur & his meyne :                                                                                                                       | 11,448 |
|                                                                                   | þey seide þei were "messegers,<br>" Comen in pes & in faire maners                                                                                  |        |

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. puts these two lines after l. 11,428, but varies them thus :—

*som gaf he pelore of hermyn.  
som lawour of siluer with bacyn.*

<sup>2</sup> he gaf cloþes of.

<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>4</sup> so he rewarded him with.

<sup>5</sup> gyffyn.

<sup>6</sup> opon.

<sup>7</sup> Of kynges erles.

<sup>8</sup> of vnkouth knyghtes.

<sup>9</sup> fulle seine (or seme).

|                                              |        |                  |
|----------------------------------------------|--------|------------------|
| " Out of Rome, þenne <sup>1</sup> ful fer,   |        | and with a       |
| " ffro þe Emperour Lucius Iber, <sup>2</sup> | 11,452 | letter from the  |
| " pat ys oure lord lef & <sup>3</sup> dere ; |        | Emperor          |
| " By vs he sendes his lettres here,          |        | Lucius,          |
| " & þe comaundeþ on alle weys                |        | who bids Arthur  |
| " pat þou do as þis lettre seys."            | 11,456 | do as the letter |
| þe lettre in his hand þey leyde ;            |        | says :           |
| List now what þe lettre seyde :              |        | and it says,     |

¶ *fforma litere Lucii Inperatoris.*

|                                                         |        |                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------------|
| " Lucius, pat Rome had <sup>4</sup> in baillie,         |        | "Lucius Em-       |
| " & ouer þe Romains haþ <sup>5</sup> maistrie,          | 11,460 | peror of Rome,    |
| " Sendeþ til Arthur þe Bretoun                          |        | to Arthur the     |
| " Als on of his enemys feloun.                          |        | Briton, his foe ! |
| " Me merueilles mykel, & ilka Romayn,                   |        | I marvel at       |
| " & merueillyng, we haue <sup>6</sup> disdeyn           | 11,464 | and disdain       |
| " pat þou dar bere þe so heye,                          |        | your presump-     |
| " Ageyns a Romayn open þyn eye. <sup>7</sup>            |        | tion in opening   |
| " Y wondre at the bost þou makest, <sup>8</sup>         |        | your eye          |
| " & at wham þou conseil takest, <sup>9</sup>            | 11,468 | against a         |
| " Ageyn Rome to reyse strif,                            |        | Roman,            |
| " þe whiles þou wost o Romayn has lyf. <sup>10</sup>    |        | and in raising    |
| " þou gaf þy self a sory chek,                          |        | strife against    |
| " Ageyns Rome <sup>11</sup> to reise cuntek,            | 11,472 | Rome,             |
| " pat al erthe þorow dom hit <sup>12</sup> demes,       |        | the judge of all  |
| " & as hed of al þe word hit <sup>13</sup> zemes !      |        | the earth !       |
| " þou wot nought, zit wist shal hit be,                 | 11,475 |                   |
| " Ne nought hast seyn, but þou schalt <sup>14</sup> se, |        | You shall see     |

<sup>1</sup> *þien.* [leaf 67, back, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *ybere.*

<sup>3</sup> *lord & our.*

<sup>4</sup> *has.*

<sup>5</sup> *þe.*

<sup>6</sup> *meruailand we haf.*

<sup>7</sup> *ons open þin le.*

<sup>8</sup> *of þe bost þou makes.*

<sup>9</sup> *whom þou conseile takes.*

<sup>10</sup> *Whils þou wote a romeyn o lyfe.*

<sup>11</sup> *agayn Romeyns.*

<sup>12</sup> *þorh dome.*

<sup>13</sup> *& hede of all þe world it.*

<sup>14</sup> *nouht þou sawe bot þou sañt.*

what it is to  
wrath Rome !

How dare you  
keep back our  
tribute, and  
rob us of our  
lands ?

What right  
have you to  
them ?

Do you think  
the wolf will  
flee for the  
wether,

or the grey-  
hound for the  
hare ?

Not so !

Our ancestor  
Julius Cæsar  
won Britain ;  
and we've  
taken tribute of  
it 400 years.

But now you  
won't pay it ;  
and you've

slain our baron,  
Frolle, and  
taken France  
and Flanders !

" How gret hit ys to wrathe Rome  
" pat al þe werd schal iustice &<sup>1</sup> dome !  
" Ageyn kynde hastou gon !  
" Reson ne mesure hastou non ! 11,480  
" Wheþen come þou ? what þyng þe boldes ?  
" Oure truage takes, & has, & holdes,  
" Oure landes vs reues as þou wyldes,  
" & til vs no þyng þou [ne] zeldes ! 11,484  
" What right hastow þer vnto ?  
" py folye hit ys þat þou didest so !  
" ȝyf þey may longe wyþ þe so leue,  
" pat we þorow force þe þem nought reue, 11,488  
" þen may þou seye, & scorne, þe wheþer<sup>2</sup>  
" pat þe wolf fleþ<sup>3</sup> for þe weþer ;  
" & ȝit þat he so longe slep  
" pat durste nought wake to asaille a schep,  
" Or þat a gôt þe wolf<sup>4</sup> dyd dare, 11,493  
" & þe grebound<sup>5</sup> fledde for þe hare.  
" But swilk a þyng may nought bitide !  
" Namore schal hit on oure syde ! 11,496  
" Oure auncestre Iulius Sesar  
" Wan Bretayne (art þou nought war ?)  
" And tok trewage þer-of longe— [leaf 50.]  
" ffour hundred ȝer we gon hit fonge,— 11,500  
" & of opere ildes aboute ;  
" But now þorow þe we are wyþoute.  
" ȝut hastou don vs more vilte  
" þan al pat los<sup>6</sup> we telle to þe, 11,504  
" pat þou ffrolle, our baroun,<sup>7</sup> slow,  
" ffraunce & fflaundes<sup>8</sup> from vs þou drow !  
" ffor þou hast of Rome no doute,  
" Ne til his lordschip wil þou loute, 11,508

<sup>1</sup> world iustise with.

<sup>2</sup> skorne & say to where.

<sup>3</sup> woulf fles. (lions fuit, Wace,  
l. 10,948.)

<sup>4</sup> goot þe woulf. [leaf 68.]

<sup>5</sup> lupars, Wace, ii. 117, l. 10,950.

<sup>6</sup> þe losse.

<sup>7</sup> seruant.

<sup>8</sup> et Bretagne, Wace, l. 10,964.

|                                                             |                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| " Y make þe somouns vnto Rome,                              | I summon you<br>to Rome                                                         |
| " & comaunde þe þat þou come,                               |                                                                                 |
| " ffolewyng atte <sup>1</sup> nexte heruest. <sup>2</sup>   | next harvest,                                                                   |
| " Hit schal nought helpe cheson to kest; 11,512             | without excuse,<br>to amend your<br>unright.                                    |
| " But com, & amende <sup>3</sup> þyn vnright,               |                                                                                 |
| " þat þou so slowe ffrolle oure knyght,                     |                                                                                 |
| " & als amende on oþer weye                                 |                                                                                 |
| " Of þat we conne <sup>4</sup> to þe seye. 11,516           |                                                                                 |
| " But ȝif hit be so þou make delay,                         | If you don't<br>come,                                                           |
| " þat þou nelt <sup>5</sup> come at þy day,                 |                                                                                 |
| " Ne come <sup>6</sup> til oure comaundement,               |                                                                                 |
| " þan telly þe outrely <sup>7</sup> schent! 11,520          | I'll ruin you<br>utterly;                                                       |
| " ffor, þorow force, ffraunce y schal <sup>8</sup> þe reue; | take France<br>from you, and<br>leave you no<br>foot of Britain.                |
| " Of Bretayne nought o fote byleue! <sup>9</sup>            |                                                                                 |
| " Y trowe <sup>10</sup> nought þou wilt abide,              |                                                                                 |
| " & ȝyf þou do, þou schalt þe hide, 11,524                  | If you resist,                                                                  |
| " & siker <sup>11</sup> on þys half þe se                   |                                                                                 |
| " þou schalt nought <sup>12</sup> dur schewe þe to me;      |                                                                                 |
| " & ȝyf þou on þys half bes, <sup>13</sup>                  |                                                                                 |
| " At my comyng <sup>14</sup> for soþe þou fles, 11,528      |                                                                                 |
| " þou schal nought tapice <sup>15</sup> a night to slepe    |                                                                                 |
| " þat y ne schal do þe sterte & lepe,                       |                                                                                 |
| " & brynge þe to Rome in bondes, <sup>16</sup>              | I'll bring you<br>to Rome in<br>bondes!                                         |
| " & leue þe þer in Romaynes hondes! <sup>17</sup> 11,532    |                                                                                 |
| <b>A</b> t þat word was noise & cry                         | The Britons<br>shout for wrath,<br>and swear<br>they'll hang the<br>messengers. |
| Of þe Bretons þat stoden ney;                               |                                                                                 |
| Oþes þey swore þat "þey schold deye" <sup>18</sup>          |                                                                                 |

<sup>1</sup> folowand at þis.

<sup>2</sup> a mi-aost, *Wace*, ii. 118, l. 10,969.

<sup>3</sup> mend.

<sup>4</sup> kon more.

<sup>5</sup> & wilt not.

<sup>6</sup> bewe (bow).

<sup>7</sup> tell .i. þe þat þou ert.

<sup>8</sup> .i. with.

<sup>9</sup> a fote leue.

<sup>10</sup> wene.

<sup>11</sup> I. trowe nouht.

<sup>12</sup> þou saff.

<sup>13</sup> halfe bees.

<sup>14</sup> if .i. kon.

<sup>15</sup> tapir (to crouch), *Wace*, ii. 119,

l. 10,985.

<sup>16</sup> bandes.

<sup>17</sup> þe in þe Romeyn handes.

<sup>18</sup> Que cil seront deshonoré, *Wace*,  
l. 11,993.

- But Arthur  
says the mes-  
sengers shall  
take no ill :
- their message is  
their lord's.
- Arthur then  
consults his  
wisest barons,
- in the Giant's  
Tower.
- " pat broughte þat lettre of vylenye ! 11,536  
 " & for his loue þat sente þow hyder,  
 " ȝe schul ben honged alle to-gyder !"  
 . Lytel letted þey nadde be slayn or hirt ;<sup>1</sup>  
 But Arthur þenne anon vp stirt : 11,540  
 " Bretouns !" he saide, " holdeþ<sup>2</sup> ȝow stille !  
 " þe messegers schul haue non ylle !  
 . " Ne neyþer ille haue ne<sup>3</sup> here,  
 . " But come & go in faire manere ; 11,544  
 " Messegers of Rome þey are,  
 " In pes þey come, so schul þey fare ;  
 " þer message þat þei haue seyð,  
 " A lord þey haue, on þem hit leyð." 11,548  
 When þe noyse<sup>4</sup> was wel pesed,  
 & eft hadde þeir sittynge<sup>5</sup> sesed,  
 þe kyng tok wyþ hym two or þre  
 Of his wysest barouns priue, 11,552  
 . pat best coupe conseilte til honour ;  
 Wyþ hym þey ȝede vntil a tour,—  
 þe name þer-of, hit was in haunt  
 As y fond writen, þe Tour Geaunt— 11,556  
 þer sat Arthur, & þey byside,  
 To conseilte how myghte best bytide.

¶ Dicta Cadoris Cornubye. [leaf 50, col. 2.]

- Earl Cador of  
Cornwall  
says, " I've  
often feared
- that idleness  
has made the  
Britons  
courageless.
- Sire Cador spak firste, & low,<sup>6</sup>  
 & seyde, " sire kyng, y schal sey ȝow : 11,560  
 " Often in studie haue y ben,  
 " And in gret drede ay bytwen,  
 " pat þorow ildelnesse<sup>7</sup> of pes  
 " Are Bretons feble & herteles ; 11,564

<sup>1</sup> letted þat men þam hirt.  
[leaf 68, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> hold.

<sup>3</sup> non ille haf non ille here.

<sup>4</sup> dynne.

<sup>5</sup> þei had þer setes.

<sup>6</sup> lowh.

<sup>7</sup> Idelnes.

|                                                        |        |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------|
| " ffor Ildelnesse <sup>1</sup> norischeþ but iuel ;    |        | It leads to      |
| " Temptacion of flesche & <sup>2</sup> of þe deucl ;   |        | temptation of    |
| " Idelnesse makeþ man ful <sup>3</sup> slow,           |        | the flesh and    |
| " & dop prowesse falle right low ; <sup>4</sup>        | 11,568 | the devil,       |
| " Idelnesse norischeþ lecherye,                        |        | cowardice,       |
| " & dop vs tente to such <sup>5</sup> folye ;          |        | lechery,         |
| " Ildelnesse <sup>1</sup> & long rest,                 |        |                  |
| " zougþe in wast away wil kest,                        | 11,572 | waste,           |
| " & dop men tente to folye fables,                     |        |                  |
| " Tyl hasardrie, des, <sup>6</sup> & tables.           |        | dice and gam-    |
| " We haue now al þis fyue zer                          |        | ing.             |
| " Lyued in lechours <sup>7</sup> mester,               | 11,576 | For five years   |
| " & <sup>8</sup> þorow rest & such soiour              |        | we've lived in   |
| " Haue we lorn gret <sup>9</sup> honour.               |        | lechery,         |
| " A long while <sup>10</sup> þen haue we slept,        |        | lost honour,     |
| " pat noman wakyng <sup>11</sup> vs kept ;             | 11,580 | and slept.       |
| " But, þanked be God <sup>12</sup> & oure lady,        |        |                  |
| " Now ar we wakned a party ; <sup>13</sup>             |        | But, thank       |
| " Som grace is ronne in Romayns herte <sup>14</sup>    |        | God!             |
| " pat þey chalange vs so smerte, <sup>15</sup>         | 11,584 | We're waked      |
| " Vs to bynime oure landes <sup>16</sup> & fees,       |        | up now !         |
| " & oure conqueste of <sup>17</sup> oper contres.      |        | The Romans       |
| " zyf Romayns be so coraious                           |        | have claimed     |
| " pat þey wil do as þey send vs,                       | 11,588 | our lands !      |
| " zit schul þe Bretons wynne þem los                   |        |                  |
| " Of Romayns þat in Rome gos ;                         |        | If they try to   |
| " ffor longe pes louede y neuere,                      |        | take 'em,        |
| " Ne nought ne schal, þey y lyue <sup>18</sup> euere." |        | we'll beat them. |
| ¶ þenne spak Wawayn þe curteys :                       | 11,593 | I don't like a   |
| " Merueillike, Cador, þou seys !                       |        | long peace."     |
|                                                        |        | Wawayn the       |
|                                                        |        | courteous says   |

<sup>1</sup> *Idelnes* [no *ffor*.]

<sup>2</sup> & *mykett* temptation.

<sup>3</sup> *mas* man right. <sup>4</sup> *loun*.

<sup>5</sup> *dos* vs tent to suilk.

<sup>6</sup> to *deez*.

<sup>7</sup> *used* rioterie. [leaf 68, back.]

<sup>8</sup> *pat*. <sup>9</sup> *haf* we lost grete.

<sup>10</sup> Piece, *Wace*, ii. 121, l. 11,031.

<sup>11</sup> *wakand* on.

<sup>12</sup> *.I.* þank god.

<sup>13</sup> un petit, *Wace*, l. 11,032.

<sup>14</sup> *ronen* in þe romens þouht.

<sup>15</sup> *chalange* on vs souht.

<sup>16</sup> *for* to haf our landes.

<sup>17</sup> *all* our conquest in.

<sup>18</sup> *satt* þof *.I.* lyf.

that he does  
like peace.

Men can fight  
for love then.

Arthur then  
speaks.

"Barons! you  
are my fellows,  
share with me  
in loss and  
gain,

take part in  
woe and war.

Through you  
have I won  
honour,

sped well in  
my need.  
Ever have I  
found you true.

The Romans

threaten both  
you and me.

"After werre, god ys pes;  
" & after wo, þe wele god ches; 11,596  
" In pes ys don gret vasselage,  
" ffor loue men doþ gret outrage."<sup>1</sup>  
" & at þat word þey set hem down,  
þe kyng & ilka baroun. 11,600

When þe kyng saw þem set,  
Alle þat were til conseil fet,  
þe kyng boughte a þrowe,<sup>2</sup> þen lifte his hed,  
When þei hadde þer ianglyng leued:<sup>3</sup> 11,604  
"Barouns," he seide, "þat ben now here,  
" 3e are my felawes, me<sup>4</sup> ful dere;  
" When y lese, 3e haue part þer-ynne,  
" & felawes 3e are when þat y wyne; 11,608  
" When wo or werre hap me comen,  
" 3our part wyþ me haue 3e nomen,  
" As felawes in prosperite<sup>5</sup>  
" & felawes in aduersete;<sup>5</sup> 11,612  
" ffor wheþer y haue wonne or loren,  
" 3our hap wyþ me haue 3e forþ boren;  
" þorow 3oure help & god auys  
" Hauy wonnen mikel pris; 11,616  
" By water, by londe, haue y 3ow led,  
" þorow 3ow in nede haue y wel sped;  
" Euere y haue founde<sup>6</sup> 3ow trewe,  
" & euere 3our conseil god & newe; 11,620  
" Alle þe londes þat y haue wonne,  
" Wypoute 3ow was nought bygonne.  
" þe Romainys, as 3e haue herd [leaf 50, back, col. 1.]  
" By þys lettre þat here ys sperd,<sup>7</sup> 11,624  
" Me & 3ow þey manace fast,  
" Wyþ grete wordes þey wene me gast.

<sup>1</sup> many rage.

<sup>2</sup> a while he pouht.

<sup>3</sup> carpynge leued.

<sup>4</sup> & me.

<sup>5</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>6</sup> all tymes haf. I. fon.

[leaf 68, back, col. 2.]

<sup>7</sup> þat here is folden & vp sperd.

- " ȝyf God wil helpe me & ȝow ;  
 " þeir þret schal nought be for þer<sup>1</sup> prow ; 11,628  
 " Of vs gete þey neuere nought,  
 " But ȝif hit be ouer dere abought.<sup>2</sup>  
 " þey haue gret power, & ar ful riche,  
 " þer nis no power to þeires<sup>3</sup> liche, 11,632  
 " þer-fore we moste<sup>4</sup> bifore þurueye  
 " What we wil do, what we wil seye,  
 " & auenauntly<sup>5</sup> & resonable,  
 " & þat we seye, hold hit stable. 11,636  
 " A þyng for þought<sup>6</sup> þat men wil rede,  
 " Hit is þe bettere mayntened at nede ;  
 " An arewe þat ys schoten, ȝe se,  
 " Eyþer bihoues<sup>7</sup> hit men fendit or fle ; 11,640  
 " þat same weys byhoues<sup>8</sup> vs do.  
 " þyse Romainys han yschoten<sup>9</sup> vs to ;  
 " Now conseilke we, & keuere<sup>10</sup> vs rape,  
 " So þat her schetyng do vs no scape. 11,644  
 " Trewe þey aske, so haue þey had ;  
 " þat ys bihinde, send þem þey bad,  
 " Of þis lond & opere mo ;  
 " & ffraunce wil þey nought<sup>11</sup> furgo. 11,648  
 Bnt if God helps us,  
 they shall pay for it !  
 They are strong ;  
 so we must settle what we'll do and say,  
 and then hold firm to it.  
 An arrow shot at you, must be guarded or avoided.  
 The Romans have shot at us ; we mustn't let 'em hurt us.  
 They ask tribute of us,  
 and demand France.

¶ Dicta siue Responcio Arthury ad Romanos.

- " For Bretaigne wil y first<sup>12</sup> answer,  
 " Writen in lettre þat þey schul bere,<sup>13</sup>  
 " Answering<sup>14</sup> for ȝow & me,  
 " þat lettre wil y þat hit so be. 11,652  
 As to Britain,  
 I'll send them this letter:

<sup>1</sup> þer manace is no þing.

<sup>2</sup> bot it be full dere bouht.

<sup>3</sup> non is þer pere ne to þam.

<sup>4</sup> bus vs.

<sup>5</sup> Auant like. (avenanment, Wace.)

<sup>6</sup> þing be for.

<sup>7</sup> ouþer þos.

<sup>8</sup> þe sum wyse þos.

<sup>9</sup> haf schoten.

<sup>10</sup> couere.

<sup>11</sup> with not.

<sup>12</sup> with first.

<sup>13</sup> saff here.

<sup>14</sup> ansuerc.



|                                                                                                  |                                                         |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                                                  | " pus wil y seye, <i>pus</i> wol y write                |        |
|                                                                                                  | " My skile ; leste <sup>1</sup> me a lite :             |        |
| ' Caesar won<br>this land by<br>force.                                                           | " Cesar of Rome <i>his</i> land first wan,              |        |
|                                                                                                  | " A[1] þorow fight & force of man ;                     | 11,656 |
|                                                                                                  | " þe Bretouns mighte nought <sup>2</sup> defende ;      |        |
|                                                                                                  | " Trewe byhoued þem to <sup>3</sup> sende ;             |        |
| Force is not<br>Right ;                                                                          | " & force, ȝe wite wel, ys no god right,                |        |
|                                                                                                  | " But pruyde out of mesure myght ;                      | 11,660 |
| does not make<br>Law ;                                                                           | " Hit is no skile, ne lawe non makes,                   |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þyng þat þou þorow force takes ;                      |        |
| but can be up-<br>set by Force.                                                                  | " & swylk giftes men schal furdo,                       |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þat wyþ wrong was taken so.                           | 11,664 |
| The Romans<br>upbraid us<br>with their con-<br>quest of our<br>ancestors.                        | " þey repreue <sup>4</sup> vs of our auncessours,       |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þat þey ouer-cam þem wyþ harde stours ; <sup>5</sup>  |        |
|                                                                                                  | " Of pouerte þey make vmbreyd, <sup>6</sup>             |        |
|                                                                                                  | " & of trewage <sup>7</sup> byfore seyð ;               | 11,668 |
|                                                                                                  | " & of þis þey make anauntement,                        |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þat here-byforn our fadres schent.                    |        |
| The more<br>reason that we<br>should harass<br>Romans now,<br>hate 'em,<br>and beat 'em<br>down. | " So mykel oughte <sup>8</sup> we greue þem þe more.    |        |
|                                                                                                  | " & þey ar halden vs to restore ;                       | 11,672 |
|                                                                                                  | " Wel oughte we hat hem þat hem han <sup>9</sup> hated, |        |
|                                                                                                  | " & bere hem doun <sup>10</sup> þat hem abated.         |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þey wolde don <sup>11</sup> vs þe same outrage,       |        |
|                                                                                                  | " & seye hit ys þer heritage                            | 11,676 |
| They say our<br>land is their<br>heritage !                                                      | " To haue oure godes, & vs to reuille !                 |        |
| By their reason,<br>I may claim<br>Rome ;                                                        | " þey schul nought bide eft þat while ;                 |        |
|                                                                                                  | " ¶ But by <sup>12</sup> þer resoun & þer dome,         |        |
|                                                                                                  | " Wyþ skile y may chalange <sup>13</sup> Rome ;         | 11,680 |
|                                                                                                  | " So wyþ skile & reson <sup>14</sup> y may wel          |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þe lond of Rome aske euery <sup>15</sup> del.         |        |

<sup>1</sup> my skiff listens.<sup>2</sup> þat tyme not not.<sup>3</sup> treuage bord þam to þam.<sup>4</sup> upbraide. [leaf 69.]<sup>5</sup> hard schours.<sup>6</sup> upbraide.<sup>7</sup> þe treuage.<sup>8</sup> awe.<sup>9</sup> We awe to hate þat þei haf.<sup>10</sup> & bete doun þo.<sup>11</sup> with do.<sup>12</sup> with.<sup>13</sup> .I. with set chalange on.<sup>14</sup> & with þer skiff.<sup>15</sup> ask ilk a.

- " Belyn was kyng of Bretouns, for Belyn  
 " And Brenne duk of Burgoilouns; 11,684 and Brenne,  
 " pyse brepere, of Bretaygne born, [leaf 50, back, col. 2.] Britons born,  
 " Conquered Rome here byforn, conquered  
 " & of Rome tok<sup>1</sup> truages, Rome, and  
 " & henge per twenty of peir hostages 11,688 took tribute  
 " Byfore per eyen, pat pey myght se, from it.  
 " & sipen conquered al pe cite.  
 " When Belyn turnde to Bretayne, Moreover,  
 " Of Rome he made Brenne cheftayne, 11,692 Belyn made  
 " & bad hym gouerne al pe honour, Brenne Em-  
 " & he so regned as Emperour. peror of Rome.  
 " Now wil y late of<sup>2</sup> Belyn,  
 " & speke y wil of Constantyn, 11,696 Then again,  
 " Constances sone & Eleynes,<sup>3</sup>  
 " pat held Rome als his demeynes. through Con-  
 " Constance, of Rome had seynurys fair, stant, who was  
 " & Constantyn pen was his heyr, 11,700 lord of Rome,  
 " & y am heir of Constantyn; and whose  
 " porow pat desent Rome schal be myn. son's heir I am,  
 " Maximyan, Leons<sup>4</sup> sone, Rome should  
 " Kyng of Bretayne, at Rome gan wone; 11,704 be mine.  
 " He wan Neustrie, pe Lesse Bretayne, Thirdly, Maxi-  
 " & al ffraunce & Alemanyne, mian  
 " & al Mongow & Lombardye,  
 " And of Rome hadde pe seignurys; 11,708 was Lord of  
 " pyse were myn ancessours of scheld, Rome.  
 " pat only pe<sup>5</sup> honour of Rome held. These are my  
 " Now porow skil haue ze knowen ancestors,  
 " pat Rome by reson schold<sup>6</sup> be myn owen and Rome  
 " Al so wel as Bretayne peyres, 11,713 ought to be  
 " porow eld auncetrie til heyres. mine.  
 If the Romans  
 claim Britain,

<sup>1</sup> pe Romeyns toke.

<sup>2</sup> .I. leue.

<sup>3</sup> Constancius sonne & Elyns.

<sup>4</sup> leonyne. [leaf 60, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> pat pe.

<sup>6</sup> Rome ouh to.

- I claim Rome.
- Let them take Britain if they can!
- Force is their only title to it, and that's free to any one.
- The Emperor threatens to lead me bound to Rome!
- I value him little, and fear him less.
- Let him bring Rome! I'll bring Britain. And let the winner have both."
- " Rome had trewage, & hit fur-sok ;  
 " & trewe of Rome myn auncestres tok; 11,716  
 " pey cleyme Bretayne, & y cleyme Rome ;  
 " þat we boþe cleyme, ȝut<sup>1</sup> ys to come ;  
 " Let þem wyne hit ȝif þat þey may,  
 " ȝit haue y kept hit al my day. 11,720  
 " ffraunce y wan of ffrolle þer knyght ;  
 " To kepe hit lengere he hadde<sup>2</sup> no myght ;  
 " þorow force þey wonne hit, als y hit wan ;  
 " Wyþ force so mighte anoþer man. 11,724  
 " Wherto chalange þey so bolde<sup>3</sup>  
 " þat þey ne myghte no lenger holde?<sup>4</sup>  
 " þorow right skil haue þey no seruise,  
 " But al þorow force & couetyse, 11,728  
 " þat ys to anoþer al so fre<sup>5</sup>  
 " Als hit was to þeym or me.<sup>6</sup>  
 " þe Emperour makeþ vs gret<sup>7</sup> manace,  
 " Out of þis lond me for to chace, 11,732  
 " & in bondes to Rome lede.  
 " Nolde God he scholde<sup>8</sup> so spedē !  
 " Y preyse hym litel, & drede hym<sup>9</sup> lesee !  
 " ȝyf he on me wil<sup>7</sup> seke prowessse, 11,736  
 " Encountre he getes er þat<sup>8</sup> he go,  
 " þat eft ne schal he me manace ne<sup>9</sup> slo,  
 " Ne to none of myne do ylle ;  
 " So schul we don hym chaunge his wille. 11,740  
 " But when þey come to chalangyng,  
 " Bryng Rome, & y schal Bretayne bryng !  
 " & whilk of vs þat most may,  
 " Bere Rome & Bretayne boþ a-way." 11,744

<sup>1</sup> *it.*<sup>2</sup> *lengere þei.*<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>4</sup> *makis his.*<sup>5</sup> *god wilt not he.*<sup>6</sup> *lititt he me praises & dreads.*<sup>7</sup> *he to me.*<sup>8</sup> *a countir he getis or.*<sup>9</sup> *Me eft sall not manace to.*

¶ Dicta Ohelys Regis.

- When Arþur had seid his resoun,  
 Wel was hit alowed of ilka baroun.<sup>1</sup>  
 Wip o word seide þei alle at ones,  
 " Wel haue 3e seid, sire, for þe nones!" 11,748  
 When þei were stilled a party, [leaf 51.]  
 ffirst spak sire Ohel þat sat hym by,  
 & seide: " no man 3ong ne old<sup>2</sup>  
 " Schuld ought amende þat 3e haue told; 11,752  
 " But syþen þou sest<sup>3</sup> þat þou art þret,  
 " & may nought passe wyþoute baret,  
 " Somoun þy folk, & make þem 3are,  
 " & set þem day when þou wilt fare. 11,756  
 " But make no long drecching þer-to,  
 " ffor y wile, 3if þat þou wilt so,  
 " & passe Mounqu in to þe mountz,<sup>4</sup>  
 " & holde<sup>5</sup> day of þy somouns. 11,760  
 " & 3if we wende so alle<sup>6</sup> to-gyder,  
 " & he se þat we come þyder,  
 " So may bytide,<sup>7</sup> þen schal hym rewe  
 " þat he bigan þis bale to brewe; 11,764  
 " & hit bytydes many<sup>8</sup> stoundes,  
 " þat who so bygynneþ,<sup>9</sup> hym self confoundes.  
 " I trowe þat God wil vs auaunce;  
 " Grace ys to-ward, & gode chaunce. 11,768  
 " þe Emperour sendes after þe;  
 " Sek hym þer-fore,<sup>10</sup> wher so he be,  
 " & baldely bede we on hym þe bars;<sup>11</sup>  
 " Sone schul we se þen ho ys chars;<sup>12</sup> 11,772

All Arthur's  
 barons approve  
 of his speech  
 (or letter).

Ohel says,

" Summon  
 your folk at  
 once;

cross the Alps;

and when  
 Lucius sees us  
 all, maybe he'll  
 be sorry that  
 he brewed  
 this bale.

He has sent  
 for you; go to  
 him,

<sup>1</sup> with ilk breton.

<sup>2</sup> alde . . . talde. [leaf 69, back.]

<sup>3</sup> sen þou sees.

<sup>4</sup> Mongow in to þe mouns.

<sup>5</sup> hold þe.

<sup>6</sup> wend with þe.

<sup>7</sup> tide.

<sup>8</sup> it tides often.

<sup>9</sup> þat on bigynnes.

<sup>10</sup> þan.

<sup>11</sup> & bede baldie on him bares.

<sup>12</sup> so may we se who vs chares.

and frighten  
him well.

The Sibyl  
prophesied that  
Briton should  
govern Rome.  
Four Britons  
have done so ;  
and you shall  
be the fifth.

It is ordained.

Delay not  
then ! Forward  
all !

We fear not  
blows or death !

I will bring  
10,000 full  
armed knights,

and will pledge  
all my lands  
to get you  
money."

(Archbishop  
Dubrice turns  
hermit,

" Set þe Emperour in swylk a drede  
" þat he tys court nere dur vs<sup>1</sup> bede.  
" Loke what seis þe prophesie,—  
" Sibille þe sage [þat]<sup>2</sup> wil nought lye:— 11,776  
" þe Bretons,<sup>3</sup> of Bretayne schul come,  
" & þorow<sup>4</sup> force gouerne Rome."  
" ffoure ar<sup>5</sup> passed, wel we mene ;  
" þou art þe fifte schal<sup>6</sup> do þem tene ; 11,780  
" þe fifte þou art, y wot hit we[l],<sup>7</sup>  
" þat Rome schal haue ilkadel.<sup>7</sup>  
" Syn so ys ordeyned to bityde,  
" Wher-to schold we longe<sup>8</sup> abide? 11,784  
" Auaunce now boþe þy self & ous !<sup>7</sup>  
" Oure wil to helpe ys coraious ;<sup>7</sup>  
" Y dar wel seye, so hastou founde,<sup>7</sup>  
" ffor we ne doute no dynt ne wounde,<sup>7</sup> 11,788  
" Ne deþ, ne prison, ne langour,<sup>7</sup>  
" So wilne we faste þyn honour !<sup>7</sup>  
" Leue nought now, but faste þe spede,  
" & y schal, ȝyf þat þou haue<sup>9</sup> nede, 11,792  
" Come wyþ ten þousand of gode knyghtes,  
" Horsed & armed<sup>10</sup> at alle rightes.  
" & ȝyf þou for tresour lette,  
" Al my lond schal y wed-sette 11,796  
" ffor gold & seluer, þe to take,  
" Er þou þis viage schuld fursake."<sup>11</sup>  
" (Seint Dubrice, þe holy man,  
" At kyng Arþur tok leue þan 11,800  
" ffor to chaunge his abyte,

<sup>1</sup> þat neuer to courte eft dur þe.

<sup>2</sup> þat.

<sup>3</sup> Que trois roi, *Wace*, ii. 128, l. 11, 210.

<sup>4</sup> þorgh fyne.

<sup>5</sup> tuo er. (*Dui de cels*, *Wace*, l. 11,212.)

<sup>6</sup> ert þe thrid saff. (*Tu es li ters*, *Wace*, l. 11,216.)

<sup>7</sup> P. leaves out these lines. They are in *Wace*, ii. 128–9.

<sup>8</sup> saff þou long.

<sup>9</sup> saff help if þou haf.

<sup>10</sup> with hors & armes.

<sup>11</sup> or þou þi wending forsake.

|                                                          |        |                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------------------------------------|
| . & bycam anon <sup>1</sup> heremyte ;                   |        | and Arthur's                          |
| . & Daid, Arthures em, hit tok,                          |        | uncle David is                        |
| . þe erchebischopriche <sup>2</sup> þat Dubrice fursok.) | 11,804 | made Arch-<br>bishop of<br>Kaerlyon.) |

§ Dicta Aguselly, Regis Scocie.

|                                                           |                    |                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| After þe speche of sire Ohel,                             |                    |                   |
| Seyde þe kyng sire Agusel, <sup>3</sup>                   |                    | King Agusell      |
| Sire Lothes broþer, & sire Vrien, <sup>4</sup> —          |                    | of Scotland,      |
| . Alle þre were doughti men, <sup>4</sup> —               | 11,808             | says to Arthur,   |
| & seide, “ ȝyf þou wilt werre bygynne,                    |                    |                   |
| “ Spek now to þo þat ar here-ynne,                        |                    | “ Ask all the     |
| “ þe beste of alle þy baronage,                           |                    | best of your      |
| “ þat wyte & herden þe message,                           | 11,812             | barons            |
| “ And wite þer wille, what þey wil do,                    | [leaf 51, col. 2.] | what help         |
| “ & what þat þey may helpe <sup>5</sup> þer-to.           |                    | they'll give      |
| “ Now ys tyme to purueye <sup>4</sup>                     |                    | you.              |
| “ Of help, & god conseil to seye, <sup>4</sup>            | 11,816             |                   |
| “ Alle þo þat of þe holde, <sup>4</sup>                   |                    |                   |
| “ Riche lordes, & barouns bolde, <sup>4</sup>             |                    |                   |
| “ þat oughite to helpe þe þorow skile, <sup>4</sup>       |                    | They ought to     |
| “ & wel y trowe þat so þey wyle. <sup>4</sup>             | 11,820             | help you, and     |
| “ No tydyng neure y ne vnderstod                          |                    | I believe they    |
| “ þat gladed me so mikel in mod,                          |                    | will.             |
| “ As wyþ þe Romayns for to werre,                         |                    | I myself never    |
| “ þat alle men in þer daunger sperre.                     | 11,824             | heard such        |
| “ Y ne may þem nought loue ne preise,                     |                    | glad tidings      |
| “ ffor þey ar proude & vncurteyse,                        |                    | as that we're to  |
| “ Gode men so mykel to <sup>6</sup> despise,              |                    | fight the Ro-     |
| “ þat schul nought liue but <sup>7</sup> in þer seruise ; |                    | mans.             |
| “ & þey ar men of non honour,                             | 11,829             | I don't like 'em. |
| “ But couetous to gedere tresour,                         |                    | They're proud,    |
|                                                           |                    | and covetous,     |

<sup>1</sup> *become ane.* [leaf 69, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *Archbishop see.*

<sup>3</sup> *Angusel.*

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> *help þe.*

<sup>6</sup> *þei.*

<sup>7</sup> *þei may not lif bot.*

|                                                          |                                                         |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| robbing men's<br>lands.<br>They'll come to<br>grief yet, | " Gode men <sup>1</sup> wyþ-al to noye, <sup>2</sup>    |        |
|                                                          | " & þer londes to robbe & struye. <sup>3</sup>          | 11,832 |
|                                                          | " Y trowe þei schul zit <sup>3</sup> mis-bytide         |        |
|                                                          | " ffor þer couetise & þer pryde ;                       |        |
| and have to<br>repent for it.                            | " Of þys þat þey haue y-sent, <sup>4</sup>              |        |
|                                                          | " þey schul be wrothe er hit be ent ; <sup>5</sup>      | 11,836 |
|                                                          | " Wonder were elles, or art me failles, <sup>6</sup>    |        |
|                                                          | " But þey pleye wyþ repentailles. <sup>7</sup>          |        |
| They got their<br>tribute from<br>Britain                | " & þaw þey <sup>8</sup> neuere had hit by-gonne,       |        |
|                                                          | " We scholde þorow right <sup>7</sup> on þem haue ronne |        |
|                                                          | " ffor to venge our auncessours,                        | 11,841 |
|                                                          | " & bate þer pride as þey wolde ours.                   |        |
| by force, by<br>robbing like<br>thieves.                 | " þey seide þey had of þeym <sup>8</sup> trewage,       |        |
|                                                          | " & chalange hit for here heritage :                    | 11,844 |
|                                                          | " I trowe þat þey nere þem <sup>9</sup> non gaf,        |        |
|                                                          | " But þorow force þem ouer haf,                         |        |
| And by force<br>we'll have it<br>back again.             | " As þeues robbed þem, & reft :                         |        |
|                                                          | " þat wil we chalange of þem now eft/;                  | 11,848 |
|                                                          | " Wyþ force þey gaf hit to þe Romayns, <sup>2</sup>     |        |
|                                                          | " Wyþ force we wil haue hit agayns. <sup>3</sup>        |        |
| We'll lower<br>their pride !                             | " So harde oure force may to þem byte, <sup>2</sup>     |        |
|                                                          | " þat alle oure scapes schul þey quyte ; <sup>2</sup>   | 11,852 |
|                                                          | " We haue wonnen many a stour,                          |        |
|                                                          | " & ouer al born a-wey <sup>10</sup> þe flour,          |        |
| Nothing do I<br>want more than<br>to be at them.         | " So schul we zit þer pride abate,                      |        |
|                                                          | " ffor þer couetise & þeir hate.                        | 11,856 |
|                                                          | " þat we haue wonne, y sette at nought,                 |        |
|                                                          | " But zif þe Romayns to ryng <sup>11</sup> be brought ; |        |
|                                                          | " Noþyng now desire y more <sup>12</sup>                |        |
|                                                          | " þan þider-ward we redy wore,                          | 11,860 |

<sup>1</sup> MS. *mem.* P. *men.*<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> *trowe þam saith.*<sup>4</sup> *haf vs sent.*<sup>5</sup> *ent* = ended.<sup>6</sup> *bot þof þe.*<sup>7</sup> *suld þorgh reght.*<sup>8</sup> *þei say þai had of vs.*<sup>9</sup> *þam neuer.*<sup>10</sup> *ouer all we haf born.*<sup>11</sup> *rounge.* [leaf 70.]<sup>12</sup> *mare . . . ware.*

" & þat we were at þe bataillæ,  
 " To se who scholde<sup>1</sup> best assaille ;  
 " þer schuld<sup>2</sup> we wynne prowesse & prow, I know we  
 " Hors, harneys, tresor ynow ; 11,864 shall win their  
 " ȝif God vs graunte our lyf to saue, treasure,  
 " þat we þem aske, we schul<sup>3</sup> wel haue,  
 " Rome & al þat þer-to langes ; and Rome too.  
 " þen schul<sup>4</sup> we ryghte, þat now vs wranges.<sup>5</sup>  
 " ȝyf God wil graunte vs wel to<sup>6</sup> venge, 11,869  
 " Toward hym we schal<sup>7</sup> wynne Lorrenge  
 " & Alemanyne, ȝyf þat we may ;  
 " Algate, ȝut schul we make<sup>8</sup> assay ! 11,872  
 " Als y seye, so wol y rede,  
 " & þat ilke<sup>9</sup> wil do in dede.  
 " ȝif God me graunte wel to spede, God helping  
 " Two þousand<sup>10</sup> schal y wyþ me lede, 11,876 me, I'll bring  
 " & fot folk ynowe, gode at nede : 2,000 knights,  
 " ȝif God wyle, noman schul we drede !"<sup>11</sup> and good foot-  
 folk too."

When þe Scottysche kyng had his tale<sup>12</sup> told, [17. 51, bk., cl. 1.]  
 Alle þey seide wyþ tonge o fold, 11,880 All Arthur's  
 ' þat schent he schold be of hem alle,<sup>13</sup> barons declare  
 ' On wham þat þe wending schulde nought<sup>14</sup> falle.' him.  
 When ilkon had seid his wylle,  
 Arthur listned, & sat ful stille, 11,884 Arthur sends  
 Let calle<sup>15</sup> a clerk wyþ inke & penne, for a clerk,  
 & bad hym write he scholde hym kenne. has his answer  
 Als he had seyð in alle maners, written,  
 & bitaught hit<sup>16</sup> þe messegers 11,888 and gives it,  
 sealed, to the

<sup>1</sup> *whilk suld.*

<sup>2</sup> *satt.*

<sup>3</sup> *þat þerto langes.*

<sup>4</sup> *vs forto.*

<sup>5</sup> *ȝit satt we fond to.*

<sup>6</sup> *att gate we witt mak.*

<sup>7</sup> *& att þe same.*

<sup>8</sup> *dix mil, Wace, ii. 132, l. 11,316.*

<sup>9</sup> *witt we satt not.*

<sup>10</sup> *Anguisett his tale had.*

<sup>11</sup> *Honis soit, Wace, l. 11,321.*

<sup>12</sup> *þat wending suld not.*

<sup>13</sup> *did calle.*

<sup>14</sup> *He tauht it to.*



|                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| head mes-<br>senger,                                                                                                               | ffaire folden, & wel enseled, <sup>1</sup><br>· & to þer maister was hit deled, <sup>2</sup><br>· & dide þem alle gret honour,<br>· Y-now he gaf hem of tresour, 11,892<br>· & bad hem seye to þe Emperour,<br>pat "Arthur of ffraunce [is] gouernour,<br>" & of Bretaigne chef & flour,<br>" & schal defendit, castel <sup>3</sup> & tour, 11,896<br>· " & be þer warant & socour <sup>4</sup><br>" Ageyns Romayns to stonde in stour." <sup>4</sup><br>" Seis <sup>5</sup> þour lord, y wil nought let<br>" To come þat day þat he haþ set; 11,900<br>" No trewage to zelde, but trewage to <sup>6</sup> fet;<br>· " Loke he be redy, do þat he het!"                                                                                 |
| and bids them<br>tell the<br>Emperor,<br>"Arthur of<br>France and<br>Britain, will<br>defend his lands<br>against the<br>Romans.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| He will come<br>to Rome, too,<br>not to pay<br>tribute, but to<br>fetch it."                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| The Roman<br>Emperor's<br>messengers tell<br>him of the<br>grandeur of<br>Arthur's court,                                          | þe messengers þer leue þey tok,<br>Toward Rome þer wey þey schok, 11,904<br>· & telde þe Emperour, when þey come,<br>þe grete nobleye of Arthures home,<br>· How mykel folk þey wyþ hym fond,—<br>· So doughti þer nar <sup>7</sup> in no lond,— 11,908<br>· & in what stede his court he held,<br>Al þe stat þer-of, þey teld,<br>· How curteisly to þem he spak,<br>" Nought but wysdom <sup>8</sup> of his mouþ brak; 11,912<br>" Nys non on lyue, cayser ne kyng,<br>" pat semeþ so wel <sup>9</sup> his beryng,<br>· " Ne so curteys þer-wyþ-al;<br>" His giftes ar large, & stonde <sup>10</sup> in stal; 11,916<br>" þer ys no kyng doþ suche <sup>11</sup> costages<br>· " Of mete ne drynke, ne giftes of <sup>12</sup> wages; |
| of Arthur's<br>courtesy and<br>wisdom :<br>"No kaiser<br>living is like<br>him,<br>so courteous,<br>so generous,<br>so hospitable, |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

<sup>1</sup> we seilde.<sup>2</sup> deilde.<sup>3</sup> Schall defend boþe town.<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> say.<sup>6</sup> bot forto. [leaf 70, col. 2.]<sup>7</sup> non is.<sup>8</sup> MS. wysdon.<sup>9</sup> semes so wele.<sup>10</sup> standes.<sup>11</sup> it is no kyng to his.<sup>12</sup> no to gyue.

" Ne swilk *seruise* ys *per* non so well-served.  
 " In no court, as in <sup>1</sup> his allon. 11,920  
 " To aske hym trewe, hit is for nought;  
 " He *penkes* to aske *ze pennas* <sup>2</sup> brought." You needn't  
 . *pe* chartre *pey* schewed *per* barouns, ask him for  
 . & seide, " swich ys *Arthures* respouns." 11,924 tribute : he  
 wants it of  
 you."

When *pe* Romainys had wel herd The Romans,  
 How *pe* messengers answerd, on hearing  
 & *peir* *lettre* <sup>3</sup> acorded wel this, and  
 Vntil *per* sawe ilka del, 11,928 Arthur's letter,  
*pat* Arthur wolde no *seruise* do,  
 But haue trewage,—*pe* *lettre* wild so,—  
*pey* seide to the Emperour alle aboute,  
 " Wyp force *ze* schul don hym loute. 11,932 tell the Em-  
 " *Passep* Mounngu wip host right stoute;<sup>4</sup> force Arthur  
 " & *zif* he come, we schal hym route, down,  
 " & reue hym his regne, maugre his snoute, and take his  
 " & wip righte force hold hym wypoute."<sup>4</sup> 11,936 realm, in spite  
 of his snout.

¶ De Consilio Romanorum contra Arthurum, cum  
 nominibus Regum eorum.

When *Lucius* wyste *Arthures* respouns, *Lucius* sum-  
 . He saw <sup>5</sup> *pe* wille of his barouns, mons his host  
 & <sup>6</sup> dide somoune wypoute delay  
 To be redy byn *pe* twenty<sup>7</sup> day, 11, 940 for the 20th  
 Wyp hors & harneys to wende al prest [cf. 51, bk., col. 2.] day.  
 Ageyn Arthur toward *pe* west:  
 . " ffor y schal nere stynte no stounde <sup>4</sup> He'll not stop  
 . " Til y come *pere* *pat* *pey* hym founde."<sup>4</sup> 11,944 till he gets to  
 Arthur.

<sup>1</sup> *courte* bot.

<sup>2</sup> *pien*. [what ye thence took.]

<sup>3</sup> *chartre*.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> & sawe.

<sup>6</sup> *he*.

<sup>7</sup> *be* *pe* *twenty*. (al disme, *Wace*,  
 ii. 134, l. 11,362.)

¶ *Nomina Regum.*

|                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| These kings<br>come to<br>Lucius :                                                                               | ffirst com Epistrot þe kyng of Grece,<br>& Sire Otheon, Duc of Boece,<br>Sire Hurtak þe kyng of Turkeys,<br>A doughti knyght & a curteys,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 11,948                             |
| Epistrot,<br>Otheon,<br>Hurtak,<br>Pandras,<br>Ypolipte,                                                         | Pandras þe kyng of Egipte, <sup>1</sup><br>& of Cyce <sup>2</sup> þe kyng Ypolipte,—<br>He was of gret seignurie,<br>An hundred cites at his baillie ;—                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 11,952                             |
| Evander,<br>Teucer,<br>Macipsa,<br>Elephatina,<br>Bockus,<br>Sertorius,<br>Polidetes,<br>Seres, and<br>Musensar. | Out of Syre cam Ewander,<br>& out of ffryse þe kyng Teucer,<br>& out of Babilloyne sire Macipsa, <sup>3</sup><br>& out of Spayne sire Elephatina, <sup>4</sup><br>& out of Mede þe kyng Bockus,<br>& out of Lubyse sire Sertorius, <sup>5</sup><br>Out of Bycynie sire Polidetes,<br>& out of Tyre þe kyng Serseas, <sup>6</sup><br>Sire Musensar, kyng of <sup>7</sup> Aufrik,—<br>A lond ferne a ful gret stryk ;<br>But he broughte tresor gret plente, <sup>8</sup><br>& fair folk, & fele, to se. <sup>9</sup> — | 11,956<br><br>11,960<br><br>11,964 |
| Of Roman<br>Senators, come<br><br>Marcel,<br>Metel, &c.,<br>so many,<br>that if one<br>could find their<br>names | þo þat were of þe senatours,<br>Men of Rome most of honurs,<br>Of þeym cam Marcel, Lucius, Catel, <sup>9</sup><br>Octa, Gayus, & sire Metel,<br>Manye opere <sup>10</sup> of þe same kynde,<br>þat noman may þer names fynde ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 11,968                             |

<sup>1</sup> Crète, MS. du Roi, 27; d'Egypte, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; Wace, ii. 135, l. 11,374.

<sup>2</sup> Gète, MS. du Roi, 27; Crethe, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; *ib.* 11,375.

<sup>3</sup> *Micipsa*. [leaf 70, back.]

<sup>4</sup> *Alifatina*.

<sup>5</sup> *Sertonius*. (Sertorius, Wace, l. 11,383.)

<sup>6</sup> Et d'Iture li rois Xersès, Wace.

<sup>7</sup> *Mucensar* out of.

<sup>8</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>9</sup> *lucius katell*.

<sup>10</sup> & oper *Inouh*.

- . & þey alle þe names wer founde,<sup>1</sup>  
 . Me þynkeþ hit were but tynt, þe stounde<sup>1</sup> 11,972  
 . To write þe names of so fele hounde<sup>1</sup> it'd be lost  
 . þat were vncristned in þys mounde.<sup>1</sup> time to write  
 'em.  
 When alle were comen, symple & bolde,  
 flour hundred þousand þer wer tolde, 11,976 400,180 armed  
 & an hundred & foure score, men,  
 Alle armed men, hit telles<sup>2</sup> byfore,  
 Wypoute fotmen & seriauntye,<sup>3</sup> and foot-  
 soldiers with-  
 out number,  
 . þat þe noumbre kan non descrye. 11,980  
 When alle were comen þat þider schold come,  
 At þe Lammesse þey wente<sup>4</sup> fro Rome, start at Lam-  
 mas for the  
 & tok þer weye toward Mounu Alpa.  
 . Wyp mykel noyse & cry & heu.<sup>5</sup> 11,984

## ¶ De tenentibus Regis Arthury.

- When Arthur departed his meyne, Arthur  
 & schulde go þer þey wold be,  
 By name he made þem alle somouns  
 Er þey wente, alle þe barouns, 11,988  
 & preied hem of help at here myght,— asks his helpers  
 But þat þey saued wel þeir ryght;—  
 And how mikel ilkon myght brynge,  
 . þat wolde he wyte ouer alle þynge. 11,992 how many men  
 they can bring  
 him.  
 Irland, Gutland, & Norweye, Ireland, Ice-  
 land, &c.  
 Denmark, Island, & Orkeneye,  
 Sex<sup>6</sup> score þousand þey hym het,<sup>7</sup> promise  
 Of alle þo landes gedered & fet,— 11,996 120,000  
 Knyghtes were namo of<sup>8</sup> þo,  
 But opere,—þat on fote most<sup>9</sup> go; men on foot,  
 armed

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> of armes men telle.<sup>3</sup> sargeancie.<sup>4</sup> removed. (Entrant aost, de Rome murent, *Wace*, ii. 136, l. 11,401.)<sup>5</sup> hu.<sup>6</sup> Set, *Wace*, ii. 136, l. 11,412.<sup>7</sup> mette. [leaf 70, back, col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> non of alle. (N'estoient mie chevalier, *Wace*, l. 11,414.)<sup>9</sup> þei houth not ride þei suld. (N'il ne savoient cevalchier, *Wace*, l. 11,415.)

|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |        |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| with spears,<br>battle-axes, &c.                 | On fote by-houed þem bere þer armes, <sup>1</sup><br>Dartes, gaulokes, & gysarmes; <sup>1</sup><br>pat was þe manere of þer lond, <sup>1</sup><br>þey hadde non oper, ne non þem fond. <sup>1</sup>                                                         | 12,000 |
| Normandy,<br>Poitou, &c.                         | ¶ Of Normandye & of Angeowe,<br>Of Pykardie & of Peytowe,<br>And out of fflaundes & of Brabant, <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                | 12,004 |
| send 80,000.                                     | ffour score þousand wyþouten want, <sup>3</sup><br>So mykel scholde þey fynde of fe, <sup>1</sup><br>& namore was þer ryght to be. <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                             | 12,008 |
| The Douze<br>Peers                               | In ffraunce were þanne twelue lordes fers, <sup>4</sup><br>pat men calle þe dusze <sup>5</sup> pers;<br>pyse dusze pers, lordes of ffraunce,<br>To Gerny <sup>6</sup> of Chartres þey hadde alliaunce;<br>Eche of hem <sup>7</sup> fond an hundred knyghtes | 12,013 |
| send 1,200<br>knights.                           | pat fel to þer <sup>8</sup> fe at alle rightes.<br>Ten þousand hette sire Ohel,<br>& two þousand sire Agusel; <sup>9</sup>                                                                                                                                  | 12,016 |
| Ohel 10,000,<br>Agusel 2,000,<br>Britain 60,000, | & Arthur, of þys ilke lond<br>Sexti <sup>10</sup> þousand knyghtes he fond,<br>Wyp-outen fot-folk & archers,<br>& seriauntz & arblasters;                                                                                                                   | 12,020 |
| besides many<br>archers and<br>arbalisters.      | Of pyse y ne fond no noumbre y-writen,<br>Ne of na mo ne coupe men witen.<br>¶ When Arthur wyste þe certeyn,<br>What ilk lord scholde brynge hym <sup>11</sup> ageyn                                                                                        | 12,024 |
| Arthur bids<br>them all meet<br>him              | Of men of armes of god array,<br>He preied hem come, & sette a day,<br>At Barefleete in Normandye,<br>pider scholde come al þer nauye;                                                                                                                      | 12,028 |
| at Barfleet;                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |        |

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> of fflandres & Boloigne. (Bologne, Wace, l. 11,420.)<sup>3</sup> essoyne (difficulty). essogne, Wace, l. 11421.<sup>4</sup> twelfe lorde fers.<sup>5</sup> cald duze.<sup>6</sup> Gernyn. (Gérin, Wace, l. 11,426.)<sup>7</sup> Ilk of þam.<sup>8</sup> fett þer.<sup>9</sup> Auguisel (or Anguisel).<sup>10</sup> quarante, Wace, l. 11,435.<sup>11</sup> how fele ilk kyng suld bring.

|                                            |                |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|
| . & ilkon certeynlike þey het <sup>1</sup> | and they pro-  |
| . To be þere at þat day set.               | mise so to do. |
| þen went alle hom, kyng & knyght,          |                |
| & þurueyd hem þat þey were dight.          | 12,032         |

¶ De Modredo, ffratre Walwyny, traditore.

|                                                               |                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Sire Arthur hadde a cosyn,                                    | To Modred, a      |
| Moddred he highte, a <sup>2</sup> traitur fyn;                | traitor,          |
| A noble knyght he was in stour,                               |                   |
| But til his e[me] he was <sup>3</sup> traytour.               | 12,036            |
| Arthur bitaughtym <sup>4</sup> his lond to kepe;—             | Arthur en-        |
| . Hym hadde ben bettere haue leid <sup>5</sup> to slepe;      | trusts his land.  |
| ffor he had loued <sup>6</sup> þe quene <sup>7</sup> priuely, | But Modred        |
| Arthures wyf, & leyn hure <sup>8</sup> by;                    | had lain with     |
| Nought was perceyued bytwyxt hem to:                          | Arthur's          |
| Who schuld haue trowed hit had be <sup>9</sup> so?            | queen,—           |
| . Who wold haue went so synful lyf, <sup>10</sup>             |                   |
| pat þe cosyn had leyn by þe emes wyf? <sup>10</sup>           | 12,044 the nephew |
| & namely of swylk a man? <sup>10</sup>                        | with his uncle's  |
| þorow al þe werld his los of ran.— <sup>10</sup>              | wife!—            |
| Arthur bitaught hym Geneuere <sup>11</sup> þe quen,           | Yet Arthur en-    |
| (Alas þat euere hit scholde so ben!) <sup>12</sup>            | trusts Guene-     |
| & al þe lond saue <sup>13</sup> þe coroune,                   | vere to Modred,   |
| & schop <sup>14</sup> his host to Southaumptoune,             | and marches to    |
| þer schipes y þe hauen ryden,                                 | Southampton.      |
| pat Arthur & his folk abiden.                                 | 12,052            |

<sup>1</sup> him certeynly hette.  
<sup>2</sup> Modrede hight þat. (A Mordret, un de ses nevos, Wace, ii. 138, l. 11,452.)  
<sup>3</sup> to his Eame was he.  
<sup>4</sup> he betaught him.  
<sup>5</sup> had bien better haf liggen.  
<sup>6</sup> he lufed.  
<sup>7</sup> "Genievre estoit sa seror," says

the MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3-3</sup>. Colb.; Wace, ii. 138, l. 11,458. . .  
<sup>8</sup> lay hir.  
<sup>9</sup> wild haf wend it had bien.[lf. 71.]  
<sup>10</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.  
<sup>11</sup> Goneuere.  
<sup>12</sup> allas if myght oper wais bien.  
<sup>13</sup> þe lond att bot.  
<sup>14</sup> dight.

|                                                                           |                                                                |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| There are<br>mariners                                                     | <i>per myghte men se þe mariners,</i>                          |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>. Many wyght man in schipes fers,<sup>1</sup></i>           |                    |
| tying ropes to<br>the banks,                                              | <i>Ropes to righte, lynes to leye,<sup>2</sup></i>             |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>By banke &amp; brymme<sup>3</sup> to tache &amp; teye,</i>  | 12,056             |
|                                                                           | <i>Cables to knytte aboute þe mast,</i>                        |                    |
| fastening sails<br>on yards,                                              | <i>þe sail on ȝerde þey feste ful fast,</i>                    |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>. Ancres, ores, redy to hande,</i>                          |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>. Roperes, helmes, right for to stande,</i>                 | 12,060             |
| setting bow-<br>lines on bow-<br>sprits,                                  | <i>Bowlyne on bouspret to sette &amp;<sup>4</sup> hale,</i>    |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>Cordes, kyviles, atached þe<sup>5</sup> wale;</i>           |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>When al was redy in god point,</i>                          | [leaf 52, col. 2.] |
|                                                                           | <i>Vnto þe lond þe schipes ioynt;</i>                          | 12,064             |
|                                                                           | <i>. Somme stode in schipe, somme on sand,<sup>6</sup></i>     |                    |
| running rails<br>and planks<br>ashore to get<br>men and horses<br>aboard. | <i>Brygges &amp; plankes þey caste to land,<sup>7</sup></i>    |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>Wyþ men &amp; hors<sup>8</sup> for to charge</i>            |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>Cogges, barges, &amp;<sup>9</sup> schipes large;</i>        | 12,068             |
|                                                                           | <i>Brought yn helmes, hauberks &amp; scheldes,</i>             |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>. &amp; al þat men yn bataille weldes,</i>                  |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>Hors in to drawe, hors in to dryue;</i>                     |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>Men hyed þer-after yn ful blyue.</i>                        | 12,072             |
| When all are<br>in,                                                       | <i>When alle were inne,<sup>10</sup> and mad al ȝare,</i>      |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>&amp; þey on þer wey[e] schuld[e] fare,</i>                 |                    |
| and greetings<br>sent to friends<br>at home,                              | <i>To þeym o land þey praieden eft<sup>11</sup></i>            |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>To grete þer frendes þat þey had<sup>12</sup> lefte:</i>    | 12,076             |
|                                                                           | <i>. On bope parties was heuy chere</i>                        |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>. [Whan frendes departed leue &amp; dere.]<sup>13</sup></i> |                    |
|                                                                           | <i>¶ When alle were ynne, &amp; were o flote,</i>              |                    |
| the sailors                                                               | <i>Mariners dighte þem to note,</i>                            | 12,080             |

<sup>1</sup> *fers.*<sup>2</sup> *lay . . . tay.*<sup>3</sup> *bi bro bi bankis.*<sup>4</sup> *boulyne to set boulyne to.* (After they are on board, Wace has "Boe-  
" lines sachent et halent," ii. 141,  
l. 11,510, from MS. du Roi, 73,  
Cangé.<sup>5</sup> *bordes heviles atache to.* (? *hevil* :  
A.-Sax. *cafti*, halter, bridle: Som-ner. But *hevel*, pole, Jamieson, and  
Atkinson's Cleveland Glossary.)<sup>6</sup> *& som on land.*<sup>7</sup> *kest to þe sand.*<sup>8</sup> *with horses.*<sup>9</sup> *Galeis cogges.*<sup>10</sup> MS. *inne.*<sup>11</sup> *spak to eft.*<sup>12</sup> *& praied þam grete þer frendes.*<sup>13</sup> From the Petyt MS. Left out  
in the Lambeth.

- per takel for to righte<sup>1</sup> & taille,  
 By þe wynd wel for to saylle;  
 Ancres o bord, sayl drowen heye,<sup>2</sup>  
 þe wynd blew wel, þer schipe gon fleye, 12,084  
 & þe mariners þat weren sleye,<sup>3</sup>  
 Ilkon dide þer maistrise:  
 Somme aforced þe wyndas,  
 Somme þe loof, somme þe bytas;<sup>4</sup> 12,088  
 þe mayster mariner was<sup>5</sup> byhynde,  
 þe schip to stere by<sup>6</sup> þe wynde.  
 7 (Queynte he was, & right hardy,  
 . & engynous man & sley, 12,092  
 þat first fond schip on se to fare,  
 & turnde wyþ þe wynd þer he nyste whare,  
 Lond to seke þat he saw nought,  
 Ne whiderward he schulde be brought.)<sup>7</sup> 12,096
- get the anchors  
on board,  
hoist sails,  
and the ships  
fly.
- The captains  
steer behind.
- (A quaint bold  
man he was  
that first set a  
ship on the sea  
to seek unseen  
lands.)

### ¶ De Sompno Arthury.

- Sire Arthur hadde weder at wille,  
 Saflyk he seyled, wythouten ylle;  
 Hys folk was ioiful & gl[a]dly let,  
 ffor þeire pathe fare to Bareffet.<sup>8</sup> 12,100  
 . Atte midnyght men gaf god kep,  
 Arthur fel on slomber & slep;  
 In his slepyng als he gan<sup>9</sup> lye,  
 Hym þoughte he sey a Bere flye 12,104  
 An hugely gret, a lothly best,<sup>10</sup>  
 & fley faste towards<sup>11</sup> þe est.
- The weather is  
fair,  
and the folk  
joyful.
- Arthur dreams  
that a huge  
Bear flies east,

<sup>1</sup> dight.<sup>2</sup> anchors upwound saile drouh hie.<sup>3</sup> þo maistres þat were slie.<sup>4</sup> som þe lofe som þe betas. [leaf 71, col. 2.] ("betas," mot espagnol qui signifie les manœuvres (cordes): De Lincy, on the authority of M. Jal, historiographe de la Marine, Wace, i. 141, note. But?)<sup>5</sup> maryners stode.<sup>6</sup> to.<sup>7-7</sup> Not in P., though in Wace.  
(Cp. Horace, Odes, I. iii. l. 9.)<sup>8</sup> þei red þam right to barhffete.<sup>9</sup> slepe as he goñ.<sup>10</sup> a long & an vgly beste.<sup>11</sup> flouh fast toward.



|                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                          |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| and a flaming<br>Dragon flies<br>west ;             | O þat oper syde a Dragon vp steý ;<br>In to þe west hym þoughte he fleý ; <sup>1</sup>                                                                                   | 12,108 |
| that they fight,                                    | Of his moup a flaume cam out,<br>þe lond, þe water, schon al about.<br>þe bere assailed þe dragoun,<br>& he defended hym as a lyoun ;                                    | 12,112 |
|                                                     | . Wonderly ilk oper gan assaille, <sup>2</sup><br>. & strong was þanne þer bataille ; <sup>3</sup><br>. Sharply þer ilk oper smot,<br>. Bitterly þeþ þey blewe & bot.    | 12,116 |
| and the Dragon<br>clips the Bear<br>till he bursts. | þe dragon was swyft, & sleily <sup>4</sup> swypte,<br>þe bere in his clawes he clypte,<br>& priste hym so þat he to-barst, <sup>4</sup><br>& doun vnto þe erþe hym cast. | 12,120 |
| Arthur wakes,                                       | Arthur of his slepyng wok,<br>Gret tent of his drem he tok ;                                                                                                             |        |
| asks clerks<br>whether his<br>dream means           | He askede clerkes sete <sup>5</sup> hym aboute, [ff. 52, bk. col. 1.]<br>Wheþer hit mente drede or doute :                                                               | 12,124 |
| joy or trouble.                                     | . " Y wolde wyte what hit wolde <sup>6</sup> mene,<br>. " & wheþer hit tokned ioýe or tene,<br>. " & wheþer hit was help or dere,<br>. " þat þe dragoun slow þe bere."   | 12,128 |

## ¶ Interpretacio Sompny Arthury.

|                                                                          |                                                                                                                                               |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Some say that<br>Arthur is the<br>dragon, and a<br>giant is the<br>bear. | Somme þer were þus hit descried,<br>' Hym self þe dragon signefied,<br>' & þe bere som geaunt<br>' þat he schuld make <sup>7</sup> recreaunt, | 12,132 |
|                                                                          | ' ffro fer schold come, & do gret wo,<br>' & þorow force he schulde hym slo.'                                                                 |        |

<sup>1</sup> *it flegh.*<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> *swyfly.* (Wace has for the three lines before, only " Mais li dragons

" l'ours enversoit," ii. 143, l. 12,540.)

<sup>4</sup> *to braste.*<sup>5</sup> *sat.*<sup>6</sup> *wild wit what it mot.*<sup>7</sup> *He suld him mak.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                            |                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Somme oper weys gan hit rede,<br>But alle þey seyde he schulde wel spede ;<br>þen seide hym self, " y trowe hit menes<br>" þis werre, & manye oper tenes<br>" Bytwyxt me & þe Emperour.<br>" Let God al worthe, my creatour !"                                                                                                                                                                                                | 12,136                     | Arthur thinks<br>the fight means<br>his war with<br>the Emperor.                                        |
| ¶ At þat word þe day gan sprynge,<br>þe sonne ros faire y þe mornynge,<br>& at þe sonne rysyng in god tyme<br>þey come to Bareflete er pryme.<br>ffro <sup>1</sup> schip to londe ful sone þey ȝede,<br>& in þe contre aboute gon sprede ;<br>He seide he wolde his folk abyde,<br>þo þat were nought come <sup>2</sup> þat tyde.                                                                                             | 12,140<br>12,144           | At sunrise they<br>reach Barfleet,<br>land, and<br>spread about<br>the country.                         |
| Longe while <sup>3</sup> dwelled he nought,<br>þat tydynges men hym <sup>4</sup> brought,<br>þat þider was comen a geaunt,<br>& longe þer hadde ben his haunt ;<br>Out of Spayne was he comen, <sup>5</sup><br>& [had] <sup>6</sup> Sire Oheles nece y-nomen ;<br>Mayde Eleyne was hure name,<br>He had hure taken to do hure schame,                                                                                         | 12,148<br>12,152           | Arthur is told<br>of a giant<br>from Spain,<br>who has carried<br>off Ohel's niece                      |
| & had hure brought vnto an hil,<br>þat non ne myghte ne durste <sup>7</sup> com til.—<br>Micheles Mount men calles <sup>8</sup> hit now,<br>þere þe geaunt Eleyne slow ;<br>Was þer non auter ne <sup>9</sup> no chapel<br>þat ilke tyme þat þis chaunce fel ;<br>Aboute þat hil þe water flowes,<br>Comeþ þer non þat he ne rowes.—<br>þer <sup>10</sup> was non þat hadde þat myght<br>þat wyþ þe geaunt durst ones fight ; | 12,156<br>12,160<br>12,164 | to St. Michael's<br>Mount,<br>which is sur-<br>rounded by<br>water.<br>No one dares<br>fight the giant. |

<sup>1</sup> of. [leaf 71, back.]

<sup>2</sup> not comen.

<sup>3</sup> long stounde.

<sup>4</sup> tipinges men to him.

<sup>5</sup> MS. comen.

<sup>6</sup> had.

<sup>7</sup> dar.

<sup>8</sup> call.

<sup>9</sup> altere no. (mostier ne, Wace,  
ii. 145, l. 11,575.

<sup>10</sup> it.

426 THE GIANT DYNABROK, WHOM ARTHUR FIGHTS.

|                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                              |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Those who had<br>tried it before                                                              | Somme þer were vmwhile wylde fonde, <sup>1</sup><br>& hym assailed by water & londe,                                                                                         | 12,168 |
|                                                                                               | But he gaf nought of þeir <sup>2</sup> assault,<br>. ffor þey fulle euere in þeir <sup>3</sup> defaut;<br>ffor grete roches at þem he cast,<br>& þer schipes to-rof & brast. | 12,172 |
| were drowned<br>or slain.                                                                     | Many were drenkled, fele were slayn,<br>. po þat ascaped, hit was wyþ payn;<br>per-fore þe contre was ner al fled,<br>þeir wonyng fursoke, þeir godes led,                   | 12,176 |
| Men had left<br>their dwellings,<br>and the land<br>was waste, for<br>this giant<br>Dynabrok. | & lefte þat lond wast & wylde,<br>ffor man or best, wyf or childe.<br>þe geauntes name was Dynabrok,<br>. A gryslly <sup>4</sup> man was on to loke.                         | 12,180 |

¶ De Gygante Dynabroke. [lf. 52, bk., col. 2.]

|                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                              |        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Arthur calls                                                                    | When Arthur hadde herd þe pleynt,<br>. How wyþ þe geaunt þe folk was teynt,                                                                                                  |        |
| Kay and<br>Beduer.                                                              | He calde sire Caye & Beduer, <sup>5</sup><br>& ilk of þeym tok a squyer;                                                                                                     | 12,184 |
| All three arm,<br>and go                                                        | Armure dide þey wiþ hem lede,<br>& ilk of þeym tok hym a stede.<br>He nolde schewe hit to namo                                                                               |        |
| after Dynabrok.                                                                 | . þat he wolde <sup>6</sup> to þe geaunt go;<br>zyf alle had wyst he wente so one,<br>þe ost had ben abaischt ilkone;                                                        | 12,188 |
| Arthur trusts<br>in God, and his<br>own valiant-<br>ness to fight<br>the giant. | He trusted wel in <sup>7</sup> Godes grace<br>þat he durste hym schewe his face,<br>& on his grete <sup>8</sup> vaillauntise<br>. Ar <sup>9</sup> he durst take þat emprise. | 12,192 |

<sup>1</sup> *wold som tyme fond.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *his*. P. *þer*.

<sup>3</sup> *felt in att.*

<sup>4</sup> *grimly*. [leaf 71, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> The three next lines are in De Lincy's MS. of Wace, though turned

out by him in favour of another MS., vol. ii. p. 146, note 2.

<sup>6</sup> *suld*.

<sup>7</sup> *trasted wele on*.

<sup>8</sup> *owen*.

<sup>9</sup> *þat*.

- Al þat ilke night þey ryden,  
 þat þey no whar<sup>1</sup> stynte ne biden,  
 Til hit was y þe morn[e] tyde  
 þat þey seye wel þere bysyde  
 . A bot standynge at a stage;  
 þen hoped þey þere was þe passage.  
 . Two hilles wyþynne þe water wore,  
 . þat on was lasse, þat oþer more;  
 O þe more hil þer was a fyr,  
 ffro ferre þey sey hit brenne schir;  
<sup>a</sup> þe lasse hil was nought so drey  
 ffro þe more, but euene ney;  
 An oþer fir was on þat hil;<sup>2</sup>  
 þer-fore Arthur was al wyl<sup>3</sup>  
 On whilk hil þe geaunt was,  
 Ne non couþe kenne hym þe righte pas.  
 þen bad he sire Beduer "go  
 " To serche þe hilles to & fro;  
 " & when þou wost þe certeyn,  
 " Hye þe þanne to me a-geyn."
- þenne Beduer dide hym in þe bot,  
 & on þe nexte hil he smot.  
 . Beduer stod,<sup>4</sup> & hym auysed  
 . Whider-ward þe weyes wysed;  
 þe nexte wey he tok vp hey,  
 & als he wente he herde a cry;  
 Gret pleynte he herde on make;  
 A party gan his herte quake;  
 He wende hit hadde þe geaunt ben,  
 . þat his comyng had wist or sen;  
 He drow hys sward al so smert,  
 & gadered hardinesse of hert,
- 12,196 They ride all night,  
 and next morn-  
 ing,
- 12,200 see the cross-  
 ing; but there  
 is a small hill  
 as well as a big  
 one,  
 with a fire
- 12,204
- on each,  
 12,208 so that Arthur  
 can't make out  
 on which hill  
 Dynabrok is.
- He sends Bed-  
 uer to search  
 both hills.  
 12,212
- 12,216 Beduer rows to  
 the nearest hill,
- 12,220 goes high up it,  
 and hears a cry  
 of one plaining.
- 12,224 He thinks it is  
 Dynabrok,  
 and draws his  
 sword,

<sup>1</sup> neuer.<sup>2-3</sup> a noþer fire was on þe lesse  
 hitt.<sup>3</sup> att wilt.<sup>4</sup> smote.

|                                             |                                                                                                                                                         |        |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                             | & þought þat ȝyf he wyþ hym mette,<br>Wyþ hym to fighte he wolde nought lette.                                                                          | 12,228 |
| but he soon<br>finds a fire<br>near a tomb, | But al þat þenkyng was in <sup>1</sup> vayn,<br>ffor on þe hil aboue þe playn<br>He fond a fir brennyng an hy, <sup>2</sup><br>& a tounge newe þer-by ; | 12,232 |
| with a woman<br>sitting by                  | Als he bar his swerd in hande,<br>By þe tounge he sey on sittande,<br>A womman, ner al naked,<br>Aboute hure hed hure her to-schaked ; <sup>3</sup>     | 12,236 |
| crying "Alas<br>for thee,<br>Eleyne !"      | Biside þe tounge þis womman lay,<br>& often cried " wey la way !"<br>& mente þe vilenye & þe peyne,<br>& seide, " alas for þe, Eleyne !"                | 12,240 |

¶ De Tumba Elene, & de nutrice eius. [leaf 53.]

|                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                           |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Beduer pities<br>her.                                                      | Beduer sey þe tounge was newe,<br>& of hure deol his herte gan rewe.                                                                                      |        |
| But she says<br>" Miserable<br>man, why are<br>you come to<br>your death ? | Whan scheo perceyued sire Beduer,<br>Scheo saide, " cheytyf, what wiltow <sup>4</sup> her ?                                                               | 12,244 |
|                                                                            | " Som synne hap þe hyder y-brought,<br>" þat þy deþ her hastow <sup>5</sup> sought ;<br>" þis day ys þe schape to deye,<br>" ȝyf þe geaunt þe se wyþ eye. | 12,248 |
| Fly from this<br>hill and the<br>giant !"                                  | " þis ilke hil swyþe þou weyue,<br>" So þat he þe nought perceyue."                                                                                       |        |
| Beduer asks                                                                | " ¶ Wyf," he seide, " for <sup>6</sup> charite,<br>" Let þy gretynge, & spek wyþ me,                                                                      | 12,252 |
| her who she is,<br>and why she<br>weeps.                                   | " & sey me what þou art, & why<br>" þou wepest here so delfully,<br>" & ho ys leyd here on þis graue ;                                                    |        |

<sup>1</sup> bot. [leaf 72.]

<sup>2</sup> brennand hie.

<sup>3</sup> hir haire schaked.

<sup>4</sup> caitife what dos þou.

<sup>5</sup> dede here has.

<sup>6</sup> par.

- " & sey me soþ, so God<sup>1</sup> þe saue!" 12,256  
 ¶ " I am," scheo seyde, " a wo-bygon," " I am a woe-  
 " An helples þyng, a waryed on, begone,  
 " & grete for a maydens<sup>2</sup> myshap who weeps for  
 " pat whilom y norished at my pap, 12,260 my foster-  
 " & souke y gaf hure of my brest;<sup>3</sup> child—  
 " & pis ys hure toumbe<sup>4</sup> þat pou sest; this is her  
 " Eleyne scheo highte, Oheles nece, tomb—  
 " Of flesche was non so fair a pece. 12,264 Eleyne, Ohel's  
 " To norische sche was me taught,<sup>5</sup> niece.  
 " Alas þe while y euere hure aught! Alas that ever  
 " So cam þis fend to þys contre, she was trusted  
 " & tok boþe Eleyne<sup>6</sup> & me, 12,268 to me!  
 " & broughte vs here vnto þis hyl, This fiend  
 " So þat noman dar come vs tyl, Dynabrok  
 " Eleyne he wolde haue furlayn, seized her and  
 " But sche ne myghte nought wyþ þat payn; me,  
 " He was so huge,<sup>7</sup> ouer mesure, 12,273 and ravished  
 " & scheo so zong, þat myght nought dure, her,—  
 " þorow gret destresse hire herte brast, he so huge, she  
 " In his armes scheo zald þe gast, 12,276 so young—  
 " & yn þys toumbe y haue hure leyd; so that she  
 " & þus hit was<sup>8</sup> als y haue seid." died in his  
 ¶ þen seid he, " wherto dwellest þou here, arms.  
 " Syþen<sup>9</sup> sche ys ded þat was þe dere?" 12,280 I laid her in  
 " Sire," scheo seyde, " y wil þe telle this tomb;  
 " zif þou durstest<sup>10</sup> so longe dwelle. and I dwell  
 " Sire, for y þe se of body auenaunt, here  
 " & gentil man by [þi]<sup>11</sup> semblaunt, 12,284  
 " When y sey Eleyne so schamely deye, because after  
 " My wit was lorn, & al a-weye; my Eleyne's  
 death, I lost  
 my wit,

<sup>1</sup> criste.<sup>2</sup> I grete for mayden.<sup>3,4</sup> at souke I. gaf hir of my pap.  
I. norished hir of my breste.<sup>4</sup> One stroke too many for um in  
the MS.<sup>5</sup> to me scho was bitauht.[lf. 72,  
col. 2.]<sup>6</sup> hir.<sup>7</sup> grete.<sup>8</sup> so it is.<sup>9</sup> sen.<sup>10</sup> durste.<sup>11</sup> be þi.

and Dynabrok  
forced me to  
stay, to satisfy  
his lust on me.

Would that I  
could sink into  
the earth !  
He will come  
soon,  
and you are a  
dead man if  
you stay here.  
Flee at once !

He is on yon  
hill, by the fire  
you see.

Flee, and leave  
me to my  
sorrow.  
Would that I  
could die !  
Beduer grieves  
for her,

but turns back  
to Arthur,

tells him how  
Eleyne died,  
and that the  
giant is on the  
big hill  
whence the  
smoke comes.  
Arthur waits

for the ebb of  
the tide ;  
then he, Bed-

“ Wyþ force he dide me leue stille,  
“ His lecherie in me to fulfilla. 12,288  
“ On God hym selue y take witnes,  
“ þat al maugre myn hit es !  
“ & ilka tyme þat y him se,  
“ Y wilde be sonken, for y ne may fle ; 12,292  
“ & y trowe he comeþ right<sup>1</sup> sone,  
“ His lecherie wyþ me to done.  
“ Y telle þe ded, ȝyf þou here bydes,  
“ No þyng ne saueþ þe, ne hides ; 12,296  
“ Swyþe þou fle, y gyue þe red,  
“ Y wolde nought þou were so<sup>2</sup> ded.  
“ ȝonder ys he, y schal þe kenne,  
“ On ȝone hil þer þou sest brenne ; 12,300  
“ Sone to come his tyme schal be, [leaf 33, col. 2.]  
“ þer-fore, sire knyght, y rede þou fle,  
“ & let me haue my self my sorewe,  
“ My wille ys to be ded<sup>3</sup> to morewe.” 12,304  
Of hure wo sore hym ouer þought ;<sup>4</sup>  
But he ne wiste what hure dought,  
Ne to make<sup>5</sup> long dwellyng.  
He turned ageyn vnto þe kynge ; 12,308  
& als scheo seide, so he hym tolde,  
How Eleyne deyde, & scheo in holde,  
& he scholde fynde þe geaunt  
Y þe more hil, þer was his haunt ; 12,312  
“ Out of þat stede þe smoke cam<sup>6</sup> fro,  
“ We may hym fynde ȝif þat we go.”  
¶ ffor Eleyne had Arthur sorewe ynow,  
& abod til þe flod wyþ-drow.<sup>7</sup> 12,316  
Vntil<sup>8</sup> þe ebbe a stounde þey bod,  
Wip þer hors þen ouer þey rod,

<sup>1</sup> hope [expect] he comes.

<sup>2</sup> wild not se þat þou were.

<sup>3</sup> to die.

<sup>4</sup> forþought.

<sup>5</sup> ne he to mak. [leaf 72, back.]

<sup>6</sup> comes.

<sup>7</sup> withdrew.

<sup>8</sup> vnto.

- & wenten bote a softe<sup>1</sup> pas  
 Tyl þei perceiued wher he<sup>2</sup> was. 12,320  
 þeir stedes & þer palfreys  
 þeir squiers helde, wiþ oþer harneys;  
 But sire Beduer & sire Kay  
 zede wiþ Arthur vp þe way. 12,324  
 Arthur seide, "y wil proue my might,  
 " Wiþ þe geaunt alone to fight;  
 " Hold 3ow here byhynde a lyte;  
 " Alone on hym wil y first smite; 12,328  
 " While<sup>3</sup> y may my selue saue,  
 " Oþer help wil y non haue;  
 " Me þynkeþ hit were no vasselage,  
 " pre til on; hit were outrage! 12,332  
 " Nere þe les, 3yf þat 3e se nede,  
 " Bettere ys help þan ouer drede;  
 " ffor men seye, 'hit ys folye<sup>4</sup>  
 " 'In strengthe to mikel for to affye.'" 12,336  
 þey seide, 'for prowessse ne for 3elp,  
 ' 3yf hit were ned, þey wolde hym help.'

uer, and Kay  
 ride across  
 to the giant's  
 hill,

and Arthur  
 says he'll fight  
 Dynabrok  
 alone;

three to one  
 would be  
 shameful.  
 But still they  
 may help him  
 if they see  
 need.

¶ De Occisione Gygantis Dynabrok per Arthurum.

- Arthur alone þe hil he tok<sup>5</sup>  
 Vnto þe geaunt Dynabrok. 12,340  
 By a mykel fir he sat,  
 Rostyng a swyn gret &<sup>6</sup> fat,  
 & oþer flesche biside was sode;<sup>7</sup>  
 His bryn,<sup>8</sup> his berd, þer-wiþ al lothen,<sup>9</sup> 12,344

Arthur finds  
 Dynabrok

roasting a fat  
 pig,

his eyebrows  
 and beard all

<sup>1</sup> schorte.

<sup>2</sup> MS. scheo. P. he.

<sup>3</sup> till.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> Puis ont tot trois le mont puisé,  
 Wace, ii. 152, l. 11,867.

<sup>6</sup> & roste swynes flesch fuff.

<sup>7</sup> som roasted & som was sothen.

<sup>8</sup> les guernons (moustaches),  
 Wace, ii. 158, l. 11,872.

<sup>9</sup> his bryne his berde þer with was  
 broþen.



|                            |                                                                       |        |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| slobbered with<br>the fat. | & al to-soilled <sup>1</sup> wyþ þe spyk :                            |        |
|                            | . I trowe þat syght was ful lopyk ;                                   |        |
|                            | But Arthur þoughte to haue þe grace                                   |        |
|                            | to smyte er he tok <sup>2</sup> his mace.                             | 12,348 |
| Dynabrok                   | When þe geaunt of hym was war,                                        |        |
|                            | fferly he hadde how he cam þar,                                       |        |
| starts up to               | & stirte vp þenne al o glyft/,                                        |        |
| lift his mace,             | His grete mace <sup>3</sup> for to lyft ;                             | 12,352 |
| but as he's                | But Arthur auised hym wel ynow ;                                      |        |
| doing it,                  | Als he hys mace vpward drow,                                          |        |
| Arthur thrusts             | . Arthur bar on hym wyþ his launce                                    |        |
| at him with his            | . To combren hym, als of chaunce ;                                    | 12,356 |
| lance.                     | . Longe þey foughte, a wel god while,                                 |        |
| They fight                 | . But Arthur couþe mykel of gyle ;                                    |        |
|                            | . Nere sleighte & queyntise hadde ben, & gile, <sup>4</sup>           |        |
|                            | . Somme had be combred þer in a whyte ; <sup>4</sup>                  | 12,360 |
| and Arthur is              | . ffor kyng Arthur neuere er was <sup>4</sup> [lf. 53, back, col. 1.] |        |
| hard bestead.              | . Bystad in so hard a cas. <sup>4</sup>                               |        |
|                            | . Dynabrok a-geyn hym stod                                            |        |
|                            | . Wyþ his mace, as geaunt wod,                                        | 12,364 |
| No three men               | ffor þre men, wyþoute þe forþe,                                       |        |
| could lift Dy-             | Schuld nought haue stired his mace from <sup>5</sup> erþe ;           |        |
| nabrok's mace.             | He sey wel how he made his mynt,                                      |        |
| He aims a blow             | & wiþ his mace he teysed <sup>6</sup> his dynt ;                      | 12,368 |
| at Arthur,                 | . He wiste þe strok schulde be gret ;                                 |        |
|                            | Vnder his scheld al he schet,                                         |        |
| who catches it             | & ageyn his <sup>7</sup> strok hit held.                              |        |
| on his shield,             | þen smot þe geaunt on his scheld,                                     | 12,372 |
|                            | & wyþ þat dynt so <sup>8</sup> heuy & stronge                         |        |
|                            | þe hilles alle aboute ronge,                                          |        |

<sup>1</sup> to soiled.<sup>2</sup> come or he took.<sup>3</sup> & took his mace up.

[leaf 72, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> sould not lifte it fro þe.<sup>6</sup> teysed, poised ; cp. *teyse & tais-*  
*and*, Sevyn Sages, 1978, in Halliwell.<sup>7</sup> þe.<sup>8</sup> so was þe dynt.

- . & al þat was þer-inne, hit schok <sup>1</sup>  
 . When Arthur þat dynt so huge tok.<sup>1</sup> 12,376  
 Arthur was stoneyd, stakered, & stynt,  
 But ȝut fel he nought for þat dynt.  
 . Anoper strok wold he nought byde,  
 . But peyned <sup>2</sup> hym to smyte a syde 12,380  
 . Wyþ his swerd Caliborne;  
 . Scharply he gan hym torne;  
 pat swerd he lifte wel on hey,  
 . & valedde his scheld <sup>3</sup> a party; 12,384  
 . Endlong <sup>4</sup> his forehed he hym smot,  
 . þe swerd bot wel, & he was hot,  
 & entamed boþe his bryn <sup>5</sup>  
 pat al þe skyn heng ouer hys eyn. 12,388  
 Wyþ þat strok he hadde ben slayn:  
 His mace he held wel þer a-gayn,  
 & his heued a party glent,  
 pat som of þe strok hit hent; 12,392  
 Netheles, wel was hit set;  
 þe blod al ouer his eyen hit schet; <sup>6</sup>  
 þen lost he þer al his sight,  
 þen wax <sup>7</sup> he woder for to fyght, 12,396  
 þen was he woder þen he was or,<sup>1</sup>  
 ffightyng als a wylde bor,<sup>1</sup>  
 þe same weys so dide he;<sup>1</sup>  
 When he sey þat he myghte nought se,<sup>2</sup> 12,400  
 He ne lefte for swerd ne oper hirt  
 pat he vntil Arthur stirt;  
 Aboute his middel his armes he leyd,  
 & on Arthur so sore he breyd,<sup>8</sup> 12,404
- and staggers  
under it,  
but doesn't fall.
- With Caliburn
- he smites Dy-  
nabrok along  
the forehead,
- and the bleed-  
ing skin falls  
over his eyes.  
He'd have been  
killed if he  
hadn't put up  
his mace, and  
dodged his  
head.
- The blood  
stops up Dyna-  
brok's eyes,
- he gets wilder  
and wilder,  
and fights like  
a wild boar.
- Then he rushes  
at Arthur,  
seizes him by  
the middle,

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> etild.<sup>3</sup> his schelde he auailed (lowered).<sup>4</sup> & o long.<sup>5</sup> Les deus sqrcils li entama,  
Wace, ii. 154, l. 11,896.<sup>6</sup> his Ine get.<sup>7</sup> was.<sup>8</sup> sare he braid. [leaf 73.]

lifts him up, . On heighte he lifte hym four fet ;  
 and throws . & als he pere hym down let,  
 him on his Vpon his knes he hym kast.  
 knees. þen Arthur proued his force fast, 12,408  
 Arthur . Our lady hym halp, his wille was god,  
 gets up, Wyp force he ros, & he vp stod ;  
 & Arthur was algate queynte,  
 & his wille was neuere feynte ; 12,412  
 . On þat syde he bar his scheld,  
 . & þe geaunt nought ne<sup>1</sup> held,  
 twists round, Wyp þat he wroþ,<sup>2</sup> & turnde his syde,  
 forces the & dide his armes<sup>3</sup> opene wyde. 12,416  
 giant's arms When he hym self was fro hym broken,  
 open, gets free, & þat his body was nought loken,<sup>4</sup>  
 . . . . . ful lyght hym þoughte þat he was oute ;<sup>5</sup>  
 and smites the Wip Caliborne þen ran he aboute,<sup>5</sup> 12,420  
 giant with his And euere on þe geaunt<sup>6</sup> smot,  
 sword. & Caliborne sore vpon hym bot.  
 Dynabrok, þe geaunt glente hider & tyder,<sup>7</sup> [leaf 53, back, col. 2.]  
 blinded by his þe blod so blent hym, he nyst whider ; 12,424  
 blood, gropes He groped aboute hym for to<sup>8</sup> hent,  
 about after & Arthur aboute hym euere went/,  
 Arthur ; & smot hym sore woundes<sup>9</sup> fele,  
 . Nought of hym ne wolde he spele ;<sup>10</sup> 12,428  
 . & at a turn þe geaunt stynt/,  
 then he stops Arthur gaf hym so gret a dynt  
 still a second, <sup>11</sup> O þe hed, þat in to þe nekke hit dref,  
 and Arthur & in to þe schuldres þe panne he clef ;<sup>11</sup> 12,432  
 splits his head . 3yt he after Arthur raught,—  
 down to his Arthur wyp-drow<sup>12</sup> his sward a draught,—  
 shoulders.

<sup>1</sup> þe Geaunt nouht he ne.<sup>2</sup> wroþe (writhed).<sup>3</sup> armure.<sup>4</sup> not stoken.<sup>5</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>6</sup> on þe Geaunt with his sward he.<sup>7</sup> hider & bidere.<sup>8</sup> grapte about if he mot.<sup>9</sup> with woundes.<sup>10</sup> spele = spare.<sup>11-12</sup> þan down in to þe hede it drafte.þe panne in to þe schuldres  
klafte.<sup>12</sup> & Arthur drouh.

|                                                  |        |                             |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------|
| pat he stombled, & gaf a cry, <sup>1</sup>       |        | Dynabrok                    |
| A dredful & a lopy; <sup>1</sup>                 | 12,436 | utters a dread-<br>ful cry. |
| When he fel, he gaf a lasche                     |        | and falls with              |
| As wyþ a blast had falle an asche;               |        | a sound like an             |
| & for þat fal Arthur low,                        |        | ash blown                   |
| He was venged hym þoughte <sup>2</sup> y-now;    | 12,440 | down.                       |
| ffro ferre he stod, & loked on hym, <sup>1</sup> |        | Arthur laughs;              |
| . & seyde he was a geaunt grym; <sup>1</sup>     |        | says he's a                 |
| He bad Beduer he schulde go                      |        | grim giant,                 |
| To smyte þe heued þe body fro,                   | 12,444 | tells Beduer to             |
| & bytake <sup>3</sup> hit a squier               |        | cut Dynabrok's              |
| To schewe hit al þe host plener.                 |        | head off, and               |
|                                                  |        | have it shown               |
|                                                  |        | to the army.                |

¶ Hic narrauit Arthurus Beduero & Kayo de  
gigante Rytone.

|                                                        |        |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| þen telde Arthur to Beduer & <sup>4</sup> Kay,         |        | Arthur says he  |
| pat he nadde neuere suche affray,                      | 12,448 | never had such  |
| Of no geaunt but of on,                                |        | a fight,        |
| & þat geaunt highte Ryton; <sup>5</sup>                |        | except with the |
| fful manye kynges had he don slo,                      |        | giant Ryton,    |
| & flow þe berdes of alle þo;                           | 12,452 | who made the    |
| Til a pane, as a furour, <sup>6</sup> he did hem tewe: |        | beards of the   |
| Loke ȝif Ryton were nought <sup>7</sup> a schrewe!     |        | kings he slew   |
| pat geaunt Riton sende his sonde                       |        | into a trimming |
| Til Arthur fro ferre <sup>8</sup> londe,               | 12,456 | for his cloak.  |
| . & seide he scholde make hym a-ferd                   |        | " This Ryton    |
| But he flowe of his owen <sup>9</sup> berd,            |        | sent to me,     |
| & sent hit hym vntil his pane,                         |        | and said that   |
|                                                        |        | unless I flayed |
|                                                        |        | off my beard,   |
|                                                        |        | and sent it him |
|                                                        |        | for his cloak,  |

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> venged wele.

<sup>3</sup> bitech.

<sup>4</sup> He told Beduer & sir.

<sup>5</sup> P. has for the next two lines,—  
he did mykell wonder & wo.  
& many kynges did he slo.

& all þer berdes he did of flo.  
a pane he mad of alle þo.

[leaf 73, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> And as a ferroure.

<sup>7</sup> se how Riton was.

<sup>8</sup> fer.

<sup>9</sup> awen.

|                                                                                                            |                                                                    |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|                                                                                                            | . To menske hit <i>per</i> hit was wane ;                          | 12,460     |
|                                                                                                            | & <i>zyf</i> he sent hit hym <i>blepely</i> ,                      |            |
|                                                                                                            | He schulde set hit most worschipfully, <sup>1</sup>                |            |
|                                                                                                            | ffor he wolde vrle his pane <i>wyþ</i> -al                         |            |
|                                                                                                            | . Aboute <i>wiþ</i> a ffylet smal ;                                | 12,464     |
| I was to get<br>ready, and                                                                                 | And <i>zyf</i> Arthur <i>wylde</i> nought                          |            |
|                                                                                                            | Do als Ryton hym bisought,                                         |            |
|                                                                                                            | Greyþe hym as sone as <sup>2</sup> he myght,                       |            |
| fight him ;<br>and whoever<br>won,<br>should flay off<br>the other's<br>beard, and put<br>it on the cloak. | ffor Ryton wolde <i>wyþ</i> hym fight ;                            | 12,468     |
|                                                                                                            | & whilk of þem might oper slo,                                     |            |
|                                                                                                            | His berd he scholde don of flo,                                    |            |
|                                                                                                            | & haue þe pane ilka del,                                           |            |
|                                                                                                            | <i>per</i> - <i>wyþ</i> aboute vrle hit wel.                       | 12,472     |
| So I went to<br>him, slew him,<br>and won his<br>cloak on<br>Mount Derane.                                 | Arthur þen til Ryton went,                                         |            |
|                                                                                                            | In bataille he slow hym <sup>3</sup> & schent,                     |            |
|                                                                                                            | & wan þe pane & his berd ;                                         |            |
|                                                                                                            | O þe mount Derane <sup>4</sup> he was conquerd.                    | 12,476     |
| No one has<br>given me<br>such trouble<br>since, save this<br>Dynabrok."                                   | Sipen fond Arthur neuere non                                       |            |
|                                                                                                            | But Dynabrok, as was Ryton,                                        |            |
|                                                                                                            | pat neuere dide til hym in dede,                                   |            |
|                                                                                                            | pat he had of so mykel drede.                                      | 12,480     |
| Beduer gives<br>Dynabrok's<br>head to a<br>squire,<br>to show to the<br>host.                              | . <i>per</i> þey hym slowe, <i>per</i> þey hym leued,              |            |
| Ohel laments<br>Eleyne's fate,                                                                             | & Beduer tok a squier þe heued,                                    |            |
|                                                                                                            | To bere & schewe þe host aboute,                                   |            |
|                                                                                                            | Wher þat þey were, & in what doute.                                | 12,484     |
|                                                                                                            | Sire Ohel ful sore byment <sup>5</sup>                             | [leaf 54.] |
|                                                                                                            | pat his nece was so schent ;                                       |            |
| and builds a<br>fair chapel for<br>her,<br>wherein her<br>corpse is laid,<br>and it is called              | A fair chapel for hure dide make,                                  |            |
|                                                                                                            | Of oure lady, for Eleyne <sup>6</sup> sake.                        | 12,488     |
|                                                                                                            | Sipen <sup>7</sup> þat tyme scheo was <i>per</i> leyd,             |            |
|                                                                                                            | ffor Eleyne, <sup>6</sup> 'Eleyne's <sup>6</sup> toumbe' ys seid ; |            |

<sup>1</sup> *suld do it most curteisly.*<sup>2</sup> *Redy him sone als.*<sup>3</sup> *bataile slouh Riton.*<sup>4</sup> *de Rame.* (Et mont de Rave,  
MS. du Roi, 78, Cangé; d'ArtaneMS. de l'Ara., 171. B.-L. ; Wace,  
ii. 158, note (a).)<sup>5</sup> *it ment.*<sup>6</sup> *Heleyn.*<sup>7</sup> *sen.*

& so men han cald hit ay<sup>1</sup>

'Eleyne's toumbe' vnto þys day.<sup>1</sup>

12,492 Eleyne's tomb.

When þe host was al comen & zare,  
þo þat scholde wiþ Arthur fare,

Arthur, with  
his host,

. No þrowe<sup>2</sup> wolde he þare lye,

But passed sone al Normandie.

12,496 crosses Nor-  
mandy,

. His folk wax<sup>3</sup> wher-so he cam,

. þe doughtiest wyþ hym he nam,

. Out of castel & of cite,

& passed Burgoyne, al þat contre;

12,500 and Burgundy,

Vntil Hostum,<sup>4</sup> þyder he þought;

to Hostum,  
where he hears  
that the Ro-  
mans are  
coming.

& þennes tidynges men hym<sup>5</sup> brought,

þat þey of Rome com wyþ gret route,

& tok þe contre al aboute.

12,504

¶ Al as<sup>6</sup> Arthur schulde a water passe—

Albe,<sup>7</sup> hit seis þe name wasse—

As Arthur is  
crossing the  
river Albe,  
spies tell him

Al day til Arthur men tolde,

Wiþ passand men<sup>8</sup> & spies bolde,

12,508

þat þe Emperour was þere bysyde;

that the Ro-  
man Emperor  
is close by,

. To conseilte what best myghte bytide,<sup>9</sup>

His paulions, his penceles, þykke

Nought fer fro þenne had þey don wyk :<sup>10</sup> 12,512

"þer are so manye of<sup>11</sup> Romayns,

with an army  
of four to one  
against his.

"& þyn host may nought<sup>12</sup> þeym ageyns.

"ffoure haþ he agayns<sup>13</sup> on of þyne;

"& ȝif ȝe assemble, þou<sup>14</sup> most<sup>15</sup> tyne." 12,516

Arthurs answers  
"God's help is  
nigh,"

Arthur seide, "Godes help ys ney !

. "He wot ho schal haue þe maistri."

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> while. [leaf 73, back.]

<sup>3</sup> flok wez.

<sup>4</sup> Ostun [Autun], Wace, ii. 160, 12,020.

<sup>5</sup> þien tȝynges tiff him men.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *Alas*. P. has *Als*.

<sup>7</sup> Aube, Wace, ii. 160, l. 12,027.

<sup>8</sup> Li paisant, Wace, l. 12,028.

<sup>9</sup> him how best mot tȝde.

<sup>10</sup> fer þien had þei down pikke.  
(A.-Sax., *wician*, to encamp.)

<sup>11</sup> so many.

<sup>12</sup> ȝ þou has non oste. • ȝ þu

<sup>13</sup> ere agayn. <sup>14</sup> MS. *þi*, or *þi*.

<sup>15</sup> If bataile go þou saff.

raises a castle  
 on the river, for  
 refuge if he  
 needs it,  
 He left nought for no manace;  
 Vpon Albe<sup>1</sup> in a strong place 12,520  
 A castel he dide reyse & set,  
 . ȝyf he had nede to take recet;<sup>2</sup>  
 Smertly to make þei were al bon<sup>3</sup>  
 Wyþ folk ynow, & sone had don.<sup>3</sup> 12,524  
 When al was ended þe grete<sup>4</sup> tour,  
 He leyde in<sup>5</sup> his harneys & his tresour,  
 ȝyf chaunce come þei moste wyþdrawe<sup>6</sup>  
 To rest hem þere a litel prawe.<sup>7</sup> 12,528

and puts his  
 arms and  
 treasure there.

¶ *Arthurus misit nuncios ad Imperatorem.*

His castle being " finished,  
 Arthur ap-  
 points mes-  
 sengers,  
 Geryn of  
 Chartres,  
 Beofs of  
 Hampton,  
 and Wawayn  
 who knew  
 Roman,  
 to go and tell  
 the Emperor :  
 "I, Arthur, bid  
 you back to  
 Rome, out of  
 . When þe castel was al dight,  
 & defensablè for kyng & knyght,  
 He ordeynd messegers<sup>8</sup> to wende,  
 . To þe Emperour he þoughte to sende, 12,532  
 Two erles þat were of noble lynage,  
 & wel spekyng,<sup>9</sup> of god langage :  
 Geryn of Chartres, a man of pris,  
 Wip Beofs of Hamptone,<sup>10</sup> an oþer ful wys ; 12,536  
 Wip pise two wente sire Wawayn,  
 ffor he spak wel þe speche Romain ;  
 ffor he had longe wip hem ben,<sup>3</sup>  
 & his connynge þey hadde wel sen ;<sup>3</sup> 12,540  
 . ffor þat skile Arthur hym sent,<sup>3</sup>  
 . þat he wist best what þeir speche ment ;<sup>3</sup>  
 & Arthur taughte þem þus to seye,  
 When þey schulde wende þer weye : 12,544  
 " Sey þemperour he go to Rome, [leaf 54, col. 2.]  
 " & to ffraunce non hender come,

<sup>1</sup> Aube, Wace, l. 12,041.

<sup>2</sup> him were nede to haf resette.

<sup>3</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>4</sup> up in þe. <sup>5</sup> He did.

<sup>6</sup> com þat him bord fle.

<sup>7</sup> þer in tuo daies or þre. (R.)

Manning follows the Arsenal MS. of Wace (ii. 161, note (c)) in the last four lines.

<sup>8</sup> sent messengers.

<sup>9</sup> wele spoken.

<sup>10</sup> Beus of Oxenford.

|                                                        |        |                |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| " Ne til no landes þat y wan,                          |        | France and my  |
| " Ne chalange hit as man <sup>1</sup> Romayn ;         | 12,548 | lands ;        |
| " þo ar myne ; & myne schul be ;                       |        | mine they are, |
| " Romayn of þeym schal neuere haue fee.                |        | and mine they  |
| " ȝyf he wil nought turne ageyn,                       |        | shall be.      |
| " Byd hem abide þe <sup>2</sup> bataille pleyn,        | 12,552 | If you won't   |
| " & auenture at alle <sup>3</sup> chaunce              |        | go, then abide |
| " To dereyne þe ryght of Rome & <sup>4</sup> ffraunce. |        | battle.        |
| " As longe as y may ffraunce <sup>5</sup> saue,        |        | As long as I   |
| " þe Romayns schul hit <sup>6</sup> neuere haue.       | 12,556 | can save       |
| " Wyp bataille, sey hym, y hit wan,                    |        | France, the    |
| " & schal <sup>7</sup> defend hit fro ilka man.        |        | Romans shall   |
| " Wip force, þer-of had þey first fee,                 |        | never have it. |
| " Wyp force þey les hit a-geyns me ;                   | 12,560 |                |
| " & now wip bataille schal hit be <sup>8</sup> sene    |        | Let a battle   |
| " Who schal haue hit quyt & clene."                    |        | decide between |
|                                                        |        | us."           |

¶ De nunciis Regis Arthury ad Imperatorem.

|                                                  |        |                |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| þe messengers þat wente þo nedes,                |        | Arthur's mes-  |
| Horsed þem on gode stedes :                      | 12,564 | sengers get    |
| & armed þem at alle rightes,                     |        | good steeds,   |
| As fel vnto noble knyghtes.                      |        | and arm well.  |
| Oper Bretons herd her-of seye,                   |        | Britons ask    |
| & wente to mete hem bifore <sup>9</sup> on weye, | 12,568 | them to        |
| And preied hem <sup>10</sup> hertely for to do   |        |                |
| Som þyng, or seye þe Romayns to,                 |        | insult the Ro- |
| þat þe werre myghte algate go                    |        | mans so that   |
| Er þey comen þe court fro :                      | 12,572 | the war may go |
|                                                  |        | on :           |

<sup>1</sup> be chalenged þorgh no.

<sup>2</sup> stand to.

<sup>3</sup> vs att to.

<sup>4</sup> whilk satt derayne þe Reme of.

<sup>5</sup> may it.

<sup>6</sup> france satt he neuere.

<sup>7</sup> & so.

<sup>8</sup> satt be.

<sup>9</sup> & led þam alle þre.

<sup>10</sup> à Gauvain, Wace, ii. 162, 1.  
12,080.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>"It's been threatened, so long that it'd be a shame not to fight.</p> <p>Besides, we're sure to win ;</p> <p>so try to bring on the fight."</p> <p>Wawayn says, "You shall here of us,"</p> <p>and, with his fellows, rides</p> <p>to and through the Roman host,</p> <p>till they reach Lucius's pavilion. Here they alight,</p> | <p>"Hit hap be longe<sup>1</sup> manaced &amp; pret,</p> <p>"But so ney to-gydere were we nere<sup>2</sup> set ;</p> <p>"Schame hit were þat eyþer zede</p> <p>"Wipouten bataille or vailaunte<sup>3</sup> dede. 12,576</p> <p>. "zyf so bitide ze<sup>4</sup> hit bygynne,</p> <p>. "zyt schul Bretons prowessse wynne ;</p> <p>. "per-to algate dos þour trauail,<sup>5</sup></p> <p>. "&amp; þat we may, we wil þow vaille."<sup>6</sup> 12,580</p> <p>þen seide Wawayn, "in alle manere</p> <p>"Of vs schul ze som tyding here ;</p> <p>. "&amp; zyf ze se þat we ought dwelle,</p> <p>. "Tydyng þer-of men schal telle." 12,584</p> <p>¶ þe messegers passed a mountayne,</p> <p>&amp; þenne a wode, &amp; syþen a playne ;</p> <p>firo<sup>6</sup> þat playne a partye helded,</p> <p>&amp; þer-on were þe Romainys telded ; 12,588</p> <p>. fful semly wypouten bost</p> <p>þey come rydyng al<sup>7</sup> þorow þe host.</p> <p>þe Romainys on ilka side aboute,</p> <p>Of þer tentes comen<sup>8</sup> oute 12,592</p> <p>þo messegers to byholde,</p> <p>. þat semed noble bodies<sup>9</sup> &amp; bolde.</p> <p>þey asked what tydynges þey brought,</p> <p>Or pider for þe pes þey sought : 12,596</p> <p>Wyp non þey stode, ne tales helde,</p> <p>Tyl þey come to þe Emperours telde.</p> <p>. When þey were at his paupyloun,</p> <p>þere-byfore þey lyghte alle down, 12,600</p> <p>&amp; bitok þeir hors<sup>10</sup> þeir pages,</p> <p>. To stande right stille at certeyn stages.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *it has bien long.*<sup>2</sup> *& now so nere togider ere.*<sup>3</sup> *manly.*<sup>4</sup> *þat.*<sup>5</sup> *P. leaves out these lines.*<sup>6</sup> *of.* [leaf 74.]<sup>7</sup> *ridand.*<sup>8</sup> *þei com.*<sup>9</sup> *men.*<sup>10</sup> *Bitaukt þer hors.*

¶ **Hic venerunt Nuncii coram Imperatore.** [lf. 54, bk., col. 1.]

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| By-fore þe Emperour come alle þre,<br>& seide þeir message as men auise,<br>Geryn & Beofs <sup>1</sup> boþe ful wys;<br>And þe Emperour seide hem his auis,<br>& spak ageyn þeym <sup>2</sup> boþe fast.<br>But þenne spak Wawayn atte last:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 12,604                                                                                   | go before the<br>Emperor, and<br>give him<br>Arthur's<br>message:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| "We ar come fro þe kyng Arthour<br>"To þe, sire Lucius, Emperour;<br>"We are his knyghte to lyue & deye;<br>"His message y schal þe holy <sup>3</sup> seye.<br>"þys ys þe message <sup>4</sup> þat he þe sendes:<br>"He comaundes þe, & defendes,<br>"þat þou of ffraunce nought entremet,<br>"Ne no fot þideward ferrer <sup>5</sup> set;<br>"ffor Fraunce he holdes as his demeynes, <sup>6</sup><br>"& euere schal, for alle Romeynes, <sup>6</sup><br>"ȝyf þou of hym wilt ought chalenge,<br>"þorow bataille wil he hym venge.<br>"þorow bataille first wonne ȝe ffraunce,<br>"& les hit after þorow a chaunce;<br>"A-geyn Arthur ȝe hit les<br>"þorow bataille, as þe party ches,<br>"& now ys holde as his conqueste, <sup>7</sup><br>"& schal while þe sonne rysep est. <sup>7</sup><br>"& ȝyf þou sette chalange þer-ynne,<br>"þorow bataille byhouseþ þe hit wyne; <sup>8</sup><br>"þorow bataille schal hit be dereynt,<br>"py chalangyng & al þy pleynt, | 12,608<br><br><br><br>12,612<br><br><br>12,616<br><br>12,620<br><br>12,624<br><br>12,628 | "King Arthur<br><br><br>forbids you,<br>Lucius, to set<br>foot farther in<br>France,<br>which is his.<br><br>If you claim it<br>he'll fight for<br>it.<br><br>He won it of<br>you;<br><br>and his it shall<br>be while the<br>sun rises in the<br>east.<br>If you claim it,<br>come and fight<br>for it |

<sup>1</sup> *benz.*

<sup>2</sup> & told agayn.

<sup>3</sup> *I satt þe.*

<sup>4</sup> *gretynq.*

5 box.

<sup>6</sup> demeyng . . . romeyns.

<sup>7</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>8</sup> Porgh þe bihoues it wyn.

to-morrow,  
and win it if  
you can !”

“ & sone assigned<sup>1</sup> wypoute delay,  
“ Com to morn, & prof<sup>2</sup> þy day, 12,632  
“ & wyn hit ȝyf þou wynne schal !  
“ Or al to lese, or wynne<sup>3</sup> hit al !  
“ ȝyf þou wilt nought turne a-geyn,  
“ Al þy dwellyng is in veyn, 12,636  
“ ffor þou hast lorn, & we haue wonnen,<sup>4</sup>  
“ So ferre we haue þy lond ouer ronnen.”<sup>4</sup>

### ¶ Responcio Lucii Imperatoris.

Lucius answers þenne seyde þemperour to pise þre,  
“ To turne ageyn, hit schal nought be. 12,640  
“ ffraunce ys myn, þider wol y go ;  
“ ffor ȝif y lese hit, me schal be wo ;  
If I did lose it,  
I'll win it  
again.” “ & ȝif y ha lore hit<sup>5</sup> at vnskyle,  
“ Y schal hit wynne eft when God<sup>6</sup> wyle.” 12,644  
þus he seide, for wel he wende<sup>4</sup>  
þey hadde no force ffraunce to fende.<sup>4</sup>  
A Roman knight Quyn-  
talyn, hight Quyntalyn,  
taunts Wawayn : Syb þemperour, & his cosyn, 12,648  
Wawayn : Contrariouly to Wawayn spak,  
& vyleynlike he gan hym lak :<sup>7</sup>  
“ Bretons,” he saide, “ ar bot auaunturs,  
“ & manace mikel at rebours ; 12,652  
“ þer bostful wordes ar nought to seke,  
“ þer dedes ar nought worþ a leke.  
“ ȝe manace ay ‘ hit schal ben so ;’  
“ ȝour dedes ar noughte þat ȝe do. 12,656  
“ Al day bostfully ȝe þrete ;  
“ Doþ hit in dede ! manace ȝe<sup>8</sup> lete !”  
Wawayn cuts Wawayn hym listed, & gram low,<sup>9</sup> [lf. 54, bk., col. 2.]

“ Britons are  
but braggers,  
  
in word.  
Their deeds  
arn't worth a  
leek.  
You threaten  
  
all day.  
Put it into  
deeds !”  
Wawayn cuts

<sup>1</sup> set. [leaf 74, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> proue. <sup>3</sup> haf.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> .I. haf lorn.

<sup>6</sup> satt wyn it whan grace.

<sup>7</sup> vilensly behynd his bak.

<sup>8</sup> do in dede þe manace.

<sup>9</sup> listend him Inouh.

But smertly out his swerd he drow,  
 & smot his hed of þer al quit,  
 & bad his felawes horse þem tyt,  
 . And seyde vnto þe Romaynes alle,  
 . " Bretons schul rise, & ȝe schul falle !  
 . " ȝow were wel bettere at Rome burgh,<sup>1</sup>  
 . " þan reyse baner a-geyn Arthurgh !"<sup>1</sup>  
 per-wyþ sire Wawayn his hors hent,  
 & homward alle þre þey went.

12,660 Quyntalyn's  
 head right off,

12,664 tells the Ro-  
 mans they'd  
 better go home,

and rides back  
 with Geryn  
 and Beofs.  
 12,668

¶ De probitate nunciorum Arthury.<sup>2</sup>

þe knyght<sup>3</sup> was frayed, no wonder was,  
 þe Emperour cried " alas ! alas !

Lucius says

" Slayn þey haue sire Quyntalyn  
 . " Now right here byfore myn eyn !

12,672

" ȝyf þey a-scape vs alle fro,  
 " Merueille<sup>4</sup> may men telle of þo."

they mustn't  
 escape.

Romayns ronne out of paulyons,  
 & hasted fast<sup>5</sup> after þe Bretons.  
 Ilkon tok þat þey myght hent,  
 & after þem prykede faste, & went.

12,676 The Romans  
 pursue Arthur's  
 messengers ;

On þer was þat hadde a stede,  
 þat byfore alle þe opere zede,  
 & cried ful loude, " abyð ! abyð !  
 " ȝyf þou dar, turne, & to me ryd !"

12,680 and one calls  
 on

Sire Geryn herde what he seyde,  
 & turnde hym, & his spere forþ leyde,  
 & of his gode hors hym cast  
 Als fer as þe spere wold last.

them to turn  
 and fight.

þen seide Geryn als he lay þore,  
 " pyn hors bar þe ouer faste<sup>6</sup> byfore ;

12,684 Geryn turns,  
 drives the Ro-  
 man off his  
 horse,

12,688

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> This heading is two lines lower  
 in the MS.

<sup>3</sup> *courte*.

<sup>4</sup> *mervailly*.

<sup>5</sup> *Suythe*.

<sup>6</sup> *fer*. [leaf 74, back.]

|                                                              |                                                                   |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| kills him, and<br>taunts him.                                | " ȝit were þe bettere ha ben at þe ost <sup>1</sup>               |        |
|                                                              | " þan fort ha foched þy deþ wyþ bost, <sup>1</sup>                |        |
|                                                              | " & haue holde þe fer o drey, <sup>1</sup>                        |        |
|                                                              | " ffor now þe ouer-þynkep þou come so ney." <sup>1</sup>          |        |
| Beofs of Oxford                                              | ¶ Beofs <sup>2</sup> of Oxenforde þen loked bak,                  | 12,693 |
|                                                              | & listned how þat Geryn spak,                                     |        |
|                                                              | Saw þe Romain ded þer lay, <sup>1</sup>                           |        |
|                                                              | & his hors wente forþ o stray; <sup>1</sup>                       | 12,696 |
| turns too,<br>spears another<br>Roman through<br>the throat, | þen þoughte sire Beofs, <sup>3</sup> "y am to blame               |        |
|                                                              | " But y do til anoper þe same."                                   |        |
|                                                              | His hors he turnd þen, and abod,                                  |        |
|                                                              | & til anoper Romain rod;                                          | 12,700 |
| and chaffs him<br>for gaping.                                | & wyþ his spere <sup>3</sup> he bar hym yn                        |        |
|                                                              | þorow-out þe þrote, byneþe þe chyn.                               |        |
|                                                              | Gapyng he lay at erþe al <sup>4</sup> streked                     |        |
|                                                              | Als he was wyþ þe launce cheked.                                  | 12,704 |
|                                                              | þen seide sire Beofs, <sup>3</sup> for þat he gaped, <sup>5</sup> |        |
|                                                              | " To þe mete fuer sone hym <sup>6</sup> raped,                    |        |
|                                                              | " But ly now stille þer, ar <sup>7</sup> þou ete,                 | 12,708 |
|                                                              | " & ȝif þy felawes þe ouer gete,                                  |        |
| Then comes<br>another Roman<br>knight,<br>Marcel's,          | <sup>8</sup> " Sey, 'þe messegers wente here forþ god spede,      |        |
|                                                              | " ' & wiþ suche musseles he can ȝow fede.'" <sup>8</sup>          |        |
|                                                              | ¶ þen cam anoper ride faste <sup>9</sup> byforn,                  |        |
|                                                              | A noble knyght of Rome born,—                                     | 12,712 |
| on a very fast<br>horse ;                                    | Marcel's, hit seyþ his name <sup>10</sup> hight,—                 |        |
|                                                              | & hadde an hors was ferly lyght; <sup>11</sup>                    |        |
|                                                              | Of þem alle last horsed he was, <sup>1</sup>                      |        |
|                                                              | & passed þe formest a gret pas; <sup>1</sup>                      | 12,716 |
| and though                                                   | And for gret haste, as of chaunce,                                |        |

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> *Beus*.<sup>3</sup> *lance*.<sup>4</sup> *gaspand he fell & lay all*.<sup>5</sup> *þou gapid*.<sup>6</sup> *full sone þou*. (De tex morsiax  
vous sai je pestre, *Wace*, ii. 168, l.  
12,211.)<sup>7</sup> *lig now still ore þat*.<sup>8-8</sup> *to þam may þou þe soþe say.**þe messengers went bi þis way.*<sup>9</sup> *A noþer com ridand fast.*<sup>10</sup> *Marcell it sais þat he.*<sup>11</sup> *wyght*.

- He hadde furgete at hom his launce. he's forgot  
 He sporede his hors, forþ faste<sup>1</sup> gan schake, [11. ss.] his lance,  
 Wel wende he Wawayn for to ha take, 12,720 he thinks he'll  
 & seyde, "hit were ful gret ferlik"<sup>2</sup> take Wawayn  
 "But he broughte Wawayn to þem al quyk."<sup>3</sup> prisoner.  
 Wawayn wondred hym ferne<sup>4</sup> fro  
 . þat his hors myght so wel go. 12,724  
 ffor Marcel neyghed Wawayn right hende,  
 . Wawayn to take ful wel he wende;  
 . But his hors com so smertly, But as he  
 & passed Wawayn fast hym by, 12,728 gallops by,  
 & als he by Wawayn glent,  
 Wawayn had his swerd out hent, Wawayn  
 And clef his heued at o dynt, cleaves his  
 porow helm, þat at þe breste<sup>4</sup> hit stynt; 12,732 head down  
 His gode armure auailed nought, to his chest,  
 Wyp þat strok to<sup>5</sup> þe erþe he sought. and he falls to  
 In his fallynge, seide Wawayn, the ground.  
 "Marcel, y rede þou turne a-gayn, 12,736 "Go to hell,"  
 " & go to Quyntalyn to helle, says Wawayn,  
 " & on myn half þou hym telle, "and tell  
 " þat þe Bretons þat 3e þus chace, Quyntalyn  
 " Wel more con do þan<sup>6</sup> manace. 12,740 that the Bri-  
 7. " Sey Quyntalyn, 'we hym by þe grete, tons can do  
 " ' & more wol gyue þan we wol hete! ' "7 something  
 Now to-gydere þey gonne þem drawe, more than  
 & oper þre þey dide of dawe; 12,744 threaten."  
 Lenger to iuste myght þey nought stande, They kill three  
 But þem defended al wyþdrawande.<sup>8</sup> more Romans;  
 þe Romainys on alle halue hem<sup>9</sup> went, and though the  
 Wip swerd & spere strokes þey<sup>10</sup> lent, 12,748 Romans attack  
 sides,

<sup>1</sup> with sporse he smote þe hors.<sup>2</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> hed selcouth fer.<sup>4</sup> þorgh þe helme to þe sadiſt.<sup>5</sup> with þe drauht. [11. 74, bk., col. 2.]<sup>6</sup> more do þan þai.<sup>7-7</sup> & more þai giſe þan þei hete.bi þe Marcell Quintelyn .I.  
grete.<sup>8</sup> & were fleand.<sup>9</sup> ilk half þam.<sup>10</sup> swerdes & lances strokes.

they come off  
unharméd.

A nephew of  
Marcel's sees

his uncle lying  
dead,

and rides after  
Arthur's  
messengers.

He raises his  
sword to strike,

but Wawayn  
lets fly at his  
hand, cuts off  
his arm,

and would  
have finished  
him, but that  
the Romans  
crowd on them.  
However, they  
gain the wood  
next Arthur's  
castle.

But neuere for strok þat þey þer tok,<sup>1</sup>  
Of stirop ne sadel out ne schok,<sup>1</sup>  
Ne drowen blod, ne gof þem wounde,<sup>1</sup>  
Ne stopped þem þer wey no stounde.<sup>1</sup> 12,752  
¶ þenne had Marcel a neuew  
þat was horsed vntil his þrew :  
In his wey Marcel he fond,  
Liggyng slayn þer<sup>2</sup> on a lond. 12,756  
After þe messegers trauersed [he] þe feld ;  
& Wawayn houed, & byheld  
þat he cam so gret a spurne,  
He had no leyser his hors to turne 12,760  
Vntil he cam among þem alle,  
& of his hand his spere<sup>3</sup> let falle,  
& drow his sward, scharp to byte :<sup>4</sup>  
He wende Wawayn wel to smyte ;<sup>4</sup> 12,764  
& as he lifte his sward vp heye,  
At his hand Wawayn let fleye,  
& smot of boþe hand & arm,  
So þat he dide namore harm. 12,768  
Anoper strok he scholde haue had,  
But wiþ þe Romayns þey were ouerstad,  
So ferly fele after þem schok.  
But for al hem,<sup>5</sup> þe wode þey tok, 12,772  
þat was bitwixt hem & Arthures hold,  
þe newe castel y lang er told.<sup>6</sup>

¶ *Hic misit Arthurus in obuiam sex mille armatos.*

Arthur sends  
out 6,000 men  
to help his  
messengers.

A rthur our kyng, þat was at home,  
Wondred þe messegers nought ne come ; 12,776  
Sex þousand sent he for drede,  
To socoure þeym ȝyf þey had nede.

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> *Slayn he lay.*

<sup>3</sup> *lance.*

<sup>4</sup> P. transposes these lines.

<sup>5</sup> *þat alle gate.*

<sup>6</sup> *I. ore of told. (p. 438, l. 12,521).*

- pey come & passed to þe wodes side,  
 & þere wyþstode<sup>1</sup> for to abyde. 12,780  
 After þer messengers pey gaf þer tent, [1f. 55, col. 2.]  
 . 3yf þey of hem had any glent;  
 pey seye gret folk in partyes sprede,  
 pat folewede þre þat to þe wode 3ede. 12,784  
 . þen perceyued knyghtes & squiers  
 . pat þo þre were messengers  
 . pat pey come fore, & after sought.  
 . Pryuely pey stode, auised þer þought, 12,788  
 Siben pey gaue a cri ful gret,  
 At ones vpon þe Romayns þei schet,  
 . Al vnwarned in þer vys.  
 penne sprad þe Romayns in partis; 12,792  
 Somme þat fledde were ouer-taken,  
 & somme prisoned, & halden<sup>2</sup> waken,  
 Somme slayn & beten down,  
 . fful fewe were leten to<sup>3</sup> raunsoun; 12,796  
 . Wip mikel wo any ascaped,<sup>4</sup>  
 . pat he ne was fruscht & al to-fraped.<sup>4</sup>
- The 6,000 see  
 the Romans  
 pursuing the  
 three mes-  
 sengers;  
  
 they about,  
 dash on the  
 Romans un-  
 awares,  
  
 rout,  
 take,  
 and kill them,  
  
 so that very  
 few escape.

¶ *Petreus, Romanorum tribunus.*

- A noble man was þere of Rome,  
 Of alle þer knyghtes he bar þe blome, 12,800  
 Petreus<sup>5</sup> his name hight,  
 . A worthi man, & mykel of myght;  
 . What for his prowesse<sup>6</sup> & god knyght,  
 Ten þousand men he ladde in fyght.<sup>7</sup> 12,804  
 He herde of þe Bretons assaut,  
 . & how þer men were att defaut;
- A noble Ro-  
 man, Petreus,  
  
  
  
  
  
 hears of the  
 Britons' as-  
 sault,

<sup>1</sup> *etode*. [leaf 75.]

<sup>2</sup> *prisonde holden*.

<sup>3</sup> *full was giffen for*.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> *Peredur*, MS. du Roi, 27; Pet-

*reus*, MS. du Roi, 73, Cange;

*Wace*, ii. 172, l. 12,310, and note.

<sup>6</sup> *for richesse*.

<sup>7</sup> *had þorh right*.



|                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| takes 10,000 men,                          | " Smertly wyþ ten þousand scheldes<br>" To sokere hem go we to <sup>1</sup> þe feldes." 12,808                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| and drives the Britons back to their wood. | Wyþ þo ten þousand þat he brought,<br>Vpon þe Bretons harde he sought,<br>þat maugre þeires he dide þem go<br>In to þe wode þer þey come fro ; 12,812<br>O þe playne myghte þey holde no place, <sup>2</sup><br>þat to þe wode he gan þem çaçe ; <sup>3</sup><br>& when þey were in wode teld,<br>Ageyn Petron þer owen þey held. 12,816<br>Petrens often on þem gan pres, <sup>3</sup><br>But mikel of his folk he les, <sup>3</sup><br>ffor þe Bretons stirt out & slow,<br>& eft in to þe wode þem drow ; 12,820<br>By þe wodes side in a busch <sup>4</sup><br>Was many a stour & many a frusch. <sup>5</sup> |

There they hold their own, though Petreus tries to force them out.

¶ *Iterum misit Arthurus quinque mille armatos.*

|                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Arthur wonders what has become of his messengers and his 6,000 men. He sends Sir Ider and 5,000 more men to see. | Arthur merueilled ferly strong<br>A þat þe messengers dwelled so long, 12,824<br>& what þem letted, & þorow wham, <sup>6</sup><br>þat þe sex þousand hom ne cam. <sup>7</sup><br>þen cald he swyþe <sup>8</sup> sire Ider<br>þat was a doughti bachelor : 12,828<br>" Tak fyf þousand, <sup>9</sup> & smartly fare,<br>" þe sex þousand sekeþ, wher þey are."<br>Sire Ider dide as Arthur bad,<br>& for his wending fole were glad. 12,832<br>Als Ider & his folk forþ ferde,<br>Gret noise vnder a wode þey herde ; |
| Ider and his men hear a noise in the wood,                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

<sup>1</sup> socoured þer men in.

<sup>2</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>3</sup> presse . . . lesse.

<sup>4</sup> brusse.

<sup>5</sup> many fight & many frusse.

<sup>6</sup> or for whome. [leaf 75, col. 2.]

<sup>7</sup> home ne come.

<sup>8</sup> he cald Nu sonne. (Ider le fil Nut apela, Wace, ii. 173, l. 12,336.)

<sup>9</sup> Set mil, Wace, l. 12,337.

IDER CHARGES, AND SHOVS BACK THE ROMANS. 449

- . pey hied þem þanne, & wel go[d]<sup>1</sup> pas,  
 . pey dredde þem sore of som mys cas.<sup>2</sup> 12,836  
 þen say Ider þat sire Wawayn  
 & Geryn, & Beof,<sup>3</sup> foughte oper a-geyn.  
 In to þe most þres Ider þen sprong,  
 & gaf a cri, þe wode al rong. 12,840  
 þanne were þe Bretons alle abouen,  
 þe Romainys route bakward schouen :  
 When Ider had met wyþ þe Romainys route,  
 . Of dynt ne dep<sup>4</sup> had he no doute ; 12,844  
 . Lytel þey þoughte hem self to saue,<sup>5</sup>  
 . So fayn þey wolde þe werre haue ;<sup>5</sup>  
 þe Romainys þey ouer ryden & ronne,  
 & þer gode stedes wonne ; 12,848  
 . & þe Romainys atter power<sup>5</sup>  
 . Stryken & stoden ageyns Ider ;<sup>5</sup>  
 Manye were on boþe partys  
 Slayn þer for to wyne pris. 12,852

see Wawayn,  
 Geryn, and  
 Beof fighting,  
 rush, with a  
 shout, to their  
 help,  
 and shove the  
 Romans back.  
 [lf. 55, bk., col. 1.]  
 The Britons  
 fight fearlessly,

and ride over  
 the Romans.

Many are slain  
 on both sides.

- Petreus, he þat y of tolde,  
 . þe noble Romain fers &<sup>6</sup> bolde,  
 He mayntende þer<sup>7</sup> bataille,  
 & sette his folk wysly<sup>8</sup> to assaille ; 12,856  
 Wel coupe he stande, wel coupe he scurne,<sup>5</sup>  
 & faire wyþdrawe hym, & eft retorne.<sup>5</sup>  
 Bytwyxt þem<sup>9</sup> were many chaces,  
 ffele turnynges & fele wanlaces : 12,860  
 þat hardy was, he fond hardy ;  
 Who so coupe iuste, he fond redy ;  
 þat wel coupe fighte, þer fond his fere ;<sup>5</sup>  
 . þat nought ne coupe, þer myght he lere.<sup>5</sup> 12,864

P'treus  
 commands the  
 Romans well ;  
 knows when  
 to stand, when  
 to retire, and  
 charge again.  
 There's plenty  
 of fighting of  
 all kinds for  
 those who  
 want it.

<sup>1</sup> a full gode.

<sup>2</sup> dred sore þer was som kas.

<sup>3</sup> beus.

<sup>4</sup> no dede.

<sup>5</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>6</sup> riche romeyn & so.

<sup>7</sup> was mayntenance.

<sup>8</sup> his folk he set right.

<sup>9</sup> with him & þam.

But the Britons keep no formation; they think only of doing separately brave

deeds of arms.

Petreus, on the other hand, with his best men,

helps his others whenever they need it,

and rallies his fugitives.

Beofs sees how well Petreus manages, and that he must be killed if the Britons are to be saved

from their disordered array.

So Beofs calls the best British

Al þe Bretons, oft astray þey rod,  
Non held to-gydere, ne oþer abod.

<sup>1</sup> ffor prowesse þat þey ʒernde al day,  
perfore þey nere of non array; 12,868

þey nadde warde how þat þey ʒede,  
But þat prowesse wer do of armes dede.<sup>1</sup>

¶ Petreus bygan auise hym <sup>2</sup> more,  
Hys beste men a-boute hym wore, 12,872

He couþe in werre wel stonde in stour,

& at his nede gete <sup>3</sup> hym socour;

fful wel he halp þere help failed,<sup>4</sup>

& wel hym rescowed when he was sailled;<sup>4</sup> 12,876

God tent til <sup>5</sup> al his men he tok,

. When þey astraied, whideward <sup>6</sup> þey schok,

& alle relyed þem wel ageyn,

. þat ilkon wyste his certeyn. 12,880

Beofs<sup>7</sup> of Oxenforde perceiued wel  
þe comynges of Petron ilka del,  
þat wypoute los schold <sup>8</sup> þey nought go

But ʒyf þey mighte Petron slo,— 12,884

. Sle, or take in pleyn[e] feld,—

ffor his confort þe Romayns<sup>9</sup> vp held.

Hider & pider þe Bretons went,

Al out of array, & were ney schent. 12,888

þe beste barons<sup>10</sup> of þem alle,

Beofs<sup>7</sup> to consail gon þey[m]<sup>11</sup> calle :

<sup>1-1</sup> For these four lines P. has four at the bottom of the page in a fresh hand (or with a fresh pen), and then two over leaf in the same hand and with the old pen :—

þ to do som dede þat day.

þerfor þe rode on þat aray.

þei ne rouht how þei ʒede.

bot þat þei did of armes dede.

to do som þei ʒerned att day. [lf. 75, back.]

þerfor þei rode at non aray.

<sup>2</sup> was auised.

<sup>3</sup> at nede seke.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> oñ.

<sup>6</sup> where þei straid whidire.

<sup>7</sup> Beus.

<sup>8</sup> losse suld.

<sup>9</sup> MS. Bretons. P. comyng þe romeyns.

<sup>10</sup> bretons.

<sup>11</sup> See l. 12,896. P. gon þam.

|                                                          |                          |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| ff " Lordes," he seyde, "spekeþ wyþ me,                  |                          | lords together,  |
| " þo þat til Arthur wol leaute.                          | 12,892                   | and says         |
| " Bygonne we haue a cuntēk,                              |                          | " We've got      |
| " But Arthur wot nought of þis chek ;                    |                          | into this con-   |
| " Wyþoute his wityng is þis tyrpeyl,                     |                          | test without     |
| " per-fore y cald ȝow to conseil ;                       | 12,896                   | Arthur's         |
| " ȝyf hit falle wel, wel schal vs be ;                   |                          | knowledge.       |
| " ȝyf hit ne do, we gete maugre.                         |                          |                  |
| " But ȝyf we in þys firste stour                         |                          | It's our first ; |
| " Haue þe pris, <sup>1</sup> & bere þe flour,            | 13,000                   | and if we don't  |
| " I telle vs schent, ilka man,                           |                          | win it we're     |
| " & mikel maugre þat we hit gan. <sup>2</sup>            |                          | done for.        |
| " Hit was ȝour conseil as wel as oures,                  |                          | You wanted to    |
| " ȝe preied vs to bygynne þyse stoures :                 | 13,004                   | fight.           |
| " þe bettere per-fore peyne ȝow to do                    |                          | Mind, then ;     |
| " pyng þat y schal conseil to ;                          |                          |                  |
| " ffonde we now euer-ilkon                               | [leaf 55, back, col. 2.] | we must take     |
| " ffort acombrey þylke <sup>3</sup> Petron ;             | 13,008                   | that Petreus,    |
| " Quik or ded, vs bos <sup>4</sup> hym haue,             |                          | alive or dead,   |
| " ȝyf [we] þis <sup>5</sup> day our folk schul saue ;    |                          |                  |
| " & elles schul we nere gon heþen,                       |                          | or we shall      |
| " þat we ne schul myl <sup>6</sup> be byneþen.           | 13,012                   | never go hence   |
| " per-for, lordynges, alle to-gyder                      |                          | alive.           |
| " ffolewes whar y turne, or whider,                      |                          | All of you,      |
| " & helpeþ wel when ȝe se nede :                         |                          | follow me, and   |
| " ȝyf we gete hym, ful wel we spede."                    | 13,016                   | help when        |
| Alle þey seide, " what so bitydes,                       |                          | I want you to."  |
| " We schul þe folewe wher <sup>7</sup> pou rydes ;       |                          | They all agree   |
| " Go we þanne, þat God vs a-vaille, <sup>8</sup>         |                          | to do so.        |
| " So þat we of hym ne faille." <sup>9</sup>              | 13,020                   |                  |
| Beofs <sup>9</sup> aspied & saw hym <sup>10</sup> sone : |                          | And Beofs        |
| " I se Petron ! make ȝow al bone !"                      |                          | spurs after      |
|                                                          |                          | Petreus, the     |

<sup>1</sup> haf þe gre.

<sup>2</sup> we it began.

<sup>3</sup> for to slo ȝon ilk.

<sup>4</sup> bus.

<sup>5</sup> If we to.

<sup>6</sup> satt mykett.

<sup>7</sup> satt ride þat way. [lf. 75, bk., cl. 2.]

<sup>8</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>9</sup> Beus.

<sup>10</sup> fult.

452 BEOFS SEIZES PETREUS. A FIERCE FIGHT FOLLOWS.

|                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| British lords<br>following him.                                                                                                                                                             | Beofs <sup>1</sup> smot þe hors wyþ þe spores,<br>& þey after, ouer feld & fores; <sup>2</sup><br>Wilde he nere stynte ne ses<br>Vntil he cam in to alle þe pres                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 13,024           |
| Beofs rides up<br>to Petreus,                                                                                                                                                               | per Petron was, & til hym rod,<br>Hors til hors þat þey bistrod;<br>Til hym ful faste Beofs <sup>3</sup> allied,<br>& on hys felawes wel hym affied.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 13,028           |
| seizes him by<br>the neck; and<br>down they both<br>fall.<br>Beofs holds<br>Petreus stone-<br>still.                                                                                        | ¶ Beof <sup>1</sup> by þe nekke Petron hent,<br>& doun til erthe hoþe þey went;<br>Beof <sup>1</sup> fel doun al by hys wylle,<br>& held Petron al ston[e] <sup>4</sup> stille;<br>Beof <sup>1</sup> dide þere a ful gret wyle,<br>& putte hym self in gret perile.                                                                                                                                                                 | 13,032<br>13,036 |
| Petreus<br>struggles, but<br>Beofs is tough,<br>and the Britons<br>stop the Ro-<br>mans from<br>rescuing<br>Petreus.<br>A fierce fight<br>with spears,<br>and then with<br>swords, follows. | Beofs held sore, & Petron drow; <sup>5</sup><br>Petron had go, nad Beofs be tow. <sup>6</sup><br>þe Romayns Petron wilde rescouse, <sup>7</sup><br><sup>8</sup> But Bretons a-geyn þem faste gan brouse,<br>Wyþ scharpe speres to-gidere sett, <sup>8</sup><br>& al to-frusched þat þey wip <sup>9</sup> mett:                                                                                                                      | 13,041           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                             | <sup>10</sup> When speres myghte namore serue,<br>per swerdes drowe, ful faste to kerue;<br>Wyþ hardy herte ilk oper on hew,<br>In armes hente, of sadeles þrew,<br>Helmes bowed, & þorow were steke,<br>Scheldes clef, & swerdes breke,<br>Hauberks ryuen & al fur-mailed,<br>Stedes slayn, stumbled & failed,<br>Men were slayn, & feld to grounde,<br>& manye cast þat hadde no wounde;<br>So þykke þey were to-gydere in þrong, | 13,044<br>13,048 |
| Helms are<br>pierced, shields<br>cloven,<br>hauberks<br>stript of mail,<br>men slain.                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                  |

<sup>1</sup> *Beus.*

<sup>2</sup> *fors* (? not A.-Sax. *for*, way; but *fur*, *furh*, E.-Engl. *fore*, furrow: Stratmann's Dict., p. 228).

<sup>3</sup> *Beus* *tiff* him fast was.

<sup>4</sup> *stone.*

<sup>5</sup> P. leaves out this line.

<sup>6</sup> *wild* go but *Beus* was *towh*.

<sup>7</sup> *rescouh.*

<sup>8-9</sup> *þe bretons ageyn þam fast sette.*

<sup>9</sup> with *scharp lances togider mette.*

<sup>10</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out the lines from here to l. 13,058; and then puts lines 13,061-62, before lines 13,059-60.

THE BRITONS RESCUE BEOFS, AND TAKE PETREUS. 453

|                   |                                                                  |            |                  |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------------|
|                   | . Ilk oper wrop, ilk oper swong,                                 |            | They twist       |
|                   | . & ilk oper of sadeles wrast,                                   |            | one another      |
|                   | . & vnder ho[r]se fet wer cast ;                                 | 13,056     | out of their     |
|                   | Non knew oper, þey were so ney,                                  |            | saddles.         |
|                   | But by þer speche or by þer cry :                                |            |                  |
|                   | Bretons cried " <sup>1</sup> kyng Arthour,"                      |            | The Britons      |
|                   | & Romayns, " Lucius <sup>1</sup> Emperour."                      | 13,060     | cry " Arthur ;"  |
|                   | þe Bretons faste on þem abated,                                  |            | the Romans       |
|                   | & þe Romayns ful sore þem hated ;                                |            | " Lucius."       |
| Row 1 42<br>col 2 | . þer coupe non knowe <sup>2</sup> for certeyn                   |            | By speech alone  |
|                   | . Whilk was Breton, whilk was Romeyn,                            | 13,064     | is Briton        |
|                   | . But by þer speche þat þey spak,                                |            | known from       |
|                   | . Or any out of þe pres ought <sup>3</sup> brak.                 |            | Roman.           |
|                   | ffayn wolde Wawayn Petron haue,                                  |            | Wawayn           |
|                   | . & Beofs <sup>4</sup> wold þey al-gate saue ;                   | 13,068     | charges into     |
|                   | He brak in to þe <sup>5</sup> mykel pres,                        |            | the press to     |
|                   | To smyte sore wold he nought ses ;                               |            | secure Petreus,  |
|                   | On alle sides he smot aboute, <sup>6</sup>                       |            |                  |
|                   | & made þeym rounn <sup>7</sup> þorow-out þe route ; <sup>6</sup> | 13,072     | and slays all in |
|                   | Was þer non stod in his weye, <sup>6</sup>                       | [leaf 56.] | his way.         |
|                   | þat his dynt ne dide hym deye. <sup>6</sup>                      |            |                  |
|                   | Sire Ider on þat oper <sup>8</sup> syde,                         |            | Ider and         |
|                   | ffor Geryn durste no Romayn byde ; <sup>9</sup>                  | 13,076     | Geryn smite so   |
|                   | Ilk on for oper bolded here hert,                                |            | that             |
|                   | . & smyten strokes so grete & <sup>10</sup> smert                |            |                  |
|                   | þat no Romayn durst bide þer dynt,                               |            | no Roman         |
|                   | . But fer on bak dide þem stynt ;                                | 13,080     | dares abide      |
|                   | þen was Petron alle a-glyft.                                     |            | them.            |
|                   | þe Bretons vp sire Beofs <sup>11</sup> lyft,                     |            | The Britons      |
|                   | & horsed hym ful wel a-geyn,                                     |            | rescue Beofs,    |
|                   | & toke Petron, þe maister Romayn ;                               | 1,3084     | and take         |
|                   |                                                                  |            | Petreus          |
|                   |                                                                  |            | prisoner         |

<sup>1</sup> P. inserts þe here.

<sup>2</sup> Non kouth knaw.

<sup>3</sup> ony out of þe pres.

<sup>4</sup> Beus. <sup>5</sup> two þer.

<sup>6</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>7</sup> for roume ; or roun, room, space.

<sup>8</sup> on þe toper side.

<sup>9</sup> & Geryn durst non abide.

<sup>10</sup> & þer strokes were so.

<sup>11</sup> vp Beus.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>to their wood.</p> <p>The fight begins again, but the Romans</p> <p>are like a barge without a steerer.</p> <p>The Britons rout the Romans,</p> <p>capture, slay, and spoil them ;</p> <p>then turn back to the wood, and take Petreus and the prisoners to Arthur.</p> <p>Arthur thanks them all,</p> <p>and promises them rewards if he wins his battle.</p> | <p>porow al þe pres þey hym led,<sup>1</sup></p> <p>&amp; wiþ hym vntil wode þey fled,<sup>1</sup></p> <p>&amp; dide hym þer he mighte be syker,</p> <p>&amp; eft al newe bygonne to<sup>2</sup> byker. 13,088</p> <p>But þen had þey no gouernour</p> <p>pat coupe meyntene þem in stour, <b>Vassalacio</b></p> <p>Namore þan schip or barge<sup>3</sup> can, <b>Brytonum.</b></p> <p>pere hym wanteþ a steris<sup>4</sup> man. 13,092</p> <p>¶ penne broched þe Bretons among þem alle,</p> <p>Man &amp; hors<sup>5</sup> þey dide doun falle ;</p> <p>pat were fallen, þey ouer schok ;</p> <p>&amp; þo þat fledde,<sup>6</sup> þey ouer-tok ; 13,096</p> <p>Somme þey slowe, &amp; somme þey held,</p> <p>&amp; somme þey spoyled<sup>7</sup> y þe feld ;</p> <p>. Al were slayn þe moste frape,<sup>8</sup></p> <p>. ffayn wer þey þat myghte a-scape.<sup>9</sup> 13,100</p> <p>pen turnde a-geyn alle þe Bretons,</p> <p>&amp; come to wode to þer prisons,</p> <p>&amp; led<sup>10</sup> þem alle wiþ sire Petron,</p> <p>&amp; presented Arthur wiþ ilkon. 13,104</p> <p>pen þanked he his messengers,</p> <p>&amp; alle þe opere þat were þer pers,</p> <p>&amp; seide hem, " ȝyf hit may be wonne,<sup>11</sup></p> <p>" þe game þat we haue by-gonne,<sup>12</sup> 13,108</p> <p>" He wolde<sup>13</sup> amende þer rente &amp; fe,</p> <p>" ȝyf þat tyme myghte bitide or<sup>14</sup> be."</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> P. transposes these lines. [lf. 78.]

<sup>2</sup> new bigan þe.

<sup>3</sup> þe schip.

<sup>4</sup> þore it failes steris.

<sup>5</sup> many hors.

<sup>6</sup> þe fleand.

<sup>7</sup> spoiled.

<sup>8</sup> waste frap.

<sup>9</sup> so þei were þat myght it scap.

<sup>10</sup> laid.

<sup>11</sup> if it be wonnen.

<sup>12</sup> þe werre þat was begonnen.

<sup>13</sup> suld.

<sup>14</sup> mot tide.





**LONDON: Printed by EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE,  
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.  
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.  
[11422.—750.—5/87.]**

**C A T A L O G U E**  
**OF**  
**ENGLISH, SCOTCH, AND IRISH RECORD**  
**PUBLICATIONS,**  
**REPORTS OF THE HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS**  
**COMMISSION,**  
**AND**  
**ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF**  
**THE PUBLIC RECORDS,**

**Printed for**  
**HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,**

**And to be purchased,**

Either directly or through any Bookseller, from  
**EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, EAST HARDING STREET, FLEET STREET, E.C., or**  
**ADAM AND CHARLES BLACK, 6, NORTH BRIDGE, EDINBURGH; or**  
**HODGES, FIGGIS, & Co., 104, GRAFTON STREET, DUBLIN.**

---

## CONTENTS.

---

|                                                                                 |   |   |   |   |   |           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|-----------|
| CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.                                                  | - | - | - | - | - | Page<br>3 |
| CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE<br>MIDDLE AGES | - | - | - | - | - | 9         |
| PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.                                   | - | - | - | - | - | 26        |
| WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY                                             | - | - | - | - | - | 29        |
| HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION                                               | - | - | - | - | - | 31        |
| REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS                              | - | - | - | - | - | 35        |

---

|                            |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| SCOTCH RECORD PUBLICATIONS | - | - | - | - | - | 39 |
| IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS  | - | - | - | - | - | 40 |

---

# ENGLAND.

## CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

[IMPERIAL 8vo., cloth. *Price 15s. each Volume or Part.*]

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the want of proper Calendars and Indexes." Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few Persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls:—

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I.  
*Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office,  
2 Vols. 1865.

This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, ELIZABETH, and JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. (Vols. I. and II.), and by MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN, (Vols. III.—XII.). 1856-1872.

Vol. I.—1547-1580.

Vol. II.—1581-1590.

Vol. III.—1591-1594.

Vol. IV.—1595-1597.

Vol. V.—1598-1601.

Vol. VI.—1601-1603, with  
Addenda, 1547-1565.

Vol. VII.—Addenda, 1566-1579.

Vol. VIII.—1603-1610.

Vol. IX.—1611-1618.

Vol. X.—1619-1623.

Vol. XI.—1623-1625, with Addenda,  
1603-1625.

Vol. XII.—Addenda, 1580-1625.

These Calendars render accessible to investigation a large and important mass of historical materials. The Northern Rebellion of 1566-67; the plots of the Catholic fugitives in the Low Countries; numerous designs against Queen Elizabeth and in favour of a Catholic succession; the Gunpowder-plot; the rise and fall of Somerset; the Overbury murder; the disgrace of Sir Edward

Coke; the rise of the Duke of Buckingham, &c., and numerous other subjects, few of which have been previously known.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I.**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. I.-XII.); *by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., and WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vol. XIII.); and *by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. XIV.-XVII., 1858-1882.

Vol. I.—1625-1626.  
Vol. II.—1627-1628.  
Vol. III.—1628-1629.  
Vol. IV.—1629-1631.  
Vol. V.—1631-1633.  
Vol. VI.—1633-1634.  
Vol. VII.—1634-1635.  
Vol. VIII.—1635.  
Vol. IX.—1635-1636.

Vol. X.—1636-1637.  
Vol. XI.—1637.  
Vol. XII.—1637-1638.  
Vol. XIII.—1638-1639.  
Vol. XIV.—1639.  
Vol. XV.—1639-1640.  
Vol. XVI.—1640.  
Vol. XVII.—1640-41.  
Vol. XVIII.—1641-43.

This Calendar presents notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers relative to the history of the period to which it refers, many hitherto unknown.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1875-1885.

Vol. I.—1649-1649.  
Vol. II.—1650.  
Vol. III.—1651.  
Vol. IV.—1651-1652.  
Vol. V.—1652-1653.  
Vol. VI.—1653-1654.  
Vol. VII.—1654.

Vol. VIII.—1655.  
Vol. IX.—1655-1656.  
Vol. X.—1656-1657.  
Vol. XI.—1657-1658.  
Vol. XII.—1658-1659.  
Vol. XIII.—1659-1660.

This Calendar is in continuation of those during the reigns from Edward VI. to Charles I., and contains a mass of new information.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II.**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860-1866.

Vol. I.—1660-1661.  
Vol. II.—1661-1662.  
Vol. III.—1663-1664.  
Vol. IV.—1664-1665.

Vol. V.—1665-1666.  
Vol. VI.—1666-1667.  
Vol. VII.—1667.

**CALENDAR OF HOME OFFICE PAPERS OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III.**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1878-1879. Vol. III. *Edited by* RICHARD ARTHUR ROBERTS, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 1881.

Vol. I.—1760 (25 Oct.)-1765.  
Vol. II.—1766-1769.

Vol. III.—1770-1772.

These are the first three volumes of the modern series of Domestic Papers, commencing with the accession of George III.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509-1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589-1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543-1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

These volumes relate to Scotland, between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568-1587.

**CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS** relating to IRELAND, in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, Esq., B.A., Trinity College, Dublin, Barrister-at-Law (Ireland); *continued by* GUSTAVUS FREDERICK HANDCOCK, Esq. 1875-1886.

Vol. I.—1171-1251.

Vol. II.—1252-1284.

Vol. III.—1285-1292.

Vol. IV.—1293-1301.

Vol. V.—1302-1307.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS** relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860-1885.

Vol. I.—1509-1573.

Vol. II.—1574-1585.

Vol. III.—1586-1588.

Vol. IV.—1588-1592.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS** relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* the Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 1872-1880.

Vol. I.—1603-1606.

Vol. II.—1606-1608.

Vol. III.—1608-1610.

Vol. IV.—1611-1614.

Vol. V.—1615-1625.

This series is in continuation of the Irish State Papers commencing with the reign of Henry VIII.; but for the reign of James I., the Papers are not confined to those in the Public Record Office, London.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860-1884.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574-1660.

Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513-1616.

Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1617-1621.

Vol. IV.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1622-1624.

Vol. V.—America and West Indies, 1661-1668.

Vol. VI.—East Indies, 1625-1629.

These volumes include an analysis of early Colonial Papers in the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum.

**CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII.**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London (Vols. I.-IV.); and by JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq., (Vols. V., VI., VII., VIII., and IX.) 1862-1886.

Vol. I.—1509-1514.

Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515-1518.

Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519-1523.

Vol. IV.—Introduction.

Vol. IV., Part 1.—1524-1526.

Vol. IV., Part 2.—1526-1528.

Vol. IV., Part 3.—1529-1530.

Vol. V.—1531-1532.

Vol. VI.—1533.

Vol. VII.—1534.

Vol. VIII.—1535, to July.

Vol. IX.—1535, Aug. to Dec.

Vol. X.—1536, Jan. to June.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI.**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547-1553. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, &c. 1861.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY,** preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553-1558. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, &c. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest. The Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merit a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. These volumes treat only of the relations of England with foreign powers.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH,** preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, (Vols. I.-VII.), and ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law, (Vols. VIII.-XI.) 1863-1880.

Vol. I.—1558-1559.  
Vol. II.—1559-1560.  
Vol. III.—1560-1561.  
Vol. IV.—1561-1562.  
Vol. V.—1562.  
Vol. VI.—1563.

Vol. VII.—1564-1565.  
Vol. VIII.—1566-1568.  
Vol. IX.—1569-1571.  
Vol. X.—1572-1574.  
Vol. XI.—1575-1577.

These volumes contain a Calendar of the Foreign Correspondence during the early portion of the reign of Elizabeth. They illustrate not only the external but also the domestic affairs of Foreign Countries during that period.

**CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS,** preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1868-1883.

Vol. I.—1557-1696.  
Vol. II.—1697-1702.  
Vol. III.—1702-1707.

Vol. IV.—1708-1714.  
Vol. V.—1714-1719.

The above Papers connected with the affairs of the Treasury comprise petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State, grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c. They illustrate civil and military events, finance, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

**CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS,** preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. 1867-1873.

Vol. I.—1515-1574.  
Vol. II.—1575-1588.  
Vol. III.—1589-1600.  
Vol. IV.—1601-1603.

Vol. V.—Book of Howth; Miscellaneous.  
Vol. VI.—1603-1624.

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland, in the Lambeth Library, are unique and of great importance to all students of Irish history.

**CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS,** relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH 1862-1868.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485-1509.  
Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509-1525.  
Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain and the corresponding portion removed from Simancas to Paris. Mr. Bergenroth also visited Madrid, and examined the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katherine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.

**CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS**, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. 1873-1886.

- Vol. III., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1525-1526.
- Vol. III., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.—1527-1529.
- Vol. IV., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1529-1530.
- Vol. IV., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.—1531-1533.
- Vol. IV., Part 2.—*continued*.—Hen. VIII.—1531-1533.
- Vol. V., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1534-1536.

Upon the death of Mr. Bergenroth, Don Pascual de Gayangos was appointed to continue the Calendar of the Spanish State Papers. He has pursued a similar plan to that of his predecessor, but has been able to add much valuable matter from Brussels and Vienna, with which Mr. Bergenroth was unacquainted.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS**, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864-1884.

- |                      |                                |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Vol. I.—1202-1509.   | Vol. V.—1534-1554.             |
| Vol. II.—1509-1519.  | Vol. VI., Part I.—1555-1556.   |
| Vol. III.—1520-1526. | Vol. VI., Part II.—1556-1557.  |
| Vol. IV.—1527-1533.  | Vol. VI., Part III.—1557-1558. |

Mr. Rawdon Brown's researches have brought to light a number of valuable documents relating to various periods of English history; his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

**SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FÆDERA.** By Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. I.—Will. I.—Edw. III., 1066-1377. Vol. II.—Ric. II.—Chas. II. 1377-1654. Vol. III., Appendix and Index. 1869-1885.

The "Fædera," or "Rymer's Fædera," is a collection of miscellaneous documents illustrative of the History of Great Britain and Ireland, from the Norman Conquest to the reign of Charles II. Several editions of the "Fædera" have been published, and the present Syllabus was undertaken to make the contents of this great National Work more generally known.

**REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS**, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price* 2s. 6d.

**REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS**, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price* 2s. 6d.



*In the Press.*

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to **ENGLISH AFFAIRS**, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. Vol. VII.—1559, &c.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. Vol. V., Part 2.—1537, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. XIV.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. V.—1592-1594.

*In Progress.*

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. VII.—America and West Indies, 1669, &c. Vol. VIII.—East Indies, 1630, &c.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. Vol. VI.—1720, &c.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. Vol. XI.—1536.

## THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8vo. half-bound. Price 10s. each Volume or Part.]

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional knowledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the ancient historians of this realm," and assured His Majesty that whatever expense might be necessary for this "purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. Edited by the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON. Vols. I. and II. Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Ieighton Buzzard. 1858.

This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house; and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is printed for the first time.

3. *LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR.* I.—*La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei* II.—*Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris.* III.—*Vita Aduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit.* Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.

The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,686 lines, addressed to Alianor, Queen of Henry III., probably written in 1245, on the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author. The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. It does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, but is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. *MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA.* Vol. I.—*Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ.* Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. II.—*De Adventu Minorum; re-edited, with additions. Chronicle of the Grey Friars. The ancient English version of the Rule of St. Francis. Abbreviatio Statutorum, 1451, &c.* Edited by RICHARD HOWLETT, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1858, 1882.

The first volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It was the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed. The second volume contains materials found, since the first volume was published, among the MSS. of Sir Charles Isham, and in various libraries.

5. *FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO.* Ascribed to THOMAS NETTER, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. Edited by the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.

This work derives its principal value from being the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. When written, the disputes of the schoolmen had been extended to the field of theology, and they appear both in the writings of Wycliff and in those of his adversaries. Wycliff's little bundles of tares are not less metaphysical than theological, and the conflict between Nominalists and Realists rages side by side with the conflict between the different interpreters of Scripture. The work gives a good idea of the controversies at the end of the 14th and the beginning of the 15th centuries.

6. *THE BUIK OF THE CRONICLIS OF SCOTLAND; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece;* by WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, 1858.

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." Strict accuracy of statement is not to be looked for; but the stories of the colonization of Spain, Ireland, and Scotland are interesting if not true; and the chronicle reflects the manners, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed. The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this version, and the student of language will find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern lowland Scotch.

7. *JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS.* Edited by the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been, in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three parts, each having a separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the Empire, from the election of Henry I., the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, from the accession of Henry I. in 1100, to 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world. Capgrave was borne in 1393, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for which period his work is of some value.

8. *HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS*, by THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. Edited by CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191. Prefixed is a chronology as far as 1418, which shows in outline what was to have been the character of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norfolk, and most probably with Elmham, whence he derived his name.

9. *EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS) : Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366 ; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum.* Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858-1863.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Malmesbury, in Wiltshire, about the year 1367. A continuation, carrying the history of England down to the year 1413, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1356 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. *MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH : Bernardi Andreae Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi ; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia.* Edited by JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

The contents of this volume are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author ; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon ; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples ; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest are given in an appendix.

11. *MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V.* Edited by CHARLES A. COLZ, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz. : A life by Robert Redman ; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author ; Versus Rhythmici, written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.

12. **MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati.** Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859-1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the 12th, 13th, 14th, and early part of the 15th centuries. The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the 14th century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the 12th, 13th, and early part of the 14th centuries.

13. **CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES.** *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and comes down to 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the Kingdom, not to be elsewhere obtained. Some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. **A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859-1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires, and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another. The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us through the decline of the feudal system, to the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable value to the philologist.

15. **THE "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON.** *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—never before printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon: also a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologiae*."

16. **BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA; 449-1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Archiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ.** *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially) is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. **BRUT Y TYWYSGOGION; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales.** *Edited by* the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.

This work, also known as "*The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales*," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. **A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. 1399-1404.** Edited by the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events. The period requires much elucidation; to which it will materially contribute.

19. **THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY.** By REGINALD PECOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. Edited by CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "Repressor" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological discussion of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and against their general doctrines the "Repressor" is directed. Pecock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Pecock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual mediæval reward—persecution.

20. **ANNALES CAMBRIÆ.** Edited by the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in 447, and come down to 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout, though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Blegewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. **THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS.** Vols. I., II., III., and IV. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V., VI., and VII. Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861-1877.

These volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use. Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.

The *Topographia Hibernica* (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in 1183, the second in 1185-6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the *Topographia* of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony, with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon. The *Expugnatio Hibernica* was written about 1189 and may be regarded rather as a great epic than a sober relation of acts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history. Vol. VI. contains the *Itinerarium Cambriæ* et *Descriptio Cambriæ*: and Vol. VII., the lives of S. Remigius and S. Hugh.

22. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND.** Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861-1864.

These letters and papers are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impériale, and the Dépôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and other provinces of France acquired by Henry V. Here may be traced, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared for its final overthrow.

23. **THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES.** Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to 1154, is justly the boast of England; no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In this edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861-1863.

The Papers are derived from the MSS. in Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from them is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. **LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time.** *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (131 in number) are here collected from various sources, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time. They range in

date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. **DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.** Vol. I. (in Two Parts); *Anterior to the Norman Invasion.* Vol. II.; 1066-1200. Vol. III.; 1200-1327. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862-1871.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials, when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages; the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which original portions are distinguished from mere compilations. If possible, the sources are indicated from which compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. **ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III.** Vol. I., 1216-1235. Vol. II., 1236-1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862-1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of them, especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. **CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.**—1. THOMÆ WALSINGHAM HISTORIA ANGLICANA; Vol. I., 1272-1381: Vol. II., 1381-1422. 2. WILLELMI RISHANGER CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1307. 3. JOHANNIS DE TROKELowe ET HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1296; 1307-1324; 1392-1406. 4. GESTA ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, A THOMÆ WALSINGHAM, REGNANTE RICARDO SECUNDO, EJUSDEM ECCLESIE PRÆCENTORE, COMPILATA; Vol. I., 793-1290: Vol. II., 1290-1349: Vol. III., 1349-1411. 5. JOHANNIS AMUNDESHAM, MONACHI MONASTERII S. ALBANI, UT VIDETUR, ANNALES; Vols. I. and II. 6. REGISTRA QUORUNDAM ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, QUI SÆCULO XV<sup>mo</sup> FLORUERE; Vol. I., REGISTRUM ABBATIS JOHANNIS WHETHAMSTEDE, ABBATIS MONASTERII SANCTI ALBANI, ITERUM SUSCEPTÆ; ROBERTO BLAKENY, CAPELLANO, QUONDAM ADSRIPTUM: Vol. II., REGISTRA JOHANNIS WHETHAMSTEDE, WILLELMI ALBON, ET WILLELMI WALINGFORDE, ABBATUM MONASTERII SANCTI ALBANI, CUM APPENDICE, CONTINENTE QUASDAM EPISTOLAS, A JOHANNIS WHETHAMSTEDE CONSCRIPTAS. 7. YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ A THOMÆ WALSINGHAM, QUONDAM MONACHO MONASTERII S. ALBANI, CONSCRIPTUM. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Cambridge and Oxford; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1876.

In the first two volumes is a History of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of St. Albans, from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 18 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.



In the 3rd volume is a Chronicle of English History, attributed to William Rishanger, who lived in the reign of Edward I., from the Cotton MS. Faustina B. IX. in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219-231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cotton MS. Claudius E. III. fols. 306-331: an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol, 1291-1292, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., also attributed to William Rishanger, but on no sufficient ground: a short Chronicle of English History, 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: a short Chronicle Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi, Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with *Annales Regum Angliæ*, probably by the same hand: and fragments of three Chronicles of English History, 1285 to 1307.

In the 4th volume is a Chronicle of English History, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: *Annals of Edward II.*, 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe, a monk of St. Albans, and a continuation of Trokelowe's *Annals*, 1323, 1324, by Henry de Blanford, both from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: a full Chronicle of English History, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and an account of the Benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the 15th century from MS. VI. in the same Library.

The 5th, 6th, and 7th volumes contain a history of the Abbots of St. Albans, 793 to 1411, mainly compiled by Thomas Walsingham, from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum: with a Continuation, from the closing pages of Parker MS. VII., in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

The 8th and 9th volumes, in continuation of the *Annals*, contain a Chronicle, probably by John Amundesham, a monk of St. Albans.

The 10th and 11th volumes relate especially to the acts and proceedings of Abbots Whethamstede, Albon, and Wallingford, and may be considered as a memorial of the chief historical and domestic events during those periods.

The 12th volume contains a compendious History of England to the reign of Henry V., and of Normandy in early times, also by Thomas Walsingham, and dedicated to Henry V. The compiler has often substituted other authorities in place of those consulted in the preparation of his larger work.

29. **CHRONICON ABBATIE EYESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EYESHAMIE ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418.** Edited by the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. **RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ.** Vol. I., 447-871. Vol. II., 872-1066. Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863-1869.

The compiler, Richard of Cirencester, was a monk of Westminster, 1355-1400. In 1391 he obtained a licence to make a pilgrimage to Rome. His history, in four books, extends from 447 to 1066. He announces his intention of continuing it, but there is no evidence that he completed any more. This chronicle gives many charters in favour of Westminster Abbey, and a very full account of the lives and miracles of the saints, especially of Edward the Confessor, whose reign occupies the fourth book. A treatise on the Coronation, by William of Sadbury, a monk of Westminster, fills book iii. c. 3. It was on this author that C. J. Bertram fathered his forgery, *De Situ Britannia*, in 1747.

31. **YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST.** Years 20-21, 21-22, 30-31, 32-33, and 33-35 Edw. I.; and 11-12 Edw. III. Edited and translated by ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

at-Law. Years 12-13, 13-14 Edward III. *Edited and translated by* LUKE OWEN PIKE, Esq., M.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1886.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of Cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of attention on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. *NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY 1449-1450.* —Robertus Blondelli de Beductione Normanniæ: Le Reconquement de Normandie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy: Conférences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.* 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in 1450. Commencing with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ending with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The period embraced is less than two years.

33. *HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRIÆ.* Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863-1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester. The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. *ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ.* *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth century. In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckham was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; but he neither can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities." Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century. The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre, and though there are many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole, above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. *LEBCHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest.* Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge,* 1864-1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting

not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. **ANNALES MONASTICI.** Vol. I.:—*Annales de Margan, 1066–1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066–1263; Annales de Burton, 1004–1263.* Vol. II.:—*Annales Monasterii de Wintonia. 519–1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1–1291.* Vol. III.:—*Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia, 1–1297. Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia, 1042–1432.* Vol. IV.:—*Annales Monasterii de Oseneia, 1016–1347; Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes, 1066–1289; Annales Prioratus de Wigornia, 1–1377.* Vol. V.:—*Index and Glossary.* Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registry of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1869.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces all the more important chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are ten in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. **MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS.** From MSS. in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs. The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186; he died on the 16th of November 1200; and was canonized in 1220.

8. **CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST.** Vol. I.:—*ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI.* Vol. II.:—*EPISTOLÆ CANTUARIENSES; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199.* Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in December 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function of metropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. belonging to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. **RECUEIL DES CHRONIQUES ET ANCIENNES HISTOIRES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN.** Vol. I. Albina to 688. Vol. II. 1399–1422. Vol. III. 1422–1431. Edited by Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A. 1864–1879. Vol. IV. 1431–1443. Edited by Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A., and EDWARD L. C. P. HARDY, Esq., F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-law. 1884.

40. **A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, by JOHN DE WAURIN.** Albina to 688. (Translation

of the preceding Vol. I.) *Edited and translated by Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A.* 1864.

This curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV. to England in the year 1471 after the second deposition of Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. *POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN*, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Vols. III., IV., V., VI., VII., VIII., and IX. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D., Norrisian Professor of Divinity, Vicar of St. Edward's, Fellow of St. Catharine's College, and late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge. 1865-1886.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation, and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion, is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land. To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. *LE LIVRE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVRE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE.* *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "*Le Livre de Reis de Engleterre.*" Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French. It is supposed that Peter of Ickham was the supposed author.

43. *CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1406.* Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant-Keeper of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866-1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. *MATTHEI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICTUR, HISTORIA MINOR.* Vols. I., II., and III. 1067-1253. *Edited by* Sir FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Manuscript Department of British Museum. 1866-1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed

the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also written by Matthew Paris) giving fuller details, which has been called the "Historia Major." The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. **LIBER MONASTERII DE HYDA: A CHRONICLE AND CHARTULARY OF HYDE ABBEY, WINCHESTER, 455-1023.** Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by EDWARD EDWARDS, Esq. 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde Chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from tradition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements, which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments.

There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English

46. **CHRONICON SCOTORUM: A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO 1135; and SUPPLEMENT, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150.** Edited, with Translation, by WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1866.

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are, the invasions of foreigners, and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. **THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT, IN FRENCH VERSE, FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD I. Vols. I. and II.** Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1866-1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first, is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum;" in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, to the death of Henry III.; in the third, a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars. The language is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. **THE WAR OF THE GAEDHIL WITH THE GAILL, OR THE INVASIONS OF IRELAND BY THE DANES AND OTHER NORSEMEN.** Edited, with a Translation, by JAMES HENTHORN TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin. 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not an eye-witness, must have derived his information from eye-witnesses. The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. **GESTA REGIS HENRICI SECUNDI BENEDICTI ABBATIS. CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY II. AND RICHARD I., 1169-1192, known under the name of BENEDICT OF PETERBOROUGH.** Vols. I. and II. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.

This chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the student.

50. **MUNIMENTA ACADEMICA, OR, DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD** (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. HENRY ANSTEX, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.

This work will supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. **CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOVEDENE**. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868-1871.

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (*see* No. 49); but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase; occasionally the two works entirely agree; showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work; it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

52. **WILLIELMI MALMESBURIENSIS MONACHI DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM LIBRI QUINQUE**. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by* N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1870.

William of Malmesbury's "Gesta Pontificum" is the principal foundation of English Ecclesiastical Biography, down to the year 1122. The manuscript which has been followed in this Edition is supposed by Mr. Hamilton to be the author's autograph, containing his latest additions and amendments.

53. **HISTORIC AND MUNICIPAL DOCUMENTS OF IRELAND, FROM THE ARCHIVES OF THE CITY OF DUBLIN, &c. 1172-1320**. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, Esq., F.S.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland. 1870.

A collection of original documents, elucidating mainly the history and condition of the municipal, middle, and trading classes under or in relation with the rule of England in Ireland,—a subject hitherto in almost total obscurity. Extending over the first hundred and fifty years of the Anglo-Norman settlement, the series includes charters, municipal laws and regulations, rolls of names of citizens and members of merchant-guilds, lists of commodities with their rates, correspondence, illustrations of relations between ecclesiastics and laity; together with many documents exhibiting the state of Ireland during the presence there of the Scots under Robert and Edward Bruce.

54. **THE ANNALS OF LOCH CÉ. A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, FROM 1041 to 1590**. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with a Translation, by* WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1871.

The original of this chronicle has passed under various names. The title of "Annals of Loch Cé" was given to it by Professor O'Curry, on the ground that it was transcribed for Brian Mac Dermot, an Irish chieftain, who resided on the island in Loch Cé, in the county of Roscommon. It adds much to the materials for the civil and ecclesiastical history of Ireland; and contains many curious references to English and foreign affairs, not noticed in any other chronicle.

55. **MONUMENTA JURIDICA. THE BLACK BOOK OF THE ADMIRALTY, WITH APPENDICES**. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* SIR TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L. 1871-1876.

This book contains the ancient ordinances and laws relating to the navy, and was probably compiled for the use of the Lord High Admiral of England. Selden calls it the "jewel of the Admiralty Records." Prynne ascribes to the Black Book the same authority in the Admiralty as the Black and Red Rocks have in the Court of Exchequer, and most English writers on maritime law recognize its importance.

56. **MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VI.:—OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., AND BISHOP OF BATH AND WELLS.** Edited, from a MS. in the *Archiepiscopal Library at Lambeth, with an Appendix of Illustrative Documents*, by the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Vicar of Ringwood, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Vols. I. and II. 1872.

These curious volumes are of a miscellaneous character, and were probably compiled under the immediate direction of Beckynton before he had attained to the Episcopate. They contain many of the Bishop's own letters, and several written by him in the King's name; also letters to himself while Royal Secretary, and others addressed to the King. This work elucidates some points in the history of the nation during the first half of the fifteenth century.

57. **MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS, MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI, CHRONICA MAJORA.** Vol. I. The Creation to A.D. 1066. Vol. II. A.D. 1067 to A.D. 1216. Vol. III. A.D. 1216 to A.D. 1239. Vol. IV. A.D. 1240 to A.D. 1247. Vol. V. A.D. 1248 to A.D. 1259. Vol. VI. Additamenta. Vol. VII. Index. Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registry of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge. 1872-1884.

This work contains the "Chronica Majora" of Matthew Paris, one of the most valuable and frequently consulted of the ancient English Chronicles. It is published from its commencement, for the first time. The editions by Archbishop Parker, and William Wats, severally begin at the Norman Conquest.

58. **MEMORIALE FRATRIS WALTERI DE COVENTRIA.—THE HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS OF WALTER OF COVENTRY.** Vols. I. and II. Edited, from the MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1872-1873.

This work, now printed in full for the first time, has long been a desideratum by Historical Scholars. The first portion, however, is not of much importance, being only a compilation from earlier writers. The part relating to the first quarter of the thirteenth century is the most valuable and interesting.

59. **THE ANGLO-LATIN SATIRICAL POETS AND EPIGRAMMATISTS OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY.** Vols. I. and II. Collected and edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., Corresponding Member of the National Institute of France (Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres). 1872

The Poems contained in these volumes have long been known and appreciated as the best satires of the age in which their authors flourished, and were deservedly popular during the 13th and 14th centuries.

60. **MATERIALS FOR A HISTORY OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VII., FROM ORIGINAL DOCUMENTS PRESERVED IN THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE.** Vols. I. and II. Edited by the Rev. WILLIAM CAMPBELL, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools. 1873-1877.

These volumes are valuable as illustrating the acts and proceedings of Henry VII. on ascending the throne, and shadow out the policy he afterwards adopted.

61. **HISTORICAL PAPERS AND LETTERS FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS.** Edited by JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1873.

The documents in this volume illustrate, for the most part, the general history of the north of England, particularly in its relation to Scotland.

62. **REGISTRUM PALATINUM DUNELMENSE. THE REGISTER OF RICHARD DE KELLAW, LORD PALATINE AND BISHOP OF DURHAM; 1311-1316.** Vols. I., II., III., and IV. Edited by Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1873-1878.

Bishop Kellawe's Register contains the proceedings of his prelate, both lay and ecclesiastical, and is the earliest Register of the Palatinate of Durham.

63. **MEMORIALS OF SAINT DUNSTAN, ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.** Edited, from various MSS., by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1874.

This volume contains several lives of Archbishop Dunstan, one of the most celebrated Primates of Canterbury. They open various points of Historical and Literary interest, without which our knowledge of the period would be more incomplete than it is at present.

64. *CHRONICON ANGLIÆ, AB ANNO DOMINI 1328 USQUE AD ANNUM 1388, AUCTORE MONACHO QUODAM SANCTI ALBANI.* Edited by EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, Esq., Barrister-at-Law, and Assistant-Keeper of the Manuscripts in the British Museum. 1874.

This chronicle gives a circumstantial history of the close of the reign of Edward III. which has hitherto been considered lost.

65. *THÓMAS SAGA ERKIBYSKUPS. A LIFE OF ARCHBISHOP THOMAS BECKET, IN ICELANDIC.* Vols. I. and II. Edited, with English Translation, Notes, and Glossary by M. EIRÍKE MAGNÚSSON, M.A., Sub-Librarian of the University Library, Cambridge. 1875-1884.

This work is derived from the Life of Becket written by Benedict of Peterborough, and apparently supplies the missing portions in Benedict's biography.

66. *RADULPHI DE COGGESHALL CHRONICON ANGLICANUM.* Edited by the REV. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A. 1875.

This volume contains the "Chronicon Anglicanum," by Ralph of Coggeshall, the "Libellus de Expugnatione Terræ Sanctæ per Saladinum," usually ascribed to the same author, and other pieces of an interesting character.

67. *MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF THOMAS BECKET, ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.* Vols. I., II., III., IV., V., and VI. Edited by the REV. JAMES CRAIGIE ROBERTSON, M.A., Canon of Canterbury. 1875-1883. Vol. VII. Edited by JOSEPH BRISTOCKE SHEPPARD, Esq., LL.D. 1885.

This publication comprises all contemporary materials for the history of Archbishop Thomas Becket. The first volume contains the life of that celebrated man, and the miracles after his death, by William, a monk of Canterbury. The second, the life by Benedict of Peterborough; John of Salisbury; Alan of Tewkesbury; and Edward Grim. The third, the life by William Fitzstephen; and Herbert of Bosham. The fourth, anonymous lives, Quadriologus, &c. The fifth, sixth, and seventh, the Epistles, and known letters.

68. *RADULFI DE DICETO DECANI LUNDONIENSIS OPERA HISTORICA. THE HISTORICAL WORKS OF MASTER RALPH DE DICETO, DEAN OF LONDON.* Vols. I. and II. Edited, from the Original Manuscripts, by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1876.

The Historical Works of Ralph de Diceto are some of the most valuable materials for British History. The Abbreviationes Chronicle extend from the Creation to 1147, and the Ymagines Historiarum to 1201.

69. *ROLL OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE KING'S COUNCIL IN IRELAND, FOR A PORTION OF THE 16TH YEAR OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD II. 1392-93.* Edited by the REV. JAMES GRAVES, A.B. 1877.

This Roll throws considerable light on the History of Ireland at a period little known. It seems the only document of the kind extant.

70. *HENRICI DE BRACTON DE LEGIBUS ET CONSUETUDINIBUS ANGLIÆ LIBRI QUINQUE IN VARIOS TRACTATUS DISTINCTI. AD DIVERSORUM ET VETUSTISSIMORUM CODICUM COLLATIONEM TYPIS VULGATI.* Vols. I., II., III., IV., V., and VI. Edited by SIR TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L. 1878-1883.

This is a new edition of Bracton's celebrated work, collated with MSS. in the British Museum; the Libraries of Lincoln's Inn, Middle Temple, and Gray's Inn; Bodleian Library, Oxford; the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris; &c.

71. *THE HISTORIANS OF THE CHURCH OF YORK, AND ITS ARCHBISHOPS.* Vols. I. and II. Edited by JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1879-1886.

This will form a complete "Corpus Historicum Eboracense," a work very much needed, and of great value to the Historical Inquirer.

72. *REGISTRUM MALMESBURIENSE. THE REGISTER OF MALMESBURY ABBEY; PRESERVED IN THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE.* Vols. I. and II. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Preacher at the Rolls, and Rector of Toppesfield; and CHARLES TRICE MARTIN, Esq., B.A. 1879, 1880.

This work illustrates many curious points of history, the growth of society, the distribution of land, the relations of landlord and tenant, national customs, &c.

73. *HISTORICAL WORKS OF GERVASE OF CANTERBURY.* Vols. I. and II. THE CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF STEPHEN, HENRY II., and RICHARD I., BY GERVASE, THE MONK OF CANTERBURY. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, D.D.; Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford; &c. 1879, 1880.



The Historical Works of Gervase of Canterbury are of great importance as regards the questions of Church and State, during the period in which he wrote. This work was printed by Twysden, in the "*Historiæ Anglicanæ Scriptores X.*," more than two centuries ago. The present edition has received critical examination and illustration.

74. **HENRICI ARCHIDIACONI HUNTENDUNENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM.** THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH, BY HENRY, ARCHDEACON OF HUNTINGDON, from A.D. 55 to A.D. 1154, in Eight Books. *Edited by* THOMAS ARNOLD, Esq., M.A., of University College, Oxford. 1879.

Henry of Huntingdon's work was first printed by Sir Henry Savile, in 1596, in his "*Scriptores post Bedam*," and reprinted at Frankfort in 1601. Both editions are very rare and inaccurate. The first five books of the History were published in 1848 in the "*Monumenta Historica Britannica*," which is out of print. The present volume contains the whole of the manuscript of Huntingdon's History in eight books, collated with a manuscript lately discovered at Paris.

75. **THE HISTORICAL WORKS OF SYMEON OF DURHAM.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS ARNOLD, Esq., M.A., of University College, Oxford. 1882-1885.

The first volume of this edition of the Historical Works of Symeon of Durham, contains the "*Historia Dunelmensis Ecclesiæ*," and other Works. The second volume contains the "*Historia Regum*," &c.

76. **CHRONICLES OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD I. AND EDWARD II.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, D.D., Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford, &c. 1882, 1883.

The first volume of these Chronicles contains the "*Annales Londonienses*" and the "*Annales Paulini*:" the second, I.—*Commendatio Lamentabilis in Transitu magni Regis Edwardi.* II.—*Gesta Edwardi de Carnarvan Auctore Canticio Bridlingtoniensis.* III.—*Monachi cujusdam Malmesberienensis Vita, Edwardi II.* IV.—*Vita et Mors Edwardi II. Conscripta a Thoma de la Moore.*

77. **REGISTRUM EPISTOLARUM FRATRIS JOHANNIS PECKHAM, ARCHIEPISCOPI CANTUARIENSIS.** Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* CHARLES TRICE MARTIN, Esq., B.A., F.S.A., 1882-1886.

These Letters are of great value for illustrating English Ecclesiastical History.

78. **REGISTER OF S. OSMUND.** *Edited by* the Rev. W. H. RICH JONES, M.A., F.S.A., Canon of Salisbury, Vicar of Bradford-on-Avon. Vols. I. and II. 1883, 1884.

This Register, of which a complete copy is here printed for the first time, is among the most ancient, and certainly the most treasured, of the muniments of the Bishops of Salisbury. It derives its name from containing the statutes, rules, and orders made or compiled by S. Osmund, to be observed in the Cathedral and diocese of Salisbury. The first 19 folios contain the "*Conruetudinary*," the exposition, as regards ritual, of the "*Use of Sarum*."

79. **CHARTULARY OF THE ANCIENT BENEDICTINE ABBEY OF RAMSEY,** from the MS. in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. 1884, 1886. *Edited by* WILLIAM HENRY HART, Esq., F.S.A., and the Rev. PONSONBY ANNESLEY LYONS.

This Chartulary of the Ancient Benedictine Monastery of Ramsey, Huntingdonshire, came to the Crown on the Dissolution of Monasteries, was afterwards preserved in the Stone Tower, Westminster Hall, and thence transferred to the Public Record Office.

80. **CHARTULARIES OF ST. MARY'S ABBEY, DUBLIN, &c.,** preserved in the Bodleian Library and British Museum. *Edited by* JOHN THOMAS GILBERT, Esq., F.S.A., M.R.I.A. Vols. I. & II. 1884 and 1885.

These Chartularies, published for the first time, are the only documents of that description known to exist of the ancient establishments of the Cistercian Order in Ireland; two being of St. Mary's Abbey, Dublin, and one of the House at Dunbrody, Wexford. One Chartulary is in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, together with that of Dunbrody; the second is in the British Museum.

81. **EADMERI HISTORIA NOVORUM IN ANGLIA, ET OPUSCULA DUO DE VITA SANCTI ANSELMI ET QUINQUEMIRACULIS EJUS.** 1884. *Edited by* the Rev. MARTIN RILEY, M.A.

This volume contains the "*Historiæ Novorum in Anglia*," of Eadmer; his treatise "*De Vita et conversatione Anselmi Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis*," and a Tract entitled "*Quaedam Parva Descriptio Miraculorum gloriosi Patris Anselmi Cantuariensis*."

82. **CHRONICLES OF THE REIGNS OF STEPHEN, HENRY II., AND RICHARD I.** Vols. I. II., and III., 1884-1886. *Edited by* RICHARD HOWLETT, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-law.  
Vol. I. contains Books I.-IV. of the "Historia Rerum Anglicarum" of William of Newburgh; Vol. II. contains Book V. of that work, the continuation of the same to A.D. 1298, and the "Draco Normannicus" of Etienne de Rouen. Vol. III. contains the "Gesta Stephani Regis," the Chronicle of Richard of Hexham, the "Relatio de Standardo" of St. Aelred of Rievaulx, the poem of Jordan Fantosme, and the Chronicle of Richard of Devizes.
83. **CHRONICLE OF THE ANCIENT ABBEY OF RAMSEY**, from the Chartulary of that Abbey, in the Public Record Office. 1886. *Edited by* the Rev. WILLIAM DUNN MACRAY, M.A., F.S.A., Rector of Ducklington, Oxon.  
This Chronicle forms part of the Chartulary of the Abbey of Ramsey, preserved in the Public Record Office (*see* No. 79).
84. **CHRONICA ROGERI DE WENDOVER, SIVE FLORES HISTORIARUM.** Vol. I. *Edited by* HENRY GAY HEWLETT, Esq., Keeper of the Records of the Land Revenue.  
This edition gives that portion only of Roger of Wendover's Chronicle which can be accounted an original authority.
85. **THE REGISTERS OF THE MONASTERY OF CHRIST CHURCH, CANTERBURY.** *Edited by* JOSEPH BRIGSTOCKE SHEPPARD, Esq., LL.D. Vol. I., 1887.
86. **THE METRICAL CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER.** *Edited by* WILLIAM ALDIS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. Parts I. and II., 1887.
87. **CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF BRUNNE.** *Edited by* FREDERICK JAMES FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law. Parts I and II. 1887.

*In the Press.*

- A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* Sir GEORGE WEBBE DASENT, D.C.L., Oxon., and M. GUDBRAND VIGFUSSON, M.A. Vols. I.—IV.
- LESTORIE DES ENGLIS SOLUM GEFREI GAIMAR.** *Edited by* the late Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records; *continued and translated by* CHARLES TRICE MARTIN, Esq., B.A., F.S.A. Vols. I. and II.
- THE TRIPARTITE LIFE OF ST. PATRICK**, with other documents relating to that Saint. *Edited by* WHITLEY STOKES, Esq., LL.D., D.C.L., Honorary Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford; and Corresponding Member of the Institute of France. Parts I. and II.
- CHARTULARY OF THE ANCIENT BENEDICTINE ABBEY OF RAMSEY**, from the MS. in the Public Record Office. Vol. III. *Edited by* WILLIAM HENRY HART, Esq., F.S.A., and the Rev. PONSONBY ANNESLEY LYONS.
- WILLELMI MONACHI MALMESBIRIENSIS DE REGUM GESTIS ANGLORUM, LIBRI V.; ET HISTORIÆ NOVELLÆ, LIBRI III.** *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, D.D., Bishop of Chester. Vols. I. and II.
- CHARTERS AND DOCUMENTS, ILLUSTRATING THE HISTORY OF THE CATHEDRAL AND CITY OF SARUM, 1100-1300**; forming an Appendix to the Register of S. Osmund. Vol. III. *Edited by* the Rev. W. H. RICH JONES, M.A., F.S.A., Canon of Salisbury, Vicar of Bradford-on-Avon.
- A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN NOW CALLED ENGLAND, BY JOHN DE WAURIN. 1399-1422. (Translation of Vol. II). *Edited and translated by* the late Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A., and EDWARD L. C. P. HARDY, Esq., F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.
- FLORES HISTORIARUM, PER MATTHÆUM WESTMONASTERIENSEM COLLECTI.** *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrary of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge.
- RANULF DE GLANVILL; TRACTATUS DE LEGIBUS ET CONSUETUDINIBUS ANGLIÆ, &c.** *Edited and translated by* Sir TRAVERS TWISS, Q.O., D.C.L.

- CHRONICLE OF ADAM MURIMUTH, with the CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF AVESBURY.  
*Edited by* EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, Esq., Keeper and Egerton Librarian  
 of the Manuscript Department in the British Museum.
- YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD III. *Edited and translated by* LUKE OWEN  
 PIKE, Esq., M.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.

### *In Progress.*

- DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT  
 BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. IV.; 1327, &c. *Edited by* the late Sir THOMAS  
 DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, and C. TRICE  
 MARTIN, Esq., B.A., F.S.A.
- THE TREATISE "DE PRINCIPUM INSTRUCTIONE," of GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS; with an  
 Index to the first four volumes of the "Works of Giraldus Cambrensis,"  
 edited by the Rev. J. S. Brewer. *Edited by* GEORGE F. WARNER, Esq., of  
 the Department of MSS., British Museum.
- RECUEIL DES CRONIKES ET ANCIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A  
 PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. V. 1443-1461.  
*Edited by* Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A., and EDWARD L. C. P. HARDY, Esq.,  
 F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.
- THE RED BOOK OF THE EXCHEQUEER, preserved in the Public Record Office.  
*Edited by* WALFORD DAKING SELBY, Esq., of the Public Record Office.
- ANNALS OR MEMORIALS OF ST. EDMONDSBURY. *Edited by* THOMAS ARNOLD, Esq.,  
 M.A., of University College, Oxford.
- CHRONICLE OF HENRY KNIGHTON, Canon of Leicester, to the death of RICHARD II.  
*Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D.
- LEXICON GEOGRAPHICUM. From a Manuscript of the 14th century. *Edited by*  
 FRANK SCOTT HAYDON, Esq., B.A., Assistant Keeper of the Public Records.
- CHRONICA ROGERI DE WENDOVER, SIVE FLORES HISTORIARUM. *Edited by* HENRY  
 GAY HEWLETT, Esq., Keeper of the Records of the Land Revenue. Vol. II.
- THE REGISTERS OF THE MONASTERY OF CHRIST CHURCH, CANTERBURY. *Edited by*  
 JOSEPH BRIGSTOCKE SHEPPARD, Esq., LL.D. Vol. II.

### PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS. &c.

[In boards or cloth.]

- ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIA SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Hen. III.—Edw. III.  
*Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 Vols. folio (1805—1810). 12s. 6d. each.
- CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Hen. III.—Ric.  
 III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Folio (1821—1828):  
 Vol. 3, 21s.; Vol. 4, 24s.
- LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4.  
*Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), 18s.
- ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM. Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon.  
 GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1811), 18s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS.  
 Folio (1816), (Domesday-Book, Vol. 3). 21s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS.  
*Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), (Domesday-Book, Vol. 4), 21s.
- STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN  
 CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, folio (1819—  
 1828). 31s. 6d. each; Indices, 30s. each.

- VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817-1834). 25s. each. The Introduction, separately, 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSIS ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSIS ASSERVATI. 19 Edw. I.—Hen. VIII. *Edited by* D. MACPHERSON, J. CALEY, W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and Rev. T. H. HORNE. Vol. 2. folio (1818). 21s.
- FœDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c.; or, RYMER'S FœDERA, New Edition, folio. Vol. 3, Part 2, 1361-1377 (1830): Vol. 4, 1377-1383 (1869). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. Vol. 3, Part 2, 21s.; Vol. 4, 6s.
- DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to Pleadings, &c., Hen. VII.—13 Eliz. Part 4, Calendar to Pleadings, to end of Eliz. (1827-1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio. Part 3 (or Vol. 2), 31s. 6d.; Part 4 (or Vol. 3), 21s.
- CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, ELIZ.; with Examples of Proceedings from Ric. II. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vol. 3 (1832), folio, 21s.
- PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, with Records and Muniments relating to Suit and Service to Parliament, &c. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830-1834.) Folio. Vol. 2, Div. 1, Edw. II., 21s.; Vol. 2, Div. 2, 21s.; Vol. 2, Div. 3, 42s.
- ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSIS ASSERVATI. 2 Vols. folio (1833, 1844). Vol. 1, 1204-1224. Vol. 2, 1224-1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. Vol. 1, 63s.; Vol. 2, 18s.
- PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Ric. II.—33 Hen. VIII. *Edited by* Sir NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 Vols. royal 8vo. (1834-1837). 14s. each.
- ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI. 1201-1216. *Edited by* T. DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1835), 31s. 6d. The Introduction, separately, 8vo. 9s.
- ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835). 28s.
- ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI. 1200-1205; 1417-1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835). 12s. 6d.
- ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI, temp. Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835). 18s.
- EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSIS ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216-1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836); Vol. 1, 14s.; Vol. 2, 18s.
- FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIA DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195-1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835-1844); Vol. 1, 8s. 6d.; Vol. 2, 2s. 6d.
- ANCIENT CALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; with Documents illustrating its History. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 Vols. royal 8vo. (1836). 42s.
- DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and Transactions between Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1837). 18s.
- ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSIS ASSERVATI. 1199-1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1837). 30s.
- REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831-1837. 1 Vol. folio (1837). 8s.
- REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 Vol. folio (1838), 31s. 6d.

- ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, with Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry I.; Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from 7th to 10th century; and Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1840), 40s. 2 Vols. royal 8vo, 30s.
- ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good, modified by Regulations prior to the Conquest by Edward I.; and anomalous Laws, principally of Institutions which continued in force. With Translation. Also, Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1841), 44s. 2 Vols. royal 8vo., 36s.
- ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 6s.
- THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE, 2, 3, 4 HEN. II., 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 4s. 6d.
- THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE, 1 RIC. I., 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 6s.
- DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, from the Records of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 Vol. fcp. folio (1844). 5s. 6d.
- MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. 8vo. (1846). 2s. 6d.
- REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REG. SCOT. in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). 10s. 6d.
- ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. Folio 1814—1875). *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. Vol. 1, 42s. Vols. 5 and 6 (in three Parts), 21s. each Part; Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, 10s. 6d. each; Vol. 12 (Index), 63s. Or, 12 Volumes in 13, 12l. 12s.
- ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS (ACTA DOMINORUM AUDITORUM). 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). 10s. 6d.
- ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES (ACTA DOMINORUM CONCILII), 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). 10s. 6d.
- ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer, containing Payments out of the Revenue, 44 Edw. III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1835), 35s. Or, royal 8vo., 25s.
- ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, James I.; from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1836), 30s. Or, royal 8vo., 21s.
- ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, Henry III.—Henry VI.; from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1837), 40s. Or, royal 8vo., 30s.
- HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1853). 12s.
- HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND. Henry VIII.—Anne (1509—1714). A Book of Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 Vols. 8vo. (1856). 40s.
- STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 Vols. 4to. (1830—1852), 10s. 6d. each.
- Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.  
 Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.  
 Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.  
 Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts

## WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

**DOMESDAY BOOK**, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086; fac-simile of the Part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel Sir HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, under the Superintendence of W. BASEVI SANDERS, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. 35 Parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861-1863), boards. Price 8s. to 1l. 3s. each Part, according to size; or, bound in 2 Vols., 20l. (*The edition in two volumes is out of print.*)

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England\* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each according to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The Commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor; the present possessor; how many hides were in the manor; how many ploughs were in the demesne; how many homagers; how many villeins; how many cottars; how many serving men; how many free tenants; how many tenants in soccage; how much wood, meadow, and pasture; the number of mills and fish ponds; what had been added or taken away from the place; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor; the present value; and how much each free man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward; who then held it; its value in the time of the late King; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, "it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester, and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., Director-General of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

---

\* For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed; Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribble and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 688 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.

**FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS**, from WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR to QUEEN ANNE, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel Sir HENRY JAMES, B.E., F.R.S., DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. *Price*, each Part, with translations and notes, double foolscap folio, 16s.

Part I. (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.). 1865. (*Out of print.*)

Part II. (Henry VIII. and Edward VI.) 1866.

Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth). 1867.

Part IV. (James I. to Anne). 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part, for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters, and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580-3.

**FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS.** Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Lieut.-General J. CAMERON, R.E., C.B., F.R.S., and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part I. *Price* 2l. 10s.

The Anglo-Saxon MSS. represented in this volume form the earlier portions of the collection of archives belonging to the Dean and Chapter of Canterbury, and consist of a series of 25 charters, deeds, and wills, commencing with a record of proceedings at the first Synodal Council of Clovestho in 742, and terminating with the first part of a tripartite cheirograph, whereby Thurston conveyed to the Church of Canterbury land at Wimbish in Essex, in 1049, the sixth year of the reign of Edward the Confessor.

**FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS.** Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Major-General A. COOKE, R.E., C.B., and collected and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part II. *Price* 3l. 10s.

(Also, separately. Edward the Confessor's Charter. *Price* 2s.)

The originals of the Fac-similes contained in this volume belong to the Deans and Chapters of Westminster, Exeter, Wells, Winchester, and Worcester; the Marquis of Bath, the Earl of Ilchester, Winchester College, Her Majesty's Public Record Office, Bodleian Library, Somersetshire Archaeological and Natural History Society's Museum in Taunton Castle, and William Salt Library at Stafford. They consist of charters and other documents granted by, or during the reigns of, Baldred, Æthelred, Offa, and Burgred, Kings of Mercia; Uhtred of the Huiccas, Ceadwalla and Ini of Wessex; Æthelwulf, Eadward the Elder, Æthelstan, Eadmund the First, Eadred, Eadwig, Eadgar, Eadward the Second, Æthelred the Second, Cnut, Eadward the Confessor, and William the Conqueror, embracing altogether a period of nearly four hundred years.

**FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS.** Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Colonel R. H. STOTHERD, R.E., C.B., and collected and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part III. *Price* 3l. 10s.

This volume contains fac-similes of the Ashburham collection of Anglo-Saxon Charters, &c., including King Alfred's Will. The MSS. represented in it, range from A.D. 697 to A.D. 1161, being charters, wills, deeds, and reports of Synodal transactions during the reigns of Kings Wihtred of Kent, Offa, Eardwulf, Cogenwulf, Cuthred, Beornwulf, Æthelwulf, Ælfred, Eadward the Elder, Eadmund, Eadred, Queen Eadgifu, and Kings Eadgar, Æthelred the Second, Cnut, Henry the First, and Henry the Second. In addition to these are two belonging to the Marquis of Anglesey, one of them being the Foundation Charter of Burton Abbey by Æthelred the Second with the testament of its great benefactor Wulfic.

## HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION.

REPORTS OF THE ROYAL COMMISSIONERS APPOINTED TO  
INQUIRE WHAT PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS BELONGING  
TO PRIVATE FAMILIES AND INSTITUTIONS ARE EXTANT  
WHICH WOULD BE OF UTILITY IN THE ILLUSTRATION OF  
HISTORY, CONSTITUTIONAL LAW, SCIENCE, AND GENERAL  
LITERATURE.

| Date.                         | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Size. | Sessional Paper. | Price.       |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|--------------|
| 1870<br>(Re-printed<br>1874.) | <b>FIRST REPORT, WITH APPENDIX</b> -<br><b>Contents :—</b><br><b>ENGLAND.</b> House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Abingdon, and other Corporations, &c.<br><b>SCOTLAND.</b> Advocates' Library, Glasgow Corporation, &c.<br><b>IRELAND.</b> Dublin, Cork, and other Corporations, &c.                                                                                                            | f'cap | C. 55            | s. d.<br>1 6 |
| 1871                          | <b>SECOND REPORT, WITH APPENDIX, AND INDEX TO THE FIRST AND SECOND REPORTS</b> - - - -<br><b>Contents :—</b><br><b>ENGLAND.</b> House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Oxford Colleges; Monastery of Dominican Friars at Woodchester, Duke of Bedford, Earl Spencer, &c.<br><b>SCOTLAND.</b> Aberdeen and St. Andrew's Universities, &c.<br><b>IRELAND.</b> Marquis of Ormonde; Dr. Lyons, &c.      | „     | C. 441           | 3 10         |
| 1872                          | <b>THIRD REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX</b> - - - -<br><b>Contents :—</b><br><b>ENGLAND.</b> House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Stonyhurst College; Bridgewater and other Corporations; Duke of Northumberland, Marquis of Lansdowne, Marquis of Bath, &c.<br><b>SCOTLAND.</b> University of Glasgow; Duke of Montrose, &c.<br><b>IRELAND.</b> Marquis of Ormonde; Black Book of Limerick, &c. | „     | C. 673           | 6 0          |



| Date. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Size.              | Sessional Paper. | Price.       |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|--------------|
|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                    |                  | <i>s. d.</i> |
| 1873  | FOURTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX.<br>PART I. - - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Westminster Abbey; Cambridge and Oxford Colleges; Cinque Ports, Hythe, and other Corporations, Marquis of Bath, Earl of Denbigh, &c.<br>SCOTLAND. Duke of Argyll, &c.<br>IRELAND. Trinity College, Dublin; Marquis of Ormonde.                                             | f <sup>o</sup> cap | C. 857           | 6 8          |
|       | DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - - - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | „                  | C. 857 i.        | 2 6          |
| 1876  | FIFTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. -<br>Contents :—<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Oxford and Cambridge Colleges; Dean and Chapter of Canterbury; Rye, Lydd, and other Corporations, Duke of Sutherland, Marquis of Lansdowne, Reginald Cholmondeley, Esq., &c.<br>SCOTLAND. Earl of Aberdeen, &c.                                                                        | „                  | C. 1432          | 7 0          |
|       | DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - - - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | „                  | C. 1432 i.       | 3 6          |
| 1877  | SIXTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. -<br>Contents :—<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Oxford and Cambridge Colleges; Lambeth Palace; Black Book of the Archdeacon of Canterbury; Bridport, Wallingford, and other Corporations; Lord Leconfield, Sir Reginald Graham, Sir Henry Ingilby, &c.<br>SCOTLAND. Duke of Argyll, Earl of Moray, &c.<br>IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde. | „                  | C. 1745          | 8 6          |
|       | DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - - - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | „                  | C. 2102          | 1 10         |
| 1879  | SEVENTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX.<br>PART I. - - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>House of Lords; County of Somerset; Earl of Egmont, Sir Frederick Graham, Sir Harry Verney, &c.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | „                  | C. 2340          | 7 6          |
|       | DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Contents :—<br>Duke of Athole, Marquis of Ormonde, S. F. Livingstone, Esq., &c.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | „                  | C. 2340 i.       | 3 6          |
| 1881  | EIGHTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX. PART I. - - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>List of collections examined, 1869–1880.<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Duke of Marlborough; Magdalen College, Oxford; Royal College of Physicians; Queen Anne's                                                                                                                                | „                  | C. 3040          | 8 6          |

| Date. | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Size. | Sessional Paper. | Price. |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|--------|
|       | Bounty Office; Corporations of Chester, Leicester, &c.<br>IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde, Lord Emly, The O'Connor Don, Trinity College, Dublin, &c.                                                                                                                      |       |                  | s. d.  |
|       | DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Contents :—<br>Duke of Manchester.                                                                                                                                                                                            | fcap  | C. 3040i.        | 1 9    |
|       | DITTO. PART III. APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Contents :—<br>Earl of Ashburnham.                                                                                                                                                                                           | „     | C.3040ii.        | 1 4    |
| 1888  | CALENDAR OF THE MANUSCRIPTS OF THE MARQUIS OF SALISBURY, K.G. PART I. .                                                                                                                                                                                               | 8vo.  | C. 3777          | 3 5    |
| „     | NINTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX. PART I. - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>St. Paul's and Canterbury Cathedrals; Eton College; Carlisle, Yarmouth, Canterbury, and Barnstaple Corporations, &c.                                                                         | fcap  | C. 3778          | 5 2    |
|       | DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Contents :—<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Earl of Leicester; C. Pole Gell, Alfred Morrison, Esquires, &c.<br>SCOTLAND. Lord Elphinstone, H. C. Maxwell Stuart, Esq., &c.<br>IRELAND. Duke of Leinster, Marquis of Drogheda, &c. | „     | C. 3778 i.       | 6 3    |
|       | DITTO. PART III. APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>Mrs. Stopford Sackville.                                                                                                                                                                                | „     | C.3778ii.        | 1 7    |
| 1885  | TENTH REPORT - - - -<br>This is introductory to the following :—                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 8vo.  | C. 4548          | 0 3½   |
| „     | (1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - -<br>The Earl of Eglinton, Sir J. S. Maxwell, Bart., and C. S. H. D. Moray, C. F. Weston Underwood, G. W. Digby, Esquires.                                                                                                                  | „     | C. 4575          | 3 7    |
| „     | (2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - -<br>Wells Cathedral.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | „     | C.4576 ii.       | 2 0    |
| „     | (3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - -<br>The Family of Gawdy, formerly of Norfolk.                                                                                                                                                                                              | „     | C.4576iii.       | 1 4    |
|       | (4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - -<br>The Earl of Westmorland, Captain Stewart, Lord Muncaster. Shropshire Collections, &c. PART IV.                                                                                                                                         | „     | C. 4576          | 3 6    |

| Date. | —                                                                                                                                                                                      | Size. | Sessional Paper. | Price.        |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|---------------|
| -     | (5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>The Marquis of Ormonde, Earl of Fingall, Corporations of Galway, Waterford, the Sees of Dublin and of Ossory, Archives of the Jesuits in Ireland. PART V. | 8vo.  | 4576 i.          | s. d.<br>2 10 |
| -     | (6.) APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Marquis of Abergavenny, Lord Braye, &c. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                              | —     | —                | —             |
| -     | ELEVENTH REPORT. <i>In the Press.</i><br>This is introductory to the following :—                                                                                                      | —     | —                | —             |
| 1887  | (1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Salvetti Correspondence. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                                             | —     | —                | —             |
| 1887  | (2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>The House of Lords. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                                                  | —     | —                | —             |
| -     | (3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>The Corporations of Southampton and Lynn. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                            | —     | —                | —             |
| -     | (4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>The Marquess Townshend. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                                              | —     | —                | —             |
| -     | (5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>The Earl of Dartmouth. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                                               | —     | —                | —             |

*Stationery Office,  
July 1887.*

## ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS.

REPORTS Nos. 1-22, IN FOLIO, PUBLISHED BETWEEN 1840  
AND 1861, ARE NO LONGER ON SALE. SUBSEQUENT  
REPORTS ARE IN OCTAVO.

| Date. | Number<br>of<br>Report. | Chief Contents of Appendices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Price.       |
|-------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1862  | 23                      | Subjects of Research by Literary Inquirers, 1852-1861.—Attendances at the various Record Offices, previously to the passing of the Public Record Act.                                                                                                                                                                                                   | s. d.<br>0 4 |
| 1863  | 24                      | List of Calendars, Indexes, &c., in the Public Record Office.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 0 7½         |
| 1864  | 25                      | Calendar of Crown Leases, 33-38 Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Bills and Answers, &c., Hen. VIII.—Ph. & Mary, for Cheshire and Flintshire.—List of Lords High Treasurers and Chief Commissioners of the Treasury, from Hen. VII.                                                                                                                                | 0 8          |
| 1865  | 26                      | List of Plans annexed to Inclosure Awards, 31 Geo. II.—7 Will. IV.—Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., Hen. VI.—Eliz., for Cheshire and Flintshire.—Calendar of Writs of General Livery, &c., for Cheshire, Eliz.—Charles I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Hen. III. and Edw. I.—List of Documents photozincographed, Will. I.—Hen. VII. | 0 7          |
| 1866  | 27                      | List of Awards of Inclosure Commissioners.—References to Charters in the Cartæ Antiquæ and the Confirmation Rolls of Chancery, Ethelbert of Kent—James I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Edw. II.—List of Documents photozincographed, Hen. VIII. and Edw. VI.                                                                      | 1 6          |
| 1867  | 28                      | Fees in the Public Record Office.—Calendar of Fines, Cheshire and Flintshire, Edw. I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Edw. III.—List of Documents photozincographed, Mary and Eliz., and Scottish, Part I.—Table of Law Terms, from the Norman Conquest to 1 Will. IV.                                                               | 0 10½        |

| Date. | Number of Report. | Chief Contents of Appendices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Price.       |
|-------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1868  | 29                | Calendar of Royal Charters.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Richard II.—Hen. VII.—Durham Records, Letter and Report.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | s. d.<br>0 9 |
| 1869  | 30                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory.—Durham Records, Inventory, Indexes to Kellawe's Register.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Decrees of Court of General Surveyors, 34–38 Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Royal Charters.—State Paper Office, Calendar of Documents relating to the History of, to 1800.—List of Documents photozincographed, Eliz.—Anne.—Tower of London, Index to Documents in custody of the Constable of.—Calendar of Dockets, &c., for Privy Seals, 1634–1711, in the British Museum. Report of the Commissioners on Carte Papers.—Venetian Ciphers. | 3 0          |
| 1870  | 31                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Royal Charters, Will. II.—Ric. II.—Durham Records, Calendar of Chancery Enrolments; Cursitor's Records.—List of Officers of Palatinate of Chester, in Cheshire and Flintshire, and North Wales.—List of Sheriffs of England, 31 Hen. I. to 4 Edw. III.—List of Documents photozincographed, Scottish, Part II.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 2 3          |
| 1871  | 32                | Part I.—Report of the Commissioners on Carte Papers.—Calendarium Genealogicum, 1 & 2 Edw. II.—Durham Records, Calendar of Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 2 2          |
| 1871  | --                | Part II.—Charities; Calendar of Trust Deeds enrolled on the Close Rolls of Chancery, subsequent to 9 Geo. II. c. xxxvi.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 5 6          |
| 1872  | 33                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Venetian Transcripts.—Greek copies of the Athanasian Creed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 1 10         |
| 1873  | 34                | Parliamentary Petitions; Index to the Petitions to the King in Council.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—List of Documents photozincographed, Scottish, Part III.—Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 1 9          |
| 1874  | 35                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Ancient Charters or Grants.—Palatinate of Lancaster; Inventory and Lists of Documents transferred to the Public Record Office.—Durham Records, Calendar of Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—List of Documents photozincographed, Irish, Part I.—Second Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 1 6          |

| Date. | Number of Report. | Chief Contents of Appendices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Price.       |
|-------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1875  | 36                | Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records; Calendar of Ancient Charters or Grants.—List of Documents photozincographed; Irish, Part II.—M. Armand Baschet's Report upon Documents in French Archives relating to British History.—Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester, to end of reign of Hen. IV.                                         | s. d.<br>4 4 |
| 1876  | 37                | Part I.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Ancient Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.—M. Baschet's list of French Ambassadors, &c., in England, 1509–1714.                                                                                                                                                                          | 1 2          |
| 1876  | —                 | Part II.—Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester; Hen. V.—Hen. VII.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 4 4          |
| 1877  | 38                | Exchequer Records, Catalogue of Special Commissions, 1 Eliz. to 10 Vict., Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, 1 Eliz. to end of James I.—List of Representative Peers for Scotland and Ireland.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 4 3          |
| 1878  | 39                | Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester, 1 Hen. VIII.—11 Geo. IV.—Exchequer Records, Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, Charles I.—Duchy of Lancaster Records; Calendar of Lancashire Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Third Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—M. Baschet's List of Despatches of French Ambassadors to England, 1509–1714. | 4 6          |
| 1879  | 40                | Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission Commonwealth—James II.—Miscellaneous Records of Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Patent Rolls, 5 Ric. II.—21 Hen. VII.—Rules and Regulations respecting the public use of the Records.                                                                    | 3 0          |
| 1880  | 41                | Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, William and Mary to George I.—Calendar of Norman Rolls, Hen. V., Part I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Report from Rome.—List of Calendars, Indexes, &c. in the Public Record Office on 31st December 1879.                                                                                                                                                           | 4 8          |
| 1881  | 42                | Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, George II.—Calendar of Norman Rolls, Hen. V., Part II. and Glossary.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 1 Edw. I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4 0          |
| 1882  | 43                | Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., 1–7 Charles I.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory of Court Rolls, Hen. III.—Geo. IV., Calendar of Privy Seals,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 3 10         |

| Date. | Number of Report. | Chief Contents of Appendices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Price. |
|-------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|       |                   | Ric. II.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 2 Edw. I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Fourth Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Transcripts from Paris.—Report on Libraries in Sweden.—Report on Papers relating to English History in the State Archives, Stockholm.—Report on Canadian Archives.                                                                                                                                | s. d.  |
| 1883  | 44                | Calendar of Patent Rolls, 3 Edw. I.—Durham Records, Cursitor's Records, Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Calendar of French Rolls, 1–10 Hen. V.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Report from Venice.—Transcripts from Paris.—Report from Rome.                                                                                                                                                                                            | 3 6    |
| 1884  | 45                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory of Ministers' and Receivers' Accounts, Edw. I.—Geo. III.—Durham Records, Cursitor's Records, Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Treasury of the Receipt of the Exchequer, Calendar of Diplomatic Documents.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome and Stockholm.—Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—Transcripts from Venice.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 4 Edw. I. | 4 3    |
| 1885  | 46                | Presentations to Offices on the Patent Rolls, Charles II.—Anglo-Saxon Charters, &c., photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome.—Second Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 5 Edw. I.—Catalogue of Venetian Manuscripts bequeathed by Mr. Rawdon Brown to the Public Record Office.                                                                                                                | 2 10   |
| 1886  | 47                | Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome.—Third Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—List of Creations of Peers and Baronets, 1483–1646.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 6 Edw. I.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 2 2    |
|       |                   | There have also been printed Indexes to Reports 1–22, and Reports 23–39.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |        |

*Public Record Office,  
January 1887.*

# SCOTLAND.

## CATALOGUE OF SCOTCH RECORD PUBLICATIONS

PUBLISHED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF

### THE LORD CLERK REGISTER OF SCOTLAND.

[OTHER WORKS RELATING TO SCOTLAND WILL BE FOUND AMONG THE PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, *see* pp. 26-28.]

1. CHRONICLES OF THE PICTS AND SCOTS, AND OTHER EARLY MEMORIALS OF SCOTTISH HISTORY. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Edited by* WILLIAM F. SKENE, LL.D. *Price* 10s. *Out of print.*
  2. LEDGER OF ANDREW HALYBURTON, CONSERVATOR OF THE PRIVILEGES OF THE SCOTCH NATION IN THE NETHERLANDS (1492-1503); TOGETHER WITH THE BOOKS OF CUSTOMS AND VALUATION OF MERCHANDISES IN SCOTLAND. *Edited by* COSMO LINES. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Price* 10s.
  3. DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE HISTORY OF SCOTLAND FROM THE DEATH OF KING ALEXANDER THE THIRD TO THE ACCESSION OF ROBERT BRUCE, from original and authentic copies in London, Paris, Brussels, Lille, and Ghent. In 2 Vols. royal 8vo., half bound (1870). *Edited by* Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON. *Price* 10s. *each.*
  4. ACCOUNTS OF THE LORD HIGH TREASURER OF SCOTLAND. Vol. 1, A.D. 1473-1498. *Edited by* THOMAS DICKSON. 1877. *Price* 10s.
  5. REGISTER OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF SCOTLAND. *Edited and arranged by* J. H. BURTON, LL.D. Vol. 1, 1545-1569. Vol. 2, 1569-1578. Vol. 3, A.D. 1578-1585. Vol. 4, A.D. 1585-1592. Vol. 5, 1592-1599. Vol. 6, 1599-1604. Vol. 7, 1604-1607. Vol. 8 in progress. *Edited by* DAVID MASSON, LL.D. 1877-1884. *Price* 15s. *each.*
  6. ROTULI SCACCARII REGUM SCOTORUM. THE EXCHEQUER ROLLS OF SCOTLAND Vol. 1, A.D. 1264-1359. Vol. 2, A.D. 1359-1379. *Edited by* JOHN STUART, LL.D., and GEORGE BURNETT, Lyon King of Arms. 1878-1880. Vol. 3, A.D. 1379-1406. Vol. 4, A.D. 1406-1436 (1880). Vol. 5, A.D. 1437-1454 (1882). Vol. 6, 1455-1460 (1883). Vol. 7, 1460-1469 (1884). Vol. 8, A.D. 1470-1479 (1885). Vol. 9, 1480-1487 Addenda, 1437-1487 [(1886)]. Vol. 10, 1488-1496. Vol. 11 in progress. *Edited by* GEORGE BURNETT. *Price* 10s. *each.*
  7. CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS RELATING TO SCOTLAND. *Edited by* JOSEPH BAIN. Vol. I (1881). Vol. II. 1272-1307 (1884). Vol. III. (in progress). *Price* 15s. *each.*
  8. REGISTER OF THE GREAT SEAL OF SCOTLAND. A.D. 1424-1513 (1882). A.D. 1513-1546 (1883). A.D. 1546-1580 (1886). A.D. 1580 (in progress). *Edited by* JAMES BALFOUR PAUL and J. M. THOMSON. *Price* 15s. *each.*
- FAC-SIMILES OF THE NATIONAL MSS. OF SCOTLAND. (*Out of print.*)  
Parts I., II., and III. *Price* 21s. *each.*

Stationery Office,  
July 1887.



# IRELAND.

## CATALOGUE OF IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS.

CALENDAR OF THE PATENT AND CLOSE ROLLS OF CHANCERY IN IRELAND. HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH. *Edited by* JAMES MORRIN, Royal 8vo. (1861-3). Vols. 1, 2, and 3. *Price* 11s. each.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF IRELAND.

Senchus Mor. (1865-1880.) Vols. 1, 2, 3, and 4. *Price* 10s. each.  
Vol. 5 in progress.

Abstracts of the Irish Patent Rolls of James I. Unbound. *Price* 25s.

Abstracts of the Irish Patent Rolls of James I. With Supplement. *Price* 35s.

FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS OF IRELAND, FROM THE EARLIEST EXTANT SPECIMENS TO A.D. 1719. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, F.S.A., M.R.I.A.  
*Part 1 is out of print.* Parts II. and III. *Price* 42s. each. *Part IV. 1. Price* 5l. 5s. *Part IV. 2. Price* 4l. 10s.

This work forms a comprehensive Palæographic Series for Ireland. It furnishes characteristic specimens of the documents which have come down from each of the classes which, in past ages, formed principal elements in the population of Ireland, or exercised an influence in her affairs. With these reproductions are combined fac-similes of writings connected with eminent personages or transactions of importance in the annals of the country to the early part of the eighteenth century.

The specimens have been reproduced as nearly as possible in accordance with the originals, in dimensions, colouring, and general appearance. Characteristic examples of styles of writing and caligraphic ornamentation are, so far as practicable, associated with subjects of historic and linguistic interest. Descriptions of the various manuscripts are given by the Editor in the Introduction. The contents of the specimens are fully elucidated and printed in the original languages, opposite to the Fac-similes—line for line—without contractions—thus facilitating reference and aiding effectively those interested in palæographic studies.

In the work are also printed in full, for the first time, many original and important historical documents.

Part I. commences with the earliest Irish MSS. extant.

Part II.: From the Twelfth Century to A.D. 1299.

Part III.: From A.D. 1300 to end of reign of Henry VIII.

Part IV. 1.: From reign of Edward VI. to that of James I.

In Part IV. 2.—the work is carried down to the early part of the eighteenth century, with Index to the entire publication.

ACCOUNT OF FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS OF IRELAND. IN ONE VOLUME 8vo., WITH INDEX. *Price* 10s. Parts I. and II. together. *Price* 2s. 6d.  
Part II. *Price* 1s. 6d. Part III. *Price* 1s. Part IV. 1. *Price* 2s. Part IV. 2. *Price* 2s. 6d.

Stationery Office,  
January 1887.





Refd. H. W. C. 28-2-44



